



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

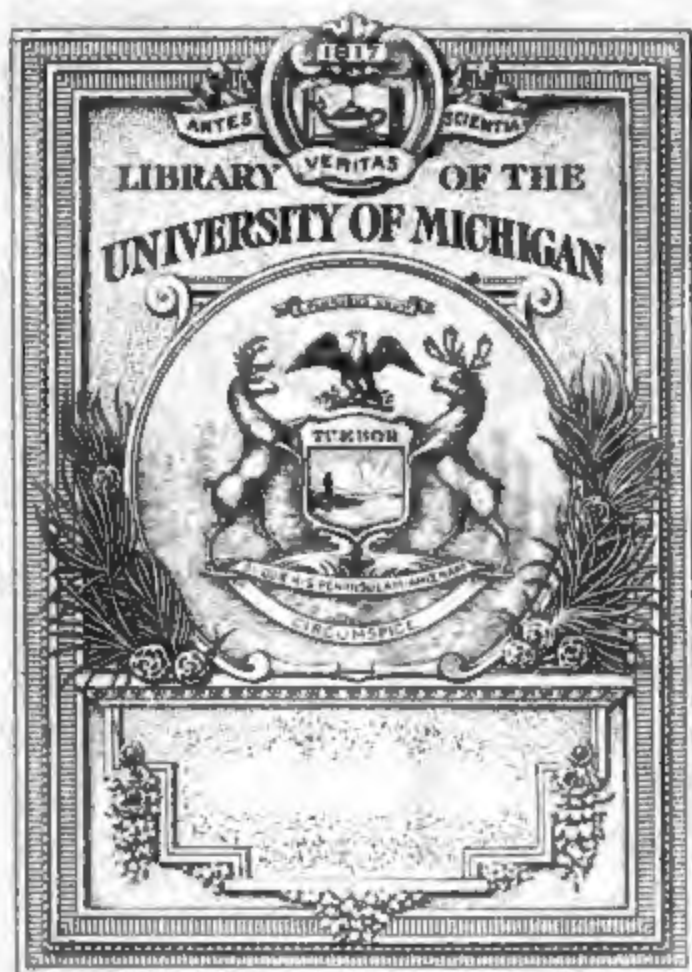
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

A 407445



G
420
H39
1775



AN
ACCOUNT
OF THE
VOYAGES

UNDERTAKEN BY THE ORDER OF
HIS PRESENT MAJESTY,
FOR MAKING
Discoveries in the Southern Hemisphere,

AND SUCCESSIVELY PERFORMED BY

COMMODORE BYRON,		CAPTAIN CARTERET,
CAPTAIN WALLIS,		And CAPTAIN COOK,

In the DOLPHIN, the SWALLOW, and the ENDEAVOUR:

Drawn up from the JOURNALS which were kept by the several
Commanders, and from the Papers of JOSEPH BANKS, Esq.

By JOHN HAWKESWORTH, L.L.D.

To which is added,

A VOYAGE to the NORTH POLE.

By COMMODORE PHIPPS.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

Illustrated with CHARTS and elegant COPPER-PLATES.

VOL. II.

DUBLIN:

Printed for JAMES WILLIAMS, No 21. Skinner Row.
MDCCLXXV.

C O N T E N T S.

C H A P. IV.

A particular Description of the Island; its Produce and Inhabitants; their Dress, Habitations, Food, domestic Life and Amusements. 35

C H A P. V.

Of the Manufactures, Boats, and Navigation of Otabeite. 57

C H A P. VI.

Of the Division of Time in Otabeite; Numeration, Computation of Distance, Language, Diseases, Disposal of the Dead, Religion, War, Weapons, and Government; with some general Observations for the Use of future Navigators. 71

C H A P. VII.

A Description of several other Islands in the Neighbourhood of Otabeite, with various Incidents; a dramatic Entertainment; and many Particulars relative to the Customs and Manners of the Inhabitants. 88

B O O K II.

C H A P. I.

The Passage from Oteroab to New Zealand; Incidents which happened on going a-shore there, and while the Ship lay in Poverty-Bay. 114

C O N T E N T S.

C H A P. II.

A Description of Poverty-Bay, and the Face of the adjacent Country. The Range from thence to Cape Turnagain, and back to Tolaga; with some Account of the People and the Country, and several Incidents that happened on that Part of the Coast. 127

C H A P. III.

The Range from Tolaga to Mercury-Bay, with an Account of many Incidents that happened both on board and a-shore. A Description of several Views exhibited by the Country, and of the Heppabs, or forsighted Villages of the Inhabitants. 149

C H A P. IV.

The Range from Mercury Bay to the Bay of Islands. An Expedition up the River Thames: Some Account of the Indians who inhabit its Banks, and the fine Timber that grows there. Several interviews with the Natives on different Parts of the Coast, and a Skirmish with them upon an Island. 170

C H A P. V.

Range from the Bay of Islands, round North-Cape to Queen Charlotte's Sound; and a Description of that Part of the Coast. 188

C H A P. VI.

Transactions in Queen Charlotte's Sound. Passage through the Streight which divides the two Islands, and back to Cape Turnagain. Horrid Custom of the Inhabitants. Remarkable Melody of Birds. A Visit to a Hippab, and many other Particulars. 200

C O N T E N T S.

C H A P. VII.

- Range from Cape Turnagain southward along the eastern Coast of Poenammoo, round Cape South, and back to the western Entrance of Cooke's Streight, which completed the Circumnavigation of this Country: with a Description of the Coast, and of Admiralty Bay: The Departure from New Zealand, and various Particulars.* 222

C H A P. VIII.

- A general Account of New Zealand: its first Discovery, Situation, Extent, Climate, and Productions.* 241

C H A P. IX.

- A Description of the Inhabitants, their Habitations, Apparel, Ornaments, Food, Cookery, and Manner of Life.* 250

C H A P. X.

- Of the Canoes and Navigation of the Inhabitants of New Zealand; their Tillage, Weapons, and Music; Government, Religion, and Language: With some Reasons against the Existence of a Southern Continent.* 263

B O O K III.

C H A P. I.

- The Run from New Zealand to Botany Bay, on the East Coast of New Holland, now called New South Wales. Various Incidents that happened there. With some Account of the Country and its Inhabitants.* 279

C H A P.

C O N T E N T S.

C H A P. IV.

The Range from Botany Bay to Trinity Bay ; with a farther Account of the Country, its Inhabitants and Productions. 300

C H A P. V.

Dangerous Situation of the Ship in her Course from Trinity Bay to Endeavour River. 331

C H A P. VI.

Transactions while the Ship was refitting in Endeavour River : a Description of the adjacent Country, its Inhabitants, and Productions. 342

C H A P. VII.

Departure from Endeavour River ; a particular Description of the Harbour there, in which the Ship was refitted, the adjacent Country, and several Islands near the Coast : the Range from Endeavour River to the Northern Extremity of the Country, and the Dangers of that Navigation. 368

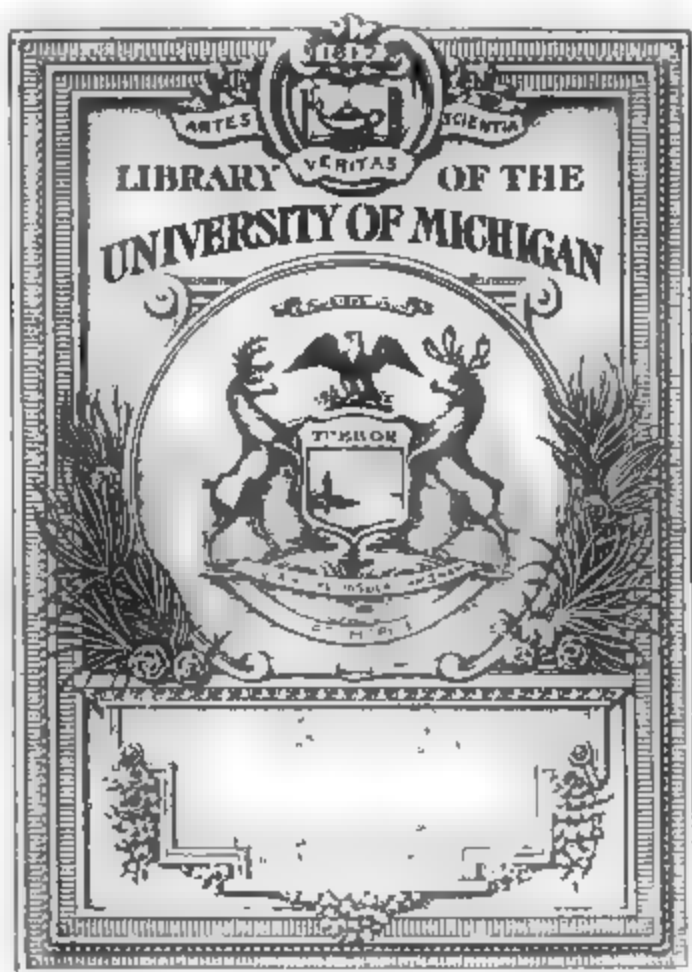
C H A P. VIII.

Departure from New South Wales. A particular Description of the Country, its Products, and People. A Specimen of the Language ; and some Observations upon the Currents and Tides. 396

C H A P. IX.

The Passage from New South Wales to New Guinea ; with an Account of what happened upon landing there. 418

C H A P.



G

420

. H39

1775



1769.
June.

body was deposited upon such a frame as has before been described : it was covered with fine cloth, and near it was placed bread-fruit, fish, and other provisions : we supposed that the food was placed there for the spirit of the deceased, and consequently, that these Indians had some confused notion of a separate state ; but upon our applying for further information to Tubourai Tamaide, he told us, that the food was placed there as an offering to their gods. They do not, however, suppose, that the gods eat, any more than the Jews supposed that Jehovah could dwell in a house : the offering is made here upon the same principle as the Temple was built at Jerusalem, as an expression of reverence and gratitude, and a solicitation of the more immediate presence of the Deity. In the front of the area was a kind of stile, where the relations of the deceased stood to pay the tribute of their sorrow ; and under the awning were innumerable small pieces of cloth, on which the tears and blood of the mourners had been shed ; for in their paroxysms of grief it is a universal custom to wound themselves with the shark's tooth. Within a few yards two occasional houses were set up, in one of which some relations of the deceased constantly resided, and in the other the chief mourner, who is always a man, and who keeps there a very singular dress, in which a ceremony is performed that will be described in its turn. Near the place where the dead are thus set up to rot, the bones are afterwards buried.

What can have introduced among these people the custom of exposing their dead above ground, till the flesh is consumed by putrefaction, and then burying the bones, it is perhaps impossible to guess ; but it is remarkable, that Ælian and Apollonius Rhodius impute a similar practice to the ancient inhabitants of Colchis, a country near Pontus in Asia, now called Mingrelia ; except that among them this manner of disposing of the dead did not extend to both sexes ; the women they buried ; but the men they wrapped in a hide, and hung up in the air by a chain. This practice among the Colchians is referred to a religious cause. The principal objects of their worship were the Earth and the Air ; and it is supposed that, in consequence

1769
June.

quence of some superstitious notion, they devoted their dead to both. Whether the natives of Otaheite had any notion of the same kind, we were never able certainly to determine; but we soon discovered, that the repositories of their dead were also places of worship. Upon this occasion it may be observed, that nothing can be more absurd than the notion that the happiness or misery of a future life depends, in any degree, upon the disposition of the body when the state of probation is past; yet that nothing is more general than a solicitude about it. However cheap we may hold any funeral rites which custom has not familiarized, or superstition rendered sacred, most men gravely deliberate how to prevent their body from being broken by the mattock and devoured by the worm, when it is no longer capable of sensation; and purchase a place for it in holy ground, when they believe the lot of its future existence to be irrevocably determined. So strong is the association of pleasing or painful ideas with certain opinions and actions which affect us while we live, that we involuntarily act as if it was equally certain that they would affect us in the same manner when we are dead, though this is an opinion that nobody will maintain. Thus it happens, that the desire of preserving from reproach even the name that we leave behind us, or of procuring it honour, is one of the most powerful principles of action, among the inhabitants of the most speculative and enlightened nations. Posthumous reputation, upon every principle, must be acknowledged to have no influence upon the dead; yet the desire of obtaining and securing it, no force of reason, no habits of thinking, can subdue, except in those whom habitual baseness and guilt have rendered indifferent to honour and shame while they lived. This indeed seems to be among the happy imperfections of our nature, upon which the general good of society in a certain measure depends; for as some crimes are supposed to be prevented by hanging the body of the criminal in chains after he is dead, so in consequence of the same association of ideas, much good is procured to society, and much evil prevented, by a desire of preventing disgrace or procuring honour to a name, when nothing but a name remains.

LIEUT. COOK'S VOYAGE

1769.
June.

Perhaps no better use can be made of reading an account of manners altogether new, by which the follies and absurdities of mankind are taken out of that particular connection in which habit has reconciled them to us, than to consider in how many instances they are essentially the same. When an honest devotee of the Church of Rome reads, that there are Indians on the banks of the Ganges, who believe that they shall secure the happiness of a future state by dying with a cow's tail in their hands, he laughs at their folly and superstition; and if these Indians were to be told, that there are people upon the continent of Europe, who imagine that they shall derive the same advantage from dying with the slipper of St. Francis upon their foot, they would laugh in their turn. But if, when the Indian heard the account of the Catholic, and the Catholic that of the Indian, each was to reflect, that there was no difference between the absurdity of the slipper and of the tail; but that the veil of prejudice and custom, which covered it in their own case, was withdrawn in the other, they would turn their knowledge to a profitable purpose.

Having observed that bread-fruit had for some days been brought in less quantities than usual, we enquired the reason; and were told, that there being a great shew of fruit upon the trees, they had been thinned all at once, in order to make a kind of flour paste, which the natives call Mahie, and which, in consequence of having undergone a fermentation, will keep a considerable time, and supply them with food when no ripe fruit is to be had.

Saturd. 10.

On the 10th, the ceremony was to be performed, in honour of the old woman whose sepulchral tabernacle has just been described, by the chief mourner; and Mr. Banks had so great a curiosity to see all the mysteries of the solemnity, that he determined to take a part in it, being told, that he could be present upon no other condition. In the evening, therefore, he repaired to the place where the body lay, and was received by the daughter of the deceased, and several other persons, among whom was a boy about fourteen years old, who were to assist in the ceremony. Tubourai Tamaide was to be the principal mourner; and

1769.
June.

and his dress was extremely fantastical, though not unbecoming. Mr. Banks was stripped of his European clothes, and a small piece of cloth being tied round his middle, his body was smeared with charcoal and water, as low as the shoulders, till it was as black as that of a negroe; the same operation was performed upon several others, among whom were some women, who were reduced to a state as near to nakedness as himself; the boy was blacked all over, and then the procession set forward. Tubourai Tamaide uttered something, which was supposed to be a prayer, near the body, and did the same when he came up to his own house: When this was done, the procession was continued towards the fort, permission having been obtained to approach it upon this occasion. It is the custom of the Indians to fly from these processions with the utmost precipitation, so that as soon as those who were about the fort saw it at a distance, they hid themselves in the woods. It proceeded from the fort along the shore, and put to flight another body of Indians, consisting of more than an hundred, every one hiding himself under the first shelter that he could find; it then crossed the river, and entered the woods, passing several houses, all which were deserted, and not a single Indian could be seen during the rest of the procession, which continued more than half an hour. The office that Mr. Banks performed was called that of the Nineveh, of which there were two besides himself; and the natives having all disappeared, they came to the chief mourner, and said imatata, there are no people; after which the company was dismissed to wash themselves in the river, and put on their customary apparel.

On the 12th, complaint being made to me, by Mond. 12. some of the natives, that two of the seamen had taken from them several bows and arrows, and some strings of plaited hair; I examined the matter, and finding the charge well supported, I punished each of the criminals with two dozen lashes.

Their bows and arrows have not been mentioned before, nor were they often brought down to the fort. This day, however, Tubourai Tamaide brought down his, in consequence of a challenge which he had received from Mr. Gore. The Chief supposed it was

1769.
June.

to try who could send the arrow farthest; Mr. Gore, who best could hit a mark: and as Mr. Gore did not value himself upon shooting to a great distance, nor the Chief upon hitting a mark, there was no trial of skill between them. Tubourai Tamaide, however, to shew us what he could do, drew his bow, and sent an arrow, none of which are feathered, two hundred and seventy-four yards, which is something more than a seventh, and something less than a sixth part of a mile. Their manner of shooting is somewhat singular; they kneel down, and the moment the arrow is discharged drop the bow.

Mr. Banks, in his morning walk this day, met a number of the natives, whom, upon inquiry, he found to be travelling musicians; and having learned where they were to be at night, we all repaired to the place. The band consisted of two flutes and three drums, and we found a great number of people assembled upon the occasion. The drummers accompanied the musick with their voices, and, to our great surprize, we discovered that we were generally the subject of the song. We did not expect to have found among the uncivilized inhabitants of this sequestered spot, a character which has been the subject of such praise and veneration, where genius and knowledge have been most conspicuous; yet these were the bards or minstrels of Otaheite. Their song was unpremeditated, and accompanied with musick; they were continually going about from place to place, and they were rewarded by the master of the house, and the audience, with such things as one wanted, and the other could spare.

Wednes. 14. On the 14th, we were brought into new difficulties and inconvenience, by another robbery at the fort. In the middle of the night one of the natives contrived to steal an iron coal-rake, that was made use of for the oven. It happened to be set up against the inside of the wall, so that the top of the handle was visible from without; and we were informed that the thief, who had been seen lurking there in the evening, came secretly about three o'clock in the morning, and, watching his opportunity when the centinel's back

was.

1769.
June.

was turned, very dexterously laid hold of it with a long crooked stick, and drew it over the wall. I thought it of some consequence, if possible, to put an end to these practices at once, by doing something that should make it the common interest of the natives themselves to prevent them. I had given strict orders that they should not be fired upon, even when detected in these attempts, for which I had many reasons: the common centinels were by no means fit to be entrusted with a power of life and death, to be exerted whenever they should think fit; and I had already experienced, that they were ready to take away the lives that were in their power, upon the slightest occasion; neither indeed did I think that the thefts which these people committed against us were, in them, crimes worthy of death: that thieves are hanged in England, I thought no reason why they should be shot in Otaheite; because, with respect to the natives, it would have been an execution by a law 'ex post facto:' they had no such law among themselves, and it did not appear to me that we had any right to make such a law for them. That they should abstain from theft, or be punished with death, was not one of the conditions under which they claimed the advantages of civil society, as it is among us; and as I was not willing to expose them to fire arms, loaded with shot, neither could I perfectly approve of firing only with powder: at first, indeed, the noise and the smoke would alarm them, but when they found that no mischief followed, they would be led to despise the weapons themselves, and proceed to insults, which would make it necessary to put them to the test, and from which they would be deterred by the very sight of a gun, if it was never used but with effect. At this time, an accident furnished me with what I thought a happy expedient. It happened that above twenty of their sailing canoes were just come in with a supply of fish; upon these I immediately seized, and bringing them into the river behind the fort, gave publick notice, that except the rake, and all the rest of the things which from time to time had been stolen, were returned, the canoes should be burned. This menace I ventured to publish, though I had no design to put it into execution, making no

LIEUT. COOK'S VOYAGE

769. doubt but that it was well known in whose possession
une. the stolen goods were, and that as restitution was thus
made a common cause, they would all of them in a
short time be brought back. A list of the things was
made out, consisting principally of the rake, the mus-
ket which had been taken from the marine when the
Indian was shot, the pistols which Mr. Banks lost
with his clothes at Atahourou, a sword belonging to
one of the petty officers, and the water cask. About
noon the rake was restored, and great solicitation was
made for the release of the canoes; but I still insisted
rf. 15. upon my original condition. The next day came,
and nothing farther was restored, at which I was much
surprised, for the people were in the utmost distress for
the fish, which in a short time would be spoiled; I was
therefore reduced to a disagreeable situation, either of
releasing the canoes, contrary to what I had solemnly
and publicly declared, or to detain them, to the great
injury of those who were innocent, without answering
any good purpose to ourselves: as a temporary expe-
dient, I permitted them to take the fish, but still de-
tained the canoes. This very licence, however, was
productive of new confusion and injury; for, it not
being easy at once to distinguish to what particular
persons the several lots of fish belonged, the canoes
were plundered, under favour of this circumstance, by
those who had no right to any part of their cargo.
Most pressing instances were still made that the canoes
might be restored; and I having now the greatest rea-
son to believe, either that the things for which I de-
tained them were not in the island, or that those who
suffered by their detention had not sufficient influence
over the thieves to prevail upon them to relinquish their
booty, determined at length to give them up, not a lit-
tle mortified at the bad success of my project.

Another accident also about this time was, notwith-
standing all our caution, very near embroiling us with
the Indians. I sent the boat on shore with an officer
to get ballast for the ship, and not immediately finding
stones convenient for the purpose, he began to pull
down some part of an inclosure where they deposited
the bones of their dead: this the Indians violently op-
posed, and a messenger came down to the tents to ac-
quaint

quaint the officers that they would not suffer it. Mr. Banks immediately repaired to the place, and an amicable end was soon put to the dispute, by sending the boat's crew to the river, where stones enough were to be gathered without a possibility of giving offence. It is very remarkable, that these Indians appeared to be much more jealous of what was done to the dead than the living. This was the only measure in which they ventured to oppose us, and the only insult that was offered to any individual among us was upon a similar occasion. Mr. Monkhouse happening one day to pull a flower from a tree which grew in one of their sepulchral inclosures, an Indian, whose jealousy had probably been upon the watch, came suddenly behind him and struck him : Mr. Monkhouse laid hold of him, but he was instantly rescued by two more, who took hold of Mr. Monkhouse's hair, and forced him to quit his hold of their companion, and then ran away, without offering him any farther violence.

1769.
June.

In the evening of the 19th, while the canoes were still detained, we received a visit from Oberea, which surprized us not a little, as she brought with her none of the things that had been stolen, and knew that she was suspected of having some of them in her custody. She said, indeed, that her favourite, Obadee, whom she had beaten and dismissed, had taken them away ; but she seemed conscious that she had no right to be believed : she discovered the strongest signs of fear, yet she surmounted it with astonishing resolution, and was very pressing to sleep with her attendants in Mr. Banks's tent. In this, however, she was not gratified ; the affair of the jackets was too recent, and the tent was besides filled with other people. Nobody else seemed willing to entertain her, and she therefore, with great appearance of mortification and disappointment, spent the night in her canoe.

The next morning early she returned to the fort, with her canoe and every thing that it contained, putting herself wholly into our power, with something like greatness of mind, which excited our wonder and admiration. As the most effectual means to bring about a reconciliation, she presented us with a hog, and several other things, among which was a dog.

We

Tuesd. 20.

1769.
June.

We had lately learned, that these animals were esteemed by the Indians as more delicate food than their pork; and upon this occasion we determined to try the experiment; the dog, which was very fat, we consigned over to Tupia, who undertook to perform the double office of butcher and cook. He killed him, by holding his hands close over his mouth and nose, an operation which continued above a quarter of an hour. While this was doing, a hole was made in the ground about a foot deep, in which a fire was kindled, and some small stones placed in layers alternately with the wood to heat; the dog was then singed, by holding him over the fire, and, by scraping him with a shell, the hair was taken off as clean as if he had been scalded in hot water: he was then cut up with the same instrument, and his entrails being taken out, were sent to the sea, where being carefully washed, they were put into cocoa-nut-shells, with what blood had come from the body: when the hole was sufficiently heated, the fire was taken out, and some of the stones which were not so hot as to discolour any thing that they touched, being placed at the bottom, were covered with green leaves: the dog, with the entrails, was then placed upon the leaves, and other leaves being laid upon them, the whole was covered with the rest of the hot stones, and the mouth of the hole close stopped with mould: in somewhat less than four hours it was again opened, and the dog taken out excellently baked, and we all agreed that he made a very good dish. The dogs which are here bred to be eaten, taste no animal food, but are kept wholly upon bread-fruit, cocoanuts, yams, and other vegetables of the like kind: all the flesh and fish eaten by the inhabitants is dressed in the same way.

Wednes. 21. On the 21st, we were visited at the fort by a Chief, called OAMO, whom we had never seen before, and who was treated by the natives with uncommon respect; he brought with him a boy about seven years old, and a young woman about sixteen; the boy was carried upon a man's back, which we considered as a piece of state, for he was as well able to walk as any present. As soon as they were in sight, Oberea, and several other natives who were in the

the fort, went out to meet them, having first uncovered their heads and bodies as low as the waist: as they came on, the same ceremony was performed by all the natives who were without the fort. Uncovering the body, therefore, is in this country probably a mark of respect; and as all parts are here exposed with equal indifference, the ceremony of uncovering it from the waist downwards, which was performed by Oorattooa, might be nothing more than a different mode of compliment, adapted to persons of a different rank. The chief came into the tent, but no entreaty could prevail upon the young woman to follow him, though she seemed to refuse contrary to her inclination; the natives without were indeed all very solicitous to prevent her; sometimes when her resolution seemed to fail, almost using force: the boy also they restrained in the same manner; but Dr. Solander happening to meet him at the gate, took him by the hand, and led him in before the people were aware of it: as soon, however, as those that were within saw him, they took care to have him sent out.

1769.
June.

These circumstances having strongly excited our curiosity, we enquired who they were, and were informed, that Oamo was the husband of Oberea, tho' they had been a long time separated by mutual consent; and that the young woman and the boy were their children. We learnt also, that the boy, whose name was TERRIDIRI, was heir apparent to the sovereignty of the island, and that his sister was intended for his wife, the marriage being deferred only till he should arrive at a proper age. The sovereign at this time was a son of WHAPPAL, whose name was OUTOU, and who, as before has been observed, was a minor. Whappai, Oamo, and Tootahah, were brothers: Whappai was the eldest, and Oamo the second; so that, Whappai having no child but Outou, Terridiri, the son of his next brother Oamo, was heir to the sovereignty. It will, perhaps, seem strange that a boy should be sovereign during the life of his father: but, according to the custom of the country, a child succeeds to a father's title and authority as soon as it is born: a regent is then elected, and the father of the new sovereign is generally continued in his authority, under

1769.
June.

under that title, till his child is of age; but, at this time, the choice had fallen upon Tootahah, the uncle, in consequence of his having distinguished himself in a War. Oamo asked many questions concerning England and its inhabitants, by which he appeared to have great shrewdness and understanding.

C H A P. II.

An Account of the Circumnavigation of the Island, and various Incidents that happened during the Expedition; with a Description of a Burying-place and place of Worship, called Morai.

Monday 26.

ON Monday the 26th, about three o'clock in the morning, I set out in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr. Banks, to make the circuit of the island, with a view to sketch out the coast and harbours. We took our rout to the eastward, and about eight in the forenoon we went on shore, in a district called OAHOUNUF, which is governed by AHIO, a young Chief, whom we had often seen at the tents, and who favoured us with his company to breakfast. Here also we found two other natives of our old acquaintance, TITUBOALO and HOONA, who carried us to their houses, near which we saw the body of the old woman, at whose funeral rites Mr. Banks had assisted, and which had been removed hither from the spot where it was first deposited, this place having descended from her by inheritance to Hoona, and it being necessary on that account that it should lie here. We then proceeded on foot, the boat attending within call, to the harbour in which Mr. Bougainville lay, called OHIDEA, where the natives shewed us the ground upon which his people pitched their tent, and the brook at which they water, though no trace of them remained, except the holes where the poles of the tent had been fixed, and a small piece of potsherd, which Mr. Banks found in looking narrowly about the spot. We met, however, with ORETTE, a Chief who was their principal friend, and whose brother OUTORROU went away with them.

This

This harbour lies on the west side of a great bay, under shelter of a small island called BOOIROU, near which is another called TAAWIRRI; the breach in the reefs is here very large, but the shelter for ships is not the best.

1769.
June.

Soon after we had examined this place, we took boat, and asked Tituboalo to go with us to the other side of the bay; but he refused, and advised us not to go, for he said the country there was inhabited by people who were not subject to Tootahah, and who would kill both him and us. Upon receiving this intelligence, we did not, as may be imagined, relinquish our enterprize; but we immediately loaded our pieces with ball: this was so well understood by Tituboalo as a precaution which rendered us formidable, that he now consented to be of our party.

Having rowed till it was dark, we reached a low neck of land, or isthmus, at the bottom of the bay, that divides the island into two peninsulas, each of which is a district or government wholly independent of the other. From Port-Royal, where the Ship was at anchor, the coast trends E. by S. and E. S. E. ten miles, then S. by E. and S. eleven miles to the isthmus. In the first direction, the shore is in general open to the sea; but in the last it is covered by reefs of rocks, which form several good harbours, with safe anchorage, in 16, 18, 20, and 24 fathom of water, with other conveniencies. As we had not yet got into our enemy's country, we determined to sleep on shore: we landed, and though we found but few houses, we saw several double canoes whose owners were well known to us, and who provided us with supper and lodging; of which Mr. Banks was indebted for his share to Ooratooa, the lady who had paid him her compliments in so singular a manner at the fort.

In the morning, we looked about the country, and found it to be a marshy flat, about two miles over, across which the natives haul their canoes to the corresponding bay on the other side. We then prepared to continue our route for what Tituboalo called the other Kingdom; he said that the name of it was TARRABOU, or ORAHEITE ETE; and that of the Chief who governed it, WAHEATUA: upon this occasion

Tues. 27.

1769.
June.

casion also, we learnt that the name of the peninsula where we had taken our station was OPOUREONU, or OTAHEITE NUE. Our new associate seemed to be now in better spirits than he had been the day before; the people in Tiarabou would not kill us, he said, but he assured us that we should be able to procure no victuals among them; and indeed we had seen no bread-fruit since we set out.

After rowing a few miles, we landed in a district, which was the dominion of a Chief, called MARAITA-TA, the burying-place of men; whose father's name was PAHAIREDO, the stealer of boats. Though these names seemed to favour the account that had been given by Tituboalo, we soon found that it was not true. Both the father and the son received us with the greatest civility, gave us provisions, and, after some delay, sold us a very large hog for a hatchet. A croud soon gathered round us, but we saw only two people that we knew; neither did we observe a single bead or ornament among them, that had come from our ship, though we saw several things which had been brought from Europe. In one of the houses lay two twelve-pound shot, one of which was marked with the broad arrow of England, though the people said they had them from the ships that lay in Bougainville's harbour.

We proceeded on foot till we came to the district which was immediately under the government of the principal Chief, or King of the peninsula, Waheatua. Waheatua had a son, but whether, according to the custom of Opoureonu, he administered the government as regent, or in his own right, is uncertain. This district consists of a large and fertile plain, watered by a river so wide, that we were obliged to ferry over it in a canoe; our Indian train, however, chose to swim, and took to the water with the same facility as a pack of hounds. In this place we saw no house that appeared to be inhabited, but the ruins of many, that had been very large. We proceeded along the shore, which forms a bay, called OAITIPEHA, and at last we found the Chief sitting near some pretty canoe awnings, under which, we supposed, he and his attendants slept. He was a thin old man, with a very white head and beard, and had with him a comely woman, about
five

five and twenty years old, whose name was TOUDIDDE. We had often heard the name of this woman, and, from report and observation, we had reason to think that she was the OBEREA of this peninsula. From this place, between which and the isthmus there are other harbours, formed by the reefs that lie along the shore, where shipping may lie in perfect security, and from whence the land trends S. S. E. and S. to the S. E. part of the island, we were accompanied by TEAREE, the son of Waheatua, of whom we had purchased a hog, and the country we passed through appeared to be more cultivated than any we had seen in other parts of the island: the brooks were every where banked into narrow channels with stone, and the shore had also a facing of stone, where it was washed by the sea. The houses were neither large nor numerous, but the canoes that were hauled up along the shore were almost innumerable, and superior to any that we had seen before, both in size and make; they were longer, the sterns were higher, and the awnings were supported by pillars. At almost every point there was a sepulchral building, and there were many of them also inland. They were of the same figure as those in Opoureonu, but they were cleaner and better kept, and decorated with many carved boards, which were set upright, and on the top of which were various figures of birds and men: on one in particular, there was the representation of a cock, which was painted red and yellow, to imitate the feathers of that animal, and rude images of men were, in some of them, placed one upon the head of another. But in this part of the country, however fertile and cultivated, we did not see a single bread-fruit; the trees were entirely bare, and the inhabitants seemed to subsist principally upon nuts which are not unlike a chesnut, and which they call AHÉE.

1769.
June.

When we had walked till we were weary, we called up the boat, but both our Indians, Tituboalo and Tuahow, were missing: they had, it seems, stayed behind at Waheatua's, expecting us to return thither, in consequence of a promise which had been extorted from us, and which we had it not in our power to fulfil.

Tearee,

1769.

June.

Tearee, however, and another, embarked with us, and we proceeded till we came a-breast of a small island called OTOOAREITE; it being then dark, we determined to land, and our Indians conducted us to a place where they said we might sleep: it was a deserted house, and near it was a little cove, in which the boat might lie with great safety and convenience. We were, however, in want of provisions, having been very sparingly supplied since we set out; and Mr. Banks immediately went into the woods to see whether any could be procured. As it was dark, he met with no people, and could find but one house that was inhabited: a bread-fruit and a half, a few ahees, and some fire, were all that it afforded; upon which, with a duck or two, and a few curleus, we made our supper, which, if not scanty, was disagreeable, by the want of bread, with which we had neglected to furnish ourselves, as we depended upon meeting with bread-fruit, and took up our lodging under the awning of a canoe belonging to Tearee, which followed us.

Wed. 28.

The next morning, after having spent some time in another fruitless attempt to procure a supply of provisions, we proceeded round the south-east point, part of which is not covered by any reef, but lies open to the sea; and here the hill rises directly from the shore. At the southermost part of the island, the shore is again covered by a reef, which forms a good harbour; and the land about it is very fertile. We made this route partly on foot and partly in the boat; when we had walked about three miles, we arrived at a place where we saw several large canoes, and a number of people with them, whom we were agreeably surprised to find were of our intimate acquaintance. Here, with much difficulty, we procured some cocoa-nuts, and then embarked, taking with us Tuahow, one of the Indians who had waited for us at Waheatua's, and had returned the night before, long after it was dark.

When we came a-breast of the south-east end of the island, we went ashore, by the advice of our Indian guide, who told us that the country was rich and good. The Chief, whose name was MATHIABO, soon came down to us, but seemed to be a total stranger both to us and to our trade: his subjects, however, brought

us

us plenty of cocoa-nuts, and about twenty bread fruit. The bread-fruit we bought at a very dear rate, but his excellency sold us a pig for a glass bottle, which he preferred to every thing else that we could give him. We found in his possession a goose and a turkey-cock, which, we were informed, had been left upon the island by the Dolphin: they were both enormously fat, and so tame that they followed the Indians, who were fond of them to excess, wherever they went.

1769.
June.

In a long house, in this neighbourhood, we saw what was altogether new to us. At one end of it, fastened to a semi-circular board, hung fifteen human jaw-bones; they appeared to be fresh, and there was not one of them that wanted a single tooth. A sight so extraordinary strongly excited our curiosity, and we made many enquiries about it; but at this time could get no information; for the people either could not or would not understand us.

When we left this place, the Chief, Mathiabo, desired leave to accompany us, which was readily granted. He continued with us the remainder of the day, and proved very useful, by piloting us over the shoals. In the evening, we opened the bay on the north-west side of the island, which answered to that on the south-east, so as at the isthmus, or carrying place, almost to intersect the island, as I have observed before; and when we had coasted about two-thirds of it, we determined to go on shore for the night. We saw a large house at some distance, which, Mathiabo informed us, belonged to one of his friends; and soon after several canoes came off to meet us, having on board some very handsome women, who, by their behaviour, seemed to have been sent to entice us on shore. As we had before resolved to take up our residence here for the night, little invitation was necessary. We found that the house belonged to the Chief of the district, whose name was WIVEROU: he received us in a very friendly manner, and ordered his people to assist us in dressing our provision, of which we had now got a tolerable stock. When our supper was ready, we were conducted into that part of the house where Wiverou was sitting, in order to eat it: Mathiabo supped with us; and Wiverou, calling for his

1769.

June.

supper at the same time, we eat our meal very sociably, and with great good humour. When it was over, we began to enquire where we were to sleep, and a part of the house was shewn us, of which we were told we might take possession for that purpose. We then sent for our cloaks, and Mr. Banks began to undress, as his custom was, and, with a precaution which he had been taught by the loss of the jackets at Atahourou, sent his clothes aboard the boat, proposing to cover himself with a piece of Indian cloth. When Mathiabo perceived what was doing, he also pretended to want a cloak; and, as he had behaved very well, and done us some service, a cloak was ordered for him. We lay down, and observed that Mathiabo was not with us; but we supposed that he was gone to bathe, as the Indians always do before they sleep. We had not waited long, however, when an Indian, who was a stranger to us, came and told Mr. Banks, that the cloak and Mathiabo had disappeared together. This man had so far gained our confidence, that we did not at first believe the report; but it being soon after confirmed by Tuahow, our own Indian, we knew no time was to be lost. As it was impossible for us to pursue the thief with any hope of success, without the assistance of the people about us, Mr. Banks started up, and telling our case, required them to recover the cloak, and, to enforce his requisition, shewed one of his pocket pistols, which he always kept about him. Upon sight of the pistol, the whole company took the alarm, and, instead of assisting to catch the thief, or recover what had been stolen, began with great precipitation to leave the place; one of them, however, was seized, upon which he immediately offered to direct the chase: I set out therefore with Mr. Banks, and though we ran all the way, the alarm had got before us, for in about ten minutes we met a man bringing back the cloak, which the thief had relinquished in great terror; and as we did not then think fit to continue the pursuit, he made his escape. When we returned, we found the house, in which there had been between two and three hundred people, entirely deserted. It being, however, soon known that we had no resentment against any body but

1769.

June.

but Mathiabo, the Chief Wiverou, our host, with his wife, and many others, returned, and took up their lodging with us for the night. In this place, however, we were destined to more confusion and trouble, for about five o'clock in the morning our centry alarmed us with an account that the boat was missing: he had seen her, he said, about half an hour before, at her grappling, which was not above fifty yards from the shore; but upon hearing the sound of oars, he had looked out again, and could see nothing of her. At this account we started up greatly alarmed, and ran to the water side; the morning was clear and star light, so that we could see to a considerable distance, but there was no appearance of the boat. Our situation was now such as might justify the most terrifying apprehensions; as it was a dead calm, and we could not therefore suppose her to have broken from her grappling, we had great reason to fear that the Indians had attacked her, and finding the people asleep, had succeeded in their enterprize. We were but four, with only one musquet and two pocket pistols, without a spare ball or charge of powder for either. In this state of anxiety and distress we remained a considerable time, expecting the Indians every moment to improve their advantage, when, to our unspeakable satisfaction, we saw the boat return, which had been driven from her grappling by the tide; a circumstance to which, in our confusion and surprise, we did not advert.

As soon as the boat returned, we got our breakfast, and were impatient to leave the place, lest some other vexatious accident should befall us. It is situated on the north side of Tiarrabou, the south-east peninsula, or division, of the island, and at the distance of about five miles south-east from the isthmus, having a large and commodious harbour, inferior to none in the island, about which the land is very rich in produce. Notwithstanding we had had little communication with this division, the inhabitants every where received us in a friendly manner; we found the whole of it fertile and populous, and, to all appearance, in a more flourishing state than Opoureonu, though it is not above one fourth part as large.

1769.

June.

The next district in which we landed was the last in Tiarrabou, and governed by a Chief, whose name we understood to be OMOE. Omoe was building a house, and being heretofore very desirous of procuring a hatchet, he would have been glad to have purchased one with any thing that he had in his possession; it happened, however, rather unfortunately for him and us, that we had not one hatchet left in the boat. We offered to trade with nails, but he would not part with any thing in exchange for them; we therefore reembarked, and put off our boat; but the Chief being unwilling to relinquish all hope of obtaining something from us that would be of use to him, embarked in a canoe, with his wife WHANNO-ODA, and followed us. After some time we took them into the boat, and when we had rowed about a league, they desired we would put ashore: we immediately complied with his request, and found some of his people, who brought down a very large hog. We were as unwilling to lose the hog, as the Chief was to part with us, and indeed it was worth the best axe we had in the ship; we therefore hit upon an expedient, and told him, that if he would bring his hog to the fort at MATAVAI, the Indian name for Port Royal bay, he should have a large axe, and a nail into the bargain, for his trouble. To this proposal, after having consulted with his wife, he agreed, and gave us a large piece of his country cloth as a pledge, that he would perform his agreement, which, however, he never did.

At this place we saw a very singular curiosity: it was the figure of a man constructed of basket work, rudely made, but not ill designed; it was something more than seven feet high, and rather too bulky in proportion to its height. The wicker skeleton was completely covered with feathers, which were white where the skin was to appear, and black in the parts which it is their custom to paint or stain, and upon the head, where there was to be a representation of hair; upon the head also were four protuberances, three in front, and one behind, which we should have called horns, but which the Indians dignified with the name of TATE ETE, little men. The image was
called

called MANIOE, and was said to be the only one of the kind in Otaheite. They attempted to give us an explanation of its use and design, but we had not then acquired enough of their language to understand them. We learned, however, afterwards, that it was a representation of Mauwe, one of their Eatuas, or gods of the second class.

1769.
June.

After having settled our affairs with Omoe, we proceeded on our return, and soon reached Opoureonu, the north-west peninsula. After rowing a few miles, we went on shore again, but the only thing we saw worth notice was a repository for the dead, uncommonly decorated; the pavement was extremely neat, and upon it was raised a pyramid, about five feet high, which was intirely covered with the fruits of two plants peculiar to the country. Near the pyramid was a small image of stone, of very rude workmanship, and the first instance of carving in stone that we had seen among these people. They appeared to set a high value upon it, for it was covered from the weather by a shed, that had been erected on purpose.

We proceeded in the boat, and passed through the only harbour, on the south side of Opoureonu, that is fit for shipping. It is situated about five miles to the westward of the isthmus, between two small islands that lie near the shore, and about a mile distant from each other, and affords good anchorage in eleven and twelve fathom water. We were now not far from the district called PAPARRA, which belonged to our friends Oamo and Oberea, where we proposed to sleep. We went on shore about an hour before night, and found that they were both absent, having left their habitations to pay us a visit at Matavai: this, however, did not alter our purpose; we took up our quarters at the house of Oberea, which, though small, was very neat, and at this time had no inhabitant but her father, who received us with looks that bid us welcome. Having taken possession, we were willing to improve the little day-light that was left us, and therefore walked out to a point, upon which we had seen, at a distance, trees that are here called Etoa, which generally distinguish the places where these people bury the bones of their dead; their name for such burying-grounds, which are

1769.
June.

also places of worship, is MORAI. We were soon struck with the sight of an enormous pile, which, we were told, was the Morai of Oamo and Oberea, and the principal piece of Indian architecture in the island. It was a pile of stone work, raised pyramidically upon an oblong base, or square, two hundred and sixty-seven feet long, and eighty-seven wide. It was built like the small pyramidal mounts upon which we sometimes fix the pillar of a sun-dial, where each side is a flight of steps; the steps, however, at the sides were broader than those at the ends, so that it terminated not in a square of the same figure with the base, but in a ridge, like the roof of a house; there were eleven of these steps, each of which was four feet high, so that the height of the pile was forty-four feet; each step was formed of one course of white coral stone, which was neatly squared and polished; the rest of the mass, for there was no hollow within, consisted of round pebbles, which, from the regularity of their figure, seemed to have been wrought. Some of the coral stones were very large; we measured one of them, and found it three feet and an half by two feet and an half. The foundation was of rock stones, which were also squared, and one of them measured four feet seven inches by two feet four. Such a structure, raised without the assistance of iron tools to shape the stones, or mortar to join them, struck us with astonishment: it seemed to be as compact and firm as it could have been made by any workman in Europe, except that the steps, which range along its greatest length, are not perfectly straight, but sink in a kind of hollow in the middle, so that the whole surface, from end to end, is not a right line, but a curve. The quarry-stones, as we saw no quarry in the neighbourhood, must have been brought from a considerable distance, as there is no method of conveyance here but by the hand; the coral must also have been fished for from under the water, where, though it may be found in plenty, it lies at a considerable depth, never less than three feet. Both the rock stone and the coral could be squared only by tools made of the same substance, which must have been a work of incredible labour; but the polishing was more easily effected by means of the sharp coral sand, which is found every where upon

1769.
June.

upon the sea-shore in great abundance. In the middle of the top stood the image of a bird, carved in wood; and near it lay the broken one of a fish, carved in stone. The whole of this pyramid made part of one side of a spacious area or square, nearly of equal sides, being three hundred and sixty feet by three hundred and fifty-four, which was walled in with stone, and paved with flat stones in its whole extent; though there were growing in it, notwithstanding the pavement, several of the trees which they call Etoa, and plantains. About an hundred yards to the west of this building, was another paved area or court, in which were several small stages raised on wooden pillars, about seven feet high, which are called by the Indians Ewat-tas, and seem to be a kind of altars, as upon these are placed provisions of all kinds, as offerings to the gods; we have since seen whole hogs placed upon them, and we found here the skulls of above fifty, besides the skulls of a great number of dogs.

The principal object of ambition among these people is to have a magnificent Morai, and this was a striking memorial of the rank and power of Oberea. It has been remarked, that we did not find her invested with the same authority that she exercised when the Dolphin was at this place, and we now learnt the reason of it. Our way from her house to the Morai lay along the sea side, and we observed every where under our feet a great number of human bones, chiefly ribs and vertebræ. Upon enquiring into the cause of so singular an appearance, we were told, that in the then last month of Owarahew, which answered to our December, 1768, about four or five months before our arrival, the people of Tiarrabou, the S. E. peninsula which we had just visited, made a descent at this place, and killed a great number of the people, whose bones were those that we saw upon the shore: that, upon this occasion, Oberea, and Oamo, who then administered the government for his son, had fled to the mountains; and that the conquerors burnt all the houses, which were very large, and carried away the hogs and what other animals they found. We learnt also, that the turkey and goose, which we had seen when we were with Mathiabo, the stealer of cloaks,

were

1769.
June.

were among the spoils; this accounted for their being found among people with whom the Dolphin had little or no communication; and upon mentioning the jaw-bones, which we had seen hanging from a board in a long house, we were told, that they also had been carried away as trophies, the people here carrying away the jaw-bones of their enemies, as the Indians of North America do the scalps.

After having thus gratified our curiosity, we returned to our quarters, where we passed the night in perfect security and quiet. By the next evening we arrived at Atahourou, the residence of our friend Tootahah, where, the last time we passed the night under his protection, we had been obliged to leave the best part of our clothes behind us. This adventure, however, seemed now to be forgotten on both sides. Our friends received us with great pleasure, and gave us a good supper and a good lodging, where we suffered neither loss or disturbance.

July.
Saturday 1.

The next day, Saturday, July the 1st, we got back to our fort at Matavia, having found the circuit of the island, including both peninsulas, to be about thirty leagues. Upon our complaining of the want of bread-fruit, we were told, that the produce of the last season was nearly exhausted; and that what was seen sprouting upon the trees, would not be fit to use in less than three months; this accounted for our having been able to procure so little of it in our route.

While the bread-fruit is ripening upon the flats, the inhabitants are supplied in some measure from the trees which they have planted upon the hills to preserve a succession; but the quantity is not sufficient to prevent scarcity: they live therefore upon the sour paste which they call Mahie, upon wild plantains, and ahee-nuts, which at this time are in perfection. How it happened that the Dolphin, which was here at this season, found such plenty of bread-fruit upon the trees, I cannot tell, except the season in which they ripen varies.

At our return, our Indian friends crowded about us, and none of them came empty-handed. Though I had determined to restore the canoes which had been detained

detained to their owners, it had not yet been done ; but I now released them as they were applied for. Upon this occasion I could not but remark, with concern, that these people were capable of practising petty frauds against each other, with a deliberate dishonesty, which gave me a much worse opinion of them than I had ever entertained from the robberies they committed under the strong temptation to which a sudden opportunity of enriching themselves with the inestimable metal and manufactures of Europe exposed them.

1769.
July.

Among others who applied to me for the release of a canoe, was one POTATTO, a man of some consequence, well known to us all. I consented, supposing the vessel to be his own, or that he applied on the behalf of a friend : he went immediately to the beach, and took possession of one of the boats, which, with the assistance of his people, he began to carry off. Upon this, however, it was eagerly claimed by the right owners, who, supported by the other Indians, clamorously reproached him for invading their property, and prepared to take the canoe from him by force. Upon this he desired to be heard, and told them, that the canoe did, indeed, once belong to those who claimed it ; but that I, having seized it as a forfeit, had sold it to him for a pig. This silenced the clamour, the owners, knowing that from my power there was no appeal, acquiesced ; and Potattow would have carried off his prize, if the dispute had not fortunately been overheard by some of our people, who reported it to me. I gave orders immediately that the Indians should be undeceived ; upon which the right owners took possession of their canoe, and Potattow was so conscious of his guilt, that neither he nor his wife, who was privy to his knavery, could look us in the face for some time afterwards.

1769.
July.

C H A P. III.

An Expedition of Mr. Banks to trace the River : Marks of subterraneous Fire : Preparations for leaving the Island : An Account of Tupia.

Mond. 3.

ON the 3d, Mr. Banks set out early in the morning, with some Indian Guides, to trace our River up the valley from which it issues, and examine how far its banks were inhabited. For about six miles they met with houses, not far distant from each other, on each side of the river, and the valley was every where about four hundred yards wide from the foot of the hill on one side, to the foot of that on the other; but they were now shewn a house which they were told was the last that they would see. When they came up to it, the master of it offered them refreshments of cocoa nuts and other fruit, of which they accepted; after a short stay, they walked forward for a considerable time; in bad way it is not easy to compute distances, but they imagined that they had walked about six miles farther, following the course of the river, when they frequently passed under vaults, formed by fragments of the rock, in which they were told people who were benighted frequently passed the night. Soon after they found the river banked by steep rocks, from which a cascade falling with great violence, formed a pool, so steep, that the Indians said they could not pass it. They seemed, indeed, not much to be acquainted with the valley beyond this place, their business lying chiefly upon the declivity of the rocks on each side, and the plains which extended on their summits, where they found plenty of wild plantain, which they called Vae. The way up these rocks from the banks of the river was in every respect dreadful; the sides were nearly perpendicular, and in some places one hundred feet high; they were also rendered exceedingly slippery by the water of innumerable springs which issued from the fissures on the surface; yet up these precipices a way was to be traced by a succession of long pieces of the bark of the *Hibiscus tiliaceus*, which served as a rope for the climber to take hold

1769.
July.

hold of, and assisted him in scrambling from one ledge to another, though upon these ledges there was footing only for an Indian or goat. One of these ropes was nearly thirty feet in length, and their guides offered to assist them in mounting this pass, but recommended another, at a little distance lower down, as less difficult and dangerous. They took a view of this "better way," but found it so bad that they did not choose to attempt it, as there was nothing at the top to reward their toil and hazard but a grove of the wild plantain or Vae tree, which they had often seen before.

During this excursion, Mr. Banks had an excellent opportunity to examine the rocks, which were almost every where naked, for minerals; but he found not the least appearance of any. The stones every where, like those of Madeira, shewed manifest tokens of having been burned; nor is there a single specimen of any stone, among all those that were collected in the island, upon which there are not manifest and indubitable marks of fire, except perhaps some small pieces of the hatchet-stone, and even of that, other fragments were collected, which are burned almost to a pumice. Traces of fire are also manifest in the very clay upon the hills; and it may, therefore, not unreasonably be supposed, that this, and the neighbouring islands, are either shattered remains of a continent, which some have supposed to be necessary in this part of the globe, to preserve an equilibrium of its parts, which were left behind when the rest sunk, by the mining of a subterraneous fire, so as to give a passage to the sea over it; or were torn from rocks, which, from the creation of the world, had been the bed of the sea, and thrown up in heaps, to a height which the waters never reach. One or other of these suppositions will, perhaps, be thought the more probable, as the water does not gradually grow shallow, as the shore is approached, and the islands are almost every where surrounded by reefs, which appear to be rude and broken, as some violent concussion would naturally leave the solid substance of the earth. It may also be remarked, upon this occasion, that the most probable cause of earthquakes seems to be the sudden rushing in of water upon some vast
mass

1769.
July.

mass of subterraneous fire, by the instantaneous rarefaction of which into vapour, the mine is sprung, and various substances, in all stages of vitrification, with shells, and other marine productions, that are now found fossil, and the strata that covered the furnace, are thrown up; while those parts of the land which were supported upon the broken shell give way, and sink into the gulph. With this theory the phænomena of all earthquakes seem to agree; pools of water are frequently left where land has subsided, and various substances, which manifestly appear to have suffered by the action of fire, are thrown up. It is indeed true, that fire cannot subsist without air; but this cannot be urged against there being fire below that part of the earth which forms the bed of the sea; because there may be innumerable fissures by which a communication between those parts and the external air may be kept up, even upon the highest mountains, and at the greatest distance from the sea-shore.

Tuesd. 4.

On the 4th, Mr. Banks employed himself in planting a great quantity of the seeds of water-melons, oranges, lemons, limes, and other plants and trees which he had collected at Rio de Janeiro. For these he prepared ground on each side of the fort, with as many varieties of soil as he could choose; and there is little doubt but that they will succeed. He also gave liberally of these seeds to the Indians, and planted many of them in the woods: some of the melon seeds having been planted soon after our arrival, the natives shewed him several of the plants, which appeared to be in a most flourishing condition, and were continually asking him for more.

We now began to prepare for our departure, by bending the sails and performing other necessary operations on board the ship, our water being already on board, and the provisions examined. In the mean time we had another visit from Oamo, Oberea, and their son and daughter; the Indians expressing their respect by uncovering the upper parts of their body, as they had done before. The daughter, whose name we understood to be TOIMATA, was very desirous to see the fort, but her father would by no means suffer her to come in. Tearee, the son of Waheatua, the sovereign

reign of Tiarrabou, the south-east peninsula, was also with us at this time; and we received intelligence of the landing of another guest, whose company was neither expected nor desired; this was no other than the ingenious gentleman who contrived to steal our quadrant. We were told, that he intended to try his fortune again in the night; but the Indians all offered very zealously to assist us against him, desiring that, for this purpose, they might be permitted to lie in the fort. This had so good an effect, that the thief relinquished his enterprize in despair.

1769.

July.

On the 7th, the carpenters were employed in taking down the gates and pallisadoes of our little fortification, for fire-wood on board the ship; and one of the Indians had dexterity enough to steal the staple and hook upon which the gate turned; he was immediately pursued, and after a chase of six miles he appeared to have been passed, having concealed himself among some rushes in the brook; the rushes were searched, and tho' the thief had escaped, a scraper was found, which had been stolen from the ship some time before; and soon after our old friend Tubourai Tamaide brought us the staple. Friday 7.

On the 8th and 9th, we continued to dismantle our fort, and our friends still flocked about us; some, I believe, sorry at the approach of our departure, and others desirous to make as much of us while we stayed. Saturd. 8.
Sunday 9.

We were in hopes that we should now leave the island, without giving or receiving any other offence; but it unfortunately happened otherwise. Two foreign seamen having been out with my permission, one of them was robbed of his knife, and endeavouring to recover it, probably with circumstances of great provocation, the Indians attacked him, and dangerously wounded him with a stone; they wounded his companions also slightly in the head, and then fled into the mountains. As I should have been sorry to take any farther notice of the affair, I was not displeased that the offenders had escaped, but I was immediately involved in a quarrel which I very much regretted, and which yet it was not possible to avoid.

In

1769.
July.

In the middle of the night between the 8th and 9th, Clement Webb and Samuel Gibson, two of the marines, both young men, went privately from the fort, and in the morning were not to be found. As public notice had been given, that all hands were to go on board on the next day, and that the ship would sail on the morrow of that day or the day following, I began to fear that the absentees intended to stay behind. I knew that I could take no effectual steps to recover them, without endangering the harmony and good-will which at present subsisted among us; and, therefore, determined to wait a day for the chance of their return.

Monday 10. On Monday morning the 10th, the marines, to my great concern, not being returned, an enquiry was made after them of the Indians, who frankly told us, that they did not intend to return, and had taken refuge in the mountains, where it was impossible for our people to find them. They were then requested to assist in the search, and, after some deliberation, two of them undertook to conduct such persons as I should think proper to send after them to the place of their retreat. As they were known to be without arms, I thought two would be sufficient, and accordingly dispatched a petty officer, and the corporal of the marines, with the Indian guides, to fetch them back. As the recovery of these men was a matter of great importance, as I had no time to lose, and as the Indians spoke doubtfully of their return, telling us, that they had each of them taken a wife, and were become inhabitants of the country, it was intimated to several of the Chiefs who were in the fort with their women, among whom were Tubourai Tamaide, Tomio, and Oberea, that they would not be permitted to leave it till our deserters were brought back. This precaution I thought the more necessary, as, by concealing them a few days, they might compel me to go without them; and I had the pleasure to observe, that they received the intimation with very little signs either of fear or discontent; assuring me that my people should be secured and sent back as soon as possible. While this was doing at the fort, I sent Mr. Hicks in the pinnace to fetch Tootahah on board the ship, which he did, without alarming either him or his people.

1769.
July.

people. If the Indian guides proved faithful and in earnest, I had reason to expect the return of my people with the deserters before evening. Being disappointed, my suspicions increased; and night coming on, I thought it was not safe to let the people whom I had detained as hostages continue at the fort, and I therefore ordered Tubourai Tamaide, Oberea, and some others, to be taken on board the ship. This spread a general alarm, and several of them, especially the women, expressed their apprehensions with great emotion and many tears, when they were put into the boat. I went on board with them, and Mr. Banks remained on shore, with some others whom I thought it of less consequence to secure.

About nine o'clock, Webb was brought back by some of the natives, who declared, that Gibson, and the petty officer and corporal would be detained till Tootahah should be set at liberty. The tables were now turned upon me; but I had proceeded too far to retreat. I immediately dispatched Mr. Hicks in the long-boat, with a strong party of men, to rescue the prisoners, and told Tootahah that it behoved him to send some of his people with them, with orders to afford them effectual assistance, and to demand the release of my men in his name, for that I should expect him to answer for the contrary. He readily complied; this party recovered my men without the least opposition, and, about seven o'clock in the morning, returned with them to the ship, Tues. 11. though they had not been able to recover the arms which had been taken from them when they were seized: these, however, were brought on board in less than half an hour, and the Chiefs were immediately set at liberty.

When I questioned the petty officer concerning what had happened on shore, he told me, that neither the natives who went with him, nor those whom they met in their way, would give them any intelligence of the deserters; but, on the contrary, became very troublesome: that as he was returning for further orders to the ship, he and his comrade were suddenly seized by a number of armed men, who having learned that Tootahah was confined, had concealed themselves in a wood for that purpose, and, who having taken them at a disadvantage, forced their weapons out of their hands,

1769.
July.

hands, and declared, that they would detain them till their Chief should be set at liberty. He said, however, that the Indians were not unanimous in this measure; that some were for setting them at liberty, and others for detaining them: that an eager dispute ensued, and that from words they came to blows, but that the party for detaining them at length prevailed: that soon after, Webb and Gibson were brought in by a party of the natives, as prisoners, that they also might be secured as hostages for the Chief; but that it was after some debate resolved to send Webb to inform me of their resolution, to assure me that his companions were safe, and direct me where I might send my answer. Thus it appears that whatever were the disadvantages of seizing the Chiefs, I should never have recovered my men by any other method. When the Chiefs were set on shore from the ship, those at the fort were also set at liberty, and, after staying with Mr. Banks about an hour, they all went away. Upon this occasion, as they had done upon another of the same kind, they expressed their joy by an undeserved liberality, strongly urging us to accept of four hogs. These we absolutely refused as a present, and they as absolutely refusing to be paid for them, the hogs did not change masters. Upon examining the deserters, we found that the account which the Indians had given of them was true: they had strongly attached themselves to two girls, and it was their intention to conceal themselves till the ship had sailed, and take up their residence upon the island. This night every thing was got off from the shore, and every body slept on board.

Among the natives who were most constantly with us, was Tupia, whose name has been often mentioned in this narrative. He had been, as I have before observed, the first minister of Oberea, when she was in the height of her power: he was also the chief Tahowa or Priest of the island, consequently well acquainted with the religion of the country, as well with respect to its ceremonies as principles. He had also great experience and knowledge in navigation, and was particularly acquainted with the number and situation of the neighbouring islands. This man had often expressed a desire to go with us, and on the 12th in the morning,

Wed. 12.

1769.
July.

morning, having with the other natives left us the day before, he came on board, with a boy about thirteen years of age, his servant, and urged us to let him proceed with us on our voyage. To have such a person on board, was certainly desirable for many reasons; by learning his language, and teaching him ours, we should be able to acquire a much better knowledge of the customs, policy, and religion of the people, than our short stay among them could give us; I therefore gladly agreed to receive them on board. As we were prevented from sailing to-day, by having found it necessary to make new stocks to our small and best bower anchors, the old ones having been totally destroyed by the worms, Tupia said, he would go once more on shore, and make a signal for the boat to fetch him off in the evening. He went accordingly, and took with him a miniature picture of Mr. Banks's, to shew his friends, and several little things to give them as parting presents.

After dinner, Mr. Banks being desirous to procure a drawing of the Merai belonging to Tootahah at Eparré, I attended him thither, accompanied by Dr. Solander, in the pinnace. As soon as we landed, many of our friends came to meet us, though some absented themselves in resentment of what had happened the day before. We immediately proceeded to Tootahah's house, where we were joined by Oberca, with several others who had not come out to meet us, and a perfect reconciliation was soon brought about; in consequence of which they promised to visit us early the next day, to take a last farewell of us, as we told them we should certainly set sail in the afternoon. At this place also we found Tupia, who returned with us, and slept this night on board the ship for the first time.

On the next morning, Thursday the 13th of July, Thurs. 13. the ship was very early crowded with our friends, and surrounded by a multitude of canoes, which were filled with the natives of an inferior class. Between eleven and twelve we weighed anchor, and as soon as the ship was under sail, the Indians on board took their leave, and wept, with a decent and silent sorrow, in which there was something very striking and tender: the people in the canoes, on the contrary, seemed to vie

1769.
July.

with each other in the boldness of their lamentations, which we considered rather as affectation than grief. Tupia sustained himself in this scene with a firmness and resolution truly admirable: he wept indeed, but the effort that he made to conceal his tears concurred, with them, to do him honour. He sent his last present, a shirt, by Otheothea, to Potomai, Tootahah's favourite mistress, and then went with Mr. Banks to the mast-head, waving to the canoes as long as they continued in sight.

Thus we took leave of Otaheite, and its inhabitants, after a stay of just three months; for much the greater part of the time we lived together in the most cordial friendship, and a perpetual reciprocation of good offices. The accidental differences which now and then happened, could not be more sincerely regretted on their part than they were on ours: the principal causes were such as necessarily resulted from our situation and circumstances, in conjunction with the infirmities of human nature, from our not being able perfectly to understand each other, and from the disposition of the inhabitants to theft, which we could not at all times bear with or prevent. They had not however, except in one instance, been attended with any fatal consequence; and to that accident were owing the measures that I took to prevent others of the same kind. I hoped, indeed, to have availed myself of the impression which had been made upon them by the lives that had been sacrificed in their contest with the Dolphin, so as that the intercourse between us should have been carried on wholly without bloodshed; and by this hope all my measures were directed during the whole of my continuance at the island, and I sincerely wish, that whoever shall next visit it, may be still more fortunate. Our traffic here was carried on with as much order as in the best regulated market in Europe. It was managed principally by Mr. Banks, who was indefatigable in procuring provision and refreshments while they were to be had; but during the latter part of our time they became scarce, partly by the increased consumption at the fort and ship, and partly by the coming on of the season in which coconuts and bread-fruit fail. All kind of fruit we purchased

chased for beads and nails, but no nails less than forty-penny were current : after a very short time we could never get a pig of more than ten or twelve pounds, for less than a hatchet ; because, tho' these people set a high value upon spike-nails, yet these being an article with which many people in the ship were provided, the women found a much more easy way of procuring them than by bringing down provisions.

1769.
July.

The best articles for traffic here are axes, hatchets, spikes, large nails, looking-glasses, knives, and beads, for some of which every thing that the natives have may be procured. They are indeed fond of fine linen-cloth, both white and printed ; but an axe worth half a crown will fetch more than a piece of cloth worth twenty shillings.

C H A P. IV.

A particular Description of the Island ; its Produce and Inhabitants ; their Dress, Habitations, Food, domestic Life and Amusements.

WE found the longitude of Port-Royal Bay, in this island, as settled by Captain Wallis, who discovered it on the 9th of June 1767, to be within half a degree of the truth. We found Point Venus, the northern extremity of the island, and the eastern point of the bay, to lie in the longitude of $149^{\circ} 30'$, this being the mean result of a great number of observations made upon the spot. The island is surrounded by a reef of coral rock, which forms several excellent bays and harbours, some of which have been particularly described, where there is room and depth of water for any number of the largest ships. Port-Royal Bay, called by the natives Matavi, which is not inferior to any in Otaheite, may easily be known by a very high mountain in the middle of the island, which bears due south from Point Venus. To sail into it, either keep the west point of the reef that lies before Point Venus, close on board, or give it a birth of near half a mile, in order to avoid a small shoal of coral rocks, on which there is but two fathom and a half of water. The best anchoring is on the

1769.
July.

eastern side of the bay, where there is sixteen and fourteen fathom upon an oozy bottom. The shore of the bay is a fine sandy beach, behind which runs a river of fresh water, so that any number of ships may water here without incommoding each other; but the only wood for firing, upon the whole island, is that of fruit trees, which must be purchased of the natives, or all hope of living upon good terms with them given up. There are some harbours to the westward of this bay, which have not been mentioned, but, as they are contiguous to it, a description of them is unnecessary.

The face of the country, except that part of it which borders upon the sea, is very uneven; it rises in ridges that run up into the middle of the island, and there form mountains, which may be seen at the distance of sixty miles: between the foot of these ridges and the sea is a border of low land, furrounding the whole island, except in a few places where the ridges rise directly from the sea; the border of low land is in different parts of different breadths, but no where more than a mile and a half. The soil, except upon the very tops of the ridges, is extremely rich and fertile, watered by a great number of rivulets of excellent water, and covered with fruit-trees of various kinds, some of which are of a stately growth and thick foliage, so as to form one continued wood; and even the tops of the ridges, though in general they are bare, and burned up by the sun, are, in some parts, not without their produce.

The low land that lies between the foot of the ridges and the sea, and some of the vallies, are the only parts of the island that are inhabited, and here it is populous: the houses do not form villages or towns, but are ranged along the whole border at the distance of about fifty yards from each other, with little plantations of plantains, the tree which furnishes them with cloth. The whole island, according to Tupia's account, who certainly knew, could furnish six thousand seven hundred and eighty fighting men, from which the number of inhabitants may easily be computed.

The produce of this island is bread-fruit, coconuts, bananas, of thirteen sorts, the best we had ever eaten;

1769.
July.

eaten ; plantains ; a fruit not unlike an apple, which, when ripe, is very pleasant ; sweet potatoes, yams, cocoas, a kind of Arum ; a fruit known here by the name of Jambu, and reckoned most delicious ; sugar-cane, which the inhabitants eat raw ; a root of the Salop kind, called by the inhabitants Pea ; a plant called Ethee, of which the root only is eaten ; a fruit that grows in a pod, like that of a large kidney-bean, which, when it is roasted, eats very much like a chestnut, by the natives called Ahee ; a tree called Wharra, called in the East-Indies Pandanes, which produces fruit, something like the pine-apple ; a shrub called Nono ; the Morinda, which also produces fruit ; a species of fern, of which the root is eaten, and sometimes the leaves ; and a plant called Theve, of which the root also is eaten ; but the fruits of the Nono, the fern, and the Theve, are only eaten by the inferior people, and in times of scarcity. All these, which serve the inhabitants for food, the earth produces spontaneously, or with so little culture that they seem to be exempted from the first general curse, that “ man should eat his bread in “ the sweat of his brow.” They have also the Chinese paper mulberry, *morus papyrifera*, which they call Aouta ; a tree resembling the wild fig-tree of the West Indies ; another species of fig, which they call Matte ; the *cordia sebestina orientalis*, which they call Etou ; a kind of *Cyprus* grass, which they call Moo ; a species of *tournefortia*, which they call Taheinoo ; another of the *convolvulus poluce*, which they call Eurhe ; the *solanum centifolium*, which they call Ebooa ; the *calophyllum mophylum*, which they call Tamannu ; the *hibiscus tiliaceus*, called Poerou, a frutescent nettle ; the *urtica argentea*, called Erowa ; with many other plants, which cannot here be particularly mentioned ; those that have been named already, will be referred to in the subsequent part of this work.

They have no European fruit, garden-stuff, pulse, or legumes, nor grain of any kind.

Of tame animals they have only hogs, dogs, and poultry ; neither is there a wild animal in the island, except ducks, pigeons, paroquets, with a few other birds, and rats, there being no other quadruped, nor

1769.
July.

any serpent. But the sea supplies them with great variety of most excellent fish, to eat which is their chief luxury, and to catch it their principal labour.

Persons.

As to the people, they are of the largest size of Europeans. The men are tall, strong, well-limbed, and finely shaped. The tallest that we saw was a man upon a neighbouring island, called HUAHEINE, who measured six feet three inches and an half. The women of the superior rank are also in general above our middle stature, but those of the inferior class are rather below it, and some of them are very small. This defect in size probably proceeds from their early commerce with men, the only thing in which they differ from their superiors, that could possibly affect their growth.

Their natural complexion is that kind of clear olive, or Brunette, which many people in Europe prefer to the finest white and red. In those that are exposed to the wind and sun, it is considerably deepened, but in others that live under shelter, especially the superior class of women, it continues of its native hue, and the skin is most delicately smooth and soft; they have no tint in their cheeks, which we distinguish by the name of colour. The shape of the face is comely, the cheek bones are not high, neither are the eyes hollow, nor the brow prominent; the only feature that does not correspond with our ideas of beauty is the nose, which, in general, is somewhat flat; but their eyes, especially those of the women, are full of expression, sometimes sparkling with fire, and sometimes melting with softness; their teeth also are, almost without exception, most beautifully even and white, and their breath perfectly without taint.

The hair is almost universally black, and rather coarse; the men have beards, which they wear in many fashions, always, however, plucking out great part of them, and keeping the rest perfectly clean and neat. Both sexes also eradicate every hair from under their arms, and accused us of great uncleanness for not doing the same. In their motions there is at once vigour and ease; their walk is graceful, their deportment liberal, and their behaviour to strangers and to each other affable and courteous. In their dispositions also, they seemed

seemed to be brave, open, and candid, without either suspicion or treachery, cruelty or revenge ; so that we placed the same confidence in them as in our best friends ; many of us, particularly Mr. Banks, sleeping frequently in their houses in the woods, without a companion, and consequently wholly in their power. They were, however, all thieves ; and when that is allowed, they need not much fear a competition with the people of any other nation upon earth. During our stay in this island we saw about five or six persons, like one that was met by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander on the 24th of April, in their walk to the eastward, whose skins were of a dead white, like the nose of a white horse ; with white hair, beard, brows, and eye-lashes ; red, tender eyes ; a short sight, and scurfy skins, covered with a kind of white down ; but we found that no two of these belonged to the same family, and therefore concluded, that they were not a species, but unhappy individuals, rendered anomalous by disease.

It is a custom in most countries where the inhabitants have long hair, for the men to cut it short, and the women to pride themselves in its length. Here, however, the contrary custom prevails ; the women always cut it short round their ears, and the men, except the fishers, who are almost continually in the water, suffer it to flow in large waves over their shoulders, or tie it up in a bunch on the top of their heads.

They have a custom also of anointing their heads with what they call Monoe, an oil expressed from the cocoa-nut, in which some sweet herbs or flowers have been infused : as the oil is generally rancid, the smell is at first very disagreeable to an European ; and as they live in a hot country, and have no such thing as a comb, they are not able to keep their heads free from lice, which the children and common people sometimes pick out and eat ; a hateful custom, wholly different from their manners in every other particular, for they are delicate and cleanly, almost without example, and those to whom we distributed combs soon delivered themselves from vermin, with a diligence which shewed that they were not more odious to us than to them.

1769.

They have a custom of staining their bodies, nearly in the same manner as is practised in many other parts of the world, which they call Tattowing. They prick the skin, so as just not to fetch blood, with a small instrument, something in the form of a hoe; that part which answers to the blade is made of a bone or shell, scraped very thin, and is from a quarter of an inch to an inch and a half wide; the edge is cut into sharp teeth or points, from the number of three to twenty, according to its size: when this is to be used, they dip the teeth into a mixture of a kind of lamp-black, formed of the smoke that rises from an oily nut, which they burn instead of candles, and water: the teeth, thus prepared, are placed upon the skin, and the handle to which they are fastened being struck, by quick smart blows, with a stick fitted to the purpose, they pierce it, and at the same time carry into the puncture the black composition, which leaves an indelible stain. The operation is painful, and it is some days before the wounds are healed. It is performed upon the youth of both sexes, when they are about twelve or fourteen years of age, on several parts of the body, and in various figures, according to the fancy of the parent, or perhaps the rank of the party. The women are generally marked with this stain, in the form of a Z, on every joint of their fingers and toes, and frequently round the outside of their feet; the men are also marked with the same figure, and both men and women have squares, circles, crescents, and ill-designed representations of men, birds, or dogs, and various other devices, impressed upon their legs and arms, some of which, we were told, had significations, though we could never learn what they were. But the part on which these ornaments are lavished with the greatest profusion, is the breech; this, in both sexes, is covered with a deep black, above which, arches are drawn one over another as high as the short ribs. They are often a quarter of an inch broad, and the edges are not straight lines, but indented. These arches are their pride, and are shown both by men and women with a mixture of ostentation and pleasure; whether as an ornament, or a proof of their fortitude and resolution in bearing pain,
we

we could not determine. The face in general is left unmarked; for we saw but one instance to the contrary. Some old men had the greatest part of their bodies covered with large patches of black, deeply indented at the edges, like a rude imitation of flames; but we were told, that they came from a low island called NOOVOORA, and were not natives of Otaheite.

1769.

Mr. Banks saw the operation of Tattowing performed upon the backside of a girl about thirteen years old. The instrument used upon this occasion had thirty teeth, and every stroke, of which at least an hundred were made in a minute, drew an ichor, or serum, a little tinged with blood. The girl bore it with a most stoical resolution for about a quarter of an hour; but the pain of so many hundred punctures as she had received in that time then became intolerable: she first complained in murmurs, then wept, and at last burst into loud lamentations, earnestly imploring the operator to desist: he was, however, inexorable, and when she began to struggle, she was held down by two women, who sometimes soothed, and sometimes chid her; and now and then, when she was most unruly, gave her a smart blow. Mr. Banks stayed in a neighbouring house an hour, and the operation was not over when he went away; yet it was performed but upon one side, the other having been done some time before; and the arches upon the loins, in which they most pride themselves, and which give more pain than all the rest, were still to be done.

It is strange that these people should value themselves upon what is no distinction; for I never saw a native of this island, either man or woman, in a state of maturity, in whom these marks were wanting: possibly they may have their rise in superstition, especially as they produce no visible advantage, and are not made without great pain; but though we enquired of many hundred, we could never get any account of the matter.

Their cloathing consists of cloth or matting of different kinds, which will be described among their other manufactures. Their cloth, which will not bear wetting, they wear in dry weather, and the matting when it

1769.

it rains : they are put on in many different ways, just as their fancy leads them ; for in their garments nothing is cut into shape, nor any two pieces sewed together. The dress of the better sort of women consists of three or four pieces ; one piece, about two yards wide and eleven yards long, they wrap several times round their waist, so as to hang down like a petticoat as low as the middle of the leg, and this they call Parou ; two or three other pieces, about two yards and an half long and one wide, each having a hole cut in the middle, they place one upon another, and then putting the head through the holes, they bring the long ends down before and behind, the others remain open at the sides, and give liberty to the arms : this, which they call the Tebuta, is gathered round the waist, and confined with a girdle or sash of thinner cloth, which is long enough to go many times round them, and exactly resembles the garments worn by the inhabitants of Peru and Chili, which the Spaniards call Poncho. The dress of the men is the same, except that instead of suffering the cloth that is wound about the hips to hang down like a petticoat, they bring it between their legs, so as to have some resemblance to breeches, and it is then called Maro. This is the dress of all ranks of people, and being universally the same as to form, the gentlemen and ladies distinguish themselves from the lower people by the quantity ; some of them will wrap round them several pieces of cloth, eight or ten yards long, and two or three broad ; and some throw a large piece loosely over their shoulders, in the manner of a cloak, or perhaps two pieces, if they are very great personages, and are desirous to appear in state. The inferior sort, who have only a small allowance of cloth from the tribes or families to which they belong, are obliged to be more thinly clad. In the heat of the day they appear almost naked, the women having only a scanty petticoat, and the men nothing but the sash that is passed between their legs and fastened round the waist. As finery is always troublesome, and particularly in a hot country, where it consists in putting one covering upon another, the women of rank always uncover themselves as low as the waist in the evening, throwing off all that they wear on the
upper.

upper part of the body, with the same negligence and ease as our ladies would lay by a cardinal or double handkerchief. And the Chiefs, even when they visited us, though they had as much cloth round their middle as would clothe a dozen people, had frequently the rest of the body quite naked.

Upon their legs and feet they wear no covering; but they shade their faces from the sun with little bonnets, either of matting or of cocoa-nut leaves, which they make occasionally in a few minutes. This, however, is not all their head-dress; the women sometimes wear little turbans, and sometimes a dress which they value much more, and which, indeed, is much more becoming, called Tomou; the Tomou consists of human hair, plaited in threads, scarcely thicker than sewing silk. Mr. Banks has pieces of it above a mile in length, without a knot. These they wind round the head in such a manner as produces a very pretty effect, and in a very great quantity; for I have seen five or six such pieces wound about the head of one woman: among these threads they stick flowers of various kinds, particularly the cape-jessamine, of which they have great plenty, as it is always planted near their houses. The men sometimes stick the tail feather of the Topic-bird upright in their hair, which, as I have observed before, is often tied in a bunch upon the top of their heads: sometimes they wear a kind of whimsical garland, made of flowers of various kinds, stuck into a piece of the rind of plantain; or of scarlet peas, stuck with gum upon a piece of wood: and sometimes they wear a kind of wig, made of the hair of men or dogs, or perhaps of cocoa-nut strings, woven upon one thread, which is tied under their hair, so that these artificial honours of their head may hang down behind. Their personal ornaments, besides flowers, are few; both sexes wear ear-rings, but they are placed only on one side: when we came they consisted of small pieces of shell, stone, berries, red peas, or some small pearls, three in a string; but our beads very soon supplanted them all.

The children go quite naked; the girls till they are three or four years old, and the boys till they are six or seven.

The

1769.

Houses.

The houses, or rather dwellings, of these people have been occasionally mentioned before: they are all built in the wood, between the sea and the mountains, and no more ground is cleared for each house, than just sufficient to prevent the dropping of the branches from rotting the thatch with which they are covered; from the house, therefore, the inhabitant steps immediately under the shade, which is the most delightful that can be imagined. It consists of groves of bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, without underwood, which are intersected, in all directions, by the paths that lead from one house to the other. Nothing can be more grateful than this shade in so warm a climate, nor any thing more beautiful than these walks. As there is no underwood, the shade cools without impeding the air; and the houses, having no walls, receive the gale from whatever point it blows. I shall now give a particular description of a house of a middling size, from which, as the structure is universally the same, a perfect idea may be formed both of those that are bigger, and those that are less.

The ground which it covers is an oblong square, four and twenty feet long, and eleven wide; over this a roof is raised, upon three rows of pillars or posts, parallel to each other, one on each side, and the other in the middle. This roof consists of two flat sides inclining to each other, and terminating in a ridge, exactly like the roofs of our thatched houses in England. The utmost height within is about nine feet, and the eaves on each side reach to within about three feet and an half of the ground: below this, and through the whole height at each end, it is open, no part of it being inclosed with a wall. The roof is thatched with palm-leaves, and the floor is covered, some inches deep, with soft hay; over this are laid mats, so that the whole is one cushion, upon which they sit in the day, and sleep in the night. In some houses, however, there is one stool, which is wholly appropriated to the master of the family; besides this, they have no furniture, except a few little blocks of wood, the upper side of which is hollowed into a curve, and which serve them for pillows.

The

The house is indeed principally used as a dormitory ; for, except it rains, they eat in the open air, under the shade of the next tree. The clothes that they wear in the day, serve them for covering in the night: the floor is the common bed of the whole household, and is not divided by any partition. The master of the house and his wife sleep in the middle, next to them the married people, next to them the unmarried women, and next to them, at a little distance, the unmarried men ; the servants, or Toutous, as they are called, sleep in the open air, except it rains, and in that case they come just within the shed.

There are, however, houses of another kind, belonging to the Chiefs, in which there is some degree of privacy. These are much smaller, and so constructed as to be carried about in their canoes from place to place, and set up occasionally, like a tent ; they are inclosed on the sides with cocoa-nut leaves, but not so close as to exclude the air, and the Chief and his wife sleep in them alone.

There are houses also of a much larger size, not built either for the accommodation of a single Chief, or a single family ; but as common receptacles for all the people of a district. Some of them are two hundred feet long, thirty broad, and, under the ridge, twenty feet high ; these are built and maintained at the common expence of the district, for the accommodation of which they are intended ; and have on one side of them a large area, inclosed with low pallisades.

These houses, like those of separate families, have no walls. Privacy, indeed, is little wanted among people who have not even the idea of indecency, and who gratify every appetite and passion before witnesses, with no more sense of impropriety than we feel when we satisfy our hunger at a social board with our family or friends. Those who have no idea of indecency with respect to actions, can have none with respect to words ; it is, therefore, scarcely necessary to observe, that, in the conversation of these people, that which is the principal source of their pleasure, is always the principal topic and that every thing is mentioned without any restraint or emotion, and in the most direct terms, by both sexes.

Of

1769.

Food.

Of the food eaten here the greater part is vegetable. Here are no tame animals except hogs, dogs, and poultry, as I have observed before, and these are by no means plenty. When a Chief kills a hog, it is almost equally divided among his dependants; and as they are very numerous, the share of each individual at these feasts, which are not frequent, must necessarily be small. Dogs and fowls fall somewhat more frequently to the share of the common people. I cannot much commend the flavour of their fowls; but we all agreed, that a South-Sea dog was little inferior to an English lamb; their excellence is probably owing to their being kept up, and fed wholly upon vegetables. The sea affords them a great variety of fish. The smaller fish, when they catch any, are generally eaten raw, as we eat oysters; and nothing that the sea produces comes amiss to them: they are fond of lobsters, crabs, and other shell fish, which are found upon the coast; and they will eat not only sea-insects, but what the seamen call Blubbers, tho' some of them are so tough, that they are obliged to suffer them to become putrid before they can be chewed. Of the many vegetables that have been mentioned already as serving them for food, the principal is the bread-fruit, to procure which costs them no trouble or labour but climbing a tree: the tree which produces it, does not indeed shoot up spontaneously; but if a man plants ten of them in his life-time, which he may do in about an hour, he will as completely fulfil his duty to his own and future generations, as the native of our less temperate climate can do by ploughing in the cold of winter, and reaping in the summer's heat, as often as these seasons return; even if, after he has procured bread for his present household, he should convert a surplus into money, and lay it up for his children.

It is true, indeed, that the bread-fruit is not always in season; but cocoa-nuts, bananas, plantains, and a great variety of other fruits, supply the deficiency.

It may well be supposed that cookery is but little studied by these people as an art; and, indeed, they have but two ways of applying fire to dress their food, broiling and baking; the operation of broiling is so simple that it requires no description, and their baking has

has been described already, (page 10), in the account of an entertainment prepared for us by Tupia. Hogs, and large fish, are extremely well dressed in the same manner; and, in our opinion, were more juicy and more equally done than by any art of cookery now practised in Europe. Bread-fruit is also cooked in an oven of the same kind, which renders it soft, and something like a boiled potatoe: not quite so farinaceous as a good one, but more so than those of the middling sort.

1769.

Of the bread-fruit they also make three dishes, by putting either water or the milk of the cocoa-nut to it, then beating it to a paste with a stone pestle, and afterwards mixing it with ripe plantains, bananas, or the sour paste which they call Mahie.

The mahie, which has been mentioned as a succedaneum for ripe bread-fruit, before the season for gathering a fresh crop comes on, is thus made:—The fruit is gathered just before it is perfectly ripe, and being laid in heaps, is closely covered with leaves; in this state it undergoes a fermentation, and becomes disagreeably sweet: the core is then taken out entire, which is done by gently pulling the stalk, and the rest of the fruit is thrown into a hole which is dug for that purpose, generally in the houses, and neatly lined in the bottom and sides with grass; the whole is then covered with leaves, and heavy stones laid upon them: in this state it undergoes a second fermentation, and becomes sour, after which it will suffer no change for many months: it is taken out of the hole as it is wanted for use, and being made into balls, it is wrapped up in leaves and baked; after it is dressed, it will keep five or six weeks. It is eaten both cold and hot, and the natives seldom make a meal without it, tho' to us the taste was as disagreeable as that of a pickled olive generally is the first time it is eaten.

As the making of this mahie depends, like brewing, upon fermentation, so, like brewing, it sometimes fails, without their being able to ascertain the cause; it is very natural, therefore, that the making it should be connected with superstitious notions and ceremonies. It generally falls to the lot of the old women, who will suffer no creature to touch any thing belonging to it, but

1769.

but those whom they employ as assistants, nor even to go into that part of the house where the operation is carrying on. Mr. Banks happened to spoil a large quantity of it only by inadvertently touching a leaf which lay upon it. The old woman, who then presided over these mysteries, told him, that the process would fail; and immediately uncovered the hole in a fit of vexation and despair. Mr. Banks regretted the mischief he had done, but was somewhat consoled by the opportunity which it gave him of examining the preparation, which perhaps, but for such an accident, would never have offered.

Such is their food, to which salt-water is the universal sauce, no meal being eaten without it: those who live near the sea have it fetched as it is wanted; those who live at some distance keep it in large bamboos, which are set up in their houses, for use. Salt-water, however, is not their only sauce; they make another of the kernels of cocoa-nuts, which being fermented till they dissolve into a paste somewhat resembling butter, are beaten up with salt-water. The flavour of this is very strong, and was, when we first tasted it, exceedingly nauseous; a little use, however, reconciled some of us to it so much, that they preferred it to our own sauces, especially with fish. The natives seemed to consider it as a dainty, and do not use it at their common meals; possibly, because they think it ill management to use cocoa-nuts so lavishly, or perhaps, when we were at the island, they were scarcely ripe enough for the purpose.

For drink, they have in general nothing but water, or the juice of the cocoa-nut; the art of producing liquors that intoxicate, by fermentation, being happily unknown among them; neither have they any narcotic which they chew, as the natives of some other countries do opium, beetle-root, and tobacco. Some of them drank freely of our liquors, and in a few instances became very drunk; but the persons to whom this happened were so far from desiring to repeat the debauch, that they would never touch any of our liquors afterwards. We were however informed, that they became drunk by drinking a juice that is expressed from the leaves of a plant which they call Ava Ava. This plant

plant was not in season when we were there, so that we saw no instances of its effects; and as they considered drunkenness as a disgrace, they probably would have concealed from us any instances which might have happened during our stay. This vice is almost peculiar to the Chiefs, and considerable persons, who vie with each other in drinking the greatest number of draughts, each draught being about a pint. They keep this intoxicating juice with great care from their women.

Table they have none; but their apparatus for eating is set out with great neatness, though the articles are too simple and too few to allow any thing for show, and they commonly eat alone; but when a stranger happens to visit them, he sometimes makes a second in their mess. Of the meal of one of their principal people I shall give a particular description.

He sits down under the shade of the next tree, or on the shady side of his house, and a large quantity of leaves, either of the bread-fruit or banana, are neatly spread before him upon the ground, as a table-cloth; a basket is then set by him that contains his provision, which, if fish or flesh, is ready dressed, and wrapped up in leaves, and two cocoa-nut shells, one full of salt and water, and the other of fresh: his attendants, which are not few, seat themselves round him, and when all is ready, he begins by washing his hands and his mouth thoroughly with the fresh water, and this he repeats almost continually throughout the whole meal; he then takes part of his provision out of the basket, which generally consists of a small fish or two, two or three bread-fruits, fourteen or fifteen ripe bananas, or six or seven apples: he first takes half a bread-fruit, peels off the rind, and takes out the core with his nails; of this he puts as much into his mouth as it can hold, and, while he chews it, takes the fish out of the leaves, and breaks one of them into the salt water, placing the other, and what remains of the bread-fruit, upon the leaves that have been spread before him. When this is done, he takes up a small piece of the fish that has been broken into the salt water, with all the fingers of one hand, and sucks it into his mouth, so as to get with it as much of the salt water

1769.

as possible ; in the same manner he takes the rest by different morsels, and between each, at least very frequently, takes a small sup of the salt water, either out of the cocoa-nut shell, or the palm of his hand ; in the mean time one of his attendants has prepared a young cocoa-nut, by peeling off the outer rind with his teeth, an operation which to an European appears very surprising ; but it depends so much upon slight, that many of us were able to do it before we left the island, and some that could scarcely crack a filbert : the master, when he chooses to drink, takes the cocoa-nut, thus prepared, and boring a hole through the shell with his finger, or breaking it with a stone, he sucks out the liquor. When he has eaten his bread-fruit and fish, he begins with his plantains, one of which makes but a mouthful, though it be as big as a black pudding ; if, instead of plantains he has apples, he never tastes them till they have been pared ; to do this, a shell is picked up from the ground, where they are always in plenty, and tossed to him by an attendant ; he immediately begins to cut or scrape off the rind, but so awkwardly, that great part of the fruit is wasted. If, instead of fish, he has flesh, he must have some succedaneum for a knife to divide it ; and for this purpose a piece of bamboo is tossed to him, of which he makes the necessary implement, by splitting it transversely with his nail. While all this has been doing, some of his attendants have been employed in beating bread-fruit with a stone pestle upon a block of wood ; by being beaten in this manner, and sprinkled from time to time with water, it is reduced to the consistence of a soft paste, and is then put into a vessel somewhat like a butcher's tray, and either made up alone, or mixed with banana or mahie, according to the taste of the master, by pouring water upon it by degrees, and squeezing it often through the hand ; under this operation it acquires the consistence of a thick custard, and a large cocoa-nut shell full of it being set before him, he sips it as we should do a jelly, if we had no spoon to take it from the glass : the meal is then finished, by again washing his hands and his mouth. After which the cocoa-nut
shells

shells are cleaned, and every thing that is left is replaced in the basket.

1769.

The quantity of food which these people eat at a meal is prodigious ; I have seen one man devour two or three fishes as big as a perch ; three bread-fruits, each bigger than two fists ; fourteen or fifteen plantains, or bananas, each of them six or seven inches long, and four or five round ; and near a quart of the pounded bread-fruit, which is as substantial as the thickest unbaked custard. This is so extraordinary that I scarcely expect to be believed ; and I would not have related it upon my own single testimony, but Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and most of the other gentlemen, have had ocular demonstration of its truth, and know that I mention them upon the occasion.

It is very wonderful that these people, who are remarkably fond of society, and particularly that of their women, should exclude its pleasures from the table, where, among all other nations, whether civil or savage, they have been principally enjoyed. How a meal, which every where else brings families and friends together, came to separate them here, we often enquired, but could never learn. They eat alone, they said, because it was right ; but why it was right to eat alone, they never attempted to tell us ; such, however, was the force of habit, that they expressed the strongest dislike, and even disgust, at our eating in society, especially with our women, and of the same viâuals. At first, we thought this strange singularity arose from some superstitious opinion ; but they constantly affirmed the contrary. We observed also some caprices in the custom, for which we could as little account as for the custom itself. We could never prevail with any of the women to partake of the viâuals at our table, when we were dining in company ; yet they would go, five or six together, into the servants apartments, and there eat very heartily of whatever they could find, of which I have before given a particular instance ; nor were they in the least disconcerted if we came in while they were doing it. When any of us have been alone with a woman, she has sometimes eaten in our company ; but then she has expressed the greatest unwillingness that it should be

1769. known, and always extorted the strongest promises of secrecy.

Among themselves, even two brothers and two sisters have each their separate baskets, with provision and the apparatus of their meal. When they first visited us at our tents, each brought his basket with him; and when we sat down to table, they would go out, sit down upon the ground, at two or three yards distance from each other, and, turning their faces different ways, take their repast without interchanging a single word.

The women not only abstain from eating with the men, and of the same victuals, but even have their victuals separately prepared by boys kept for that purpose, who deposit it in a separate shed, and attend them with it at their meals.

But though they would not eat with us or with each other, they have often asked us to eat with them, when we have visited those with whom we were particularly acquainted at their houses; and we have often, upon such occasions, eaten out of the same basket, and drunk out of the same cup. The elder women, however, always appeared to be offended at this liberty; and if we happened to touch their victuals, or even the basket that contained it, would throw it away.

Domestic
life, and
amuse-
ments.

After meals, and in the heat of the day, the middle-aged people of the better sort generally sleep; they are indeed extremely indolent, and sleeping and eating is almost all that they do. Those that are older are less drowsy, and the boys and girls are kept awake by the natural activity and sprightliness of their age.

Their amusements have occasionally been mentioned, in my account of the incidents that happened during our residence in this island, particularly music, dancing, wrestling, and shooting with the bow; they also sometimes vie with each other in throwing a lance. As shooting is not at a mark, but for a distance, throwing the lance is not for distance, but at a mark; the weapon is about nine feet long, the mark is the bole of a plantain, and the distance about twenty yards.

Their only musical instruments are flutes and drums; the flutes are made of a hollow bamboo, about a foot long, and, as has been observed before, have only two stops,

stops, and consequently but four notes, out of which they seem hitherto to have formed but one tune; to these stops they apply the fore finger of the left hand, and the middle finger of the right.

1769.

The drum is made of a hollow block of wood, of a cylindrical form, solid at one end, and covered at the other with shark's skin; these they beat, not with sticks, but their hands, and they know how to tune two drums of different notes into concord. They have also an expedient to bring the flutes that play together into unison, which is to roll up a leaf so as to slip over the end of the shortest, like our sliding tubes for telescopes, which they move up or down till the purpose is answered, of which they seem to judge by their ear with great nicety.

To these instruments they sing; and, as I have observed before, their songs are often extempore: they call every two verses, or couplet a song, Pehay; they are generally, though not always, in rhyme; and when pronounced by the natives, we could discover that they were metre. Mr. Banks took great pains to write down some of them, which were made upon our arrival, as nearly as he could express their sounds by combinations of our letters; but when we read them, not having their accent, we could scarcely make them either metre or rhyme. The reader will easily perceive that they are of very different structure.

Tede pahai de parow-a
Ha maru no mina.

E pahah Tayo malama tai ya
No Tabane tonatou whannomi ya.

E Turai eattu terara patee whennua toai
Ino o maio Pretane to wheunuaia no Tute.

Of these verses our knowledge of the language is too imperfect to attempt a translation. They frequently amuse themselves by singing such couplets as these when they are alone, or with their families, especially after it is dark; for though they need no fires, they are not without the comfort of artificial light between

1769.

sunset and bed-time. Their candles are made of the kernels of an oily nut, which they stick over one another upon a skewer, that is thrust through the middle of them; the upper one being lighted burns down to the second, at the same time consuming that part of the skewer which goes through it; the second taking fire burns in the same manner down to the third, and so of the rest: some of these candles will burn a considerable time, and they give a very tolerable light. They do not often sit up above an hour after it is dark; but when they have strangers who sleep in the house, they generally keep a light burning all night, possibly as a check upon such of the women as they wish not to honour them with their favours.

Of their itinerary concerts, I need add nothing to what has been already said; especially as I shall have occasion, more particularly, to mention them, when I relate our adventures upon another island.

In other countries, the girls and unmarried women are supposed to be wholly ignorant of what others, upon some occasions, may appear to know; and their conduct and conversation are consequently restrained within narrower bounds, and kept at a more remote distance from whatever relates to a connection with the other sex; but here it is just the contrary. Among other diversions, there is a dance called Timorodee, which is performed by young girls, whenever eight or ten of them can be collected together, consisting of motions and gestures beyond imagination wanton, in the practice of which they are brought up from their earliest childhood, accompanied by words, which, if it were possible, would more explicitly convey the same ideas. In these dances, they keep time with an exactness which is scarcely excelled by the best performers upon the stages of Europe. But the practice which is allowed to the virgin, is prohibited to the woman from the moment that she has put these hopeful lessons in practice, and realized the symbols of the dance.

It cannot be supposed that, among these people, chastity is held in much estimation. It might be expected that sisters and daughters would be offered to strangers, either as a courtesy, or for reward; and that breaches of conjugal fidelity, even in the wife, should

should not be otherwise punished than by a few hard words, or perhaps a slight beating, as indeed is the case : but there is a scale in dissolute sensuality, which these people have ascended, wholly unknown to every other nation, whose manners have been recorded from the beginning of the world to the present hour, and which no imagination could possibly conceive.

A very considerable number of the principal people of Otaheite, of both sexes, have formed themselves into a society, in which every woman is common to every man : thus securing a perpetual variety, as often as their inclination prompts them to seek it, which is so frequent, that the same man and woman seldom cohabit together more than two or three days.

These societies are distinguished by the name of Arreoy ; and the members have meetings, at which no other is present, where the men amuse themselves by wrestling, and the women, notwithstanding their occasional connection with different men, dance the Timorodee in all its latitude, as an incitement to desires, which, it is said, are frequently gratified upon the spot. This, however, is comparatively nothing. If any of the women happen to be with child, which in this manner of life happens less frequently than if they were to cohabit only with one man, the poor infant is smothered the moment it is born, that it may be no incumbrance to the father, nor interrupt the mother in the pleasures of her diabolical prostitution. It sometimes indeed happens, that the passion which prompts a woman to enter into this society, is surmounted when she becomes a mother, by that instinctive affection which Nature has given to all creatures for the preservation of their offspring ; but even in this case, she is not permitted to spare the life of her infant, except she can find a man who will patronise it as his child ; if this can be done, the murder is prevented ; but both the man and woman, being deemed by this act to have appropriated each other, are ejected from the community, and forfeit all claim to the privileges and pleasures of Arreoy for the future ; the woman from that time being distinguished by the term Whannownow, “ bearer of children,” which is here a term of reproach ; though none can be more

1769.

honourable in the estimation of wisdom and humanity, of right reason, and every passion that distinguishes the man from the brute.

It is not fit that a practice so horrid and so strange should be imputed to human beings upon slight evidence, but I have such as abundantly justifies me in the account I have given. The people themselves are so far from concealing their connection with such a society as a disgrace, that they boast of it as a privilege; and both myself and Mr. Banks, when particular persons have been pointed out to us as members of the Arreoy, have questioned them about it, and received the account that has been here given from their own lips. They have acknowledged, that they had long been of this accursed society, that they belonged to it at that time, and that several of their children had been put to death.

But I must not conclude my account of the domestic life of these people, without mentioning their personal cleanliness. If that which lessens the good of life, and increases the evil, is vice, surely cleanliness is a virtue; the want of it tends to destroy both beauty and health, and mingles disgust with our best pleasures. The natives of Otaheite, both men and women, constantly wash their whole bodies in running water three times every day; once as soon as they rise in the morning, once at noon, and again before they sleep at night, whether the sea or river is near them or at a distance. I have already observed, that they wash not only the mouth, but the hands at their meals, almost between every morsel; and their clothes, as well as their persons, are kept without spot or stain; so that in a large company of these people, nothing is suffered but heat, which perhaps is more than can be said of the politest assembly in Europe.

C H A P. V.

Of the Manufacturers, Boats, and Navigation of Otabeite.

IF necessity is the mother of invention, it cannot be supposed to have been much exerted where the liberality of Nature has rendered the diligence of Art almost superfluous; yet there are many instances both of ingenuity and labour among these people, which, considering the want of metal for tools, do honour to both. 1769.

Their principal manufacture is their cloth, in the making and dying of which, I think, there are some particulars which may instruct even the artificers of Great Britain, and for that reason my description will be more minute. Manufactures.

Their cloth is of three kinds, and it is made of the bark of three different trees, the Chinese paper mulberry, the bread-fruit tree, and the tree which resembles the wild fig-tree of the West Indies.

The finest and whitest is made of the paper mulberry, Aouta; this is worn chiefly by the principal people, and when it is dyed red takes a better colour. A second sort, inferior in whiteness and softness, is made of the bread-fruit tree, Ooroo, and worn chiefly by the inferior people; and a third of the tree that resembles the fig, which is coarse and harsh, and of the colour of the darkest brown paper: this, though it is less pleasing both to the eye and the touch, is the most valuable, because it resists water, which the other two sorts will not. Of this, which is the most rare as well as the most useful, the greater part is perfumed, and worn by the Chiefs as a morning dress.

All these trees are propagated with great care, particularly the mulberry, which covers the largest part of the cultivated land, and is not fit for use after two or three years growth, when it is about six or eight feet high, and somewhat thicker than a man's thumb; its excellence is to be thin, straight, tall, and without branches; the lower leaves, therefore are carefully plucked

1769.

plucked off, with their germs, as often as there is any appearance of their producing a branch.

But though the cloth made of these three trees is different, it is all manufactured in the same manner; I shall therefore describe the process only in the fine sort, that is made of the mulberry. When the trees are of a proper size, they are drawn up, and stripped of their branches, after which the roots and tops are cut off; the bark of these rods being then slit up longitudinally, is easily drawn off, and, when a proper quantity has been procured, it is carried down to some running water, in which it is deposited to soak, and secured from floating away by heavy stones; when it is supposed to be sufficiently softened, the women servants go down to the brook, and stripping themselves sit down in the water, to separate the inner bark from the green part on the outside: to do this, they place the under side upon a flat smooth board, and with the shell which our dealers call Tyger's Tongue, *Tellina gargadia*, scrape it very carefully, dipping it continually in the water, till nothing remains but the fine fibres of the inner coat. Being thus prepared in the afternoon, they are spread out upon plantain leaves in the evening; and in this part of the work there appears to be some difficulty, as the mistress of the family always superintends the doing of it; they are placed in lengths of about eleven or twelve yards, one by the side of another, till they are about a foot broad, and two or three layers are also laid one upon the other: care is taken that the cloth shall be in all parts of an equal thickness, so that if the bark happens to be thinner in any one particular part of one layer than the rest, a piece that is somewhat thicker is picked out to be laid over it in the next. In this state it remains till the morning, when great part of the water, which it contained when it was laid out, is either drained off or evaporated, and the several fibres adhere together, so as that the whole may be raised from the ground in one piece.

It is then taken away, and laid upon the smooth side of a long piece of wood, prepared for the purpose, and beaten by the women servants, with instruments

ments about a foot long and three inches thick, made of a hard wood which they call Etoa. The shape of this instrument is not unlike a square razor strap, only that the handle is longer, and each of its four sides or faces is marked, lengthways, with small grooves, or furrows, of different degrees of fineness; those on one side being of a width and depth sufficient to receive a small packthread, and the others finer, in a regular gradation, so that the last are not more than equal to sewing silk.

They beat it first with the coarsest side of this mallet, keeping time like our smiths; it spreads very fast under the strokes, chiefly, however, in the breadth, and the grooves in the mallet mark it with the appearance of threads; it is successively beaten with the other sides, last with the finest, and is then fit for use. Sometimes, however, it is made still thinner, by beating it with the finest side of the mallet, after it has been several times doubled; it is then called Hoboo, and is almost as thin as a muslin; it becomes very white by being bleached in the air, but is made still whiter and softer by being washed, and beaten again after it has been worn.

Of this cloth there are several sorts, of different degrees of fineness, in proportion as it is more or less beaten without being doubled; the other cloth also differs in proportion as it is beaten; but they differ from each other in consequence of the different materials of which they are made. The bark of the breadfruit is not taken till the trees are considerably longer and thicker than those of the fig; the process afterwards is the same.

When cloth is to be washed after it has been worn, it is taken down to the brook, and left to soak, being kept fast to the bottom, as at first, by a stone; it is then gently wrung, or squeezed, and sometimes several pieces of it are laid one upon another, and beaten together with the coarsest side of the mallet, and they are then equal in thickness to broad-cloth, and much more soft and agreeable to the touch, after they have been a little while in use, though when they come immediately from the mallet, they feel as if they had been starched. This cloth sometimes breaks in the beating,

1769.

beating, but it is easily repaired by pasting on a patch with a gluten, that is prepared from the root of the Pea, which is done so nicely that it cannot be discovered. The women also employ themselves in removing blemishes of every kind; as our ladies do in needlework or knotting; sometimes, when their work is intended to be very fine, they will paste an entire covering of hoboo over the whole. The principal excellencies of this cloth are its coolness and softness; and its imperfections, its being pervious to water, like paper, and almost as easily torn.

The colours with which they dye this cloth are principally red and yellow. The red is exceedingly beautiful, and, I may venture to say, a brighter and more delicate colour than any we have in Europe; that which approaches nearest is our full scarlet, and the best imitation which Mr. Banks's natural-history painter could produce, was by a mixture of vermilion and carmine. The yellow is also a bright colour, but we have many as good.

The red colour is produced by the mixture of the juices of two vegetables, neither of which separately has the least tendency to that hue. One is a species of fig, called here Matte, and the other the Cordia Sebestina, or Etou; of the fig the fruit is used, and of the Cordia the leaves.

The fruit of the fig is about as big as a rounceval pea, or very small gooseberry; and each of them, upon breaking off the stalk very close, produces one drop of a milky liquor, resembling the juice of our figs, of which the tree is indeed a species. This liquor the women collect into a small quantity of cocoa-nut water: to prepare a gill of cocoa-nut water, will require between three and four quarts of these little figs. When a sufficient quantity is prepared, the leaves of the Etou are well wetted in it, and then laid upon a plantain leaf, where they are turned about till they become more and more flaccid, and then they are gently squeezed, gradually increasing the pressure, but so as not to break them; as the flaccidity increases, and they become spongy, they are supplied with more of the liquor; in about five minutes the colour begins to appear upon the veins of the leaves, and in about
ten,

ten, or a little more, they are perfectly saturated with it; they are then squeezed with as much force as can be applied, and the liquor strained at the same time that it is expressed. 1769.

For this purpose the boys prepare a large quantity of the Moo, by drawing it between their teeth, or two little sticks, till it is freed from the green bark and the branny substance that lies under it, and a thin web of the fibres only remains; in this the leaves of the Etou are enveloped, and through these the juice which they contain is strained, as it is forced out. As the leaves are not succulent, little more juice is pressed out of them than they have imbibed: when they have been once emptied, they are filled again, and again pressed, till the quality which tinctures the liquor as it passes through them is exhausted; they are then thrown away; but the Moo, being deeply stained with the liquor is preserved, as a brush to lay the dye upon the cloth.

The expressed liquor is always received into small cups made of the plantain leaf, whether from a notion that it has any quality favourable to the colour, or from the facility with which it is procured, and the convenience of small vessels to distribute it among the artificers, I do not know.

Of the thin cloth they seldom dye more than the edges, but the thick cloth is coloured through the whole surface; the liquor is indeed used rather as a pigment than a dye, for a coat of it is laid upon one side only, with the fibres of the Moo; and though I have seen of the thin cloth that has appeared to have been soaked in the liquor, the colour has not had the same richness and lustre as when it has been applied in the other manner.

Though the leaf of the Etou is generally used in this process, and probably produces the finest colour, yet the juice of the figs will produce a red, by a mixture with the species of *Tournefortia*, which they call *Taheino*, the *Pohuc*, the *Eurhe*, or *Convolvulus Brasiliensis*, and a species of *Solanum*, called *Ebooa*; from the use of these different plants, or from different proportions of the materials, many varieties are observable in the

1769.

the colours of their cloth, some of which are conspicuously superior to others.

The beauty, however, of the best is nor permanent, but it is probable that some method might be found to fix it, if proper experiments were made, and perhaps to search for latent qualities, which might be brought out by the mixture of one vegetable juice with another, would not be an unprofitable employment; our present most valuable dyes afford sufficient encouragement to the attempt; for by the mere inspection of indico, woad, dyer's weed, and most of the leaves which are used for the like purposes, the colours which they yield could never be discovered. Of this Indian red I shall only add, that the women who have been employed in preparing or using it, carefully preserve the colour upon their fingers and nails, where it appears in its utmost beauty, as a great ornament.

The yellow is made of the bark of the root of the *Morinda citrifolia*, called Nono, by scraping and infusing it in water; after standing some time, the water is strained and used as a dye, the cloth being dipped into it. The *Morinda*, of which this is a species, seems to be a good subject for examination with a view to dyeing. Brown, in his History of Jamaica, mentions three species of it, which, he says, are used to dye brown; and Rumphius says of the *Bancuda Augustifolia*, which is nearly allied to our Nono, that it is used by the inhabitants of the East-India islands as a fixing drug for red colours, with which it particularly agrees.

The inhabitants of this island also dye yellow with the fruit of the *Tamanu*; but how the colour is extracted, we had no opportunity to discover. They have also a preparation with which they dye brown and black; but these colours are so indifferent, that the method of preparing them did not excite our curiosity.

Another considerable manufacture is matting of various kinds, some of which is finer, and better in every respect than any we have in Europe; the coarser sort serves them to sleep upon, and the finer to wear in wet weather. With the fine, of which there are also two sorts, much pains is taken, especially with that made

made of the bark of the Poerou, the *Hibiscus tiliaceus* of Linnæus, some of which is as fine as a coarse cloth; the other sort, which is still more beautiful, they call Vanne; it is white, glossy, and shining, and is made of the leaves of their Wharrou, a species of the Pandanus, of which we had no opportunity to see either the flowers or fruit: they have other matt's, or, as they call them, Moeas, to sit or to sleep upon, which are formed of a great variety of rushes and grass, and which they make, as they do every thing else that is plaited, with amazing facility and dispatch.

1769.

They are also very dextrous in making basket and wicker-work; their baskets are of a thousand different patterns, many of them exceedingly neat; and the making them is an art that every one practises, both men and women: they make occasional baskets and panniers of the cocoa-nut leaf in a few minutes, and the women who visited us early in a morning, used to send, as soon as the sun was high, for a few of the leaves, of which they made little bonnets to shade their faces, at so small an expence of time and trouble, that when the sun was again low in the evening, they used to throw them away. These bonnets, however, did not cover the head, but consisted only of a band that went round it, and a shade that projected from the forehead.

Of the bark of the Poerou they make ropes and lines from the thickness of an inch to the size of a small packthread; with these they make nets for fishing; of the fibres of the cocoa-nut they make thread, for fastening together the several parts of their canoes and belts, either round or flat, twisted or plaited; and of the bark of the Erowa, a kind of nettle which grows in the mountains, and is therefore rather scarce, they make the best fishing-lines in the world; with these they hold the strongest and most active fish, such as bonetas and albicores, which would snap our strongest silk lines in a minute, tho' they are twice as thick.

They make also a kind of seine, of a coarse broad grass, the blades of which are like flags; these they twist and tie together in a loose manner, till the net, which is about as wide as a large sack, is from sixty to eighty

1769.

eighty fathom long; this they haul in shoal smooth water, and its own weight keeps it so close to the ground that scarcely a single fish can escape.

In every expedient, indeed, for taking fish, they are exceedingly ingenious; they make harpoons of cane, and point them with hard wood, which in their hands strike fish more effectually, than those which are headed with iron can do in ours, setting aside the advantage of ours being fastened to a line, so that the fish is secured if the hook takes place, tho' it does not mortally wound him.

Of fish-hooks they have two sorts, admirably adapted in their construction, as well to the purpose they are to answer, as to the materials of which they are made. One of these, which they call Wittee Wittee, is used for towing. The shank is made of mother-of-pearl, the most glossy that can be got; the inside, which is naturally the brightest, is put behind. To these hooks a tuft of white dogs or hogs hair is fixed, so as somewhat to resemble the tail of a fish; these implements, therefore, are both hook and bait, and are used with a rod of bamboo, and line of Erowa. The fisher, to secure his success, watches the flight of the birds, which constantly attend the bonetas when they swim in shoals, by which he directs his canoe, and when he has the advantage of these guides, he seldom returns without a prize.

The other kind of hook is also made of mother-of-pearl, or some other hard shell; they cannot make them bearded, like our hooks, but, to effect the same purpose, they make the point turn inwards. These are made of all sizes, and used to catch various kinds of fish with great success. The manner of making them is very simple, and every fisherman is his own artificer; the shell is first cut into square pieces, by the edge of another shell, and wrought into a form corresponding with the outline of the hook by pieces of coral, which are sufficiently rough to perform the office of a file; a hole is then bored in the middle, the drill being no other than the first stone they pick up that has a sharp corner; this they fix into the end of a piece of bamboo, and turn it between the hands
like

like a chocolate-mill; when the shell is perforated, and the whole sufficiently wide, a small file of coral is introduced, by the application of which the hook is in a short time completed, few costing the artificer more time than a quarter of an hour.

1769.

Of their masonry, carving, and architecture, the reader has already formed some idea, from the account that has been given of the Morais, or repositories of the dead: the other most important article of building and carving is their boats; and, perhaps, to fabricate one of their principal vessels with their tools, is as great a work as to build a British man of war with ours.

They have an adze of stone; a chissel or gouge of bone, generally that of a man's arm, between the wrist and elbow; a rasp of coral; and the skin of a sting-ray, with coral sand, as a file or polisher.

This is a complete catalogue of their tools, and with these they build houses, construct canoes, hew stone, and fell, cleave, carve, and polish timber.

The stone which makes the blade of their adzes is a kind of Basaltes, of a blackish or grey colour, not very hard, but of considerable toughness; they are formed of different sizes, some, that are intended for felling, weigh from six to eight pounds; others, that are used for carving, not more than so many ounces; but it is necessary to sharpen both almost every minute, for which purpose a stone and a cocoa-nut shell full of water are always at hand.

Their greatest exploit, to which these tools are less equal than to any other, is felling a tree; this requires many hands, and the constant labour of several days. When it is down, they split it, with the grain, into planks from three to four inches thick, the whole length and breadth of the tree, many of which are eight feet in the girt, and forty to the branches, and nearly of the same thickness throughout. The tree generally used is in their language called Avie, the stem of which is tall and straight; though some of the smaller boats are made of the bread-fruit tree, which is a light spongy wood, and easily wrought. They smooth the plank very expeditiously and dexterously with their adzes, and can take off a thin coat from a

1769.

whole plank without missing a stroke. As they have not the art of warping a plank, every part of the canoe, whether hollow or flat, is shaped by hand.

The canoes, or boats, which are used by the inhabitants of this and the neighbouring islands, may be divided into two general classes, one of which they call Ivahabs, the other Pahies.

The Ivahah is used for short excursions to sea, and is wall-sided and flat-bottomed; the Pahie for longer voyages, and is bow-sided and sharp-bottomed. The Ivahabs are all of the same figure, but of different sizes, and used for different purposes; their length is from seventy-two feet to ten, but the breadth is by no means in proportion, for those of ten feet are about a foot wide, and those of more than seventy are scarcely two. There is the fighting Ivahah, the fishing Ivahah, and the travelling Ivahah; for some of these go from one island to another. The fighting Ivahah is by far the longest, and the head and stern are considerably raised above the body, in a semicircular form, particularly the stern, which is sometimes seventeen or eighteen feet high, though the boat itself is scarcely three. These never go to sea single, but are fastened together, side by side, at the distance of about three feet, by strong poles of wood, which are laid across them and lashed to the gunwales. Upon these, in the fore-part, a stage or platform is raised, about ten or twelve feet long, and somewhat wider than the boats, which is supported by pillars about six feet high; upon this stage stand the fighting men, whose missile weapons are slings and spears; for, among other singularities in the manners of these people, their bows and arrows are used only for diversion, as we throw quoits: below these stages sit the rowers, who receive from them those that are wounded, and furnish fresh men to ascend in their room. Some of these have a platform of bamboos, or other light wood, through their whole length, and considerably broader, by means of which they will carry a great number of men; but we saw only one fitted in this manner.

The fishing Ivahabs vary in length from about forty feet to the smallest size, which is about ten; all that are of the length of twenty-five feet and upwards, of
whatever

whatever sort, occasionally carry sail. The travelling Ivahah is always double, and furnished with a small neat house about five or six feet broad, and six or seven feet long, which is fastened upon the fore-part for the convenience of the principal people, who sit in them by day, and sleep in them at night. The fishing Ivahahs are sometimes joined together, and have a house on board; but this is not common.

1769.

Those which are shorter than five and twenty feet, seldom or never carry sail; and, though the stern rises about four or five feet, have a flat head, and a board that projects forward about four feet.

The Pahie is also of different sizes, from sixty to thirty feet long, but, like the Ivahah, is very narrow. One that I measured was fifty-one feet long, and only one foot and a half wide at the top. In the widest part it was about three feet, and this is the general proportion. It does not, however, widen by a gradual swell, but, the sides being straight, and parallel, for a little way below the gunwale, it swells abruptly, and draws to a ridge at the bottom; so that a transverse section of it has somewhat the appearance of the mark upon cards, called a Spade, the whole being much wider in proportion to its length. These, like the largest Ivahahs are used for fighting, but principally for long voyages. The fighting Pahie, which is the largest, is fitted with the stage or platform, which is proportionably larger than those of the Ivahah, as their form enables them to sustain a much greater weight. Those that are used for sailing are generally double; and the middle size are said to be the best sea-boats. They are sometimes out a month together, going from island to island; and sometimes, as we were credibly informed, they are a fortnight or twenty days at sea, and could keep it longer if they had more stowage for provisions, and conveniences to hold fresh water.

When any of these boats carry sail single, they make use of a log of wood, which is fastened to the end of two poles that lie across the vessel, and project from six to ten feet, according to the size of the vessel, beyond its side, somewhat like what is used by the flying Proa of the Ladrone Islands, and called, in

1769.

the Account of Lord Anson's Voyage, an Outrigger. To this outrigger the shrouds are fastened, and it is essentially necessary in trimming the boat when it blows fresh.

Some of them have one mast, and some two; they are made of a single stick, and when the length of the canoe is thirty feet, that of the mast is somewhat less than five and twenty; it is fixed to a frame that is above the canoe, and receives a sail of matting about one third longer than itself; the sail is pointed at the top, square at the bottom, and curved at the side, somewhat resembling what we call a shoulder of mutton sail, and use for boats belonging to men of war; it is placed in a frame of wood, which surrounds it on every side, and has no contrivance either for reefing or furling; so that, if either should become necessary, it must be cut away, which, however, in these equal climates can seldom happen. At the top of the mast are fastened ornaments of feathers, which are placed inclining obliquely forwards; the shape and position of which will be conceived at once, from the figure in one of the cuts.

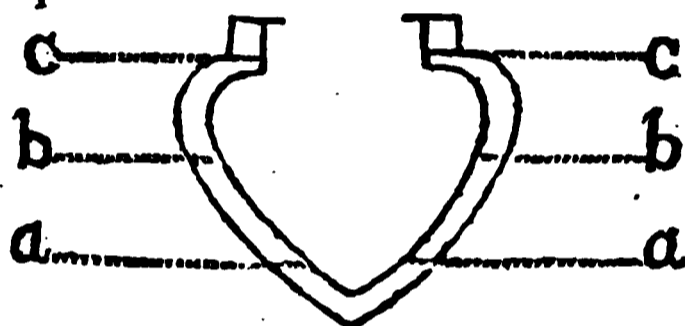
The oars or paddles that are used with these boats, have a long handle and a flat blade, not unlike a baker's peel. Of these every person in the boat has one, except those that sit under the awning; and they push her forward with them at a good rate. These boats, however, admit so much water at the seams, that one person, at least, is continually employed in throwing it out. The only thing in which they excel is landing, and putting off from the shore in a surf; by their great length and high sterns they land dry, when our boats could scarcely land at all; and have the same advantages in putting off, by the height of the head.

The Ivahahs are the only boats that are used by the inhabitants of Otaheite; but we saw several Pahies that came from other islands. Of one of these I shall give the exact dimensions from a careful admeasurement, and then particularly describe the manner in which they are built.

Extreme

	Feet	Inch	1769.
Extreme length from stem to stern, not reckoning the bending up of either	51	0	
Breadth in the clear of the top forward	1	2	
Breadth in the midships	1	6	
Breadth aft	1	3	
In the bilge forward	2	8	
In the midships	2	11	
Aft	2	9	
Depth in the midships	3	4	
Height from the ground on which he stood	3	6	
Height of her head from the ground, without the figure	4	4	
Height of the figure	0	11	
Height of the stern from the ground	8	9	
Height of the figure	2	0	

To illustrate my description of the manner in which these vessels are built, it will be necessary to refer to the figure; in which *aa* is the first seam, *bb* the second, and *cc* the third.



The first stage or keel, under *aa*, is made of a tree hollowed out like a trough; for which the longest trees are chosen that can be got, so that there are never more than three in the whole length; the next stage under *bb*, is formed of strait plank, about four feet long, fifteen inches broad, and two inches thick: the third stage, under *cc*, is, like the bottom, made of trunks, hollowed into its bilging form; the last is also cut out of trunks, so that the moulding is of one piece with the upright. To form these parts separately, without saw, plane, chissel, or any other iron tool, may well be thought no easy task; but the great difficulty is to join them together.

When all the parts are prepared, the keel is laid upon blocks, and the planks being supported by stanchions, are sewed or clamped together with strong thongs of plaiting, which are passed several times through holes that are bored with a gouge or auger of bone, that has been described already; and the nicety with which this is done, may be inferred from their being sufficiently

1769.

water-tight for use without calking. As the plaiting soon rots in the water, it is renewed at least once a year; in order to which, the vessel is taken entirely to pieces. The head and stern are rude with respect to the design; but very neatly finished, and polished to the highest degree.

These Pahies are kept with great care, in a kind of house built on purpose for their reception; the houses are formed of poles set upright in the ground, the tops of which are drawn towards each other, and fastened together with their strongest cord, so as to form a kind of Gothic arch, which is completely thatched quite to the ground, being open only at the ends; they are sometimes fifty or sixty paces long.

As connected with the navigation of these people, I shall mention their wonderful sagacity in foretelling the weather, at least the quarter from which the wind shall blow at a future time; they have several ways of doing this, of which, however, I know but one. They say, that the Milky-way is always curved laterally; but sometimes in one direction, and sometimes in another: and that this curvature is the effect of its being already acted upon by the wind, and its hollow part therefore towards it; so that, if the same curvature continues a night, a corresponding wind certainly blows the next day. Of their rules, I shall not pretend to judge; but I know that, by whatever means, they can predict the weather, at least the wind, with much greater certainty than we can.

In their longer voyages, they steer by the sun in the day, and in the night by the stars; all of which they distinguish separately by names, and know in what part of the heavens they will appear in any of the months during which they are visible in their horizon; they also know the time of their annual appearing and disappearing with more precision than will easily be believed by an European astronomer.

C H A P. VI.

Of the Division of Time in Otabeite; Numeration, Computation of Distance, Language, Diseases, Disposal of the Dead, Religion, War, Weapons, and Government; with some general Observations for the Use of future Navigators.

WE were not able to acquire a perfect idea of Time. their method of dividing time; but observed, that in speaking of it, either past or to come, they never used any term but Malama, which signifies Moon. Of these moons they count thirteen, and then begin again; which is a demonstration that they have a notion of the solar year: but how they compute their months so that thirteen of them shall be commensurate with the year, we could not discover; for they say that each month has twenty-nine days, including one in which the moon is not visible. They have names for them separately, and have frequently told us the fruits that would be in the season, and the weather that would prevail, in each of them; and they have indeed a name for them collectively, though they use it only when they speak of the mysteries of their religion.

Every day is subdivided into twelve parts, each of two hours, of which six belong to the day, and six to the night. At these divisions they guess pretty nearly by the height of the sun while he is above the horizon; but there are few of them who can guess at them, when he is below it, by the stars.

In numeration they proceed from one to ten, the Numbers. number of fingers on both hands; and though they have for each number a different name, they generally take hold of their fingers one by one, shifting from one hand to the other till they come to the number they want to express. And in other instances, we observed that, when they were conversing with each other, they joined signs to their words, which were so expressive that a stranger might easily apprehend their meaning.

In counting from ten they repeat the name of that number, and add the word *more*; ten, and one more,

1769.

is eleven; ten, and two more, twelve; and so of the rest, as we say one and twenty, two and twenty. When they come to ten and ten more, they have a new denomination, as we say a score; and by these scores they count till they get ten of them, when they have a denomination for two hundred; and we never could discover that they had any denomination to express a greater number: neither, indeed, do they seem to want any; for ten of these amount to two thousand, a greater number than they can ever apply.

In measuring distance they are much more deficient than in computing numbers, having but one term which answers to fathom; when they speak of distances from place to place, they express it, like the Asiatics, by the time that is required to pass it.

Language.

Their language is soft and melodious; it abounds with vowels, and we easily learned to pronounce it: but found it exceedingly difficult to teach them to pronounce a single word of ours; probably not only from its abounding in consonants, but from some peculiarity in its structure; for Spanish and Italian words, if ending in a vowel, they pronounced with great facility.

Whether it is copious, we were not sufficiently acquainted with it to know; but it is certainly very imperfect, for it is almost totally without inflexion, both of nouns and verbs. Few of the nouns have more than one case, and few of the verbs more than one tense; yet we found no great difficulty in making ourselves mutually understood, however strange it may appear in speculation.

They have, however, certain *affixa*, which, though but few in number, are very useful to them, and puzzled us extremely. One asks another, *Harre bea?* "Where are you going?" the other answers, *Ivabinera*, "To my wives;" upon which the first repeating the answer interrogatively, "To your wives?" is answered, *Ivabinereira*; "Yes, I am going to my wives." Here the suffix *era* and *eira* save several words to both parties.

I have inserted a few of their words, from which, perhaps, some idea may be formed of their language.

Pupo,

Pupo, *the bead.*
 Ahewh, *the nose.*
 Roourou, *the hair.*
 Outou, *the mouth.*
 Niheo, *the teeth.*
 Arrero, *the tongue.*
 Meu-eumi, *the beard.*
 Tiaraboa, *the throat.*
 Tuamo, *the shoulders.*
 Tuah, *the back.*
 Oama, *the breast.*
 Eu, *the nipples.*
 Oboo, *the belly.*
 Rema, *the arm.*
 Oporema, *the hand.*
 Manneo, *the fingers.*
 Mieu, *the nails.*
 Touhe, *the buttocks.*
 Hoouhah, *the thighs.*
 Avia, *the legs.*
 Tapoa, *the feet.*
 Booa, *a bog.*
 Moa, *a fowl.*
 Euree, *a dog.*
 Eure-eure, *iron.*
 Ooroo, *bread-fruit.*
 Hearee, *cocoa-nuts.*
 Mia, *bananas.*
 Vae, *wild plantains.*
 Pce, *beads.*
 Poe matawewwe, *pearls.*
 Ahou, *a garment.*
 Avee, *a fruit like apples.*
 Ahee, *another like chestnuts.*
 Ewharre, *a house.*
 Whennua, *a high island.*
 Motu, *a low island.*
 Toto, *blood.*
 Aeve, *bone.*
 Aco, *flesh.*
 Mae, *fat.*
 Tuea, *lean.*
 Huru-huru, *hair.*

Eraow, *a tree.*
 Ama, *a branch.*
 Tiale, *a flower.*
 Huero, *fruit.*
 Etummoo, *the stem.*
 Aaa, *the root.*
 Eiherre, *herbaceous plants.*
 Oopa, *a pigeon.*
 Avigne, *a paroquet.*
 A-a, *another species.*
 Mannu, *a bird.*
 Mora, *a duck.*
 Mattow, *a fish-hook.*
 Toura, *a rope.*
 Mow, *a bark.*
 Mahi-mahi, *a dolphin.*
 Mattera, *a fishing-rod.*
 Eupea, *a net.*
 Mahanna, *the sun.*
 Malama, *the moon.*
 Whettu, *a star.*
 Whettu-euphe, *a comet.*
 Erai, *the sky.*
 Eatta, *a cloud.*
 Miti, *good.*
 Eno, *bad.*
 A, *yes.*
 Ima, *no.*
 Paree, *ugly.*
 Paroree, *hungry.*
 Pia, *full.*
 Timahah, *heavy.*
 Mama, *light.*
 Poto, *short.*
 Roa, *tall.*
 Nehenne, *sweet.*
 Mala-mala, *bitter.*
 Whanno, *to go far.*
 Harre, *to go.*
 Arrea, *to stay.*
 Encho, *to remain.*
 Rohe-rohe, *to be tired.*
 Maa, *to eat.*

1769.

Inoo, *to drink.*Worridde, *to be angry.*Ete, *to understand.*Teparahi, *to beat.*Warrido, *to steal.*

Diseases.

• Among people whose food is so simple, and who, in general, are seldom drunk, it is scarcely necessary to say, that there are but few diseases; we saw no critical disease during our stay upon the island, and but few instances of sickness, which were accidental fits of the cholic. The natives, however, are afflicted with the erysipelas, and cutaneous eruptions of the scaly kind, very nearly approaching to a leprosy. Those in whom this distemper was far advanced, lived in a state of seclusion from all society, each in a small house built upon some unfrequented spot, where they were supplied with provisions; but whether they had any hope of relief, or languished out the remainder of their lives in solitude and despair, we could not learn. We observed also a few who had ulcers upon different parts of their bodies, some of which had a very virulent appearance; yet they seemed not much to be regarded by those who were afflicted with them, for they were left intirely without application, even to keep off the flies.

Where intemperance produces no diseases, there will be no physicians by profession; yet where there is suffering, there will always be attempts to relieve; and where the cause of the mischief and the remedy are alike unknown, these will naturally be directed by superstition: thus it happens, that in this country, and in all others which are not further injured by luxury, or improved by knowledge, the management of the sick falls to the lot of the priest. The method of cure that is practised by the priests of Otaheite, consists chiefly of prayers and ceremonies. When he visits his patient, he repeats certain sentences, which appear to be set forms contrived for the occasion, and at the same time plaits the leaves of the cocoa-nut into different figures very neatly; some of these he fastens to the fingers and toes of the sick, and often leaves behind him a few branches of the *thespecia populnea*, which they call *E' midbo*; these ceremonies are repeated till the patient recovers or dies. If he recovers, they say the remedies

cured

cured him; if he dies, they say the disease was incurable; in which, perhaps, they do not much differ from the custom of other countries. 1769.

If we had judged of their skill in surgery from the dreadful scars which we sometimes saw, we should have supposed it to be much superior to the art not only of their physicians, but of ours. We saw one man whose face was almost intirely destroyed: his nose, including the bone, was perfectly flat, and one cheek and one eye were so beaten in, that the hollow would almost receive a man's fist, yet no ulcer remained: and our companion, Tupia, had been pierced quite through his body by a spear, headed with the bone of a sting-ray, the weapon having entered his back, and come out just under his breast; but, except in reducing dislocations and fractures, the best surgeon can contribute very little to the cure of a wound; the blood itself is the best vulnerary balsam, and when the juices of the body are pure, and the patient is temperate, nothing more is necessary, as an aid to Nature, in the cure of the worst wound, than the keeping it clean.

Their commerce with the inhabitants of Europe has, however, already entailed upon them that dreadful curse which avenged the inhumanities committed by the Spaniards in America, the venereal disease. As it is certain that no European vessel, besides our own, except the Dolphin, and the two that were under the command of Mons. Bougainville, ever visited this island, it must either have been brought by one of them, or by us. That it was brought by the Dolphin, Captain Wallis has demonstrated, in the account of her voyage, in the first volume, and nothing is more certain, than that when we arrived it had made most dreadful ravages in the island. One of our people contracted it within five days after we went on shore, and by the enquiries among the natives, which this occasioned, we learned, when we came to understand a little of their language, that it had been brought by the vessels which had been there about fifteen months before us, and had lain on the east side of the island. They distinguished it by a name of the same import with *rottenness*, but of a more extensive

1769.

extensive signification, and described, in the most pathetic terms, the sufferings of the first victims to its rage, and told us, that it caused the hair and the nails to fall off, and the flesh to rot from the bones; that it spread a universal terror and consternation among them, so that the sick were abandoned by their nearest relations, lest the calamity should spread by contagion, and left to perish alone in such misery as till then had never been known among them. We had some reason, however, to hope that they had found out a specific to cure it. During our stay upon the island we saw none in whom it had made a great progress; and one who went from us infected, returned after a short time in perfect health; and by this it appeared, either that the disease had cured itself, or that they were not unacquainted with the virtues of simples, nor implicit dupes to the superstitious follies of their priests. We endeavoured to learn the medical qualities which they imputed to their plants, but our knowledge of their language was too imperfect for us to succeed. If we could have learned their specific for the venereal disease, if such they have, it would have been of great advantage to us, for when we left the island it had been contracted by more than half the people on board the ship.

It is impossible but that, in relating incidents, many particulars with respect to the customs, opinions, and works of these people should be anticipated; to avoid repetition, therefore, I shall only supply deficiencies. Of the manner of disposing of their dead, much has been said already. I must more explicitly observe, that there are two places in which the dead are deposited; one a kind of shed, where the flesh is suffered to putrify, the other an enclosure, with erections of stone, where the bones are afterwards buried. The sheds are called *TUPAPOW*, and the enclosures *Morai*. The *Morais* are also places of worship.

As soon as a native of *Otaheite* is known to be dead, the house is filled with relations, who deplore their loss, some by loud lamentations, and some by less clamorous, but more genuine expressions of grief. Those who are in the nearest degree of kindred, and are really affected by the event, are silent; the rest are one moment

uttering.

Disposal of
Dead.

uttering passionate exclamations in a chorus, and the next laughing and talking, without the least appearance of concern. In this manner the remainder of the day on which they assemble is spent, and all the succeeding night. On the next morning the body is shrouded in their cloth, and conveyed to the sea side upon a bier, which the bearers support upon their shoulders, attended by the priest, who having prayed over the body, repeats his sentences during the procession; when it arrives at the water's edge, it is set down upon the beach; the priest renews his prayers, and taking up some of the water in his hands, sprinkles it towards the body, but not upon it; it is then carried back forty or fifty yards, and soon after brought again to the beach, where the prayers and sprinkling are repeated. It is thus removed backwards and forwards several times; and while these ceremonies have been performing a house has been built, and a small space of ground railed in. In the centre of this house, or Tupapow, posts are set up to support the bier, which is at length conveyed thither, and placed upon it, and here the body remains to putrify till the flesh is wholly wasted from the bones.


These houses of corruption are of a size proportioned to the rank of the person whose body they are to contain; those allotted to the lower class are just sufficient to cover the bier, and have no railing round them. The largest we ever saw was eleven yards long, and such as these are ornamented according to the abilities and inclination of the surviving kindred, who never fail to lay a profusion of good cloth about the body, and sometimes almost cover the outside of the house. Garlands of the fruit of the palm-nut, or *pandanus*, and cocoa leaves, twisted by the priests in mysterious knots, with a plant called by them *Ethee no Morai*, which is particularly consecrated to funeral solemnities, are deposited about the place; provision and water are also left at a little distance, of which, and of other decorations, a more particular description has been given already.

As soon as the body is deposited in the Tupapow, the mourning is renewed. The women assemble, and are led to the door by the nearest relation, who strikes a shark's

1769. a shark's tooth several times into the crown of her head: the blood copiously follows, and is carefully received upon pieces of linen, which are thrown under the bier. The rest of the women follow this example, and the ceremony is repeated at the interval of two or three days, as long as the zeal and sorrow of the parties hold out. The tears also which are shed upon these occasions, are received upon pieces of cloth, and offered as oblations to the dead: some of the young people cut off their hair, and that is thrown under the bier with other offerings. This custom is founded upon a notion that the soul of the deceased, which they believe to exist in a separate state, is hovering about the place where the body is deposited: that it observes the actions of the survivors, and is gratified by such testimonies of their affection and grief.

Two or three days after these ceremonies have been commenced by the women, during which the men seem to be wholly insensible of their loss, they also begin to perform their part. The nearest relations take it in turn to assume the dress, and perform the office which have already been particularly described in the account of Tubourai Tamaide's having acted as chief mourner to an old woman, his relation, who died while we were in the island. One part of the ceremony, however, which accounts for the running away of the people as soon as this procession is in sight, has not been mentioned. The chief mourner carries in his hand a long flat stick, the edge of which is set with shark's teeth, and in a phrenzy, which his grief is supposed to have inspired, he runs at all he sees, and if any of them happen to be overtaken, he strikes them most unmercifully with this indented cudgel, which cannot fail to wound them in a dangerous manner.

These processions continue at certain intervals for five moons, but are less and less frequent, by a gradual diminution, as the end of that time approaches. When it is expired, what remains of the body is taken down from the bier, and the bones having been scraped and washed very clean, are buried, according to the rank of the person, either within or without a Morai: if the deceased was an Earee, or Chief, his skull is not buried with the rest of the bones, but is wrapped up in fine cloth, and put up in a kind of box made for that

that purpose, which is also placed in the Morai. This 1759. 
coffer is called *Ewbarre no te Orometua*, the house of a teacher or master. After this the mourning ceases, except some of the women continue to be really afflicted for the loss, and in that case they will sometimes suddenly wound themselves with the shark's tooth wherever they happen to be : this perhaps will account for the passion of grief in which Terapo wounded herself at the fort ; some accidental circumstance might forcibly revive the remembrance of a friend or relation whom she had lost, with a pungency of regret and tenderness which forced a vent by tears, and prompted her to a repetition of the funeral rite.

The ceremonies, however, do not cease with the mourning : prayers are still said by the priest, who is well paid by the surviving relations, and offerings made at the Morai. Some of the things, which from time to time are deposited there, are emblematical : a young plantain represents the deceased, and the bunch of feathers the deity who is invoked. The priest places himself over-against the symbol of the God, accompanied by some of the relations, who are furnished with small offering, and repeats his oraison in a set form, consisting of separate sentences ; at the same time weaving the leaves of the cocoa-nut into different forms, which he afterwards deposits upon the ground where the bones have been interred ; the deity is then addressed by a shrill screech, which is used only upon that occasion. When the priest retires, the tuft of feathers is removed, and the provisions left to putrify, or be devoured by the rats.

Of the religion of these people, we were not able to Religion.
acquire any clear and consistent knowledge : we found it like the religion of most other countries, involved in mystery, and perplexed with apparent inconsistencies. The religious language is also here, as it is in China, different from that which is used in common ; so that Tupia, who took great pains to instruct us, having no words to express his meaning which we understood, gave us lectures to very little purpose : what we learnt, however, I will relate with as much perspicuity as I can.

Nothing is more obvious to a rational being, however ignorant or stupid, than that the universe and its various parts, as far as they fall under his notice, were produced

1769

duced by some agent inconceivably more powerful than himself; and nothing is more difficult to be conceived, even by the most sagacious and knowing, than the production of them from nothing, which among us is expressed by the word Creation. It is natural therefore, as no Being apparently capable of producing the universe is to be seen, that he should be supposed to reside in some distant part of it, or to be in his nature invisible, and that he should have originally produced all that now exists in a manner similar to that in which nature is renovated by the succession of one generation to another: but the idea of procreation includes in it that of two persons, and from the conjunction of two persons these people imagine every thing in the universe either originally or derivatively to proceed.

The Supreme Deity, one of these two first beings, they call TAROATAIHETOOMOO, and the other, whom they suppose to have been a rock, TEPAPA. A daughter of these was TETTOWMATATAYO, the year, or thirteen months collectively, which they never name but upon this occasion, and she, by the common father, produced the months, and the months, by conjunction with each other, the days: the stars they suppose partly to be the immediate offspring of the first pair, and partly to have increased among themselves: and they have the same notion with respect to the different species of plants. Among other progeny of Taroataihetoomoo and Tepapa, they suppose an inferior race of deities whom they call EATUAS. Two of these Eatuas, they say, at some remote period of time, inhabited the earth, and were the parents of the first man. When this man, their common ancestor, was born, they say that he was round like a ball, but that his mother, with great care, drew out his limbs, and having at length moulded him into his present form, she called him EOTHE, which signifies *finished*. That being prompted by the universal instinct to propagate his kind, and being able to find no female but his mother, he begot upon her a daughter, and upon the daughter other daughters for several generations, before there was a son: a son, however, being at length born, he, by the assistance of his sisters, peopled the world.

Besides

Besides their daughter Tettowmatatayo, the first progenitors of nature had a son, whom they called TANE. Taroataihetoomoo, the Supreme Deity, they emphatically style the Caufer of Earthquakes ; but their prayers are more generally addressed to Tane, whom they suppose to take a greater part in the affairs of mankind.

The subordinate deities, or Eatuas, which are numerous, are of both sexes ; the male are worshipped by the men, and the female by the women : and each have Morais to which the other sex are not admitted, though they have also Morais common to both. Men perform the office of priest to both sexes, but each sex has its priests, for those who officiate for one sex, do not officiate for the other.

They believe the immortality of the soul, at least its existence in a separate state ; and that there are two situations of different degrees of happiness, somewhat analogous to our heaven and hell : the superior situation they call Tavirua l'eraï, the other Tiahoboo. They do not, however, consider them as places of reward and punishment, but as receptacles for different classes ; the first, for their chiefs and principal people, the other for those of inferior rank, for they do not suppose that their actions here in the least influence their future state, or indeed that they come under the cognizance of their deities at all. Their religion, therefore, if it has no influence upon their morals, is at least disinterested ; and their expressions of adoration and reverence, whether by words or actions, arise only from an humble sense of their own inferiority, and the ineffable excellence of divine perfection.

The character of the priest or Tahowa is hereditary : the class is numerous, and consists of all ranks of people ; the chief, however, is generally the younger brother of a good family, and is respected in a degree next to their kings. Of the little knowledge that is possessed in this country, the priests have the greatest share ; but it consists principally in an acquaintance with the names and ranks of the different Eatuas or subordinate divinities, and the opinions concerning the origin of things, which have been traditionally preserved among the order in detached sentences, of which some will repeat an in-

1769.

credible number, tho' but very few of the words that are used in their common dialect occur in them.

The priests, however, are superior to the rest of the people in the knowledge of navigation and astronomy, and indeed the name Tahowa signifies nothing more than a man of knowledge. As there are priests of every class, they officiate only among that class to which they belong: the priest of the inferior class is never called upon by those of superior rank, nor will the priest of superior rank officiate for any of the inferior class.

Marriage in this island, as appeared to us, is nothing more than an agreement between the man and woman, with which the priest has no concern. Where it is contracted it appears to be pretty well kept, tho' sometimes the parties separate by mutual consent, and in that case a divorce takes place with as little trouble as the marriage.

But tho' the priesthood has laid the people under no tax for a nuptial benediction, there are two operations which it has appropriated, and from which it derives considerable advantages. One is tattowing, and the other circumcision, tho' neither of them have any connection with religion. The tattowing has been described already. Circumcision has been adopted merely from motives of cleanliness; it cannot indeed properly be called circumcision, because the prepuce is not mutilated by a circular wound, but only slit thro' the upper part, to prevent its contracting over the glans. As neither of these can be performed by any but a priest, and as to be without either is the greatest disgrace, they may be considered as a claim to surplice fees, like our marriages and christenings which are chearfully and liberally paid, not according to any settled stipend, but the rank and abilities of the parties or their friends.

The Morai, as has been already observed, is at once a burying ground and a place of worship, and in this particular our churches too much resemble it. The Indian, however, approaches his Morai with a reverence and humility that disgraces the Christian, not because he holds any thing sacred that is there, but because he there worships an invisible divinity, from whom, tho' he neither hopes for reward, nor fears punishment, at his hand, he always expresses the profoundest homage
and

and most humble adoration. I have already given a very particular description both of the Morais and the altars that are placed near them. When an Indian is about to worship at the Morai, or brings his offering to the altar, he always uncovers his body to the waist, and his looks and attitude are such as sufficiently express a corresponding disposition of mind.

It did not appear to us that these people are, in any instance, guilty of idolatry; at least they do not worship any thing that is the work of their hands, nor any visible part of the creation. This island, indeed, and the rest that lie near it, have a particular bird, some a heron, and others a king's-fisher, to which they pay a peculiar regard, and concerning which they have some superstitious notions, with respect to good and bad fortune, as we have of the swallow and robin-red-breast, giving them the name of EATUA, and by no means killing or molesting them; yet they never address a petition to them, or approach them with any act of adoration.

Tho' I dare not assert that these people, to whom the art of writing, and consequently the recording of laws, are utterly unknown, live under a regular form of government; yet a subordination is established among them, that greatly resembles the early state of every nation in Europe under the feudal system, which secured liberty to the most licentious excess to a few, and entailed the most abject slavery upon the rest.

Their orders are, Earee rahie, which answers to the king; Earee, baron; Manahouni, vassal; and Toutou, villain. The Earee rahie, of which there are two in this island, one being the sovereign of each of the peninsulas of which it consists, is treated with great respect by all ranks, but it did not appear to us to be invested with so much power as was exercised by the Earees in their own districts; nor indeed did we, as I have before observed, once see the sovereign of Obereonoo, while we were in the island. The Earees are lords of one or more of the districts into which each of the peninsulas is divided, of which there may be about an hundred in the whole island; and they parcel out their territories to the Manahounies, who cultivate each his part which he holds under the baron.

1769.

The lowest class, called Toutous, seem to be nearly under the same circumstances as the villains in feudal governments; these do all the laborious work, they cultivate the land under the Manahounies, who are only nominal cultivators for the lord; they fetch wood and water, and, under the direction of the mistress of the family, dress the victuals; they also catch the fish.

Each of the Earees keeps a kind of court, and has a great number of attendants, chiefly the younger brothers of their own tribe; and among those some hold particular offices, but of what nature exactly we could not tell. One was called the Eowa no l'Earee, and another the Whanno no l'Earee, and these were frequently dispatched to us with messages. Of all the courts of these Earees, that of Tootahah was the most splendid, as indeed might reasonably be expected, because he administered the government for Outou, his nephew, who was Earee rahie of Obereonoo, and lived upon his estate. The child of the baron, or Earee, as well as of the sovereign, or Earee rahie, succeeds to the title and honours of the father, as soon as it is born; so that a baron, who was yesterday called Earee, and was approached with the ceremony of lowering the garments, so as to uncover the upper part of the body, is to-day, if his wife was last night delivered of a child, reduced to the rank of a private man, all marks of respect being transferred to the child, if it is suffered to live, though the father still continues possessor and administrator of his estate: probably this custom has its share, among other inducements, in forming the societies called Arreoy.

War.

If a general attack happens to be made upon the island, every district, under the command of an Earee, is obliged to furnish its proportion of soldiers for the common defence. The number furnished by the principal districts, which Tupia recollected, when added together, amounted, as I have observed before, to 680.

Upon such occasions, the united force of the whole island is commanded in chief by the Earee rahie. Private differences between two Earees, are decided by their

their own people, without at all disturbing the general tranquillity. 1769.

Their weapons are slings, which they use with great dexterity; pikes headed with the stings of sting-rays, and clubs of about six or seven feet long, made of a very hard heavy wood. Thus armed, they are said to fight with great obstinacy, which is the more likely to be true, as it is certain that they give no quarter to either man, woman, or child, who is so unfortunate as to fall into their hands during the battle, or for some hours afterwards, till their passion, which is always violent, though not lasting, has subsided. Weapons.

The Earee rahie of Oberconoo, while we were here, was in perfect amity with the Earee rahie of Tiarreboo, the other peninsula, tho' he took to himself the title of king of the whole island; this, however, produced no more jealousy in the other sovereign, than the title of King of France, assumed by our Sovereign does in his Most Christian Majesty.

In a government so rude, it cannot be expected that distributive justice should be regularly administered; and indeed where there is so little opposition of interest, in consequence of the facility with which every appetite and passion is gratified, there can be but few crimes. There is nothing like money, the common medium by which every want and every wish is supposed to be gratified, by those who do not possess it; there is no apparently permanent good, which either fraud or force can unlawfully obtain; and when all the crimes that are committed by the inhabitants of civilized countries to get money, are set out of the account, not many will remain; add to this, that where the commerce with women is restrained by no law, men will seldom be under any temptation to commit adultery, especially as one woman is always less preferred to another, where they are less distinguished by personal decorations, and the adventitious circumstances which are produced by the varieties of art, and the refinements of sentiment. That they are thieves is true; but as among these people no man can be much injured or benefitted by theft, it is not necessary to restrain it by such punishments, as in other countries.

1769.

are absolutely necessary to the very existence of civil society. Tupia, however, tells us, that adultery is sometimes committed as well as theft. In all cases where an injury has been committed, the punishment of the offender lies with the sufferer. Adultery, if the parties are caught in the fact, is sometimes punished with death, in the first ardour of resentment; but, without circumstances of immediate provocation, the female sinner seldom suffers more than a beating. As punishment, however, is enforced by no law, nor taken into the hand of any magistrate, it is not often inflicted, unless the injured party is the strongest; tho' the chiefs do sometimes punish their immediate dependents, for faults committed against each other, and even the dependents of others, if they are accused of any offence committed in their district.

Having now given the best description that I can of the island in its present state, and of the people, with their customs and manners, language and arts, I shall only add a few general observations, which may be of use to future navigators, if any of the ships of Great Britain should receive orders to visit it. As it produces nothing that appears to be convertible into an article of trade, and can be useful only by affording refreshments to shipping in their passage thro' these seas, it might be made to answer this purpose in a much greater degree, by transporting thither sheep, goats, and horned cattle, with European garden-stuff, and other useful vegetables, which there is the greatest reason to suppose will flourish in so fine a climate, and so rich a soil.

Though this and the neighbouring islands lie within the tropic of Capricorn, yet the heat is not troublesome, nor did the winds blow constantly from the east. We had frequently a fresh gale from the S. W. for two or three days, and sometimes, though very seldom, from the N. W. Tupia reported, that south-westerly winds prevail in October, November, and December, and we have no doubt of the fact. When the winds are variable, they are always accompanied by a swell from the S. W. or W. S. W. there is also a swell from the same points when it is calm, and the atmosphere loaded with clouds, which is a sure indication

cation that the winds are variable, or westerly out at sea; for with the settled trade-wind the weather is clear.

1769.

The meeting with westerly winds, within the general limits of the eastern trade, has induced some navigators to suppose that they were near some large tract of land, of which, however, I think they are no indication.

It has been found, both by us and the Dolphin, that the trade-wind, in these parts, does not extend farther to the south than twenty degrees, beyond which, we generally found a gale from the westward; and it is reasonable to suppose, that when these winds blow strong they will drive back the easterly wind, and consequently incroach upon the limits within which they constantly blow, and thus necessarily produce variable winds, as either happens to prevail, and a south westerly swell. This supposition is the more probable, as it is well known that the trade-winds blow but faintly for some distance within their limits, and therefore may be more easily stopped or repelled by a wind in the contrary direction: it is also well known, that the limits of the trade winds vary, not only at different seasons of the year, but sometimes at the same season in different years.

There is therefore no reason to suppose, that south westerly winds, within these limits, are caused by the vicinity of large tracts of land, especially as they are always accompanied with a large swell, in the same direction in which they blow; and we find a much greater surf beating upon the shores of the south-west side of the islands that are situated just within the limits of the trade-wind, than upon any other part of them.

The tides about these islands are perhaps as inconsiderable as in any part of the world. A south or S. by W. moon makes high water in the bay of Matavai, at Otaheite; but the water very seldom rises perpendicularly above ten or twelve inches.

The variation of the compass I found to be $4^{\circ} 45'$ easterly, this being the result of a great number of trials made with four of Dr. Knight's needles, adapted

1769.

ed to azimuth compasses. These compasses I thought the best that could be produced, yet, when applied to the meridian line, I found them to differ, not only one from another, sometimes a degree and an half, but the same needle, half a degree from itself, in different trials made on the same day; and I do not remember that I have ever found two needles which exactly agreed at the same time and place, though I have often found the same needle agree with itself, in several trials made one after the other. This imperfection of the needle, however, is of no consequence to navigation, as the variation can always be found to a degree of accuracy more than sufficient for all nautical purposes.

C H A P. VII.

A Description of several other Islands in the Neighbourhood of Otaheite, with various Incidents; a dramatic Entertainment; and many Particulars relative to the Customs and Manners of the Inhabitants.

July.
Thurs. 13.

AFTER parting with our friends, we made an easy sail, with gentle breezes and clear weather, and were informed by Tupia, that four of the neighbouring islands, which he distinguished by the names of HUAHEINE, ULIATEA, OTAHA, and BOLABOLA, lay at the distance of between one and two days sail from Otaheite; and that hogs, fowls, and other refreshments, with which we had of late been but sparingly supplied, were there to be procured in great plenty; but having discovered, from the hills of Otaheite, an island lying to the northward, which he called TETHUROA, I determined first to stand that way, to take a nearer view of it. It lies N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant eight leagues from the northern extremity of Otaheite, upon which we had observed the transit, and to which we had, for that reason, given the name of POINT VENUS. We found it to be a small low island, and were told by Tupia, that it had no settled inhabitants, but was occasionally visited by the inhabitants of Otaheite,

heite, who sometimes went thither for a few days to fish; we therefore determined to spend no more time in a farther examination of it, but to go in search of Huaheine and Ulietea, which he described to be well peopled, and as large as Otaheite.

1769.
July.

At six o'clock in the morning of the 14th, the westernmost part of Eimeo, or York Island, bore S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and the body of Otaheite E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. At noon, the body of York Island bore E. by S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and Port-Royal bay, at Otaheite, S. $70^{\circ} 45'$ E. distant 61 miles, and an island which we took to be Saunders's Island, called by the natives TAPOAMANAO, bore S. S. W. We also saw land bearing N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. which Tupia said was Huaheine. Friday 14.

On the 15th, it was hazy, with light breezes and calms succeeding each other, so that we could see no land, and made but little way. Our Indian, Tupia, often prayed for a wind to his god, Tane, and as often boasted of his success, which indeed he took a very effectual method to secure; for he never began his address to Tane, till he saw a breeze so near that he knew it must reach the ship before his oraison was well over. Saturd. 15.

On the 16th, we had a gentle breeze; and in the morning about eight o'clock, being close in with the north-west part of the island Huaheine, we sounded, but had no bottom with 80 fathom. Some canoes very soon came off; but the people seemed afraid, and kept at a distance till they discovered Tupia, and then they ventured nearer. In one of the canoes, that came up to the ship's side, was the king of the island and his wife. Upon assurances of friendship, frequently and earnestly repeated, their majesties and some others came on board. At first they were struck with astonishment, and wondered at every thing that was shewn them, yet they made no enquiries; and, seeming to be satisfied with what was offered to their notice, they made no search after other objects of curiosity, with which, it was natural to suppose, a building of such novelty and magnitude as the ship must abound. After some time they became more familiar. I was given to understand, that the name of the king was OREE; and he proposed, as a mark of Sunday 16.
Huaheine.

1769.
July.

of amity, that we should exchange names. To this I readily consented; and he was Cookee, for so he pronounced my name, and I was Oree, for the rest of the time we were together. We found these people to be very nearly the same with those of Otaheite, in person, dress, language, and every other circumstance, except, if Tupia might be believed, that they would not steal.

Soon after dinner we came to an anchor, in a small but excellent harbour on the west side of the island, which the natives call OWHAREE, in eighteen fathom water, clear ground, and secure from all winds. I went immediately a-shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Mr. Monkhouse, Tupia, King Cookee, and some other of the natives, who had been on board ever since the morning. The moment we landed, Tupia stripped himself as low as the waist, and desired Mr. Monkhouse to do the same; he then sat down before a great number of the natives, who were collected together in a large house, or shed; for here, as well as at Otaheite, a house consists only of a roof supported upon poles; the rest of us, by his desire, standing behind. He then began a speech, or prayer, which lasted about a quarter of an hour, the king, who stood over-against him, every now and then answering, in what appeared to be set responses. In the course of this harangue, he delivered at different times two handkerchiefs, a black silk neckcloth, some beads, two small bunches of feathers, and some plantains, as presents to their Eatua, or God. In return for these, he received for our Eatua, a hog, some young plantains, and two small bunches of feathers, which he ordered to be carried on board the ship. After these ceremonies, which we supposed to be the ratification of a treaty between us, every one was dismissed, to go whither he pleased; and Tupia immediately repaired to offer his oblations at one of the Morais.

Mond 17. The next morning, we went on shore again, and walked up the hills, where the productions were exactly the same as those of Otaheite, except that the rocks and clay appeared to be more burnt. The houses were

were neat, and the boat-houses remarkably large; one that we measured was fifty paces long, ten broad, and twenty-four feet high; the whole formed a pointed arch, like those of our old cathedrals, which was supported on one side by twenty-six, and on the other by thirty pillars, or rather posts, about two feet high, and one thick, upon most of which were rudely carved the heads of men, and several fanciful devices, not altogether unlike those which we sometimes see printed from wooden blocks, at the beginning and end of old books. The plains, or flat part of the country, abounded in bread-fruit, and cocoa-nut trees; in some places, however, there were salt swamps and lagoons, which would produce neither.

1-69.
July.

We went again a-shore on the 18th, and would have taken the advantage of Tupia's company, in our perambulation; but he was too much engaged with his friends: we took however his boy, whose name was TAYETO, and Mr. Banks went to take a farther view of what had much engaged his attention before; it was a kind of chest or ark, the lid of which was nicely sewed on, and thatched very neatly with palm-nut leaves: it was fixed upon two poles, and supported on little arches of wood, very neatly carved; the use of the poles seemed to be to remove it from place to place, in the manner of our sedan chairs: in one end of it was a square hole, in the middle of which was a ring touching the sides, and leaving the angles open so as to form a round hole within a square one. The first time Mr. Banks saw this coffer, the aperture at the end was stopped with a piece of cloth, which, lest he should give offence, he left untouched; probably there was then something within, but now the cloth was taken away, and, upon looking into it, it was found empty. The general resemblance between this repository and the Ark of the Lord among the Jews is remarkable; but it is still more remarkable, that upon enquiring of the boy what it was called, he said, Ewharre no Eatua, the house of the God: he could however give no account of its signification or use. We had commenced a kind of trade with the natives, but it went on slowly; for when any thing was offered, not one of them would take it upon his own judgment, but

Tuekl 18.

1769.
July.

but collected the opinions of twenty or thirty people, which could not be done without great loss of time. We got, however, eleven pigs, and determined to try for more the next day.

Wednes. 19. The next day, therefore, we brought out some hatchets, for which we hoped we should have had no occasion, upon an island which no European had ever visited before. These procured us three very large hogs; and as we proposed to sail in the afternoon, King Oree and several others came on board to take their leave. To the King I gave a small plate of pewter, on which was stamped this inscription, "His Britannic Majesty's ship, Endeavour, Lieutenant Cook Commander, 16th July, 1769, Huaheine." I gave him also some medals or counters, resembling the coin of England, struck in the year 1761, with some other presents; and he promised that with none of these, particularly the plate, he would ever part. I thought it as lasting a testimony of our having first discovered this island, as any we could leave behind; and having dismissed our visitors well satisfied, and in great good humour, we set sail about half an hour after two in the afternoon.

The island of Huaheine, or Huahene, is situated in the latitude of $16^{\circ} 43'$ S. and longitude $150^{\circ} 52'$ W. from Greenwich; it is distant from Otaheite about thirty-one leagues, in the direction of N. 58° W. and is about seven leagues in compass. Its surface is hilly and uneven, and it has a safe and commodious harbour. The harbour, which is called by the natives OWALLE, or OWHARRE, lies on the west side, under the northernmost high land; and within the north end of the reef, which lies along that side of the island, there are two inlets, or openings, by which it may be entered through the reef, about a mile and a half distant from each other; the southernmost is the widest, and on the south side of it lies a very small sandy island.

Huaheine seems to be a month forwarder in its productions than Otaheite, as we found the cocoa-nuts full of kernel, and some of the new bread-fruit fit to eat. Of the cocoa-nuts the inhabitants make a food which they call Poe, by mixing them with yams: they scrape both fine, and having incorporated the powder, they put it into a wooden trough, with a number of
hot

1769.
July.

hot stones; by which an oily kind of hasty pudding is made, that our people relished very well, especially when it was fried. Mr. Banks found not more than eleven or twelve new plants; but he observed some insects, and a species of scorpion which he had not seen before.

The inhabitants seem to be larger made, and more stout, than those of Otaheite. Mr. Banks measured one of the men, and found him to be six feet three inches and an half high; yet they are so lazy, that he could not persuade any of them to go up the hills with him; they said, if they were to attempt it, the fatigue would kill them. The women were very fair, more so than those of Otaheite; and in general we thought them more handsome, though none that were equal to some individuals. Both sexes seemed to be less timid, and less curious. It has been observed, that they made no enquiries on board the ship; and when we fired a gun, they were frightened indeed, but they did not fall down, as our friends at Otaheite constantly did when we first came among them. For this difference, however, we can easily account upon other principles; the people at Huaheine had not seen the Dolphin, those at Otaheite had. In one, the report of a gun was connected with the idea of instant destruction; to the other, there was nothing dreadful in it but the appearance and the sound, as they had never experienced its power of dispensing death.

While we were on shore, we found that Tupia had commended them beyond their merit, when he said, that they would not steal; for one of them was detected in the fact. But when he was seized by the hair, the rest, instead of running away, as the people at Otaheite would have done, gathered round, and enquired what provocation had been given; but this also may be accounted for, without giving them credit for their superior courage; they had no experience of the consequence of European resentment, which the people at Otaheite had in many instances purchased with life. It must, however, be acknowledged, to their honour, that when they understood what had happened, they shewed strong signs of disapprobation, and prescribed

LIEUT. COOK'S VOYAGE

1769.
July.

Saturd. 22.

Sunday 23.

Monday 24.

bones, of which they made no doubt but that the account they had heard was true.

On the 22d and 23d, having strong gales and hazy weather, I did not think it safe to put to sea; but on the 24th, though the wind was still variable, I got under sail, and plied to the northward within the reef, with a view to go out at a wider opening than that by which I had entered: in doing this, however, I was unexpectedly in the most imminent danger of striking on the rock; the master, whom I had ordered to keep continually sounding in the chains, suddenly called out, "two fathom." This alarmed me; for though I knew the ship drew at least fourteen feet, and that therefore it was impossible such a shoal should be under her keel, yet the master was either mistaken, or she went along the edge of a coral rock, many of which, in the neighbourhood of these islands, are as steep as a wall.

This harbour or bay is called by the natives OOPOA, and, taken in its greatest extent, it is capable of holding any number of shipping. It extends almost the whole length of the east side of the island, and is defended from the sea by the reef of coral rocks. The southermost opening of this reef or channel into the harbour, by which we entered, is little more than a cable's length wide; it lies off the eastermost point of the island, and may be known by another small woody island, which lies a little to the south-east of it, called by the people here OATARA. Between three and four miles north-west from this island lie two other islets, in the same direction as the reef, of which they are a part, called OPURURU and TAMOU; between these lies the other channel into the harbour, through which I went out, and which is a full quarter of a mile wide. Still farther to the north-west are some other small islands, near which, I am told, there is another small channel into the harbour; but this I knew only by report.

The principal refreshments that are to be procured at this part of the island are plantains, cocoa-nuts, yams, hogs, and fowls; the hogs and fowls, however, are scarce, and the country, where we saw it, is neither so populous nor so rich in produce as Otaheite,
or

or even Huaheine. Wood and water may also be procured here, but the water cannot conveniently be got at. 1769.
July.

We were now again at sea, without having received any interruption from the hostile inhabitants of Bolabola, whom, notwithstanding the fears of Tupia, we intended to visit. At four o'clock in the afternoon of the 25th, we were within a league of Otaha, which bore N. 77 W. To the northward of the south end of that island, on the east side of it, and something more than a mile from the shore, lie two small islands, called TOAHOUTU and WHENNUAIA, between which, Tupia says, there is a channel into a very good harbour, which lies within the reef, and appearances confirmed his report. Tuesd. 25.
Toahoutu.
Whennuaia.

As I discovered a broad channel between Otaha and Bolabola, I determined rather to go through it, than run to the northward of all; but the wind being right a-head, I got no ground.

Between five and six in the evening of the 26th, as I was standing to the northward, I discovered a small low island lying N. by W. or N. N. W. distant four or five leagues from Bolabola. We were told by Tupia, that the name of this island is TUBAI, that it produces nothing but cocoa-nuts, and is inhabited only by three families; though it is visited by the inhabitants of the neighbouring islands, who resort thither to catch fish, with which the coast abounds. Wedn. 26.
Tubai.

On the 27th, about noon, the Peak of Bolabola bore N. 25 W. and the north end of Otaha N. 80 W. distant three leagues. The wind continued contrary all this day, and the night following. On the 28th, at six in the morning, we were near the entrance of the harbour on the east side of OTAHA, which has been just mentioned; and finding that it might be examined without losing time, I sent away the master in the long boat, with orders to sound it; and, if the wind did not shift in our favour, to land upon the island, and traffic with the natives for such refreshments as were to be had. In this boat went Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, who landed upon the island, and before night purchased three hogs, twenty-one fowls, and as many yams and plantains as the boat would hold. Thursd. 27.
Friday 28.
Otaha.

1769.
July.

we thought a more useful refreshment even than pork, for they were boiled, and served to the ship's company as bread; and were now the more acceptable, as our bread was so full of vermin, that notwithstanding all possible care, we had sometimes twenty of them in our mouths at a time, every one of which tasted as hot as mustard. The island seemed to be more barren than Ulietea, but the produce was of the same kind. The people also exactly resembled those we had seen at the other islands; they were not numerous, but they flocked about the boat wherever she went, from all quarters, bringing with them whatever they had to sell. They paid the strangers, of whom they had received an account from Tupia, the same compliment which they used towards their own Kings, uncovering their shoulders, and wrapping their garments round their breasts; and were so solicitous to prevent its being neglected by any of their people, that a man was sent with them, who called out to every one he met, telling him what they were, and what he was to do.

In the mean time, I kept plying off and on, waiting for the boat's return. At half an hour after five, not seeing any thing of her, I fired a gun, and after it was dark hoisted a light. At half an hour after eight we heard the report of a musquet, which we answered with a gun, and soon after the boat came on board. The master reported, that the harbour was safe and commodious, with good anchorage from twenty-five feet to sixteen fathom water, clear ground.

Saturd. 29. As soon as the boat was hoisted in, I made sail to the northward, and at eight o'clock in the morning of the 29th, we were close under the Peak of Bolabola, which was high, rude, and craggy. As the island was altogether inaccessible in this part, and we found it impossible to weather it, we tacked and stood off, then tacked again, and after many trips did not weather the south end of it till twelve o'clock at night. At eight o'clock the next morning we discovered an island, which bore from us N. 63° W. distant about eight leagues: at the same time the Peak of Bolabola bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant three or four leagues. This island Tupia called MAURUA, and said that it was small, wholly surrounded by a reef, and without any harbour for shipping; but inhabited,

Maurua.

inhabited, and bearing the same produce as the neighbouring islands. The middle of it rises in a high round hill, that may be seen at the distance of ten leagues.

1769.
July.

When we were off Bolabola we saw but few people on the shore, and were told by Tupia, that many of the inhabitants were gone to Ulietea. In the afternoon we found ourselves nearly the length of the south end of Ulietea, and to windward of some harbours that lay on the west side of this island. Into one of these harbours, though we had before been ashore on the other side of the island, I intended to put, in order to stop a leak which we had sprung in the powder-room, and to take in more ballast, as I found the ship too light to carry sail upon a wind. As the wind was right against us, we plied off one of the harbours, and about three o'clock in the afternoon, on the 1st of August, we came to an anchor in the entrance of the channel leading into it, in fourteen fathom water, being prevented from working in by a tide which set very strong out. We then carried out the kedge-anchor, in order to warp into the harbour; but when this was done we could not trip the bower-anchor with all the purchase we could make; we were therefore obliged to lie still all night, and in the morning, when the tide turned, the ship going over the anchor, it tripped of itself, and we warped the ship into a proper birth with ease, and moored in twenty-eight fathom, with a sandy bottom. While this was doing, many of the natives came off to us with hogs, fowls, and plantains, which they parted with at an easy rate.

August.
Tuesday 1.

Wednesday 2.

When the ship was secured, I went on shore to look for a proper place to get ballast and water, both which I found in a very convenient situation.

This day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander spent on shore very much to their satisfaction; every body seemed to fear and respect them, placing in them, at the same time, the utmost confidence; behaving as if conscious that they possessed the power of doing them mischiefs without any propensity to make use of it. Men, women, and children crowded round them, and followed them wherever they went; but none of them were guilty of the least incivility; on the contrary, when-

1769.
August.

ever there happened to be dirt or water in the way, the men vied with each other to carry them over on their backs. They were conducted to the houses of the principal people, and were received in a manner altogether new: the people who followed them while they were on their way, rushed forward as soon as they came to a house, and went hastily in before them, leaving, however, a lane sufficiently wide for them to pass. When they entered, they found those who had preceded them ranged on each side of a long mat, which was spread upon the ground, and at the farther end of which sat the family. In the first house they entered they found some very young women, or children, dressed with the utmost neatness, who kept their station, expecting the strangers to come up to them and make them presents, which they did with the greatest pleasure; for prettier children or better dressed they had never seen. One of them was a girl about six years old; her gown, or upper garment, was red, a large quantity of plaited hair was wound round her head, the ornament to which they give the name of Tamou, and which they value more than any thing they possess. She sat at the upper end of a mat thirty feet long, upon which none of the spectators presumed to set a foot, notwithstanding the croud; and she leaned upon the arm of a well-looking woman about thirty, who was probably her nurse. Our gentlemen walked up to her, and, as soon as they approached, she stretched out her hand to receive the beads which they offered, and no princess in Europe could have done it with better grace.

The people were so much gratified by the presents which were made to these girls, that when Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander returned, they seemed attentive to nothing but how to oblige them; and in one of the houses they were, by order of the master, entertained with a dance, different from any that they had seen. It was performed by one man, who put upon his head a large cylindrical piece of wicker-work, or basket, about four feet long, and eight inches in diameter, which was faced with feathers, placed perpendicularly, with the tops bending forwards, and edged round with Shark's teeth, and the tail feathers of tropic birds:

birds : when he had put on this head-dress, which is called a Whow, he began to dance, moving slowly, and often turning his head, so as that the top of his high wicker cap described a circle, and sometimes throwing it so near the faces of the spectators as to make them start back ; this was held among them as a very good joke, and never failed to produce a peal of laughter, especially when it was played off upon one of the strangers.

1769.
August.

On the 3d, we went along the shore to the north-ward, which was in a direction opposite to that of the route Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander had taken the day before, with a design to purchase stock, which we always found the people more ready to part with, and at a more easy price, at their houses than at the market. In the course of our walk we met with a company of dancers, who detained us two hours, and during all that time afforded us great entertainment. The company consisted of two women dancers, and six men, with three drums ; we were informed by Tupia, that they were some of the most considerable people of the island, and that though they were continually going from place to place, they did not, like the little strolling companies of Otaheite, take any gratuity from the spectators. The women had upon their heads a considerable quantity of Tamou, or plaited hair, which was brought several times round the head, and adorned in many parts with the flowers of the cape jessamine, which were stuck in with much taste, and made a head-dress truly elegant. Their necks, shoulders, and arms were naked ; so were their breasts also, as low as the parting of the arm ; below that they were covered with black cloth, which set close to the body ; at the side of each breast, next the arm, was placed a small plume of black feathers, much in the same manner as our ladies now wear their nosegays, or Bouquets ; upon their hips rested a quantity of cloth, plaited very full, which reached up to the breast, and fell down below into long petticoats, which quite concealed their feet, and which they managed with as much dexterity as our opera dancers could have done ; the plaits above the waist were brown and white alternately, the petticoats below were all white.

1769.
August.

In this dress they advanced sideways in a measured step, keeping excellent time to the drums, which beat briskly and loud; soon after they began to shake their hips, giving the folds of cloth that lay upon them a very quick motion, which was in some degree continued through the whole dance, though the body was thrown into various postures, sometimes standing, sometimes sitting, and sometimes resting on their knees and elbows, the fingers also being moved at the same time with a quickness scarcely to be imagined. Much of the dexterity of the dancers, however, and the entertainment of the spectators, consisted in the wantonness of their attitudes and gestures, which was, indeed, such as exceeds all description.

One of these girls had in her ear three pearls; one of them was very large, but so foul that it was of little value: the other two were as big as a middling pea; these were clear, and of a good colour and shape, though spoiled by the drilling. Mr. Banks would fain have purchased them, and offered the owner any thing she would ask for them, but she could not be persuaded to part with them at any price: he tempted her with the value of four hogs, and whatever else she should chuse, but without success; and indeed they set a value upon their pearls very nearly equal to what they would fetch among us, except they could be procured before they are drilled.

Between the dances of the women, the men performed a kind of dramatic interlude, in which there was a dialogue as well as dancing; but we were not sufficiently acquainted with their language to understand the subject.

Friday 4.

On the 4th, some of our gentlemen saw a much more regular entertainment of the dramatic kind, which was divided into four acts.

Tupia had often told us that he had large possessions in this island, which had been taken away from him by the inhabitants of Bolabola, and he now pointed them out in the very bay where the ship was at anchor. Upon our going on shore, this was confirmed by the inhabitants, who shewed us several districts or Whennuas, which they acknowledged to be his right.

On

On the 5th, I received a present of three hogs, some fowls, several pieces of cloth, the largest we had seen, being 50 yards long, which they unfolded and displayed so as to make the greatest show possible; and a considerable quantity of plantains, cocoa-nuts, and other refreshments, from Opoony, the formidable King, or, in the language of the country, Earee rahie of Bolabola, with a message that he was at this time upon the island, and that the next day he intended to pay me a visit.

1769.1
August.

Satur. 5.

In the mean time Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went upon the hills, accompanied by several of the Indians, who conducted them, by excellent paths, to such a height, that they plainly saw the other side of the island, and the passage through which the ship had passed the reef between the little islands of Opururu and Tamou, when we landed upon it the first time. As they were returning, they saw the Indians exercising themselves at what they call Erowhaw, which is nothing more than pitching a kind of lance, headed with a hard wood, at a mark: in this amusement, though they seem very fond of it, they do not excel, for not above one in twelve struck the mark, which was the bole of a plantain tree, at about twenty yards distance.

On the 6th, we all staid at home, expecting the visit of the great King, but we were disappointed; we had, however, much more agreeable company, for he sent three very pretty girls to demand something in return for his present: perhaps he was unwilling to trust himself on board the ship, or perhaps he thought his messengers would procure a more valuable return for his hogs and poultry than he could himself; be that as it may, we did not regret his absence, nor his messengers their visit.

Sunday 6.

In the afternoon, as the great King would not come to us, we determined to go to the great King. As he was lord of the Bolabola men, the conquerors of this, and the terror of all the other islands, we expected to see a Chief young and vigorous, with an intelligent countenance, and an enterprizing spirit: we found, however, a poor feeble wretch, withered and decrepid, half blind with age, and so sluggish and stupid,

1769.
August.

that he appeared scarcely to have understanding enough left to know that it was probable we should be gratified either by hogs or women. He did not receive us sitting, or with any state or formality, as the other Chiefs had done: we made him our present, which he accepted, and gave a hog in return. We had learnt that his principal residence was at Otaha; and upon our telling him that we intended to go thither in our boats the next morning, and that we should be glad to have him along with us, he promised to be of the party.

Mond. 7.

Early in the morning, therefore, I set out both with the pinnace and long-boat for Otaha, having some of the gentlemen with me; and in our way we called upon Opoony, who was in his canoe, ready to join us. As soon as we landed at Otaha, I made him a present of an axe, which I thought might induce him to encourage his subjects to bring us such provision as we wanted; but in this we found ourselves sadly disappointed, for after staying with him till noon, we left him without being able to procure a single article. I then proceeded to the north point of the island, in the pinnace, having sent the long-boat another way. As I went along I picked up half a dozen hogs, as many fowls, and some plantains and yams. Having viewed and sketched the harbour on this side of the island, I made the best of my way back, with the long-boat, which joined me soon after it was dark; and about ten o'clock at night we got on board the ship.

In this excursion Mr. Banks was not with us; he spent the morning on board the ship, trading with the natives, who came off in their canoes, for provisions and curiosities; and in the afternoon he went on shore with his draughtsman, to sketch the dresses of the dancers which he had seen a day or two before. He found the company exactly the same, except that another woman had been added to it: the dancing also of the women was the same, but the interludes of the men were somewhat varied; he saw five or six performed, which were different from each other, and very much resembled the drama of our stage dances. The next day he went ashore again, with Dr. Solander, and they directed

Tues. 8.

1769.
August.

directed their course towards the dancing company, which, from the time of our second landing, had gradually moved about two leagues in their courses round the island. They saw more dancing and more interludes, the interludes still varying from each other: in one of them the performers, who were all men, were divided into two parties, which were distinguished from each other by the colour of their clothes, one being brown, and the other white. The brown party represented a master and servants, and the white party a company of thieves: the master gave a basket of meat to the rest of his party, with a charge to take care of it: the dance of the white party consisted of several expedients to steal it, and that of the brown party in preventing their success. After some time, those who had charge of the basket placed themselves round it, upon the ground, and leaning upon it, appeared to go to sleep; the others, improving this opportunity, came gently upon them, and lifting them up from the basket, carried off their prize: the sleepers soon after awaking, missed their basket, but presently fell a dancing, without any farther regarding their loss; so that the dramatic action of this dance was, according to the severest laws of criticism, one, and our lovers of simplicity would here have been gratified with an entertainment perfectly suited to the chastity of their taste.

On the 9th, having spent the morning in trading with the canoes, we took the opportunity of a breeze, which sprung up at east, and having stopped our leak, and got the fresh stock which we had purchased on board, we sailed out of the harbour. When we were sailing away, Tupia strongly urged me to fire a shot towards Bolabola, possibly as a mark of his resentment, and to shew the power of his new allies: in this I thought proper to gratify him, though we were seven leagues distant. Wednesd. 6.

While we were about these islands, we expended very little of the ship's provisions, and were plentifully supplied with hogs, fowls, plantains, and yams, which we hoped would have been of great use to us in our course

1769.
August.

course to the southward ; but the hogs would not eat European grain of any kind, pulse, or bread-dust, so that we could not preserve them alive ; and the fowls were all very soon seized with a disease that affected the head so, that they continued to hold it down between their legs till they died : much dependance therefore must not be placed in live stock taken on board at these places, at least not till a discovery is made of some food that the hogs will eat, and some remedy for the disease of the poultry.

Having been necessarily detained at Ulietea so long, by the carpenters in stopping our leak, we determined to give up our design of going on shore at Bolabola, especially as it appeared to be difficult of access.

Society
Islands.

To these six islands, Ulietea, Otaha, Bolabola, Huahaine, Tubai, and Maurua, as they lie contiguous to each other, I gave the names of SOCIETY ISLANDS, but did not think it proper to distinguish them separately by any other names than those by which they were known to the natives.

They are situated between the latitude of $16^{\circ} 10'$ and $16^{\circ} 55'$ S. and between the longitude of $150^{\circ} 17'$ and 152° W. from the meridian of Greenwich. Ulietea and Otaha lie within about two miles of each other, and are both inclosed within one reef of coral rocks, so that there is no passage for shipping between them. This reef forms several excellent harbours ; the entrances into them, indeed, are but narrow, yet when a ship is once in, nothing can hurt her. The harbours on the east side have been described already ; and on the west side of Ulietea, which is the largest of the two, there are three. The northermost, in which we lay, is called OHAMANENO : the channel leading into it is about a quarter of a mile wide, and lies between two low sandy islands, which are the northermost on this side ; between, or just within the two islands, there is good anchorage in twenty-eight fathom, soft ground. This harbour, though small, is preferable to the others, because it is situated in the most fertile part of the island, and where fresh water is easily to be got. The other two harbours lie to the southward of this, and not far from the south end of the island : in both of them there is good anchorage, with ten, twelve, and

and fourteen fathom. They are easily known by three small woody islands at their entrance. The southernmost of these two harbours lies within, and to the southward of the southernmost of these islands; and the other lies between the two northernmost. I was told that there were more harbours at the south end of this island, but I did not examine whether the report was true.

1769.
August.

Otaha affords two very good harbours, one on the east side, and the other on the west. That on the east side is called Ohamene, and has been mentioned already; the other is called OHERURUA, and lies about the middle of the south-west side of the island; it is pretty large, and affords good anchorage in twenty and twenty-five fathom, nor is there any want of fresh water. The breach in the reef, that forms a channel into this harbour, is about a quarter of a mile broad, and like all the rest is very steep on both sides; in general there is no danger here but what is visible.

The island of Bolabola lies N. W. and by W. from Otaha, distant about four leagues; it is surrounded by a reef of rocks, and several small islands, in compass together about eight leagues. I was told, that on the south-west side of the island there is a channel through the reef into a very good harbour, but I did not think it worth while to examine it, for the reasons that have been just assigned. This island is rendered very remarkable by a high craggy hill, which appears to be almost perpendicular, and terminates at the top in two peaks, one higher than the other.

The land of Ulieta and Otaha is hilly, broken, and irregular, except on the sea coast, yet the hills look green and pleasant, and are in many places clothed with wood. The several particulars in which these islands and their inhabitants differ from what we had observed at Otaheite, have been mentioned in the course of the narrative.

We pursued our course without any event worthy of note till the 13th, about noon, when we saw land Sunday 13. bearing S. E. which Tupia told us was an island called OHETEROA. About six in the evening, we were Oheteroa. within two or three leagues of it, upon which I shortened sail, and stood off and on all night: the next Monday 14. morning

1769.
August.

morning stood in for the land. We ran to the leeward of the island, keeping close in shore, and saw several of the natives, tho' in no great numbers, upon the beach. At nine o'clock I sent Mr. Gore, one of my lieutenants, in the pinnace, to endeavour to land upon the island, and learn from the natives whether there was anchorage in a bay then in sight, and what land lay further to the southward. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander accompanied Mr. Gore in this expedition, and as they thought Tupia might be useful, they took him with them.

As the boat approached the shore, those on board perceived the natives to be armed with long lances ; as they did not intend to land until they got round a point which ran out a little distance, they stood along the coast, and the natives therefore very probably thought they were afraid of them. They had now got together to the number of about sixty, and all of them sat down upon the shore, except two, who were dispatched forward to observe the motions of those in the boat. These men, after walking a-breast of her for some time, at length leaped into the water, and swam towards her, but were soon left behind ; two more then appeared, and attempted to board her in the same manner, but they also were soon left behind ; a fifth man then ran forward alone, and having got a good way a-head of the boat, before he took to the water, easily reached her. Mr. Banks urged the officer to take him in, thinking it a good opportunity to get the confidence and good will of a people, who then certainly looked upon them as enemies, but he obstinately refused ; this man therefore was left behind like the others, and so was a sixth, who followed him.

When the boat had got round the point, she perceived that all her followers had desisted from the pursuit : she now opened a large bay, at the bottom of which appeared another body of men, armed with long lances like the first. Here our people prepared to land, and pushed towards the shore, a canoe at the same time putting off to meet them. As soon as it came near them, they lay upon their oars, and calling out to them, told them that they were friends, and that if they would come up, they would give them nails, which
were

1769.
August.

were held up for them to see : after some hesitation they came up to the boat's stern, and took some nails that were offered them, with great seeming satisfaction ; but in less than a minute they appeared to have formed a design of boarding the boat, and making her their prize : three of them suddenly leaped into it, and the others brought up the canoe, which the motion in quitting her had thrown off a little, manifestly with a design to follow their associates, and support them in their attempt. The first that boarded the boat, entered close to Mr. Banks, and instantly snatched his powder-horn out of his pocket ; Mr. Banks seized it, and with some difficulty wrenched it out of his hand, at the same time pressing against his breast, in order to force him over-board, but he was too strong for him, and kept his place ; the officer then snapped his piece, but it missed fire, upon which he ordered some of the people to fire over their heads ; two pieces were accordingly discharged, upon which they all instantly leaped into the water ; one of the people, either from cowardice or cruelty, or both, levelled a third piece at one of them as he was swimming away, and the ball grazed his forehead ; happily, however, the wound was very slight, for he recovered the canoe, and stood up in her, as active and vigorous as the rest. The canoe immediately stood in for the shore, where a great number of people, not less than two hundred, were now assembled. The boat also pushed in, but found the land guarded all round with a shoal, upon which the sea broke with a considerable surf ; it was therefore thought advisable by the officer to proceed along the shore in search of a more convenient landing-place : in the mean time the people on board saw the canoe go on shore, and the natives gather eagerly round her to enquire the particulars of what had happened. Soon after, a single man ran along the shore, armed with his lance, and when he came a-breast of the boat, he began to dance, brandish his weapon, and call out in a very shrill tone, which Tupia said was a defiance from the people. The boat continued to row along the shore, and the champion followed it, repeating his defiance by his voice and his gestures ; but no better landing-place being found than that where the canoe had

1769.
August.

had put the natives on shore, the officer turned back with a view to attempt it there, hoping, that if it should not be practicable, the people would come to a conference, either on the shoals or in their canoes, and that a treaty of peace might be concluded with them:

As the boat rowed slowly along the shore back again, another champion came down, shouting defiance, and brandishing his lance; his appearance was more formidable than that of the other, for he wore a large cap made of the tail-feathers of the tropic bird, and his body was covered with stripes of different coloured cloth, yellow, red, and brown. This gentleman also danced, but with much more nimbleness and dexterity than the first; our people therefore, considering his agility and his dress, distinguished him by the name of HARLEQUIN. Soon after a more grave and elderly man came down to the beach, and haling the people in the boat, enquired who they were, and from whence they came? Tupia answered in their own language, "from Otaheite." The three natives then walked peaceably along the shore till they came to a shoal, upon which a few people were collected; here they stopped, and after a short conference, they all began to pray very loud; Tupia made his responses, but continued to tell us that they were not our friends. When their prayer, or, as they call it, their Poorah, was over, our people entered into a parley with them, telling them, that if they would lay by their lances and their clubs, for some had one and some the other, they would come on shore, and trade with them for whatever they would bring: they agreed, but it was only upon condition that we would leave behind us our musquets: this was a condition which, however equitable it might appear, could not be complied with, nor indeed would it have put the two parties upon an equality, except their numbers had been equal. Here then the negociation seemed to be at an end; but in a little time they ventured to come nearer to the boat, and at last came near enough to trade, which they did very fairly, for a small quantity of their cloth, and some of their weapons; but as they gave our people no hope of provisions, nor indeed any thing else, except they would venture through a narrow channel to the shore, which,

which, all circumstances considered, they did not think it prudent to do, they put off the boat and left them.

1769.
August.

With the ship and the boat we had now made the circuit of the island, and finding that there was neither harbour nor anchorage about it, and that the hostile disposition of the people would render landing impracticable, without bloodshed, I determined not to attempt it, having no motive that could justify the risk of life.

The bay which the boat entered lies on the west side of the island, the bottom was foul and rocky, but the water so clear that it could plainly be seen at the depth of five and twenty fathom, which is one hundred and fifty feet.

This island is situated in the latitude of $22^{\circ} 27'$ S. and in the longitude of $150^{\circ} 47'$ W. from the meridian of Greenwich. It is thirteen miles in circuit, and rather high than low, but neither populous nor fertile, in proportion to the other islands that we had seen in these seas. The chief produce seems to be the tree of which they make their weapons, called in their language Etoa; many plantations of it were seen along the shore, which is not surrounded, like the neighbouring islands, by a reef.

The people seemed to be lusty and well-made, rather browner than those we had left: under their arm-pits they had black marks about as broad as the hand, the edges of which formed not a strait but an indented line; they had also circles of the same colour, but not so broad, round their arms and legs, but were not marked on any other part of the body.

Their dress was very different from any that we had seen before, as well as the cloth of which it was made. The cloth was of the same materials as that which is worn in the other islands, and most of that which was seen by our people was dyed of a bright but deep yellow, and covered on the outside with a composition like varnish, which was either red, or of a dark lead-colour; over this ground it was again painted in stripes of many different patterns, with wonderful regularity, in the manner of our striped silks in England; the cloth was painted red, and striped with black, and that which
was

1769.
August.

was painted lead-colour with white. Their habit was a short jacket of this cloth, which reached about as low as their knees; it was of one piece, and had no other making than a hole in the middle of it, stitched round with long stitches, in which it differed from all that we had seen before; through this hole the head was put, and what hung down was confined to their bodies by a piece of yellow cloth or sash, which passing round the neck behind, was crossed upon the breast, and then collected round the waist like a belt, which passed over another belt of red cloth, so that they made a very gay and warlike appearance. Some had caps of the feathers of the tropic bird, which have been before described, and some had a piece of white or lead-coloured cloth wound about the head, like a small turban, which our people thought more becoming.

Their arms were long lances, made of the Etoa, the wood of which is very hard; they were well polished and sharpened at one end; some were near twenty feet long, though not more than three fingers thick. They had also a weapon which was both club and pike, made of the same wood, about seven feet long; this also was well polished, and sharpened at one end into a broad point. As a guard against these weapons, when they attack each other, they have mats folded up many times, which they place under their clothes from the neck to the waist; the weapons themselves indeed are capable of much less mischief than those of the same kind which we saw at the other islands, for the lances were there pointed with the sharp bone of the sting-ray that is called the sting, and the pikes were of much greater weight. The other things that we saw here were all superior in their kind to any we had seen before; the cloth was of a better colour in the dye, and painted with greater neatness and taste; the clubs were better cut and polished, and the canoe, though a small one, was very rich in ornament, and the carving was executed in a better manner; among other decorations peculiar to this canoe was a line of small white feathers, which hung from the head and stern on the outside, and which, when we saw them, were thoroughly wetted by the spray.

Tupia

1769.
August.

Tupia told us, that there were several islands lying at different distances and in different directions from this, between the south and the north-west; and that at the distance of three days sail to the north-east there was an island called MANUA, Bird-island: he seemed, however, most desirous that we should sail to the westward, and described several islands in that direction, which he said he had visited: he told us that he had been ten or twelve days in going thither, and thirty in coming back, and that the Pahie in which he had made the voyage, sailed much faster than the ship: reckoning his Pahie therefore to go at the rate of forty leagues a-day, which, from my own observation, I have great reason to think these boats will do, it would make four hundred leagues in ten days, which I compute to be the distance of Boscawen and Keppel's Islands, discovered by Captain Wallis, westward of Ulietea, and therefore think it very probable that they were the islands he had visited. The farthest island that he knew any thing of to the southward, he said, lay at the distance of about two days sail from Oteroah, and was called Mou'rou; but he said that his father had told him there were islands to the southward of that: upon the whole, I was determined to stand southward in search of a continent, but to spend no time in searching for islands, if we did not happen to fall in with them during our course.

A N

A C C O U N T

O F A

VOYAGE round the WORLD.

B O O K II.

C H A P. I.

The Passage from Oteroa to New Zealand; Incidents which happened on going a-shore there, and while the Ship lay in Poverty-Bay.

1769.
August.

Tuesday 15.
Friday 25.

WE sailed from Oteroa on the 15th of August, and on Friday the 25th we celebrated the anniversary of our leaving England, by taking a Cheshire cheese from a locker, where it had been carefully treasured up for this occasion, and tapping a cask of porter, which proved to be very good, and in excellent order. On the 29th, one of the sailors got so drunk, that the next morning he died: we thought at first that he could not have come honestly by the liquor, but we afterwards learned that the boatswain, whose mate he was, had, in mere good-nature, given him part of a bottle of rum.

Wednes. 30.

On the 30th we saw the comet; at one o'clock in the morning it was a little above the horizon in the eastern part of the heavens; at about half an hour after four it passed the meridian, and its tail subtended an angle

angle of forty-two degrees. Our latitude was $38^{\circ} 20'$ S. our longitude, by log, $147^{\circ} 6'$ W. and the variation of the needle, by the azimuth, $7^{\circ} 9'$ E. Among others that observed the comet was Tupia, who instantly cried out, that as soon as it should be seen by the people of Bolabola, they would kill the inhabitants of Ulietea, who would with the utmost precipitation fly to the mountains.

1769.
August.

On the 1st of September, being in the latitude of $40^{\circ} 22'$ S. and longitude $174^{\circ} 29'$ W. and there not being any signs of land, with a heavy sea from the westward, and strong gales, I wore, and stood back to the northward, fearing that we might receive such damage in our sails and rigging, as would hinder the prosecution of the voyage.

September.
Friday 1.

On the next day, there being strong gales to the westward, I brought to, with the ship's head to the northward; but in the morning of the 3d, the wind being more moderate, we loosened the reef of the main-sail, set the top-sails, and plied to the westward.

Saturday 2.

Sunday 3.

We continued our course till the 19th, when our latitude being 29° and our longitude $159^{\circ} 29'$, we observed the variation to be $8^{\circ} 32'$ E. On the 24th, being in latitude $33^{\circ} 18'$, longitude $162^{\circ} 51'$, we observed a small piece of sea-weed, and a piece of wood covered with barnacles: the variation here was $10^{\circ} 48'$ E.

Tuesd. 19.

Sunday 24.

On the 27th, being in latitude $28^{\circ} 59'$, longitude $169^{\circ} 5'$, we saw a seal asleep upon the water, and several bunches of sea-weed. The next day we saw more

Wed. 27.

sea-weed in bunches, and on the 29th, a bird, which we thought a land-bird; it somewhat resembled a snipe, but had a short bill. On the 1st of October, we saw birds innumerable, and another seal asleep upon the water; it is a general opinion that seals never go out of soundings, or far from land, but those that we saw in these seas prove the contrary. Rock-weed is, however, a certain indication that land is not far distant.

Thursd. 28.

Friday 29.

The next day, it being calm, we hoisted out the boat to try whether there was a current, but found none. Our latitude was $37^{\circ} 10'$, longitude $172^{\circ} 54'$ W. On the 3d, being in latitude $36^{\circ} 56'$, longitude $173^{\circ} 27'$, we took up more sea-weed, and another piece of wood covered

October.

Sunday 1.

The next day, it being calm, we hoisted out the boat to try whether there was a current, but found none.

Mond. 2.

Our latitude was $37^{\circ} 10'$, longitude $172^{\circ} 54'$ W. On the 3d, being in latitude $36^{\circ} 56'$, longitude $173^{\circ} 27'$, we took up more sea-weed, and another piece of wood covered

Tuesd. 3.

1769.
October.
Wed. 4.

vered with barnacles. The next day we saw two more seals, and a brown bird, about as big as a raven, with some white feathers under the wing. Mr. Gore told us, that birds of this kind were seen in great numbers about Falkland's Islands, and our people gave them the name of Port-Fagmont hens.

Thursd. 5.

On the 5th, we thought the water changed colour, but, upon casting the lead, had no ground with 180 fathom. In the evening of this day, the variation was $12^{\circ} 50'$ E. and while we were going pipe leagues it encreased to $14^{\circ} 2'$.

Friday 6.

On the next day, Friday, October 6th, we saw land from the mast-head, bearing W. by N. and stood directly for it; in the evening it could just be discerned from the deck, and appeared large. The variation this day was, by azimuth and amplitude, $15^{\circ} 4\frac{1}{2}'$ E. and, by observation made of the sun and moon, the longitude of the ship appeared to be $180^{\circ} 55'$ W. and by the medium of this and subsequent observations, there appeared to be an error in the ship's account of longitude, during her run from Otaheite, of $3^{\circ} 16'$, she being so much to the westward of the longitude resulting from the log. At midnight, I brought to and sounded, but had no ground with one hundred and seventy fathom.

Saturday 7.

On the 7th, it fell calm, we therefore approached the land slowly; and in the afternoon, when a breeze sprung up, we were still distant seven or eight leagues. It appeared still larger as it was more distinctly seen, with four or five ranges of hills rising one over the other, and a chain of mountains above all, which appeared to be of an enormous height. This land became the subject of much eager conversation; but the general opinion seemed to be, that we had found the *Terra australis incognita*. About five o'clock, we saw the opening of a bay, which seemed to run pretty far inland, upon which we hauled our wind and stood in for it; we also saw smoke ascending from different places on shore. When night came on, however, we kept plying off and on till day-light, when we found ourselves to the leeward of the bay, the wind being at north. We could now perceive that the hills were clothed

1769.
October.

clothed with wood, and that some of the trees in the vallies were very large. By noon, we fetched in with the south-west point, but not being able to weather it, tacked and stood off: at this time we saw several canoes standing cross the bay, which, in a little time, made to shore, without seeming to take the least notice of the ship; we also saw some houses, which appeared to be small, but neat; and near one of them a considerable number of the people collected together, who were sitting upon the beach, and who, we thought, were the same that we had seen in the canoes. Upon a small peninsula, at the north-east head, we could plainly perceive a pretty high and regular paling, which inclosed the whole top of a hill; this was also the subject of much speculation, some supposing it to be a park of deer, others an inclosure for oxen and sheep. About four o'clock in the afternoon, we anchored on the north-west side of the bay, before the entrance of a small river, in ten fathom water, with a fine sandy bottom, and at about half a league from the shore. The sides of the bay are white cliffs, of a great height; the middle is low land, with hills gradually rising behind, one towering above another, and terminating in the chain of mountains, which appeared to be far inland.

In the evening I went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, with the pinnace and yawl, and a party of men. We landed a-breast of the ship, on the east side of the river, which was here about forty yards broad; but seeing some natives on the west side, whom I wished to speak with, and finding the river not fordable, I ordered the yawl in to carry us over, and left the pinnace at the entrance. When we came near the place where the people were assembled, they all ran away; however, we landed, and leaving four boys to take care of the yawl, we walked up to some huts which were about two or three hundred yards from the water-side. When we had got some distance from the boat, four men, armed with long lances, rushed out of the woods, and running up to attack the boat, would certainly have cut her off, if the people in the pinnace had not discovered them, and called to the boys to drop down the

1769.
October.

stream : the boys instantly obeyed ; but being closely pursued by the Indians, the cockswain of the pinnace, who had the charge of the boats, fired a musquet over their heads ; at this they stopped and looked round them, but in a few minutes renewed the pursuit, brandishing their lances in a threatening manner ; the cockswain then fired a second musquet over their heads, but of this they took no notice ; and one of them lifting up his spear to dart it at the boat, another piece was fired, which shot him dead. When he fell, the other three stood motionless for some minutes, as if petrified with astonishment ; as soon as they recovered they went back, dragging after them the dead body, which, however, they soon left, that it might not incumber their flight. At the report of the first musquet we drew together, having straggled to a little distance from each other, and made the best of our way back to the boat, and, crossing the river, we soon saw the Indian lying dead upon the ground. Upon examining the body we found that he had been shot through the heart. He was a man of middle size and stature, his complexion was brown, but not very dark, and one side of his face was tattowed in spiral lines of a very regular figure ; he was covered with a fine cloth, of a manufacture altogether new to us, and it was tied on exactly according to the representation in Valentyn's account of Abel Tasman's Voyage, hereafter given ; his hair also was tied in a knot on the top of his head, but had no feather in it. We returned immediately to the ship, where we could hear the people on shore talking with great earnestness, and in a very loud tone, probably about what had happened, and what should be done.

Mond. 9. In the morning, we saw several of the natives where they had been seen the night before, and some walking with a quick pace towards the place where we had landed, most of them unarmed, but three or four with long pikes in their hands. As I was desirous to establish an intercourse with them, I ordered three boats to be manned with seamen and marines, and proceeded towards the shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, the other gentlemen, and Tupia ; about fifty of them seemed to wait for our landing, on the opposite

1769.
October.

opposite side of the river, which we thought a sign of fear, and seated themselves upon the ground. At first, therefore, myself, with only Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, landed from the little boat, and advanced towards them; but we had not proceeded many paces before they all started up, and every man produced either a long pike, or a small weapon of green talc, extremely well polished, about a foot long, and thick enough to weigh four or five pounds. Tupia called to them in the language of Otaheite, but they answered only by flourishing their weapons, and making signs to us to depart. A musquet was then fired wide of them, and the ball struck the water, the river being still between us; they saw the effect, and desisted from their threats, but we thought it prudent to retreat till the marines could be landed: this was soon done, and they marched, with a jack carried before them, to a little bank, about fifty yards from the water side; here they were drawn up, and I again advanced, with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander; Tupia, Mr. Green, and Mr. Monkhouse being with us. Tupia was again directed to speak with them, and it was with great pleasure that we perceived he was perfectly understood, he and the natives speaking only different dialects of the same language. He told them that we wanted provision and water, and would give them iron in exchange, the properties of which he explained as well as he was able. They were willing to trade, and desired that we would come over to them for that purpose; to this we consented, provided they would lay by their arms, which, however, they could by no means be persuaded to do. During this conversation, Tupia warned us to be upon our guard, for that they were not our friends. We then pressed them, in our turn, to come over to us; and at last one of them stripped himself, and swam over without his arms; he was almost immediately followed by two more, and soon after by most of the rest, to the number of twenty or thirty; but these brought their arms with them. We made them all presents of iron and beads, but they seemed to set little value upon either, particularly the iron, not having the least idea of its use; so that we got nothing in return but a few feathers. They offered,

1769.
October.

ed, indeed, to exchange their arms for ours, and, when we refused, made many attempts to snatch them out of our hands. As soon as they came over, Tupia repeated his declaration, that they were not our friends; and again warned us to be upon our guard. Their attempts to snatch our weapons, therefore, did not succeed; and we gave them to understand by Tupia, that we should be obliged to kill them if they offered any farther violence. In a few minutes, however, Mr. Green happening to turn about, one of them snatched away his hanger, and, retiring to a little distance, waved it round his head, with a shout of exultation: the rest now began to be extremely insolent, and we saw more coming to join them from the opposite side of the river. It was therefore become necessary to repress them, and Mr. Banks fired at the man who had taken the hanger with small shot, at the distance of about fifteen yards: when the shot struck him he ceased his cry; but, instead of returning the hanger, continued to flourish it over his head, at the same time slowly retreating to a greater distance. Mr. Monkhouse seeing this, fired at him with ball, and he instantly dropped. Upon this the main body, who had retired to a rock in the middle of the river upon the first discharge, began to return; two that were near to the man who had been killed, ran up to the body, one seized his weapon of green talc, and the other endeavoured to secure the hanger, which Mr. Monkhouse had but just time to prevent. As all that had retired to the rock were now advancing, three of us discharged our pieces, loaded only with small shot, upon which they swam back for the shore; and we perceived, upon their landing, that two or three of them were wounded. They retired slowly up the country, and we re-embarked in our boats.

As we had unhappily experienced that nothing was to be done with these people at this place, and finding the water in the river to be salt, I proceeded in the boats round the head of the bay, in search of fresh water, and with a design, if possible, to surprise some of the natives, and take them on board, where, by kind treatment and presents, I might obtain their friendship,

and

and by their means establish an amicable correspondence with their countrymen.

1769.
October.

To my great regret, I found no place where I could land, a dangerous surf every where beating upon the shore ; but I saw two canoes coming in from the sea, one under sail, and the other worked with paddles. I thought this a favourable opportunity to get some of the people into my possession without mischief, as those in the canoes were probably fishermen, and without arms, and I had three boats full of men. I therefore disposed the boats so, as most effectually to intercept them in their way to the shore. The people in the canoe that was paddled perceived us so soon, that by making to the nearest land with their utmost strength, they escaped us ; the other sailed on till she was in the midst of us, without discerning what we were ; but the moment she discovered us, the people on board struck their sail, and took to their paddles, which they plied so briskly that she out-ran the boat. They were, however, within hearing, and Tupia called out to them to come along side, and promised for us that they should come to no hurt ; they chose, however, rather to trust to their paddles than our promises, and continued to make from us with all their power. I then ordered a musquet to be fired over their heads, as the least exceptionable expedient to accomplish my design, hoping it would either make them surrender or leap into the water. Upon the discharge of the piece they ceased paddling, and all of them, being seven in number, began to strip, as we imagined to jump over board ; but it happened otherwise. They immediately formed a resolution not to fly, but to fight ; and, when the boat came up, they began the attack with their paddles, and with stones and other offensive weapons that were in the canoe, so vigorously, that we were obliged to fire upon them in our own defence ; four were unhappily killed, and the other three, who were boys, the eldest about nineteen, and the youngest about eleven, instantly leaped into the water ; the eldest swam with great vigour, and resisted the attempts of our people to take him into the boat, by every effort that he could make ; he was, however, at last overpowered,

1769.
October.

overpowered, and the other two were taken up with less difficulty. I am conscious that the feeling of every reader of humanity will censure me, for having fired upon these unhappy people; and it is impossible that, upon a calm review, I should approve it myself. They certainly did not deserve death, for not choosing to confide in my promises, or not consenting to come on board my boat, even if they had apprehended no danger; but the nature of my service required me to obtain a knowledge of their country, which I could no otherwise effect than by forcing my way into it in a hostile manner, or gaining admission through the confidence and goodwill of the people. I had already tried the power of presents without effect; and I was now prompted, by my desire to avoid further hostilities, to get some of them on board, as the only method left of convincing them that we intended them no harm, and had it in our power to contribute to their gratification and convenience. Thus far my intentions certainly were not criminal; and though in the contest, which I had not the least reason to expect, our victory might have been complete without so great an expence of life, yet in such situations, when the command to fire has been given, no man can restrain its excess, or prescribe its effect.

As soon as the poor wretches whom we had taken out of the water were in the boat, they squatted down, expecting, no doubt, instantly to be put to death: we made haste to convince them of the contrary, by every method in our power; we furnished them with clothes, and gave them every other testimony of kindness, that could remove their fears and engage their good-will. Those who are acquainted with human nature will not wonder, that the sudden joy of these young savages, at being unexpectedly delivered from the fear of death, and kindly treated by those whom they supposed would have been their instant executioners, surmounted their concern for their friends they had lost, and was strongly expressed in their countenances and behaviour. Before we reached the ship, their suspicions and fears being wholly removed, they appeared to be not only reconciled to their situation but in high spirits; and upon being offered some bread when they came on board,

1769.
October.

board, they devoured it with a voracious appetite. They answered and asked many questions, with great appearance of pleasure and curiosity, and when our dinner came, they expressed an inclination to taste every thing that they saw ; they seemed best pleased with the salt pork, though we had other provisions upon the table. At sun-set they eat another meal with great eagerness, each devouring a large quantity of bread, and drinking above a quart of water. We then made them beds upon the lockers, and they went to sleep with great seeming content. In the night, however, the tumult of their minds having subsided, and given way to reflection, they sighed often and loud. Tupia, who was always upon the watch to comfort them, got up, and, by soothing and encouragement, made them not only easy but cheerful ; their cheerfulness was encouraged so that they sung a song with a degree of taste that surprised us ; the tune was solemn and slow, like those of our Psalms, containing many notes and semi-tones. Their countenances were intelligent and expressive, and the middlemost, who seemed to be about fifteen, had an openness in his aspect, and an ease in his deportment, which were very striking : we found that the two eldest were brothers, and that their names were TAAHOURANGE and KOIKERANGE ; the name of the youngest was MARAGOVETE. As we were returning to the ship, after having taken these boys into the boat, we picked up a large piece of pumice-stone floating upon the water ; a sure sign that there either is or has been a volcano in this neighbourhood.

In the morning, they all seemed to be cheerful, and eat another enormous meal ; after this we dressed them, and adorned them with bracelets, anklets, and necklaces, after their own fashion, and the boat being hoisted out, they were told that we were going to set them a-shore ; this produced a transport of joy ; but upon perceiving that we made towards our first landing place, near the river, their countenances changed, and they entreated with great earnestness that they might not be set a-shore at that place, because, they said, it was inhabited by their enemies, who would kill them and eat them. This was a great disappointment

Tuesday 10.

1769.
October.

ment to me, because I hoped the report and appearance of the boys would procure a favourable reception for ourselves. I had already sent an officer on shore with the marines and a party of men to cut wood, and I was determined to land near the place; not, however, to abandon the boys, if when we got ashore they should be unwilling to leave us, but to send a boat with them in the evening to that part of the bay to which they pointed, and which they called their home. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia were with me, and upon our landing with the boys, and crossing the river, they seemed at first to be unwilling to leave us; but at length they suddenly changed their minds, and, though not without a manifest struggle and some tears, they took their leave. When they were gone, we proceeded along a swamp, with a design to shoot some ducks, of which we saw great plenty, and four of the marines attended us, walking a-breast of us upon a bank that overlooked the country. After we had advanced about a mile, these men called out to us, and told us, that a large body of the Indians was in sight, and advancing at a great rate. Upon receiving this intelligence, we drew together, and resolved to make the best of our way to the boats. We had scarcely begun to put this into execution when the three Indian boys started suddenly from some bushes, where they had concealed themselves, and again claimed our protection; we readily received them, and repairing to the beach as the clearest place, we walked briskly towards the boats. The Indians were in two bodies, one ran along the bank, which had been quitted by the marines, the other fetched a compass by the swamp, so that we could not see them. When they perceived that we had formed into one body they slackened their pace, but still followed us in a gentle walk. That they slackened their pace, was for us, as well as for them, a fortunate circumstance; for when we came to the side of the river, where we expected to find the boats that were to carry us over to the wooders, we found the pinnace at least a mile from her station, having been sent to pick up a bird, which had been shot by the officer on shore; and the little boat was obliged to make three trips before we could all get over to the
rest

1769.
October.

rest of the party. As soon as we were drawn up on the other side, the Indians came down, not in a body as we expected, but by two or three at a time, all armed, and in a short time their number increased to about two hundred. As we now despaired of making peace with them, seeing that the dread of our small arms did not keep them at a distance, and that the ship was too far off to reach the place with a shot, we resolved to re-embark, lest our stay should embroil us in another quarrel, and cost more of the Indians their lives; we therefore advanced towards the pinnace, which was now returning, when one of the boys suddenly cried out, that his uncle was among the people who had marched down to us, and desired us to stay and talk with them. We complied, and a parley immediately commenced between them and Tupia; during which the boys held up every thing we had given them, as tokens of our kindness and liberality; but neither would either of the boys swim over to them, or any of them to the boys. The body of the man, who had been killed the day before, still lay exposed upon the beach; the boys seeing it lie very near us, went up to it, and covered it with some of the clothes that we had given them; and soon after a single man, unarmed, who proved to be the uncle of Maragovete, the youngest of the boys, swam over to us, bringing in his hand a green branch, which we supposed, as well here as at Otahete, to be an emblem of peace. We received his branch by the hands of Tupia, to whom he gave it, and made him many presents; we also invited him to go on board the ship, but he declined it; we therefore left him, and expected that his nephew and the two other young Indians would have stayed with him, but, to our great surprise, they chose rather to go with us. As soon as we had retired, he went and gathered another green branch, and with this in his hand he approached the dead body which the youth had covered with part of his clothes, walking sideways, with many ceremonies; and then throwing it towards him; when this was done, he returned to his companions, who had sat down upon the sand to observe the issue of his negotiation. They immediately gathered round him, and continued in a body
above

1769.
October

above an hour, without seeming to take any farther notice of us. We were more curious than they, and observing them with our glasses from on board the ship, we saw some of them cross the river upon a kind of raft, or catamarine, and four of them carry off the dead body which had been covered by the boy, and over which his uncle had performed the ceremony of the branch, upon a kind of bier, between four men; the other body was still suffered to remain where it had been first left.

After dinner, I directed Tupia to ask the boys, if they had now any objection to going ashore where we had left their uncle, the body having been carried off which we understood was a ratification of peace? They said they had not: and the boat being ordered, they went into it with great alacrity. When the boat, in which I had sent two midshipmen, came to land, they went willingly ashore; but soon after she put off they returned to the rocks, and, wading into the water, earnestly entreated to be taken on board again; but the people in the boat, having positive orders to leave them, could not comply. We were very attentive to what happened on shore, and keeping a constant watch with our glasses, we saw a man pass the river upon another raft, and fetch them to a place where forty or fifty of the natives were assembled, who closed round them, and continued in the same place till sun-set: upon looking again, when we saw them in motion, we could plainly distinguish our three prisoners, who separated themselves from the rest, came down to the beach, having waved their hands three times towards the ship, ran nimbly back and joined their companions, who walked leisurely away towards that part which the boys had pointed to as their dwelling-place; we had therefore the greatest reason to believe that no mischief would happen to them, especially as we perceived that they went off in the clothes we had given them.

After it was dark, loud voices were heard on shore in the bottom of the bay, as usual, of which we could never learn the meaning.

CHAP. II.

1769.
October.

A Description of Poverty-Bay, and the Face of the adjacent Country. The Range from thence to Cape Turnagain, and back to Tolaga; with some Account of the People and the Country, and several Incidents that happened on that Part of the Coast.

THE next morning, at six o'clock, we weighed, Wednesd. 11.
and stood away from this unfortunate and inhospitable place, to which I gave the name of POVERTY-BAY, and which by the natives is called T'ONEROA, or Long Sand, as it did not afford us a single article that we wanted, except a little wood. It lies in latitude $38^{\circ} 42'$ S. and longitude $181^{\circ} 36'$ W. it is in the form of an horse shoe, and is known by an island lying close under the north-east point. The two points which form the entrance are high, with steep white cliffs, and lie a league and a half or two leagues from each other, N. E. by E. and S. W. by W. the depth of water in the bay is from twelve to five fathom, with a sandy bottom and good anchorage; but the situation is open to the wind between the south and east; boats can go in and out of the river at any time of the tide in fine weather; but as there is a bar at the entrance, no boat can go either in or out when the sea runs high. The best place to attempt it is on the north-east side, and it is there practicable when it is not so in any other part. The shore of the bay, a little within its entrance, is a low flat sand, behind which, at a small distance, the face of the country is finely diversified by hills and vallies, all clothed with wood and covered with verdure. The country also appears to be well inhabited, especially in the vallies leading up from the bay, where we daily saw smoke rising in clouds one behind another to a great distance, till the view terminated in mountains of a stupendous height.

The south-west point of the bay I named YOUNG NICK'S HEAD, after Nicholas Young, the boy who first saw the land: at noon it bore N. W. by W. distant about three or four leagues, and we were then about three miles from the shore. The main land
extended

1769.
October.

extended from N. E. by N. to S. and I proposed to follow the direction of the coast to the southward as far as the latitude of 40 or 41, and then, if I met with no encouragement to proceed farther, to return to the northward.

In the afternoon we lay becalmed, which the people on shore perceiving, several canoes put off, and came within less than a quarter of a mile of the vessel, but could not be persuaded to come nearer, though Tupia exerted all the powers of his lungs and his eloquence upon the occasion, shouting, and promising that they should not be hurt. Another canoe was now seen coming from Poverty-Bay, with only four people on board, one of whom we well remembered to have seen in our first interview upon the rock. This canoe, without stopping, or taking the least notice of the others, came directly along side of the ship, and with very little persuasion we got the Indians on board. Their example was soon followed by the rest, and we had about us seven canoes, and about fifty men. We made them all presents with a liberal hand, notwithstanding which they were so desirous to have more of our commodities, that they sold us every thing they had, even the clothes from their backs, and the paddles from their boats. There were but two weapons among them, these were the instruments of green talc, which were shaped somewhat like a pointed battledore, with a short handle and sharp edges; they were called Patoo-Patoo, and were well contrived for close fighting, as they would certainly split the thickest scull at a single blow.

When these people had recovered from the first impressions of fear, which notwithstanding their resolution in coming on board, had manifestly thrown them into some confusion, we enquired after our poor boys. The man who first came on board immediately answered, that they were unhurt and at home; adding, that he had been induced to venture on board, by the account which they had given him of the kindness with which they had been treated, and the wonders that were in the ship.

While they were on board they shewed every sign of friendship, and invited us very cordially to go back

back to our old bay, or to a small cove which they pointed out, that was not quite so far off; but I chose rather to prosecute my discoveries than go back, having reason to hope that I should find a better harbour than any I had yet seen.

1769.
October.

About an hour before sun-set, the canoes put off from the ship with the few paddles they had reserved, which were scarcely sufficient to set them on shore; but by some means or other three of their people were left behind. As soon as we discovered it we hailed them, but not one of them would return to take them on board; this greatly surprized us; but we were surprized still more to observe, that the deserted Indians did not seem at all uneasy at their situation, but entertained us with dancing and singing after their manner, eat their suppers, and went quietly to bed.

A light breeze springing up soon after it was dark, we steered along the shore under an easy sail till midnight, and then brought to, soon after which it fell calm. We were now some leagues distant from the place where the canoes had left us, and at day-break, when the Indians perceived it, they were seized with consternation and terror, and lamented their situation in loud complaints, with gestures of despair and many tears. Tupia, with great difficulty, pacified them; and about seven o'clock in the morning, a light breeze springing up, we continued to stand south-west along the shore. Fortunately for our poor Indians, two canoes came off about this time, and made towards the ship; they stopped, however, at a little distance, and seemed unwilling to trust themselves nearer. Our Indians were greatly agitated in this state of uncertainty, and urged their fellows to come along-side of the ship, both by their voice and gestures, with the utmost eagerness and impatience. Tupia interpreted what they said, and we were much surprized to find, that, among other arguments, they assured the people in the canoe, we did not eat men. We now began seriously to believe, that this horrid custom prevailed among them; for what the boys had said, we considered as a mere hyperbolical expression of their fear. One of the canoes, at length, ventured to come under the ship's side; and an old man came on board, who seemed to be a

1769.
October.

Chief, from the finery of his garment, and the superiority of his weapon, which was a Patoo-Patoo made of bone, that, as he said, had belonged to a whale. He stayed on board but a short time, and when he went away he took with him our guests, very much to the satisfaction both of them and us.

At the time when we sailed we were a-breast of a point, from which the land trends S. S. W. and which, on account of its figure, I called **CAPE TABLE**. This point lies seven leagues to the southward of Poverty-Bay, in latitude $39^{\circ} 7'$ S. and longitude $181^{\circ} 36'$ W. It is of a considerable height, makes in a sharp angle, and appears to be quite flat at the top.

In steering along the shore to the southward of the Cape, at the distance of two or three miles, our soundings were from twenty to thirty fathom, having a chain of rocks between us and the shore, which appeared at different heights above the water.

At noon, Cape Table bore N. 20 E. distant about four leagues, and a small island, which was the southernmost land in sight, bore S. 70 W. at the distance of about three miles. This island, which the natives call **TEAHOWRAY**, I named the **ISLAND OF PORTLAND**, from its very great resemblance to Portland in the English channel; it lies about a mile from a point on the main, but there appears to be a ridge of rocks, extending nearly, if not quite, from one to the other. N. 57 E. two miles from the south point of Portland, lies a funken rock, upon which the sea breaks with great violence. We passed between this rock and the land, having from seventeen to twenty fathom.

Portland
Island.

In sailing along the shore, we saw the natives assembled in great numbers, as well upon Portland Island as the main. We could also distinguish several spots of ground that were cultivated; some seemed to be fresh turned up, and lay in furrows like ploughed land, and some had plants upon them in different stages of their growth. We saw also, in two places, high rails upon the ridges of hills, like what we had seen upon the peninsula at the north-east head of Poverty-Bay; as they were ranged in lines only, and not so as to inclose an area, we could not guess at their use, and therefore supposed they might be the work of superstition.

About

1769.
October.

About noon, another canoe appeared, in which were four men ; she came within about a quarter of a mile of us, where the people on board seemed to perform divers ceremonies. One of them, who was in the bow, sometimes seemed to ask and to offer peace, and sometimes to threaten war, by brandishing a weapon that he held in his hand ; sometimes also he danced, and sometimes he sung. Tupia talked much to him, but could not persuade him to come to the ship.

Between one and two o'clock, we discovered land to the westward of Portland, extending to the southward as far as we could see ; and as the ship was hauling round the south end of the island, she suddenly fell into shoal water and broken ground ; we had indeed always seven fathom or more, but the soundings were never twice the same, jumping at once from seven fathom to eleven ; in a short time, however, we got clear of all danger, and had again deep water under us.

At this time the island lay within a mile of us, making in white cliffs, and a long spit of low land running from it towards the main. On the sides of these cliffs sat great numbers of people, looking at us with a fixed attention ; and, it is probable, that they perceived some appearance of hurry and confusion on board, and some irregularity in the working of the ship, while we were getting clear of the shallow water and broken ground, from which they might infer that we were alarmed or in distress ; we thought that they wished to take advantage of our situation, for five canoes were put off with the utmost expedition, full of men, and well armed ; they came so near, and shewed so hostile a disposition, by shouting, brandishing their lances, and using threatening gestures, that we were in some pain for our small boat, which was still employed in sounding ; a musket was therefore fired over them, but finding it did them no harm, they seemed rather to be provoked than intimidated, and I therefore fired a four pounder, charged with grape-shot, wide of them. This had a better effect. Upon the report of the piece, they all rose up and shouted ; but instead of continuing the chase, drew all together, and after a short consultation went quietly away.

1769.
October.

Having got round Portland, we hauled in for the land N. W. having a gentle breeze at N. E. which about five o'clock died away, and obliged us to anchor. We had one and twenty fathom, with a fine sandy bottom: the south point of Portland bore S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. distant about two leagues; and a low point on the main bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. In the same direction with this low point, there runs a deep bay, behind the land of which Cape Table is the extremity, so as to make this land a peninsula, leaving only a low narrow neck between that and the main. Of this peninsula, which the natives call TERA KAKO, Cape Table is the north point, and Portland the south.

While we lay at anchor, two more canoes came off to us, one armed, and the other a small fishing-boat, with only four men in her. They came so near that they entered into conversation with Tupia. They answered all the questions that he asked them with great civility, but could not be persuaded to come on board; they came near enough, however, to receive several presents that were thrown to them from the ship, with which they seemed much pleased, and went away. During the night many fires were kept on shore, probably to shew us that the inhabitants were too much upon their guard to be surprized.

Friday 13.

About five o'clock in the morning of the 13th, a breeze springing up northerly, we weighed, and steered in for the land. The shore here forms a large bay, of which Portland is the north-east point, and the bay that runs behind Cape Table an arm. This arm I had a great inclination to examine, because there appeared to be safe anchorage in it; but not being sure of that, and the wind being right an end, I was unwilling to spare the time. Four and twenty fathom was the greatest depth with Portland, but the ground was every where clear. The land near the shore is of a moderate height, with white cliffs and sandy beaches; within it rises into mountains; and, upon the whole, the surface is hilly, for the most part covered with wood, and to appearance pleasant and fertile. In the morning nine canoes came after the ship,

ship, but whether with peaceable or hostile intentions we could not tell, for we soon left them behind us.

1769.
October.

In the evening we stood in for a place that had the appearance of an opening, but found no harbour; we therefore stood out again, and were soon followed by a large canoe, with eighteen or twenty men all armed, who, though they could not reach us, shouted defiance, and brandished their weapons, with many gestures of menace and insult.

In the morning, we had a view of the mountains Satur. 14. inland, upon which the snow was still lying: the country near the shore was low and unfit for culture, but in one place we perceived a patch of somewhat yellow, which had greatly the appearance of a corn field, yet was probably nothing more than some dead flags, which are not uncommon in swampy places: at some distance we saw groves of trees, which appeared high and tapering, and being not above two leagues from the south-west end of the great bay, in which we had been coasting for the two last days, I hoisted out the pinnace and long-boat to search for fresh water; but just as they were about to put off, we saw several boats full of people coming from the shore, and therefore I did not think it safe for them to leave the ship. About ten o'clock, five of these boats having drawn together, as if to hold a consultation, made towards the ship, having on board between eighty and ninety men, and four more followed at some distance, as if to sustain the attack. When the first five came within about a hundred yards of the ship, they began to sing their war song, and, brandishing their pikes, prepared for an engagement. We had now no time to lose, for if we could not prevent the attack, we should come under the unhappy necessity of using our fire arms against them, which we were very desirous to avoid. Tupia was therefore ordered to acquaint them, that we had weapons which, like thunder, would destroy them in a moment; that we would immediately convince them of their power, by directing their effect so that they should not be hurt; but that if they persisted in any hostile attempts, we should be obliged to use them for our defence. A four pounder, loaded with grape-shot,

1769.
October.

was then discharged wide of them, which produced the desired effect; the report, the flash, and above all, the shot, which spread very far in the water, so intimidated them, that they began to paddle away with all their might: Tupia, however, calling after them, and assuring them that if they would come un-armed, they should be kindly received, the people in one of the boats put their arms on board of another, and came under the ship's stern: we made them several presents, and should certainly have prevailed upon them to come on board, if the other canoes had not come up, and again threatened us, by shouting and brandishing their weapons: at this the people who had come to the ship unarmed, expressed great displeasure, and soon after they all went away.

Sunday 15.

In the afternoon we stood over to the south point of the bay, but not reaching it before it was dark, we stood off and on all night. At eight the next morning, being a-breast of the point, several fishing boats came off to us, and sold us some stinking fish: it was the best they had, and we were willing to trade with them upon any terms: these people behaved very well, and should have parted good friends if it had not been for a large canoe, with two and twenty armed men on board, which came boldly up along-side of the ship. We soon saw that this boat had nothing for traffick, yet we gave them two or three pieces of cloth, an article which they seemed very fond of. I observed that one man had a black skin thrown over him, somewhat resembling that of a bear, and being desirous to know what animal was its first owner, I offered him for it a piece of red baize, and he seemed greatly pleased with the bargain, immediately pulling off the skin, and holding it up in the boat; he would not, however, part with it till he had the cloth in his possession, and as there could be no transfer of property, if with equal caution I had insisted upon the same condition, I ordered the cloth to be handed down to him, upon which, with amazing coolness, instead of sending up the skin, he began to pack up both that and the baize, which he had received as the purchase of it, in a basket, without paying the least regard to my demand or remonstrances, and soon after, with the fishing boats, put off

1769.
October

off from the ship; when they were at some distance, they drew together, and after a short consultation returned; the fishermen offered more fish, which, though good for nothing, was purchased, and trade was again renewed. Among others who were placed over the ship's side to hand up what we bought, was little Tayeto, Tupia's boy; and one of the Indians, watching his opportunity, suddenly seized him, and dragged him down into the canoe; two of them held him down in the fore-part of it, and the others, with great activity, paddled her off, the rest of the canoes following as fast as they could: upon this the marines who were under arms upon deck, were ordered to fire. The shot was directed to that part of the canoe which was farthest from the boy, and rather wide of her, being willing rather to miss the rowers than to hurt him: it happened, however, that one man dropped, upon which the others quitted their hold of the boy, who instantly leaped into the water, and swam towards the ship; the large canoe immediately pulled round and followed him, but some musquets, and a great gun being fired at her, she desisted from the pursuit. The ship being brought to, a boat was lowered, and the poor boy taken up unhurt, though so terrified that for a time he seemed to be deprived of his senses. Some of the gentlemen who traced the canoes to shore with their glasses, said, that they saw three men carried up the beach, who appeared to be either dead or wholly disabled by their wounds.

To the cape off which this unhappy transaction happened, I gave the name of CAPE KIDNAPPERS. It lies in latitude $39^{\circ} 43'$, and longitude $182^{\circ} 24'$ W. and is rendered remarkable by two white rocks like hay stacks, and the high white cliffs on each side. It lies S. W. by W. distant thirteen leagues from the isle of Portland; and between them is the bay of which it is the south point, and which, in honour of Sir Edward Hawke, then first Lord of the Admiralty, I called HAWKE'S BAY. We found in it from twenty-four to seven fathom, and good anchorage. From Cape Kidnappers the land trends S. S. W. and in this direction we made our run along the shore, keeping at

1769.
October.

about a league distance, with a steady breeze and clear weather.

As soon as Tayeto recovered from his fright, he brought a fish to Tupia, and told him, that he intended it as an offering to his Eatua, or god, in gratitude for his escape. Tupia commended his piety, and ordered him to throw the fish into the sea, which was accordingly done.

Monday 16.

About two o'clock in the afternoon, we passed a small but high white island, lying close to the shore, upon which we saw many houses, boats, and people. The people were concluded to be fishers, because the island was totally barren; we saw several people also on shore, in a small bay upon the main, within the island. At eleven, we brought to till day light, and then made sail to the southward, along the shore. About seven o'clock we past a high point of land, which lies S. S. W. twelve leagues from Cape Kidnappers: from this point the land trends three fourths of a point more to the westward: at ten, we saw more land open to the southward, and at noon, the southermost land that was in sight bore S. 39 W. distant eight or ten leagues, and a high bluff head, with yellowish cliffs, bore W. distant about two miles: the depth of water was thirty two fathom.

Tuesday 17.

In the afternoon we had a fresh breeze at west, and during the night variable light airs and calms: in the morning a gentle breeze sprung up between the N. W. and N. E. and having till now stood to the southward, without seeing any probability of meeting with a harbour, and the country manifestly altering for the worse, I thought that standing farther in that direction would be attended with no advantage, but on the contrary would be a loss of time that might be employed with a better prospect of success in examining the coast to the northward; about one, therefore, in the afternoon, I tacked, and stood north, with a fresh breeze at west. The high bluff head, with yellowish cliffs, which we were a-breast of at noon, I called CAPE TURNAGAIN, because here we turned back. It lies in latitude $40^{\circ} 34'$ S. longitude $182^{\circ} 55'$ W. distant eighteen leagues S. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. from Cape Kidnappers. The land between them is of a very unequal height; in some places

1844
October.

places it is lofty next the sea with white cliffs, in others low, with sandy beaches: the face of the country is not so well clothed with wood as it is about Hawke's bay, but looks more like our high downs in England: it is, however, to all appearance, well inhabited, for as we stood along the shore, we saw several villages, not only in the vallies, but on the tops and sides of the hills, and smoke in many other places. The ridge of mountains, which has been mentioned before, extends to the southward farther than we could see, and was then every where chequered with snow. At night we saw two fires inland, so very large, that we concluded they must have been made to clear the land for tillage; but however that be, they are a demonstration that the part of the country where they appeared is inhabited.

On the 18th, at four o'clock in the morning, Cape Wednesd. 18. Kidnappers bore N. 32 W. distant two leagues: in this situation we had sixty-two fathom, and when the Cape bore W. by N. distant three or four leagues, we had forty five fathom: in the mid-way between the isle of Portland and the Cape we had sixty-five fathom. In the evening, being a-breast of the peninsula within Portland island, called TERAkakO, a canoe came off Teraakako. from that shore, and with much difficulty overtook the ship; there were on board five people, two of whom appeared to be Chiefs, and the other three servants: the Chiefs, with very little invitation, came on board, and ordered the rest to remain in their canoe. We treated them with great kindness, and they were not backward in expressing their satisfaction; they went down into the cabin, and after a short time told us that they had determined not to go on shore till the next morning. As the sleeping on board was an honour which we neither expected nor desired, I remonstrated strongly against it, and told them, that on their account it would not be proper, as the ship would probably be at a great distance from where she was then, the next morning: they persisted, however, in their resolution, and as I found it impossible to get rid of them without turning them by force out of the ship, I complied: as a proper precaution, however, I proposed to take their servants also on board, and hoist their canoe

1769.
October.

canoe into the ship; they made no objection, and this was accordingly done. The countenance of one of these Chiefs was the most open and ingenuous of all I have ever seen, and I very soon gave up every suspicion of his having any sinister design: they both examined every thing they saw with great curiosity and attention, and received very thankfully such little presents as we made them; neither of them, however, could be persuaded, either to eat or drink, but their servants devoured every thing they could get with great voracity. We found that these men had heard of our kindness and liberality to the natives who had been on board before, yet we thought the confidence they placed in us, an extraordinary instance of their fortitude. At night I brought to till day-light, and then made sail; at seven in the morning, I brought to again under Cape Table, and sent away our guests with their canoe, who expressed some surprise at seeing themselves so far from home, but landed a-breast of the ship. At this time I saw other canoes putting off from the shore, but I stood away to the northward without waiting for their coming up.

Thursd. 19.

About three I passed a remarkable head-land, which I called GABLE-END FORELAND, from the very great likeness of the white cliff at the point to the gable-end of a house: it is not more remarkable for its figure, than for a rock which rises like a spire at a little distance. It lies from Cape Table N. 24 E. distant about twelve leagues. The shore between them forms a bay, within which lies Poverty Bay, at the distance of four leagues from the head-land, and eight from the Cape. At this place three canoes came off to us, and one man came on board; we gave him some trifles, and he soon returned to his boat, which, with all the rest, dropped a-stern.

Friday 20.

In the morning I made sail in shore, in order to look into two bays, which appeared about two leagues to the northward of the Foreland; the southernmost I could not fetch, but I anchored in the other about eleven o'clock.

Into this bay we were invited by the people on board many canoes, who pointed to a place where they said there was plenty of fresh water: I did not find so good

good a shelter from the sea as I expected, but the natives who came about us, appearing to be of a friendly disposition, I was determined to try whether I could not get some knowledge of the country here before I proceeded farther to the northward.

In one of the canoes that came about us as soon as we anchored, we saw two men, who, by their habits, appeared to be Chiefs: one of them was dressed in a jacket, which was ornamented, after their manner, with dog's skin; the jacket of the other was almost covered with small tufts of red feathers. These men I invited on board, and they entered the ship with very little hesitation: I gave each of them about four yards of linen and a spike-nail; with the linen they were much pleased, but seemed to set no value upon the nail. We perceived that they knew what had happened in Poverty-bay, and we had therefore no reason to doubt but that they would behave peaceably; however, for further security, Tupia was ordered to tell them for what purpose we came thither, and to assure them that we would offer them no injury, if they offered none to us. In the mean time those who remained in the canoes traded with our people very fairly for what they happened to have with them: the Chiefs, who were old men, staid with us till we had dined, and about two o'clock I put off with the boats, manned and armed, in order to go on shore in search of water, and the two Chiefs went into the boat with me. The afternoon was tempestuous, with much rain, and the surf every where ran so high, that altho' we rowed almost round the bay, we found no place where we could land: I determined therefore to return to the ship, which being intimated to the Chiefs, they called to the people on shore, and ordered a canoe to be sent off for themselves; this was accordingly done, and they left us, promising to come on board again in the morning, and bring us some fish and sweet potatoes.

In the evening, the weather having become fair and moderate, the boats were again ordered out, and I landed, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. We were received with great expressions of friendship by the natives, who behaved with a scrupulous attention not to give offence. In particular, they took care not to appear

1769.
October.

pear in great bodies: one family, or the inhabitants of two or three houses only, were generally placed together, to the number of fifteen or twenty, consisting of men, women, and children. These little companies sat upon the ground, not advancing towards us, but inviting us to them, by a kind of beckon, moving one hand towards the breast. We made them several little presents; and in our walk round the bay found two small streams of fresh water. This convenience, and the friendly behaviour of the people, determined me to stay at least a day, that I might fill some of my empty casks, and give Mr. Banks an opportunity of examining the natural produce of the country.

Saturd. 21. In the morning of the 21st, I sent Lieutenant Gore on shore, to superintend the watering, with a strong party of men; and they were soon followed by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, with Tupia, Tayeto, and four others.

The natives sat by our people, and seemed pleased to observe them; but did not intermix with them: they traded, however, chiefly for cloth, and after a short time applied to their ordinary occupations, as if no stranger had been among them. In the forenoon several of their boats went out a-fishing, and at dinner-time every one repaired to his respective dwelling; from which, after a certain time, he returned. These fair appearances encouraged Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to range the bay with very little precaution, where they found many plants, and shot some birds of exquisite beauty. In their walk, they visited several houses of the natives, and saw something of their manner of life; for they shewed, without any reserve, every thing which the gentlemen desired to see. They were sometimes found at their meals, which the approach of the strangers never interrupted. Their food at this season consisted of fish, with which, instead of bread, they eat the root of a kind of fern, very like that which grows upon our commons in England. These roots they scorch over the fire, and then beat with a stick, till the bark and dry outside fall off, what remains is a soft substance, somewhat clammy and sweet, not unpleasing to the taste, but mixed with three or four times its quantity of strings and fibres, which are very disagreeable; these were

1769.
October.

were swallowed by some, but spit out by the far greater number, who had baskets under them to receive the rejected part of what had been chewed, which had an appearance very like that of tobacco in the same state. In other seasons they have certainly plenty of excellent vegetables; but no tame animals were seen among them, except dogs, which were very small and ugly. Mr. Banks saw some of their plantations, where the ground was as well broken down and tilled as even in the gardens of the most curious people among us: in these spots were sweet potatoes, coccos or eddas, which are well known and much esteemed both in the East and West-Indies, and some gourds: the sweet potatoes were planted in small hills, some ranged in rows, and others in quincunx, all laid by a line with the greatest regularity: the coccos were planted upon flat land, but none of them yet appeared above ground; and the gourds were set in small hollows, or dishes, much as in England. These plantations were of different extent, from one or two acres to ten: taken together, there appeared to be from 150 to 200 acres in cultivation in the whole bay, tho' we never saw an hundred people. Each district was fenced in, generally with reeds, which were placed so close together, that there was scarcely room for a mouse to creep between.

The women were plain, and made themselves more so by painting their faces with red ocre and oil, which being generally fresh, and wet upon their cheeks and foreheads, was easily transferred to the noses of those who thought fit to salute them; and that they were not wholly averse to such familiarity, the noses of several of our people strongly testified: they were, however, as great coquets as any of the most fashionable ladies in Europe, and the young ones as skittish as any unbroken filly: each of them wore a petticoat, under which there was a girdle, made of the blades of grass, highly perfumed, and to the girdle was fastened a small bunch of the leaves of some fragrant plant, which served their modesty as its innermost veil. The faces of the men were not so generally painted, yet we saw one whose whole body, and even his garments, were rubbed over with dry ocre, of which he kept a piece constantly in his

1769.
October.

his hand, and was every minute renewing the decoration in one part or another, where he supposed it was become deficient. In personal delicacy they were not equal to our friends at Otaheite, for the coldness of the climate did not invite them so often to bathe; but we saw among them one instance of cleanliness in which they exceeded them, and of which perhaps there is no example in any other Indian nation. Every house, or every little cluster of three or four houses, was furnished with a privy, so that the ground was every where clean. The offals of their food, and other litter, were also piled up in regular dunghills, which probably they made use of at a proper time for manure.

In this decent article of civil œconomy they were beforehand with one of the most considerable nations of Europe; for I am credibly informed, that, till the year 1760, there was no such thing as a privy in Madrid, the metropolis of Spain, though it is plentifully supplied with water. Before that time it was the universal practice to throw the ordure out of the windows, during the night, into the street, where numbers of men were employed to remove it, with shovels, from the upper parts of the city to the lower, where it lay till it was dry, and was then carried away in carts, and deposited without the gates. His present Catholic Majesty, having determined to free his capital from so gross a nuisance, ordered, by proclamation, that the proprietor of every house should build a privy, and that sinks, drains, and common-sewers should be made at the public expence. The Spaniards, tho' long accustomed to an arbitrary government, resented this proclamation with great spirit, as an infringement of the common rights of mankind, and made a vigorous struggle against its being carried into execution. Every class devised some objection against it; but the physicians bid the fairest to interest the king in the preservation of the ancient privileges of his people; for they remonstrated that if the filth was not, as usual, thrown into the streets, a fatal sickness would probably ensue, because the putrescent particles of the air, which such filth attracted, would then be imbibed by the human body. But this expedient, with every other that could be thought of, proved

proved unsuccessful, and the popular discontent then ran so high, that it was very near producing an insurrection; his Majesty, however, at length prevailed, and Madrid is now as clear as most of the considerable cities in Europe. But many of the citizens, probably upon the principles advanced by their physicians, that heaps of filth prevent deleterious particles of air from fixing upon neighbouring substances, have, to keep their food wholesome, constructed their privies by the kitchen fire.

1769.
October.

In the evening, all our boats being employed in carrying the water on board, and Mr. Banks and his company finding it probable that they should be left on shore after it was dark, by which much time would be lost, which they were impatient to employ in putting the plants they had gathered in order, they applied to the Indians for a passage in one of their canoes: they immediately consented, and a canoe was launched for their use. They went all on board, being eight in number, but not being used to a vessel that required so even a balance, they unfortunately overset her in the surf: no life however was lost, and it was thought advisable that half of them should wait for another turn. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia, and Tayeto embarked again, and without any further accident arrived safely at the ship, well pleased with the good-nature of their Indian friends, who cheerfully undertook to carry them a second time, after having experienced how unfit a freight they were for such a vessel.

While these gentlemen were on shore, several of the natives went off to the ship, and trafficked, by exchanging their cloth for that of Otaheite: of this barter they were for some time very fond, preferring the Indian cloth to that of Europe; but before night it decreased in its value five hundred per cent. Many of these Indians I took on board, and shewed them the ship and her apparatus, at which they expressed equal satisfaction and astonishment.

As I found it exceedingly difficult to get water on board, on account of the surf, I determined to stay no longer at this place; on the next morning therefore, about five o'clock, I weighed anchor and put to sea.

Sund. 22.

This

1769.
October.

This bay, which is called by the natives TEGADOO, lies in the latitude of $38^{\circ} 10'$ S. but as it has nothing to recommend it, a description of it is unnecessary.

From this bay I intended to stand on to the northward, but the wind being hard against me, I could make no way. While I was beating about to windward, some of the natives came on board, and told me, that in a bay which lay a little to the southward, being the same that I could not fetch the day I put into Tegadoo, there was excellent water, where the boats might land without a surf. I thought it better therefore to put into this bay, where I might compleat my water, and form farther connections with the Indians, than to keep the sea. With this view I bore up for it, and sent in two boats, manned and armed, to examine the watering-place, who confirming the report of the Indians at their return, I came to an anchor about one o'clock, in eleven fathom water, with a fine sandy bottom, the north point of the bay N. by E. and the south point S. E. The watering-place which was in a small cove a little within the south point of the bay, bore S. by E. distant about a mile. Many canoes came immediately off from the shore, and all traded very honestly for Oraheite cloth and glass bottles, of which they were immoderately fond.

Mond. 13.

In the afternoon of the 23d, as soon as the ship was moored, I went on shore to examine the watering-place, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander: the boat landed in the cove, without the least surf; the water was excellent, and conveniently situated; there was plenty of wood close to high-water mark, and the disposition of the people was in every respect such as we could wish.

Having, with Mr. Green, taken several observations of the sun and moon, the mean result of them gave $180^{\circ} 47'$ W. longitude; but, as all the observations made before exceeded these, I have laid down the coast from the mean of the whole. At noon, I took the sun's meridian altitude with an astronomical quadrant, which was set up at the watering-place, and found the latitude to be $38^{\circ} 22' 14''$.

On

1769.
October.

ed with the lance, our gentlemen inferred, that in the battles of this country there is no quarter.

This afternoon, we set up the armourer's forge, to repair the braces of the tiller which had been broken, and went on getting our wood and water, without suffering the least molestation from the natives; who came down with different sorts of fish, which we purchased with cloth, beads, and glass bottles, as usual.

Wednesd. 25. On the 25th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again on shore; and while they were searching for plants, Tupia staid with the waterers: among other Indians who came down to them, was a priest, with whom Tupia entered into a very learned conversation. In their notions of religion they seemed to agree very well, which is not often the case between learned divines on our side of the ocean: Tupia, however, seemed to have the most knowledge, and was listened to with great deference and attention by the other. In the course of this conversation, after the important points of divinity had been settled, Tupia enquired if it was their practice to eat men, to which they answered in the affirmative; but said that they eat only their enemies who were slain in battle.

Thursd. 26. On the 26th, it rained all day, so that none of us could go a-shore; and very few of the Indians came either to the watering-place or the ship.

Friday 27. On the 27th, I went with Dr. Solander to examine the bottom of the bay; but though we went a-shore at two places, we met with little worth notice. The people behaved very civilly, shewing us every thing that we expressed a desire to see. Among other trifling curiosities which Dr. Solander purchased of them, was a boy's top, shaped exactly like those which children play with in England; and they made signs that to make it spin it was to be whipped. Mr. Banks in the mean time went ashore at the watering-place, and climbed a hill which stood at a little distance to see a fence of poles, which we had observed from the ship, and which had been much the subject of speculation. The hill was extremely steep, and rendered almost inaccessible by wood; yet he reached the place, near which he found many houses that for some reason had been deserted by their inhabitants. The poles appear-
ed

ed to be about sixteen feet high ; they were placed in two rows, with a space of about six feet between them, and the poles in each row were about ten feet distant from each other. The lane between them was covered by sticks, that were set up sloping towards each other from the top of the poles on each side, like the roof of a house. This rail-work, with a ditch that was parallel to it, was carried about a hundred yards down the hill in a kind of curve ; but for what purpose we could not guess.

The Indians, at the watering-place, at our request, entertained us with their war-song, in which the women joined, with the most horrid distortions of countenance, rolling their eyes, thrusting out their tongues, and often heaving loud and deep sighs ; though all was done in very good time.

On the 28th we went ashore upon an island that lies Saturd. 28. to the left hand of the entrance of the bay, where we saw the largest canoe that we had yet met with : she was sixty eight feet and a half long, five broad, and three feet six high ; she had a sharp bottom, consisting of three trunks of trees hollowed, of which that in the middle was the longest : the side planks were sixty-two feet long in one piece, and were not despicably carved in bass relief : the head also was adorned with carving still more richly. Upon this island there was a larger house than any we had yet seen ; but it seemed unfinished and was full of chips. The wood work was squared so even and smooth, that we made no doubt of their having among them very sharp tools. The sides of the posts were carved in a masterly stile, though after their whimsical taste, which seems to prefer spiral lines and distorted faces : as these carved posts appeared to have been brought from some other place, such work is probably of great value among them.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 29th, having Sunday 29. got on board our wood and water, and a large supply of excellent celery, with which the country abounds, and which proved a powerful antiscorbutic, I unmoored and put to sea.

This bay is called by the natives **TOLAGA** ; it is moderately large, and has from seven to thirteen fathom,

1769.
October.

with a clean sandy bottom and good anchorage ; and is sheltered from all winds except the north-east. It lies in latitude $38^{\circ} 22'$ S. and four leagues and an half to the north of Gable-end Foreland. On the south point lies a small but high island, so near the main as not to be distinguished from it. Close to the north end of the island, at the entrance into the bay, are two high rocks ; one is round like a corn-stack, but the other is long, and perforated in several places, so that the openings appear like the arches of a bridge. Within these rocks is the cove where we cut wood, and filled our water casks. Off the north point of the bay is a pretty high rocky island ; and about a mile without it, are some rocks and breakers. The variation of the compass here is $14^{\circ} 31'$ E. and the tide flows at the full and change of the moon, about six o'clock, and rises and falls perpendicularly from five to six feet : whether the flood comes from the southward or the northward, I have not been able to determine.

We got nothing here by traffic but a few fish, and some sweet potatoes, except a few trifles, which we considered merely as curiosities. We saw no four-footed animals, nor the appearance of any, either tame or wild, except dogs and rats, and these were very scarce ; the people eat the dogs, like our friends at Otaheite ; and adorn their garments with the skins, as we do ours with fur and ermine. I climbed many of the hills, hoping to get a view of the country, but I could see nothing from the top except higher hills, in a boundless succession. The ridges of these hills produce little besides fern ; but the sides are most luxuriantly clothed with wood, and verdure of various kinds, with little plantations intermixed ; in the woods we found trees of above twenty different sorts, and carried specimens of each on board ; but there was no body among us to whom they were not altogether unknown. The tree which we cut for firing was somewhat like our maple, and yielded a whitish gum. We found another sort of it of a deep yellow, which we thought might be used in dying. We found also one cabbage-tree, which we cut down for the cabbages. The country abounds with plants, and the woods with birds, in an endless variety, exquisitely beautiful, and of which none of us had the least

least knowledge. The soil both of the hills and valleys is light and sandy, and very fit for the production of all kinds of roots; though we saw none except sweet potatoes and yams.

142
October

C H A P. III.

The Range from Tolaga to Mercury-Bay, with an Account of many Incidents that happened both on board and a-shore. A Description of several Views exhibited by the Country, and of the Heppahs, or fortified Villages of the Inhabitants.

ON Monday the 30th, about half an hour after Monday 30. one o'clock, having made sail again to the northward for about ten hours, with a light breeze, I hauled round a small island, which lay east one mile from the north-east point of the land: from this place I found the land trend away N. W. by W. and W. N. W. as far as I could see. This point being the easternmost land on the whole coast, I gave it the name of EAST CAPE, and I called the island that lies off it the EAST ISLAND; it is of a small circuit, high and round, and appears white and barren; the Cape is high with white cliffs, and lies in latitude $37^{\circ} 42' 3''$ S. and longitude 181° W. The land from Tolaga Bay to East Cape is of a moderate, but unequal height, forming several small bays, in which are sandy beaches: of the inland country we could not see much, the weather being cloudy and hazy. The soundings were from twenty to thirty fathom at the distance of about a league from the shore. After we had rounded the Cape, we saw in our run along the shore a great number of villages, and much cultivated land; the country in general appeared more fertile than before, and was low near the sea, but hilly within. At six in the evening, being four leagues to the westward of East Cape, we passed a bay which was first discovered by Lieutenant Hicks, and which therefore I called HICKS'S BAY. At eight in the evening, being eight leagues to the westward of the Cape, and three or four miles from the shore, I shortened sail and brought to for the night, having at this time

1769.
October.

Tuesd. 31.

a fresh gale at S. S. E. and squally ; but it soon became moderate, and at two in the morning, we made sail again to the S. W. as the land now trended ; and at eight o'clock in the morning saw land, which made like an island, bearing west, the south-westernmost part of the main bearing south-west ; and about nine no less than five canoes came off, in which were more than forty men, all armed with their country pikes and battle-axes, shouting, and threatening an attack : this gave us great uneasiness, and was indeed what we did not expect ; for we hoped, that the report both of our power and clemency had spread to a greater extent. When one of these canoes had almost reached the ship, another, of an immense size, the largest we had yet seen, crowded with people who were also armed, put off from the shore, and came up at a great rate ; as it approached it received signals from the canoe that was nearest to the ship, and we could see that it had sixteen paddles on a side, beside people that sat, and others that stood in a row from stem to stern, being in all about sixty men : as they made directly to the ship, we were desirous of preventing an attack, by shewing what we could do ; and therefore fired a gun, loaded with grape shot, a-head of them ; this made them stop, but not retreat ; a round shot was then fired over them, and upon seeing it fall, they seized their paddles and made towards the shore with such precipitation, that they seemed scarcely to allow themselves time to breathe. In the evening, three or four more canoes came off unarmed ; but they would not venture within a musquet shot of the vessel. The cape, off which we had been threatened with hostilities, I called, from the hasty retreat of the enemy, CAPE RUNAWAY. It lies in latitude $37^{\circ} 32'$; longitude $181^{\circ} 48'$. In this day's run, we found that the land, which made like an island in the morning, bearing west, was so ; and we gave it the name of WHITE ISLAND.

November.

Wednesd. 1.

At day-break, on the first of Nov. we counted no less than five and forty canoes that were coming from the shore towards the ship : seven of them came up with us, and after some conversation with Tupia, sold us some lobsters and muscles, and two conger-eels. These people traded pretty fairly : but when they were gone, some

1762.
November 22.

some others came off from another place, who began also to trade fairly; but after some time they took what was handed down to them, without making any return; one of them who had done so, upon being threatened, began to laugh, and with many marks of derision set us at defiance, at the same time putting off the canoe from the ship: a musquet was then fired over his head, which brought him back in a more serious mood, and trade went on with great regularity. At length, when the cabin and gun room had got as much as they wanted, the men were allowed to come to the gang-way, and trade for themselves. Unhappily the same care was not taken to prevent frauds as had been taken before, so that the Indians, finding that they could cheat with impunity, grew insolent again, and proceeded to take greater liberties. One of the canoes, having sold every thing on board, pulled forward, and the people that were in her seeing some linen hang over the ship's side to dry, one of them, without any ceremony, untied it, and put it up in his bundle: he was immediately called to, and required to return it; instead of which, he let his canoe drop a-stern, and laughed at us: a musquet was fired over his head, which did not put a stop to his mirth; another was then fired at him with small shot, which struck him upon the back; he shrunk a little when the shot hit him, but did not regard it more than one of our men would have done the stroke of a rattan; he continued with great composure to pack up the linen that he had stolen. All the canoes now dropped a-stern about a hundred yards, and all set up their song of defiance, which they continued till the ship was distant from them about four hundred yards. As they seemed to have no design to attack us, I was not willing to do them any hurt; yet I thought their going off in a bravado might have a bad effect when it should be reported a-shore. To shew them therefore that they were still in our power, though very much beyond the reach of any missile weapon with which they were acquainted, I gave the ship a yaw, and fired a four pounder so as to pass near them. The shot happened to strike the water, and rise several times at a great distance beyond the canoes: this struck them with ter-

1769.
November.

ror, and they paddled away without once looking behind them.

About two in the afternoon, we saw a pretty high island, bearing west from us; and at five, saw more islands and rocks to the westward of that. We hauled our wind in order to go with them, but could not weather them before it was dark. I therefore bore up, and ran between them and the main. At seven, I was close under the first, from which a large double canoe, or rather two canoes lashed together at the distance of about a foot, and covered with boards so as to make a deck, put off, and made sail for the ship: this was the first vessel of the kind that we had seen since we left the South Sea islands. When she came near, the people on board entered very freely into conversation with Tupia, and we thought shewed a friendly disposition; but when it was just dark, they ran their canoe close to the ship's side, and threw in a volley of stones, after which they paddled a-shore.

We learnt from Tupia, that the people in the canoe called the island which we were under MOWTOHORA: it is but of a small circuit, though high, and lies six miles from the main: on the south side is anchorage in fourteen fathom water. Upon the main land S. W. by W. of this island, and apparently at no great distance from the sea, is a high, round mountain, which I called MOUNT EDGECOMBE: it stands in the middle of a large plain, and is therefore the more conspicuous; latitude $37^{\circ} 59'$, longitude $193^{\circ} 7'$.

Thurs. 2.

In standing westward, we suddenly shoaled our water from seventeen to ten fathom; and knowing that we were not far from the small islands and rocks which we had seen before dark, and which I intended to have passed before I brought to for the night, I thought it more prudent to tack, and spend the night under Mowtohora, where I knew there was no danger. It was indeed happy for us that we did so; for in the morning, after we had made sail to the westward, we discovered, a-head of us, several rocks, some of which were level with the surface of the water, and some below it: they lay N. N. E. from Mount Edgecombe, one league and a half distant from the island Mowtohora, and about nine miles from the main. We passed between these

these rocks and the main, having from ten to seven fathom water.

179.
November.

This morning, many canoes and much people were seen along the shore; several of the canoes followed us, but none of them could reach us, except one with a sail, which proved to be the same that had pelted us the night before. The people on board again entered into a conversation with Tupia; but we expected another volley of their ammunition, which was not indeed dangerous to any thing but the cabin windows. They continued a-breast of the ship about an hour, and behaved very peaceably; but at last the salute which we expected was given; we returned it by firing a musquet over them, and they immediately dropped a-stern and left us, perhaps rather satisfied with having given a test of their courage, by twice insulting a vessel so much superior to their own, than intimidated by the shot.

At half an hour after ten, we passed between a low flat island and the main: the distance from one to the other was about four miles, and the depth of water from ten to twelve fathom. The main land between this flat island and Mowtohora is of a moderate height, but level, pretty clear of wood, and full of plantations and villages. The villages, which were larger than any we had yet seen, were built upon eminences near the sea, and fortified on the land side by a bank and ditch, with a high paling within it, which was carried all round; beside a bank, ditch, and pallisadoes, some of them appeared to have out-works. Tupia had a notion that the small inclosures of pallisadoes, and a ditch that we had seen before, were Morais, or places of worship; but were of opinion that they were forts, and concluded that these people had neighbouring enemies, and were always exposed to hostile attacks.

At two o'clock, we passed a small high island, lying four miles from a high round head upon the main. From this head the land trends N. W. as far as can be seen, and has a rugged and hilly appearance. As the weather was hazy, and the wind blew fresh on the shore, we hauled off for the weathermost island in sight

9.
November.

sight, which bore from us N. N. E. distant about six or seven leagues.

Friday 3.

Under this island, which I have called the MAYOR, we spent the night. At seven in the morning it bore S. 47 E. distant six leagues, and a cluster of small islands and rocks bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant one league, to which I gave the name of the COURT OF ALDERMEN. They lie in the compass of about half a league every way, and five leagues from the main, between which and them lie other islands, most of them barren rocks, of which there is great variety; some of them are as small in compass as the Monument of London, but rise to a much greater height, and some of them are inhabited. They lie in latitude $36^{\circ} 57'$, and at noon bore S. 60 E. distant three or four leagues, and a rock, like a castle, lying not far from the main, bore N. 40 W. at the distance of one league. The country, that we passed the night before, appeared to be well inhabited, many towns were in sight, and some hundreds of large canoes lay under them upon the beach; but this day, after having sailed about fifteen leagues, it appeared to be barren and desolate. As far as we had yet coasted this country, from Cape Turnagain, the people acknowledged one Chief, whom they call TERATU, and to whose residence they pointed, in a direction that we thought to be very far inland, but afterwards found to be otherwise.

About one o'clock, three canoes came off to us from the main, with one-and-twenty men on board. The construction of these vessels appeared to be more simple than that of any we had seen, they being nothing more than trunks of a single tree hollowed by fire, without any convenience or ornament. The people on board were almost naked, and appeared to be of a browner complexion; yet, naked and despicable as they were, they sung their song of defiance, and seemed to denounce against us inevitable destruction. They remained, however, some time out of stones-throw, and then venturing nearer, with less appearance of hostility, one of our men went to the ship's side, and was about to hand them a rope; this courtesy, however, they thought fit to return by throwing a lance at him, which
having

having missed him, they immediately threw another into the ship; upon this a musquet was fired over them, which at once sent them away. 1769.
November.

About two, we saw a large opening, or inlet, for which we bore up: we had now forty-one fathom water, which gradually decreased to nine, at which time we were one mile and an half distant from a high towered rock, which lay near the south point of the inlet; this rock, and the northermost of the Court of Aldermen being in one, bearing S. 61 E.

About seven in the evening, we anchored in seven fathom, a little within the south entrance of the bay. To this place we were accompanied by several canoes, and the people like those we had seen last, and for some time they behaved very civilly. While they were hovering about us, a bird was shot from the ship, as it was swimming upon the water: at this they shewed less surprize than we expected, and taking up the bird they tied it to a fishing-line, that was towing a-stern; as an acknowledgment for this favour we gave them a piece of cloth. But notwithstanding this effect of our fire-arms, and this interchange of civilities, as soon as it grew dark they sung their war song, and attempted to tow away the buoy of the anchor. Two or three muskets were then fired over them, but this seemed rather to make them angry than afraid, and they went away, threatening that to-morrow they would return with more force, and be the death of us all; at the same time sending off a boat, which they told us was going to another part of the bay for assistance.

There was some appearance of generosity, as well as courage, in acquainting us with the time when they intended to make their attack; but they forfeited all credit which this procured them, by coming secretly upon us in the night, when they certainly hoped to find us asleep: upon approaching the ship they found themselves mistaken, and therefore retired without speaking a word, supposing that they were too early; after some time they came a second time, and being again disappointed, they retired as silently as before.

In the morning, at day-break, they prepared to effect by force what they had in vain attempted by stealth and artifice; no less than twelve canoes came against us, Satur. 4

1769.
November.

us, with about a hundred and fifty men, all armed with pikes, lances, and stones. As they could do nothing till they came very near the ship, Tupia was ordered to expostulate with them, and, if possible, divert them from their purpose. During the conversation, they appeared to be sometimes friendly, and sometimes otherwise; at length, however, they began to trade, and we offered to purchase their weapons, which some of them consented to sell. They sold two very fairly, but having received what had been agreed upon for the purchase of a third, they refused to send it up, but offered it for a second price; a second was sent down, but the weapon was still detained, and a demand made of a third; this being refused, with some expressions of displeasure and resentment, the offender, with many ludicrous tokens of contempt and defiance, paddled his canoe off a few yards from the ship. As I intended to continue in this place five or six days, in order to make an observation of the transit of Mercury, it was absolutely necessary, in order to prevent future mischief, to shew these people that we were not to be treated ill with impunity; some small shot were therefore fired at the thief, and a musket ball through the bottom of his boat; upon this it was paddled to about a hundred yards distance, and, to our great surprize, the people in the other canoes took not the least notice of their wounded companion, though he bled very much, but returned to the ship, and continued to trade with the most perfect indifference and unconcern. They sold us many more of their weapons, without making any other attempt to defraud us for a considerable time; at last, however, one of them thought fit to paddle away with two different pieces of cloth, which had been given for the same weapon; when he had got about an hundred yards distance, and thought himself secure of his prize, a musket was fired after him, which fortunately struck the boat just at the water's edge, and made two holes in her side; this only incited them to ply their paddles with greater activity, and the rest of the canoes also made off with the utmost expedition. As the last proof of our superiority, therefore, we fired a round shot over them, and not a boat stopped till they got on shore.

About

1769.
November.

About ten o'clock, I went with two boats to sound the bay, and look out for a more convenient anchoring place, the master being in one boat, and myself in the other. We pulled first over to the north shore, from which some canoes came out to meet us; as we advanced, however, they retired, inviting us to follow them; but, seeing them well armed, I did not think it proper to comply, but went towards the head of the bay, where I observed a village upon a very high point, fortified in the manner that has been already described, and having fixed upon an anchoring-place not far from where the ship lay, I returned on board.

At three o'clock in the afternoon I weighed, run in nearer to the shore, and anchored in four fathom and an half water, with a soft sandy bottom, the south point of the bay bearing E. distant one mile, and a river which the boats can enter at low-water S. S. E. distant one mile and an half.

In the morning, the natives came off again to the ship, and we had the satisfaction to observe that their behaviour was very different from what it had been yesterday. Among them was an old man, whom we had before remarked for his prudence and honesty; his name was TOIAVA, and he seemed to be a person of a superior rank. In the transactions of yesterday morning he had behaved with greater propriety and good sense, lying in a small canoe, always near the ship, and treating those on board as if he neither intended a fraud nor suspected an injury: with some persuasion this man and another came on board, and ventured into the cabin, where I presented each of them with a piece of English cloth and some spike-nails. They told us, that the Indians were now very much afraid of us; and, on our part, we promised friendship if they would behave peaceably, desiring only to purchase what they had to sell upon their own terms. Sunday 5.

After the natives had left us, I went with the pinnace and long-boat into the river, with a design to haul the seine, and sent the master in the yawl to sound the bay, and dredge for fish. The Indians who were on one side of the river, expressed their friendship by all the signs they could devise, beckoning us to land among them; but we chose to go a-shore on the other side, as the situation

1769.
November.

situation was more convenient for hauling the seine and shooting birds, of which they saw great numbers of various kinds. The Indians, with much persuasion about noon ventured over to us. With the seine we had very little success, catching only a few mullets; neither did we get any thing by the trawl or the dredge, except a few shells; but we shot several birds, most of them resembling sea-pies, except that they had black plumage and red bills and feet. While we were absent with our guns, the people who staid with the boats saw two of the Indians quarrel and fight; they began the battle with their lances, but some old men interposed and took them away, leaving them to decide the difference, like Englishmen, with their fists. They boxed with great vigour and obstinacy for some time, but by degrees all retired behind a little hill, so that our people could not see the event of the combat.

Monday 6.

In the morning, the long-boat was sent again to trawl in the bay, and an officer, with the marines and a party of men, to cut wood and haul the seine. The Indians on shore appeared very peaceable and submissive, and we had reason to believe that their habitations were at a considerable distance, for we saw no houses, and found that they slept under the bushes. The bay is probably a place to which they frequently resort in parties to gather shell-fish, of which it affords incredible plenty; for wherever we went, whether upon the hills or in the vallies, the woods or the plains, we saw vast heaps of shells, often many waggon-loads together, some appearing to be very old, and others recent. We saw no cultivation in this place, which had a desolate and barren appearance; the tops of the hills were green, but nothing grew there except a large kind of fern, the roots of which the natives had got together in large quantities, in order to carry away with them. In the evening Mr. Banks walked up the river, which at the mouth looked fine and broad, but at the distance of about two miles was not broad enough to cover the foot, and the country inland was still more barren than at the sea-side. The seine and dredge were not more successful to-day than yesterday; but the Indians in some measure compensated for the disappointment, by bringing

ing us several baskets of fish, some dry, and some fresh dressed; it was not indeed of the best, but I ordered it all to be bought, for the encouragement of trade.

1769.
November.

On the 7th, the weather was so bad that none of us left the ship, nor did any of the Indians come on board.

Tuesd. 7.

On the 8th, I sent a party of men on shore to wood and water; and in the mean time many canoes came off, in one of which was our friend Toiava; soon after he was along-side of the ship, he saw two canoes coming from the opposite side of the bay, upon which he halted back again to the shore with all his canoes, telling us that he was afraid of the people who were coming. This was a further proof that the people of this country were continually committing hostilities against each other. In a short time, however, he returned, having discovered that the people who had alarmed him were not the same that he had supposed. The natives that came to the ship this morning sold us, for a few pieces of cloth, as much fish, of the mackerel kind, as served the whole ship's company, and they were as good as ever were eaten. At noon, this day, I observed the sun's meridional zenith distance by an astronomical quadrant, which gave the latitude $36^{\circ} 47' 43''$ within the south entrance of the bay.

Wednesd. 8.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on shore and collected a great variety of plants, altogether unknown, and, not returning till the evening, had an opportunity of observing in what manner the Indians disposed themselves to pass the night. They had no shelter but a few shrubs; the women and the children were ranged innermost, or farthest from the sea; the men lay in a kind of half circle round them, and their arms were set up against the trees close by them, in a manner which shewed that they were afraid of an attack by some enemy not far distant. It was also discovered, that they acknowledged neither Teratu, nor any other person as their king. As in this particular they differed from all the people that we had seen upon other parts of the coast, we thought it possible that they might be a set of outlaws, in a state of rebellion against Teratu, and in that case they might have no settled habitations, or cultivated land in any part of the country.

On

1769.
November.
Thursd. 9.

On the 9th, at day-break, a great number of canoes came on board, loaded with mackerel of two sorts, one exactly the same with those caught in England, and the other somewhat different. We imagined the people had taken a large shoal, and brought us an overplus which they could not consume, for they sold them at a very low rate. They were, however, very welcome to us, ; at eight o'clock the ship had more fish on board than all her people could eat in three days, and before night the quantity was so much increased, that every man who could get salt cured as many as would last him a month.

After an early breakfast, I went a-shore, with Mr. Green and proper instruments, to observe the transit of Mercury, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander being of the party. The weather had for some time been very thick, with much rain; but this day was so favourable, that not a cloud intervened during the whole transit. The observation of the ingress was made by Mr. Green alone, while I was employed in taking the sun's altitude to ascertain the time. It came on at $7^h 20' 58''$ apparent time; according to Mr. Green's observation, the internal contact was at $12^h 8' 58''$, the external at $12^h 9' 55''$ P. M. and according to mine, the internal contact was at $12^h 8' 54''$, and the external at $12^h 9' 48''$; the latitude of the place of observation was $30^\circ 48' 5\frac{1}{2}''$. The latitude observed at noon was $36^\circ 48' 28''$. The mean of this and yesterday's observation gives $36^\circ 48' 5\frac{1}{2}''$ S. the latitude of the place of observation; the variation of the compass was $11^\circ 9'$ E.

About noon, we were alarmed by the firing of a great gun from the ship; Mr. Gore, my second lieutenant, was at this time commanding officer on board, and the account that he gave was this: While some small canoes were trading with the people, two very large ones came up, full of men, one of them having on board forty-seven, all armed with pikes, darts, and stones, and apparently with a hostile intention. They appeared to be strangers, and to be rather conscious of superiority over us by their numbers, than afraid of any weapons which could give us the superiority over them. No attack, however, was made, probably because they learned from the people in the other canoes, with

with whom they immediately entered into conference, what kind of an enemy they had to deal with. After a little time they began to trade, some of them offering their arms, and one of them a square piece of cloth, which makes a part of their dress, called a Haahow; several of their weapons were purchased, and Mr. Gore having agreed for a Haahow, sent down the price, which was a piece of British cloth, and expected his purchase; but the Indian, as soon as he had got Mr. Gore's cloth in his possession, refused to part with his own, and put off the canoe: upon being threatened for this fraud, he and his companions began to sing their war song in defiance, and shook their paddles; still, however, they began no attack, only defying Mr. Gore to take any remedy in his power, which so provoked him, that he levelled a musquet, loaded with ball, at the offender, while he was holding the cloth in his hand, and shot him dead. It would have been happy if the effect of a few small shot had been tried upon this occasion, which upon some others had been successful.

1769.
November.

When the Indian dropped, all the canoes put off to some distance; but as they did not go away, it was thought they might still meditate an attack. To secure therefore a safe passage for the boat, which it was necessary to send on shore, a round shot was fired over their heads, which effectually answered their purpose, and put them all to flight. When an account of what had happened was brought a-shore, our Indians were alarmed, and drawing all together retreated in a body. After a short time, however, they returned, having heard a more particular account of the affair, and intimated, that they thought the man who had been killed deserved his fate.

A little before sunset the Indians retired to eat their supper, and we went with them to be spectators of the repast: it consisted of fish of different kinds, among which were lobsters, and some birds of a species unknown to us; these were either roasted or baked. To roast them, they fastened them upon a small stick, which was stuck up in the ground, inclining towards their fire; and to bake them, they put them into a hole

1769.
November.

in the ground with hot stones, in the same manner as the people of Otaheite.

Among the natives that were assembled upon this occasion, we saw a woman who, after their manner, was mourning for the death of her relation : she sat upon the ground near the rest, who, one only excepted, seemed not at all to regard her. The tears constantly trickled down her cheeks, and she repeated in a low, but very mournful voice, words which even Tupia did not at all understand : at the end of every sentence she cut her arms, her face, or her breast, with a shell that she held in her hand, so that she was almost covered with blood, and was indeed one of the most affecting spectacles that can be conceived. The cuts, however, did not appear to be so deep as are sometimes made upon similar occasions, if we may judge by the scars which we saw upon the arms, thighs, breasts, and cheeks of many of them, which, we were told, were the remains of wounds which they had inflicted upon themselves, as testimonies of their affection and sorrow.

Friday 10.

The next day I went with two boats, accompanied by Mr. Banks and the other gentlemen, to examine a large river that empties itself into the head of the bay. We rowed about four or five miles up, and could have gone much farther if the weather had been favourable. It was here wider than at the mouth, and divided into many streams by small flat islands, which are covered with mangroves, and overflowed at high water. From these trees exudes a viscous substance, which very much resembles resin : we found it first in small lumps upon the sea beach, and now saw it sticking to the trees, by which we knew whence it came. We landed on the east side of the river, where we saw a tree upon which several shags had built their nests, and here therefore we determined to dine ; twenty of the shags were soon killed, and, being broiled upon the spot, afforded us an excellent meal. We then went upon the hills, from whence I thought I saw the head of the river. The shore on each side, as well as the islands in the middle, were covered with mangroves, and the sand-banks abounded in cocklets and clams ; in many places there were rock oysters, and every where plenty of wild fowl, principally

principally shags, ducks, curleus, and the sea-pie, that has been described before. We also saw fish in the river, but of what kind we could not discover. The country on the east side of this river is for the most part barren, and destitute of wood; but on the west it has a better aspect, and in some places is adorned with trees, but has in no part the appearance of cultivation. In the entrance of the river, and for two or three miles up, there is good anchoring in four and five fathoms water, and places very convenient for laying a vessel on shore, where the tide rises and falls seven feet at the full and change of the moon. We could not determine whether any considerable stream of fresh water came into this river out of the country, but we saw a number of small rivulets issue from the adjacent hills. Near the mouth of this river, on the east side, we found a little Indian village, consisting of small temporary sheds, where we landed, and were received by the people with the utmost kindness and hospitality: they treated us with a flat shell-fish of a most delicious taste, somewhat like a cockle, which we eat hot from the coals. Near this place is a high point or peninsula, projecting into the river, and upon it are the remains of a fort, which they call Eppah or Heppah. The best engineer in Europe could not have chosen a situation better adapted to enable a small number to defend themselves against a greater. The steepness of the cliffs renders it wholly inaccessible from the water, which incloses it on three sides; and, to the land, it is fortified by a ditch, and a bank raised on the inside: from the top of the bank to the bottom of the ditch is two-and-twenty feet; the ditch on the outside is fourteen feet deep, and its breadth is in proportion. The whole seemed to have been executed with great judgment; and there had been a row of pickets, or pallisadoes, both on the top of the bank and along the brink of the ditch on the outside; those on the outside had been driven very deep into the ground, and were inclined towards the ditch, so as to project over it; but of these the thickest posts only were left, and upon them were evident marks of fire, so that the place had probably been taken and destroyed by an enemy. If any occasion should make it necessary for a ship to winter here, or stay any time,

1769.
November.

1769.
November.

Saturd. 11.

tents might be built in this place, which is sufficiently spacious, with great convenience, and might easily be made impregnable to the whole country.

On the eleventh, there was so much wind and rain that no canoe came off; but the long-boat was sent to fetch oysters from one of the beds which had been discovered the day before: the boat soon returned, deeply laden, and the oysters, which were as good as ever came from Colchester, and about the same size, were laid under the booms, and the ship's company did nothing but eat them from the time they came on board till night, when, as may reasonably be supposed, great part of them were expended; this, however, gave us no concern, as we knew that not the boat only, but the ship, might have been loaded almost in one tide, as the beds are dry at half ebb.

Sunday 12.

In the morning of Sunday the 12th, two canoes came off full of people whom we had never seen before, but who appeared to have heard of us, by the caution which they used in approaching us. As we invited them to come along-side, with all the tokens of friendship that we could shew, they ventured up, and two of them came on board; the rest traded very fairly for what they had; a small canoe also came from the other side of the bay, and sold us some very large fish, which they gave us to understand, they would have brought yesterday, having caught them the day before, but that the wind was so high they could not venture to sea.

After breakfast I went with the pinnace and yawl, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, over to the north side of the bay, to take a view of the country, and two fortified villages which we had discovered at a distance. We landed near the smallest of them, the situation of which was the most beautifully romantic that can be imagined; it was built upon a small rock, detached from the main, and surrounded at high water. The whole body of this rock was perforated by an hollow arch, which possessed much the largest part of it; the top of the arch was above sixty feet perpendicular above the sea, which at high water flowed through the bottom of it; the whole summit of the rock above the arch was fenced round, after their manner;

1769.
November.

ner; but the area was not large enough to contain more than five or six houses: it was accessible only by one very narrow and steep path, by which the inhabitants, at our approach, came down, and invited us into the place; but we refused, intending to visit a much more considerable fort of the same kind at about a mile's distance. We made some presents, however, to the women, and in the mean time we saw the inhabitants of the town, which we were going to, coming towards us in a body, men, women, and children, to the number of about one hundred: when they came near enough to be heard, they waved their hands and called out Horomai, after which they sat down among the bushes near the beach. These ceremonies, we were told, were certain signs of their friendly disposition. We advanced to the place where they were sitting, and when we came up made them a few presents, and asked leave to visit their Heppah; they consented, with joy in their countenances, and immediately led the way. It is called WHARRETOUWA, and is situated upon a high promontory, or point, which projects into the sea on the north side, and near the head of the bay. Two sides of it are washed by the sea, and these are altogether inaccessible; two other sides are to the land; up one of them, which is very steep, lies the avenue from the beach, the other is flat and open to the country upon the hill, which is a narrow ridge; the whole is inclosed by a pallisade about ten feet high, consisting of strong pales bound together with withes. The weak side next the land is also defended by a double ditch, the innermost of which has a bank and an additional pallisade; the inner pallisades are upon the bank next the town, but at such a distance from the top of the bank, as to leave room for men to walk and use their arms between them and the inner ditch. The outermost pallisades are between the two ditches, and driven obliquely into the ground, so that their upper ends incline over the inner ditch: the depth of this ditch, from the bottom to the top, or crown of the bank, is four-and-twenty feet. Close within the innermost pallisade is a stage twenty feet high, forty feet long, and six broad; it is supported by strong posts, and is intended as a station

1769.
November.

for those who defend the place, from which they may annoy the assailants by darts and stones, heaps of which lay ready for use. Another stage of the same kind commands the steep avenue from the beach, and stands also within the pallisade: On this side of the hill there are some little out-works and huts, not intended as advanced posts, but as the habitations of people who for want of room could not be accommodated within the works, but who were, notwithstanding, desirous of placing themselves under their protection. The pallisades, as has been observed already, run round the whole brow of the hill, as well towards the sea as towards the land; but the ground within having originally been a mount, they have reduced it not to one level, but to several, rising in stages one above the other, like an amphitheatre, each of which is inclosed within its separate pallisade: they communicate with each other by narrow lanes, which might easily be stopped up; so that if an enemy should force the outward pallisade, he would have others to carry before the place could be wholly reduced, supposing these places to be obstinately defended one after the other. The only entrance is by a narrow passage, about twelve feet long, communicating with the steep ascent from the beach: it passes under one of the fighting stages, and though we saw nothing like a door or gateway, it may be easily barricaded in a manner that will make the forcing it a very dangerous and difficult undertaking. Upon the whole, this must be considered as a place of great strength, in which a small number of resolute men may defend themselves against all the force which a people with no other arms than those that are in use here could bring against it. It seemed to be well furnished for a siege with every thing but water; we saw great quantities of fern-root, which they eat as bread, and dried fish piled up in heaps; but we could not perceive that they had any fresh water nearer than a brook, which runs close under the foot of the hill: whether they have any means of getting it from this place during a siege, or whether they have any method of storing it within the works in gourds or other vessels, we could not learn; some resource they certainly have with respect to this article, an indispensable

indispensable necessary of life, for otherwise the laying up dry provisions could answer no purpose. Upon our expressing a desire to see their method of attack and defence, one of the young men mounted a fighting stage, which they call Porava, and another went into the ditch; both he that was to defend the place, and he that was to assault it, sung the war song, and danced with the same frightful gesticulations that we had seen used in more serious circumstances, to work themselves up into a degree of that mechanical fury, which, among all uncivilized nations, is the necessary prelude to a battle; for dispassionate courage, a strength of mind that can surmount the sense of danger, without a flow of animal spirits by which it is extinguished, seems to be the prerogative of those who have projects of more lasting importance, and a keener sense of honour and disgrace, than can be formed or felt by men who have few pains or pleasures besides those of mere animal life, and scarcely any purpose but to provide for the day that is passing over them, to obtain plunder, or revenge an insult: they will march against each other indeed in cool blood, though they find it necessary to work themselves into passion before they engage; as among us there have been many instances of people who have deliberately made themselves drunk, that they might execute a project which they formed when they were sober, but which, while they continued so, they did not dare to undertake.

1769.
November.

On the side of the hill, near this inclosure, we saw about half an acre planted with gourds and sweet potatoes, which was the only cultivation in the bay: under the foot of the point upon which this fortification stands, are two rocks, one just broken off from the main, and the other not perfectly detached from it: they are both small, and seem more proper for the habitations of birds than men; yet there are houses and places of defence upon each of them. And we saw many other works of the same kind upon small islands, rocks, and ridges of hills, on different parts of the coast, besides many fortified towns, which appeared to be much superior to this.

The perpetual hostility in which these poor savages, who have made every village a fort, must necessarily live,

1769.
November.

live, will account for there being so little of their land in a state of cultivation; and, as mischiefs very often reciprocally produce each other, it may perhaps appear, that there being so little land in a state of cultivation, will account for their living in perpetual hostility. But it is very strange, that the same invention and diligence which have been used in the construction of places so admirably adapted to defence, almost without tools, should not, when urged by the same necessity, have furnished them with a single missile weapon except the lance, which is thrown by hand: they have no contrivance like a bow to discharge a dart, nor any thing like a sling to assist them in throwing a stone; which is the more surprising, as the invention of slings, and bows and arrows, is much more obvious than of the works which these people construct, and both these weapons are found among much ruder nations, and in almost every other part of the world. Besides the long lance and Patoo-Patoo, which have been mentioned already; they have a staff about five feet long, sometimes pointed, like a Serjeant's halberd, sometimes only tapering to a point at one end, and having the other end broad, and shaped somewhat like the blade of an oar. They have also another weapon, about a foot shorter than these, pointed at one end, and at the other shaped like an axe. The points of their long lances are barbed, and they handle them with such strength and agility, that we can match them with no weapon but a loaded musquet.

After taking a slight view of the country, and loading both the boats with celery, which we found in great plenty near the beach, we returned from our excursion, and about five o'clock in the evening got on board the ship.

Wednes. 15.

On the 15th, I sailed out of the bay, and at the same time had several canoes on board, in one of which was our friend Toiava, who said, that as soon as we were gone he must repair to his Heppah or fort, because the friends of the man who had been shot by Mr. Gore on the 9th, had threatened to revenge his death upon him, whom they had reproached as being our friend. Off the north point of the bay, I saw a great number of islands, of various extent, which lay scattered

scattered to the north-west, in a direction parallel with the main as far as I could see. I steered north-east for the north-eastermost of these islands; but the wind coming to the north-west, I was obliged to stand out to sea.

1769.
November.

To the bay which we had now left I gave the name of **MERCURY BAY**, on account of the observation which we had made there of the transit of that planet over the sun. It lies in latitude $36^{\circ} 4' S.$ and in the longitude of $184^{\circ} 4' W.$ there are several islands lying both to the southward and northward of it, and a small island or rock in the middle of the entrance: within this island the depth of water no where exceeds nine fathom: the best anchoring is in a sandy bay, which lies just within the south head, in five and four fathom, bringing a high tower or rock, which lies without the head, in one with the head, or just shut in behind it. This place is very convenient both for wooding and watering, and in the river there is an immense quantity of oysters and other shell-fish: I have for this reason given it the name of **OYSTER RIVER**. But for a ship that wants to stay here any time, the best and safest place is in the river at the head of the bay; which, from the number of mangrove trees about it, I have called **MANGROVE RIVER**. To sail into this river, the south shore must be kept all the way on board. The country on the east side of the river and bay is very barren, its only produce being fern, and a few other plants that will grow in a poor soil. The land on the north-west side is covered with wood, and the soil being much more fertile, would doubtless produce all the necessaries of life with proper cultivation: it is not however so fertile as the lands that we have seen to the southward; nor do the inhabitants, though numerous, make so good an appearance: they have no plantations; their canoes are mean and without ornament; they sleep in the open air; and say, that Teratu, whose sovereignty they do not acknowledge, if he was to come among them, would kill them. This favoured our opinion of their being outlaws; yet they told us, that they had Heppahs or strong holds, to which they retired in time of imminent danger.

We

1769.
November.

We found, thrown upon the shore, in several parts of this bay, great quantities of iron sand, which is brought down by every little rivulet of fresh water that finds its way from the country ; which is a demonstration that there is ore of that metal not far inland : yet neither the inhabitants of this place nor any other part of the coast that we have seen, know the use of iron, or set the least value upon it ; all of them preferring the most worthless and useless trifle, not only to a nail, but to any tool of that metal.

Before we left the bay, we cut upon one of the trees near the watering-place the ship's name, and that of the Commander, with the date of the year and month when we were there ; and, after displaying the English colours, I took a formal possession of it in the name of his Britannic Majesty King George the Third.

C H A P. IV.

The Range from Mercury Bay to the Bay of Islands. An Expedition up the River Thames : Some Account of the Indians who inhabit its Banks, and the fine Timber that grows there. Several interviews with the Natives on different Parts of the Coast, and a Skirmish with them upon an Island.

Satur. 18.

I Continued plying to windward two days to get under the land, and on the 18th, about seven in the morning, we were a-breast of a very conspicuous promontory, being then in latitude $36^{\circ} 26'$, and in the direction of N. 48 W. from the north head of Mercury Bay or Point Mercury, which was distant nine leagues : upon this point stood many people, who seemed to take little notice of us, but talked together with great earnestness. In about half an hour, several canoes put off from different places, and came towards the ship ; upon which the people on the point also launched a canoe, and about twenty of them came in her up with the others. When two of these canoes, in which there might be about sixty men, came near enough to make themselves heard, they sung their war-song ; but seeing

1769.
November.

ing that we took little notice of it, they threw a few stones at us, and then rowed off towards the shore. We hoped that we had now done with them, but in a short time they returned, as if with a fixed resolution to provoke us into a battle, animating themselves by their song as they had done before. Tupia, without any directions from us, went to the poop, and began to expostulate: he told them, that we had weapons which would destroy them in a moment: and that, if they ventured to attack us, we should be obliged to use them. Upon this, they flourished their weapons and cried out in their language, "Come on shore, and we will kill you all:" Well, said Tupia, but why should you molest us while we are at sea? As we do not wish to fight, we shall not accept your challenge to come on shore; and here is no pretence for a quarrel, the sea being no more your property than the ship. This eloquence of Tupia, though it greatly surprized us, having given him no hints for the arguments he used, had no effect upon our enemies, who very soon renewed their battery: a musquet was then fired through one of their boats, and this was an argument of sufficient weight, for they immediately fell a-stern and left us.

From the point, of which we were now a-breast, the land trends W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. near a league, and then S. S. E. as far as we could see; and, besides the islands that lay without us, we could see land round by the S. W. as far as the N. W. but whether this was the main or islands, we could not then determine: the fear of losing the main, however, made me resolve to follow its direction. With this view, I hauled round the point and steered to the southward, but there being light airs all round the compass, we made but little progress.

About one o'clock, a breeze sprung up at east, which afterwards came to N. E. and we steered along the shore S. by E. and S. S. E. having from twenty-five to eighteen fathom.

At about half an hour after seven in the evening, having run seven or eight leagues since noon, I anchored in twenty-three fathom, not chusing to run any farther in the dark, as I had now land on both sides, forming

1769.
November.
Sunday 19.

ing the entrance of a streight, bay, or river, lying S. by E. for on that point we could see no land.

At day-break, on the 19th, the wind being still favourable, we weighed and stood with an easy sail up the inlet, keeping nearest to the east side. In a short time two large canoes came off to us from the shore; the people on board said, that they knew Toiava very well, and called Tupia by his name. I invited some of them on board; and as they knew they had nothing to fear from us, while they behaved honestly and peaceably, they immediately complied: I made each of them some presents, and dismissed them much gratified. Other canoes afterwards came up to us from a different side of the bay; and the people on board of these also mentioned the name of Toiava, and sent a young man into the ship, who told us he was his grandson, and he also was dismissed with a present.

After having run about five leagues from the place where we had anchored the night before, our depth of water gradually decreased to six fathom; and not choos- ing to go into less, as it was tide of flood, and the wind blew right up the inlet, I came to an anchor about the middle of the channel, which is near eleven miles over; after which I sent two boats out to sound, one on one side, and the other on the other.

The boats not having found above three feet more water than we were now in, I determined to go no farther with the ship, but to examine the head of the bay in the boats; for, as it appeared to run a good way inland, I thought this a favourable opportunity to examine the interior part of the country and its produce.

Monday 20. At day-break, therefore, I set out in the pinnace and long-boat, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia; and we found the inlet end in a river, about nine miles above the ship: into this river we entered with the first of the flood, and within three miles found the water perfectly fresh. Before we had proceeded more than one third of that distance, we found an Indian town, which was built upon a small bank of dry sand, but intirely surrounded by a deep mud, which possibly the inhabitants might consider as a defence. These people, as soon as they saw us, thronged to.

to the banks, and invited us on shore. We accepted the invitation, and made them a visit, notwithstanding the mud. They received us with open arms, having heard of us from our good old friend Toiava; but our stay could not be long, as we had other objects of curiosity in view. We proceeded up the river till near noon, when we were fourteen miles within its entrance; and then, finding the face of the country to continue nearly the same, without any alteration in the course of the stream, which we had no hopes of tracing to its source, we landed on the west side, to take a view of the lofty trees which every where adorned its banks. They were of a kind that we had seen before, though only at a distance, both in Poverty-Bay and Hawke's-Bay. Before we had walked an hundred yards into the wood, we met with one of them which was nineteen feet eight inches in the girth, at the height of six feet above the ground: having a quadrant with me, I measured its height from the root to the first branch, and found it to be eighty-nine feet: it was as strait as an arrow, and tapered but very little in proportion to its height, so that I judged there were three hundred and fifty-six feet of solid timber in it, exclusive of the branches. As we advanced, we saw many others that were still larger; we cut down a young one, and the wood proved heavy and solid, not fit for masts, but such as would make the finest plank in the world. Our carpenter, who was with us, said that the timber resembled that of the pitch-pine, which is lightened by tapping; and possibly some such method might be found to lighten these, and they would then be such masts as no country in Europe can produce. As the wood was swampy, we could not range far; but found many stout trees of other kinds, all of them utterly unknown to us, specimens of which we brought away.

The river at this height is as broad as the Thames at Greenwich, and the tide of flood as strong; it is not indeed quite so deep, but has water enough for vessels of more than a middle size, and a bottom of mud, so soft that nothing could take damage by running a shore.

About

1769.
November.

1769.
November.

About three o'clock, we re-embarked, in order to return with the first of the ebb, and named the river the THAMES, it having some resemblance to our own river of that name. In our return, the inhabitants of the village where we had been ashore, seeing us take another channel, came off to us in their canoes, and trafficked with us in the most friendly manner, till they had disposed of the few trifles they had. The tide of ebb just carried us out of the narrow part of the river, into the channel that ran up from the sea, before it was dark; and we pulled hard to reach the ship, but meeting the flood, and a strong breeze at N. N. W. with showers of rain, we were obliged to desist; and about midnight, we ran under the land, and came to a grapping, where we took such rest as our situation would admit. At break of day, we set forward again, and it was past seven o'clock before we reached the ship. We were all extremely tired, but thought ourselves happy to be on board; for before nine it blew so hard that the boat could not have rowed a-head, and must therefore either have gone a-shore, or taken shelter under it.

Tuesday 21.

About three o'clock, having the tide of ebb, we took up our anchor, and made sail, and plied down the river till eight in the evening, when we came to an anchor again; early in the morning we made sail with the first ebb, and kept plying till the flood obliged us once more to come to an anchor. As we had now only a light breeze, I went in the pinnace, accompanied by Dr. Solander, to the western shore; but I saw nothing worthy of notice.

Wednes. 22.

When I left the ship, many canoes were about it; Mr. Banks therefore chose to stay on board, and traffic with the natives: they bartered their clothes and arms, chiefly for paper, and behaved with great friendship and honesty. But while some of them were below with Mr. Banks, a young man who was upon the deck stole a half-minute glass which was in the binnacle, and was detected just as he was carrying it off. Mr. Hicks, who was commanding officer on board, took it into his head to punish him, by giving him twelve lashes with a cat-o'-nine-tails; and accordingly ordered him to be taken to the gang-way, and tied up to

1769.
November.

to the shrouds. When the other Indians who were on board saw him seized, they attempted to rescue him; and being resisted, called for their arms, which were handed up from the canoes, and the people of one of them attempted to come up the ship's side. The tumult was heard by Mr. Banks, who, with Tupia, came hastily upon the deck to see what had happened. The Indians immediately ran up to Tupia, who, finding Mr. Hicks inexorable, could only assure them, that nothing was intended against the life of their companion; but that it was necessary he should suffer some punishment for his offence, which being explained to them, they seemed to be satisfied. The punishment was then inflicted, and as soon as the criminal was unbound, an old man among the spectators, who was supposed to be his father, gave him a hearty beating, and sent him down into his canoe. All the canoes then dropped astern, and the people said that they were afraid to come any more near the ship: after much persuasion, however, they ventured back again: but their cheerful confidence was at an end, and their stay was short; they promised indeed, at their departure, to return with some fish, but we saw no more of them.

On the 23d, the wind being contrary, we kept plying down the river, and at seven in the evening, got without the N.W. point of the islands lying on the west side of it. The weather being bad, night coming on, and having land on every side of us, I thought it most advisable to tack, and stretch in under the point, where we anchored in nineteen fathom. At five in the morning of the 24th, we weighed, and made sail to the N. W. under our courses and double-reefed top-sails, the wind being at S. W. by W. and W. S. W. a strong gale and squally. As the gale would not permit us to come near the land, we had but a slight and distant view of it from the time when we got under sail till noon, during a run of twelve leagues, but we never once lost sight of it. At this time, our latitude, by observation, was $36^{\circ} 15' 20''$, we were not above two miles from a point of land on the main, and three leagues and an half from a very high island, which bore N. E. by E. in this situation we had twenty-six fathom water: the farthest point on the main that we could

Thursd. 23.

Friday 24.

1769.
November

could see bore N. W. but we could perceive several small islands lying to the north of that direction. The point of land of which we were now abreast, and which I called POINT RODNEY, is the N. W. extremity of the river Thames; for under that name I comprehend the deep bay which terminates in the fresh-water stream, and the N. E. extremity is the promontory which we passed when we entered it, and which I called CAPE COLVILLE, in honour of the Right Hon. Lord Colville.

Cape Colville lies in latitude $36^{\circ} 26'$, longitude $194^{\circ} 27'$; it rises directly from the sea to a considerable height, and is remarkable for a lofty rock, which stands to the pitch of the point, and may be distinguished at a very great distance. From the south point of this Cape the river runs in a direct line S. by E. and is no where less than three leagues broad for the distance of fourteen leagues above the Cape, and there it is contracted to a narrow stream, but continues the same course through a low flat country, or broad valley, which lies parallel with the sea-coast, and the end of which we could not see. On the east side of the broad part of this river the land is tolerably high and hilly; on the west side it is rather low, but the whole is covered with verdure and wood, and has the appearance of great fertility, though there were but a few small spots which had been cultivated. At the entrance of the narrow part of the river the land is covered with mangroves and other shrubs; but farther there are immense woods of perhaps the finest timber in the world, of which some account has already been given: in several places the wood extends to the very edge of the water, and where it is at a little distance, the intermediate space is marshy, like some part of the banks of the Thames in England: it is probable that the river contains plenty of fish, for we saw poles stuck up in many places to set nets for catching them, but of what kinds I do not know. The greatest depth of water that we found in this river was six-and-twenty fathom, which gradually decreased to one fathom and an half: in the mouth of the fresh-water stream it is from four to three fathom, but there are large flats and sand banks lying before it. A ship

ship of moderate draught may, notwithstanding, go a long way up this river with a flowing tide, for it rises perpendicularly near ten feet, and at the full and change of the moon, it is high water about nine o'clock. 1769
November.

Six leagues within Cape Colville, under the eastern shore, are several small islands, which, together with the main, seem to form good harbours; and opposite to these islands, under the western shore, lie other islands, by which it is also probable that good harbours may be formed: but if there are no harbours about this river, there is good anchoring in every part of it where the depth of water is sufficient, for it is defended from the sea by a chain of islands of different extent, which lie cross the mouth of it, and which I have, for that reason, called **BARRIER ISLANDS**: they stretch N. W. and S. E. ten leagues. The south end of the chain lies N. E. between two and three leagues from Cape Colville; and the north end lies N. E. four leagues and a half from Point Rodney. Point Rodney lies W. N. W. nine leagues from Cape Colville, in latitude $36^{\circ} 15'$ S. longitude $184^{\circ} 53'$ W.

The natives residing about this river do not appear to be numerous, considering the great extent of the country. But they are a strong, well-made, and active people, and all of them paint their bodies with red ochre and oil from head to foot, which we had not seen before. Their canoes were large and well-built, and adorned with carving, in as good a taste as any that we had seen upon the coast.

We continued to stand along the shore till night, with the main land on one side, and the islands on the other, and then anchored in a bay, with fourteen fathoms and a sandy bottom. We had no sooner come to an anchor, than we tried our lines, and in a short time caught near one hundred fish, which the people called Sea-bream; they weighed from six to eight pounds a-piece, and consequently would supply the whole ship's company with food for two days. From the success of our lines here, we called the place **BREAM BAY**: the two points that form it lie north and south, five leagues from each other; it is every where of a good breadth, and between three and four leagues deep: at the bottom of it there appears to be a river of fresh water.

1769.
November.

The north head of the bay called BREAM HEAD, is high land, and remarkable for several pointed rocks, which stand in a range upon the top of it: it may also be known by some small islands which lie before it, called the HEN AND CHICKENS, one of which is high, and terminates in two peaks. It lies in latitude $35^{\circ} 46'$ S. and at the distance of seventeen leagues and an half from Cape Colville, in the direction of N. 41 W.

The land between Point Rodney and Bream Head, an extent of ten leagues, is low, and wooded in tufts, with white sand-banks between the sea and the firm land. We saw no inhabitants, but many fires in the night; and where there are fires, there are always people.

Saturday 25. At day-break, on the 25th, we left the bay, and steered along shore to the northward: we found the variation of the compass to be $12^{\circ} 42'$ E. At noon, our latitude was $36^{\circ} 36'$ S. Bream Head bore south, distant ten miles; and we saw some small islands, to which I gave the name of the POOR KNIGHTS, at N. E. by N. distant three leagues: the northermost land in sight bore N. N. W. we were in this place at the distance of two miles from the shore, and had twenty-six fathoms water.

The country appeared low, but well covered with wood: we saw some straggling houses, three or four fortified towns, and near them a large quantity of cultivated land.

In the evening, seven large canoes came off to us, with about two hundred men: some of them came on board, and said that they had heard of us. To two of them, who appeared to be Chiefs, I gave presents; but when these were gone out of the ship, the others became exceedingly troublesome. Some of those in the canoes began to trade, and, according to their custom, to cheat, by refusing to deliver what had been bought, after they had received the price: among these was one who had received an old pair of black breeches, which, upon a few small shot, being fired at him, he threw into the sea. All the boats soon after paddled off to some distance, and when they thought they were out of reach, they began to defy us, by singing their song and brandishing their weapons. We thought it advise-
able

able to intimidate them, as well for their sake as our own, and therefore fired first some small arms, and then round shot over their heads: the last put them in a terrible fright, though they received no damage, except by over-heating themselves in paddling away, which they did with astonishing expedition.

1769.
November.

In the night we had variable light airs; but towards the morning a breeze sprung up at S. and afterwards at S. E. with which we proceeded slowly to the northward, along the shore. Sund. 26.

Between six and seven o'clock two canoes came off, and told us that they had heard of yesterday's adventure; notwithstanding which the people came on board, and traded very quietly and honestly for whatever they had: soon after two canoes came off from a more distant part of the shore; these were of a much larger size, and full of people: when they came near, they called off the other canoes which were along-side of the ship, and after a short conference they all came up together. The strangers appeared to be persons of a superior rank; their canoes were well carved with many ornaments, and they had with them a great variety of weapons: they had patoo-patoos both of stone and whalebone, upon which they appeared to set a great value; they had also ribs of whale, of which we had before seen imitations in wood, carved and adorned with tufts of dog's hair. Their complexions were browner than those of the people we had seen to the southward, and their bodies and faces were more marked with the black stains which they call Amoco: they had a broad spiral on each buttock; and the thighs of many of them were almost intirely black, some narrow lines only being left untouched, so that at first sight they appeared to wear striped breeches. With respect to the Amoco, every different tribe seemed to have a different custom; for all the men, in some canoes, seemed to be almost covered with it, and those in others had scarcely a stain except on the lips, which were black in all of them without a single exception. These gentlemen, for a long time, refused to part with any of their weapons, whatever was offered for them; as last, however, one of them produced a piece of
N 2 talc;

1769.
November.

talc, wrought into the shape of an axe, and agreed to sell it for a piece of cloth : the cloth was handed over the ship's side, but his honour immediately put off his canoe with the axe. We had recourse to our usual expedient, and fired a musket ball over the canoe, upon which it put back to the ship, and the piece of cloth was returned ; all the boats then went a-shore, without offering any further intercourse.

At noon, the main land extended from S. by E. to N. W. by W. a remarkable point of land bearing W. distant four or five miles ; at three we passed it, and I gave it the name of CAPE BRET, in honour of Sir Piercy. The land of this Cape is considerably higher than any part of the adjacent coast : at the point of it, is a high round hillock, and N. E. by N. at the distance of about a mile, is a small high island or rock, which, like several that have already been described, was perforated quite through, so as to appear like the arch of a bridge. This Cape, or at least some part of it, is by the natives called MORUGOGOGO, and it lies in latitude $35^{\circ} 10' 30''$ S. longitude $185^{\circ} 25' W.$ On the west side of it is a large and pretty deep bay, lying in S. W. by W. in which there appeared to be several small islands : the point that forms the N. W. entrance lies W. $\frac{1}{4}$ N. at the distance of three or four leagues from Cape Bret, and I distinguished it by the name of POINT POCOCKE. On the west side of the bay we saw several villages, both upon islands and the main, and several very large canoes came off to us, full of people, who made a better appearance than any we had seen yet : they were all stout and well-made ; their hair, which was black, was tied up in a bunch on the crown of their heads, and stuck with white feathers. In each of the canoes, were two or three Chiefs, whose habits were of the best sort of cloth, and covered with dog's skin, so as to make an agreeable appearance : most of these people were marked with the Amoco, like those who had been along-side of us before : their manner of trading was also equally fraudulent ; and the officers neglecting either to punish or fright them, one of the midshipmen, who had been defrauded in his bargain, had recourse, for revenge, to an expedient which was equally
ludicrous

ludicrous and severe ; he got a fishing-line, and when the man who had cheated him was close under the ship's side in his canoe, he heaved the lead with so good an aim, that the hook caught him by the back-side ; he then pulled the line, and the man holding back, the hook broke in the shank, and the beard was left sticking in the flesh.

1769.
November.

During the course of this day, though we did not range more than six or eight leagues of the coast, we had along-side and on board the ship between four and five hundred of the natives, which is a proof that this part of the country is well inhabited.

At eight o'clock the next morning, we were within a mile of a group of islands, which lie close under the main, at the distance of two-and-twenty miles from Cape Bret, in the direction of N. W. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At this place, having but little wind, we lay about two hours, during which time several canoes came off, and sold us some fish, which we called Cavalles, and for that reason I gave the same name to the islands. These people were very insolent, frequently threatening us, even while they were selling their fish ; and when some more canoes came up, they began to pelt us with stones. Some small shot were then fired, and hit one of them while he had a stone in his hand, in the very action of throwing it into the ship ; they did not, however, desist, till some others had been wounded, and then they went away, and we stood off to sea.

Mon. 27.

The wind being directly against us, we kept plying to windward till the 29th, when we had rather lost than gained ground ; I therefore bore up for a bay which lies to the westward of Cape Bret ; at this time it was about two leagues to leeward of us ; and at about eleven o'clock we anchored under the south-west side of one of the many islands which line it on the south-east, in four fathoms and a half water ; we shoaled our water to this depth all at once, and if this had not happened, I should not have come to an anchor so soon. The master was immediately sent out with two boats to sound, and he soon discovered that we had got upon a bank, which runs out from the north-west end

Wednes. 29.

1769.
November.

of the island, and that on the outside of it there was from eight to ten fathoms.

In the mean time the natives, to the number of near four hundred, crowded upon us in their canoes, and some of them were admitted on board: To one, who seemed to be a Chief, I gave a piece of broad-cloth, and distributed some trifling presents among the rest. I perceived that some of these people had been about the ship when she was off at sea, and that they knew the power of our fire-arms, for the very sight of a gun threw them into manifest confusion: under this impression they traded very fairly; but the people in one of the canoes took the opportunity of our being at dinner to tow away our buoy. A musquet was fired over them without effect; we then endeavoured to reach them with some small shot, but they were too far off. By this time they had got the buoy into their canoe, and we were obliged to fire a musket at them with ball; this hit one of them, and they immediately threw the buoy over-board; a round shot was then fired over them, which struck the water and went a-shore. Two or three of the canoes immediately landed their people, who ran about the beach, as we imagined, in search of the ball. Tupia called to them, and assured them, that while they were honest they should be safe, and with a little persuasion many of them returned to the ship, and their behaviour was such, as left us no reason to suspect that they intended to give us any farther trouble.

After the ship was removed into deeper water, and properly secured, I went with the pinnace and yawl, manned and armed, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and landed upon the island, which was about three quarters of a mile distant. We observed that the canoes which were about the ship, did not follow us upon our leaving her, which we thought a good sign; but we had no sooner landed than they crowded to different parts of the island, and came on shore. We were in a little cove, and in a few minutes were surrounded by two or three hundred people, some rushing from behind the heads of the cove, and others appearing on the tops of the hills: they

were

were all armed, but they came on in so confused and straggling a manner, that we scarcely suspected they meant us any harm, and we were determined that hostilities should not begin on our part. We marched towards them, and then drew a line upon the sand between them and us, which we gave them to understand they were not to pass. At first they continued quiet, but their weapons were held ready to strike, and they seemed to be rather irresolute than peaceable. While we remained in this state of suspense, another party of Indians came up, and now growing more bold as their number increased, they began the dance and song, which are their preludes to a battle; still, however, they delayed the attack, but a party ran to each of our boats, and attempted to draw them on shore: this seemed to be the signal, for the people about us at the same time began to press in upon our line. Our situation was now become too critical for us to remain longer inactive; I therefore discharged my musket, which was loaded with small shot, at one of the forwardest, and Mr. Banks and two of the men fired immediately afterwards. This made them fall back in some confusion; but one of the Chiefs, who was at the distance of about twenty yards, rallied them, and running forward waving his patoo-patoo, and calling loudly to his companions, led him to the charge. Dr. Solander, whose piece was not yet discharged, fired at this champion, who stopped short upon feeling the shot, and then ran away with the rest. They did not, however, disperse, but got together upon a rising ground, and seemed only to want some leader of resolution to renew their attack. As they were now beyond the reach of small-shot, we fired with ball; but as none of them took place, they still continued in a body, and in this situation we remained about a quarter of an hour. In the mean time the ship, from whence a much greater number of Indians were seen than could be discovered in our situation, brought her broad-side to bear, and intirely dispersed them, by firing a few shot over their heads. In this skirmish only two of the Indians were hurt with the small-shot, and not a single life was lost, which would not have been the case if I had not restrained the men, who, either from fear or a love of mischief,

1769.
November.

1769.
November.

shewed as much impatience to destroy them as a sportsman to kill his game. When we were in quiet possession of our cove we laid down our arms, and began to gather celery, which grew here in great plenty. After a little time, we recollected to have seen some of the people hide themselves in a cave of one of the rocks, we therefore went towards the place, when an old Indian, who proved to be the Chief that I had presented with a piece of broad-cloth in the morning, came out with his wife and his brother, and, in a supplicating posture, put themselves under our protection. We spoke kindly to them, and the old man then told us that he had another brother, who was one of those that had been wounded by the small-shot, and inquired, with much solicitude and concern, if he would die. We assured him that he would not, and at the same time put into his hand both a musket-ball and some small-shot, telling him, that those only who were wounded with the ball would die, and that the others would recover; at the same time assuring him, that if we were attacked again we should certainly defend ourselves with the ball, which would wound them mortally. Having now taken courage, they came and sat down by us; and, as tokens of our perfect amity, we made them presents of such trifles as we happened to have about us.

Soon after we re-embarked in our boats, and having rowed to another cove in the same island, climbed a neighbouring hill, which commanded the country to a considerable distance. The prospect was very uncommon and romantic, consisting of innumerable islands, which formed as many harbours, where the water was as smooth as a mill-pool. We saw also many towns, scattered houses, and plantations, the country being much more populous than any we had seen. One of the towns was very near us, from which many of the Indians advanced, taking great pains to shew us that they were unarmed, and in their gestures and countenances expressing great meekness and humility. In the mean time some of our people, who, when the Indians were to be punished for a fraud, assumed the inexorable justice of a Lycurgus, thought fit to break into one of their plantations and dig up some potatoes.

For

For this offence I ordered each of them to be punished with twelve lashes, after which two of them were discharged; but the third, insisting that it was no crime in an Englishman to plunder an Indian plantation, though it was a crime in an Indian to defraud an Englishman of a nail, I ordered him back into his confinement, from which I would not release him till he had received six lashes more.

1769.
November.

On the 30th, there being a dead calm, and no probability of our getting to sea, I sent the master with two boats to sound the harbour; and all the forenoon had several canoes about the ship, who traded in a very fair and friendly manner. In the evening we went ashore upon the main, where the people received us very cordially; but we found nothing worthy of notice.

In this bay we were detained by contrary winds and calms several days, during which time our intercourse with the natives was continued in the most peaceable and friendly manner, they being frequently about the ship, and we a-shore, both upon the islands and the main. In one of our visits to the continent, an old man shewed us the instrument they use in staining their bodies, which exactly resembled those that were employed for the same purpose at Otaheite. We saw also the man who was wounded in attempting to steal our buoy: the ball had passed through the fleshy part of his arm, and grazed his breast; but the wound, under the care of Nature, the best surgeon, and a simple diet, the best nurse, was in a good state, and seemed to give the patient neither pain nor apprehension. We saw also the brother of our old Chief, who had been wounded with small-shot in our skirmish: they had struck his thigh obliquely, and though several of them were still in the flesh, the wound seemed to be attended with neither danger nor pain. We found among their plantations the *morus papyrifera*, of which these people, as well as those of Otaheite, make cloth; but here the plant seems to be rare, and we saw no pieces of the cloth large enough for any use, but to wear by way of ornament in their ears.

Having

1769.
November.

Having one day landed in a very distant part of the bay, the people immediately fled, except one old man, who accompanied us wherever we went, and seemed much pleased with the little presents we made him. We came at last to a little fort, built upon a small rock, which at high water was surrounded by the sea, and accessible only by a ladder. We perceived that he eyed us with a kind of restless solicitude as we approached it, and upon our expressing a desire to enter it, he told us that his wife was there. He saw that our curiosity was not diminished by this intelligence, and, after some hesitation, he said, if we would promise to offer no indecency he would accompany us: our promise was readily given, and he immediately led the way. The ladder consisted of steps fastened to a pole, but we found the ascent both difficult and dangerous. When we entered we found three women, who, the moment they saw us, burst into tears of terror and surprize; some kind words, and a few presents, soon removed their apprehensions, and put them into good humour. We examined the house of our old friend, and by his interest two others, which were all that the fortification contained, and having distributed a few more presents, we parted with mutual satisfaction.

December.
Tuesday 5.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 5th of December, we weighed with a light breeze; but it being variable, with frequent calms, we made little way. We kept turning out of the bay till the afternoon, and about ten o'clock we were suddenly becalmed, so that the ship would neither wear nor stay; and the tide or current setting strong, she drove towards land so fast, that before any measures could be taken for her security, she was within a cable's length of the breakers; we had thirteen fathoms water, but the ground was so foul that we did not dare to drop our anchor; the pinnace therefore was immediately hoisted out to take the ship in tow, and the men, sensible of their danger, exerting themselves to the utmost, and a faint breeze springing up off the land, we perceived with unspeakable joy that she made head way, after having been so near the shore that Tupia, who was not sensible of our hair's breadth escape, was at this very time conversing with the people upon the beach, whose

voices

1769.
December.

voices were distinctly heard, notwithstanding the roar of the breakers. We now thought all danger was over, but about an hour afterwards, just as the man in the chains had cried "seventeen fathom," the ship struck. The shock threw us all into the utmost consternation; Mr. Banks, who had undressed himself and was stepping into bed, ran hastily up to the deck, and the man in the chains called out "five fathom;" by this time, the rock on which we had struck being to windward, the ship went off without having received the least damage, and the water very soon deepened to twenty fathom.

This rock lies half a mile W. N. W. of the northernmost or outermost island on the south-east side of the bay. We had light airs from the land, with calms, till nine o'clock the next morning, when we got out of the bay, and a breeze springing up at N. N. W. we stood out to sea. Wednes. 6.

This bay, as I have before observed, lies on the west side of Cape Bret, and I named it the BAY OF ISLANDS, from the great number of islands which line its shores, and form several harbours equally safe and commodious, where there is room and depth for any number of shipping. That in which we lay is on the south-west side of the south-westernmost island, called MATUARO, on the south-east side of the bay. I have made no accurate survey of this bay, being discouraged by the time it would cost me; I thought also that it was sufficient to be able to affirm that it afforded us good anchorage, and refreshment of every kind. It was not the season for roots, but we had plenty of fish, most of which, however, we purchased of the natives, for we could catch very little ourselves either with net or line. When we shewed the natives our seine, which is such as the King's ships are generally furnished with, they laughed at it, and in triumph produced their own, which was indeed of an enormous size, and made of a kind of grass, which is very strong: it was five fathoms deep, and by the room it took up, it could not be less than three or four hundred fathoms long. Fishing seems indeed to be the chief business of life in this part of the country; we saw about all their towns a great number of nets, laid in heaps like hay-cocks, and

1769.
December.

and covered with a thatch to keep them from the weather, and we scarcely entered a house where some of the people were not employed in making them. The fish we procured here were sharks, sting-rays, sea-bream, mullet, mackrel, and some others.

The inhabitants in this bay are far more numerous than in any other part of the country that we had before visited; it did not appear to us that they were united under one head, and tho' their towns were fortified, they seemed to live together in perfect amity.

It is high-water in this bay, at the full and change of the moon, about eight o'clock, and the tide then rises from six to eight feet perpendicularly. It appears, from such observations as I was able to make of the tides upon the sea-coast, that the flood comes from the southward, and I have reason to think that there is a current which comes from the westward, and sets along the shore to S. E. or S. S. E. as the land happens to lie.

C H A P. V.

Range from the Bay of Islands, round North-Cape to Queen Charlotte's Sound; and a Description of that Part of the Coast.

Thurs. 7.

ON Thursday the 7th of December, at noon, Cape Bret bore S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant ten miles, and our latitude, by observation, was $34^{\circ} 59'$ S. Soon after we made several observations of the sun and moon, the result of which made our longitude $185^{\circ} 36'$ W. The wind being against us, we had made but little way. In the afternoon we stood in-shore, and fetched close under the Cavalles, from which islands the main trends W. by N. several canoes put off and followed us, but a light breeze springing up, I did not choose to wait for them. I kept standing to the W. N. W. and

Friday 8.

N. W. till the next morning ten o'clock, when I tacked and stood in for the shore, from which we were about five leagues distant. At noon, the westernmost land in sight bore W. by S. and was about four leagues distant. In the afternoon, we had a gentle breeze to the west, which

1769.
December,
Saturday.

which in the evening came to the south, and continuing so all night, by day-light brought us pretty well in with the land, seven leagues to the westward of the Cavalles, where we found a deep bay running in S.W. by W. and W. S. W. the bottom of which we could but just see, and there the land appeared to be low and level. To this bay, which I called DOUBTLESS BAY, the entrance is formed by two points, which lie W.N.W. and E. S. E. and are five miles distant from each other. The wind not permitting us to look in here, we steered for the westermost land in sight, which bore from us W. N. W. about three leagues, but before we got the length of it, it fell calm.

While we lay becalmed, several canoes came off to us, but the people having heard of our guns, it was not without great difficulty that they were persuaded to come under our stern: after having bought some of their cloaths, as well as their fish, we began to make inquiries concerning their country, and learned, by the help of Tupia, that, at the distance of three days rowing in their canoes, at a place called MOORE-WHENNUA, the land would take a short turn to the southward, and from thence extend more to the west. This place we concluded to be the land discovered by Tasman, which he called CAPE MARIA VAN DIEMEN, and finding these people so intelligent, we inquired farther, if they knew of any country besides their own? They answered, that they never had visited any other, but that their ancestors had told them, that to the N. W. by N. or N. N. W. there was a country of great extent, called ULIMAROA, to which some people had sailed in a very large canoe; that only part of them returned, and reported, that, after a passage of a month, they had seen a country where the people eat hogs. Tupia then inquired whether these adventurers brought any hogs with them when they returned? they said, No. Then, replied Tupia, your story is certainly false, for it cannot be believed that men who came back from an expedition without hogs, had ever visited a country where hogs were to be procured. It is however remarkable, notwithstanding the shrewdness of Tupia's objection, that when they mentioned hogs,

1769.
December.

hogs, it was not by description but by name, calling them Booah, the name which is given them in the South-Sea islands; but if the animal had been wholly unknown to them, and they had had no communication with people to whom it was known, they could not possibly have been acquainted with the name.

Sunday 10.

About ten o'clock at night, a breeze sprung up at W. N. W. with which we stood off north; and at noon the next day, the Cavalles bore S. E. by E. distant eight leagues; the entrance of Doubtless Bay S. by W. distant three leagues; and the north-west extremity of the land in sight, which we judged to be the main, bore N. W. by W. our latitude by observation was $34^{\circ} 44'$ S. In the evening, we found the variation to be $12^{\circ} 41'$ E. by the azimuth, and $12^{\circ} 40'$ by the amplitude.

Monday 11.

Early in the morning, we stood in with the land, seven leagues to the westward of Doubtless Bay, the bottom of which is not far distant from the bottom of another large bay, which the shore forms at this place, being separated only by a low neck of land, which juts out into a peninsula that I have called KNUCKLE POINT. About the middle of this bay, which we called SANDY BAY, is a high mountain, standing upon a distant shore, to which I gave the name of MOUNT CAMEL. The latitude here is $34^{\circ} 51'$ S. and longitude $186^{\circ} 50'$. We had twenty-four and twenty-five fathom water, with a good bottom; but there seems to be nothing in this bay that can induce a ship to put into it; for the land about it is utterly barren and desolate, and, except Mount Camel, the situation is low: the soil appears to be nothing but white sand, thrown up in low irregular hills and narrow ridges, lying parallel with the shore. But barren and desolate as this place is, it is not without inhabitants: we saw one village on the west side of Mount Camel, and another on the east side; we saw also five canoes full of people, who pulled after the ship, but could not come up with us. At nine o'clock, we tacked and stood to the northward; and at noon the Cavalles bore S. E. by E. distant thirteen leagues; the north extremity of the land in sight making like an island, bore N. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ N. distant

distant nine leagues, and Mount Camel bore S. W. by S. distance six leagues. 1769.
December.

The wind being contrary, we kept plying northward till five o'clock in the evening of the 12th, when having made very little way, we tacked and stood to the north-east; being two leagues to the northward of Mount Camel, and about a mile and an half from the shore, in which situation we had two-and-twenty fathoms water. Tuesd. 12.

At ten it began to blow and rain, which brought us under double-reefed top-sails; at twelve we tacked, and stood to the westward till seven the next morning, when we tacked and stood again to the N. E. being about a mile to the windward of the place where we tacked last night. Soon after it blew very hard at N. N. W. with heavy squalls and much rain, which brought us under our courses, and split the main-top-sail, so that we were obliged to unbend it, and bend another. At ten it became more moderate, and we set the top-sails double reefed. At noon, having strong gales and heavy weather, we tacked and stood to the westward, and had no land in sight for the first time since we had been upon this coast. Wednesd. 13.

We had now strong gales at W. and W. S. W. and at half an hour past three we tacked and stood to the northward. Soon after a small island, lying off Knuckle Point, bore S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant half a league. In the evening, having split the fore and mizen top-sails, we brought the ship under her courses; and at midnight we wore, and stood to the southward till five in the morning, when we tacked and stood to the N. W. and saw land bearing south, at the distance of eight or nine leagues; by this we discovered that we had fallen much to the leeward since yesterday morning. At noon, our latitude by observation was $34^{\circ} 6'$ S. and the same land which we had seen before to the N. W. now bore S. W. and appeared to be the northern extremity of the country. We had a large swell rolling in from the westward, and therefore concluded that we were not covered by any land in that quarter. At eight in the evening we tacked and stood to the westward, with as much sail as we could bear; and at noon the next day we were in latitude $134^{\circ} 10'$, longitude Thursd. 14.
Friday 15.
1850

1769.
December.

185° 45' W. and by estimation about seventeen leagues from the land, notwithstanding our utmost endeavours to keep in with it.

Saturd. 16. On the 16th, at six in the morning, we saw land from the mast-head, bearing S. S. W. and at noon it bore S. by W. distant fourteen leagues. While we were standing in for the shore, we sounded several times, but had no ground with ninety fathoms. At eight we tacked in a hundred and eight fathoms, at about three or four miles from the shore, which was the same point of land that we had to N. W. before we were blown off. At noon it bore S. W. distant about three miles: Mount Camel bore S. by E. distant about eleven leagues, and the westernmost land in sight bore S. 75 W. the latitude by observation was 34° 20' S. At four o'clock we tacked and stood in shore, in doing which we met with a strong rippling, and the ship fell fast to leeward, which we imputed to a current setting east. At eight we tacked and stood

Sunday 17.

off till eight the next morning, when we tacked and stood in, being about ten leagues from the land. At noon, the point of land which we were near the day before, bore S. S. W. distant five leagues. The wind still continued at west; and at seven o'clock we tacked in thirty-five fathoms, when the point of land which has been mentioned before bore N. W. by N. distant four or five miles; so that we had not gained one inch to windward the last twenty-four hours, which confirmed our opinion that there was a current to the eastward. The point of land I called NORTH CAPE, it being the northern extremity of this country. It lies in latitude 34° 22' S. longitude 186° 55' W. and thirty-one leagues distant from Cape Bret, in the direction of N. 63 W. It forms the north point of Sandy Bay, and is a peninsula jetting out N. E. about two miles, and terminating in a bluff head that is flat at the top. The isthmus which joins this head to the main land is very low, and for that reason the land of the Cape, from several situations, has the appearance of an island. It is still more remarkable when it is seen from the southward, by the appearance of a high round island at the S. E. point of the Cape; but this is also a deception; for what appears to be an island is
a round

a round hill, joined to the Cape by a low narrow neck of land. Upon the Cape we saw a Hippah, or village, and a few inhabitants; and on the south-east side of it there appears to be anchorage, and good shelter from the south-west and north-west winds. 1769.
December.

We continued to stand off and on, making N. W. Thursd. 21. till noon on the 21st, when North Cape bore S. 39 E. distant thirty-eight leagues. Our situation varied only a few leagues till the 23d, when, about seven o'clock Satur. 23. in the evening, we saw land from the mast-head bearing S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At eleven the next morning we saw it Sunday 24. again, bearing S. S. E. at the distance of eight leagues. We now stood to the S. W. and at four o'clock the land bore S. E. by S. distant four leagues, and proved to be a small island, with other islands or rocks still smaller, lying off the south-west end of it, and another lying off the north-east end, which were discovered by Tasman, and called the Three Kings. The principal island lies in latitude $34^{\circ} 12'$ S. longitude $187^{\circ} 48'$ W. and distant fourteen or fifteen leagues from North Cape, in the direction of W. 14 N. At midnight we tacked, and stood to the N. E. till six the next morning, which was Christmas-day, when we tacked and stood to the south- Monday 25. ward. At noon, the Three Kings bore E. 8 N. distant five or six leagues. The variation this morning by the azimuth was $11^{\circ} 25'$ E.

On the 26th, we stood to the southward close upon Tuesday 26. a wind, and at noon were in latitude $35^{\circ} 10'$ S. longitude $180^{\circ} 20'$ W. the Three Kings bearing N. 26 W. distant twenty-two leagues. In this situation we had no land in sight; and yet, by observation, we were in the latitude of the Bay of Islands, and by my reckoning but twenty leagues to the westward of North Cape; from whence it appears, that the northern part of this island is very narrow; for otherwise we must have seen some part of the west side of it. We stood to the southward till twelve at night, and then tacked and stood to the northward.

At four o'clock in the morning the wind freshened, Wednes. 27. and at nine blew a storm, so that we were obliged to bring the ship to under her main-sail. Our course made good between noon this day and yesterday

1769.
December. was S. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distance eleven miles. The Three Kings bore N. 27 E. distant seventy-seven miles. The
- Thurs. 28. gale continued all this day, and till two the next morning, when it fell, and began to veer to the southward and S. W. where it fixed about four, when we made sail, and steered east in for the land, under the fore-sail and main-sail; but the wind then rising, and by eight o'clock being increased to a hurricane, with a prodigious sea, we were obliged to take in the main-sail; we then wore the ship, and brought her to with her head to the north-west. At noon the gale was somewhat abated, but we had still heavy squalls. Our course made good this day was north, a little easterly, twenty-nine miles; latitude by account $34^{\circ} 50'$ S. longitude $188^{\circ} 27'$ W. the Three Kings bore N. 41 E. distant fifty-two miles. At seven o'clock in the evening, the wind being at S. W. and S. W. by W. with hard squalls, we wore and lay on the other tack, and at six
- Friday 29. the next morning spread more sail. Our course and distance since yesterday was E. by N. twenty-nine miles. In the afternoon we had hard squalls at S. W. and at eight in the evening wore and stood to the N. W. till
- Saturd. 30. five the next morning, and then wore and stood to the S. E. At six we saw the land bearing N. E. distant about six leagues, which we judged to be Cape Maria Van Diemen, and which corresponded with the account that had been given of it by the Indians. And
- Sunday 31. on the next day, at noon, Cape Maria Van Diemen bore N. E. by N. distant about five leagues. At seven in the evening, we tacked and stood to the westward, with a moderate breeze at S. W. by S. and S. W. Mount Camel then bore N. 83 E. and the northernmost land, or Cape Maria Van Diemen, N. by W. We were now distant from the nearest land about three leagues, where we had something more than forty fathoms water; and it must be remarked, that Mount Camel, which when seen on the other side did not seem to be more than one mile from the sea, seemed to be but little more when seen from this side; which is a demonstration that the land here cannot be more than two or three miles broad, or from sea to sea.

At

At six o'clock in the morning of January the 1st, 1770, being New-year's-day, we tacked and stood to the eastward, the Three Kings bearing N. W. by N. At noon we tacked again, and stood to the westward, being in latitude $34^{\circ} 37'$ S. the Three Kings bearing N. W. by N. at the distance of ten or eleven leagues, and Cape Maria Van Diemen N. 31 E. distant about four leagues and an half; in this situation we had fifty-four fathoms water.

1770.
January.
Monday 1.

During this part of our navigation two particulars are very remarkable; in latitude 35° S. and in the midst of summer, I met with a gale of wind, which for its strength and continuance was such as I had scarcely ever been in before, and we were three weeks in getting ten leagues to the westward, and five weeks in getting fifty leagues; for at this time it was so long since we passed Cape Bret. During the gale, we were happily at a great distance from the land, otherwise it is highly probable, that we should never have returned to relate our adventures.

At five o'clock in the evening, having a fresh breeze to the westward, we tacked and stood to southward: at this time North Cape bore E. $\frac{3}{4}$ N. and just open of a point that lies three leagues W. by N. from it.

The Cape, as I have observed before, is the northernmost extremity of this country, and the easternmost point of a peninsula, which runs out N. W. and N. W. by N. seventeen or eighteen leagues, and of which Cape Maria Van Diemen is the westernmost point. Cape Maria lies in latitude $34^{\circ} 30'$ S. longitude $187^{\circ} 18'$ W. and from this point the land trends away S. E. by S. and S. E. beyond Mount Camel, and is every where a barren shore, consisting of banks of white sand.

On the 2d, at noon, we were in latitude $35^{\circ} 17'$ S. and Cape Maria bore N. distant about sixteen leagues, as near as we could guess; for we had no land in sight, and did not dare to go nearer, as a fresh gale blew right on shore, with a rolling sea. The wind continued at W. S. W. with frequent squalls. In the evening we shortened sail, and at midnight tacked, and made a trip to the N. W. till two in the morning, when we wore

Tuesday 2.

1770.
January.
Wednesd. 3.

and stood to the southward. At break of day we made sail, and edged away, in order to make land: and at ten o'clock we saw it, bearing N. W. It appeared to be high, and at noon extended from N. to E. N. E. distant by estimation eight or ten leagues. Cape Maria then bore N. $2^{\circ} 30'$ W. distant thirty-three leagues: our latitude by observation was $36^{\circ} 2'$ S. About seven o'clock in the evening we were within six leagues of it; but having a fresh gale upon it, with a rolling sea, we hauled our wind to the S. E. and kept on that course close upon the wind all night, sounding several times, but having no ground with one hundred and ten fathoms.

Thursd. 4.

At eight o'clock the next morning we were about five leagues from the land, and off a place which lies in latitude $36^{\circ} 25'$, and had the appearance of a bay or inlet. It bore east; and in order to see more of it, we kept on our course till eleven o'clock, when we were not more than three leagues from it, and then discovered that it was neither inlet nor bay, but a tract of low land, bounded by higher lands on each side, which produced the deception. At this time we tacked, and stood to the N. W. and at noon the land was not distant more than three or four leagues. We were now in latitude $36^{\circ} 31'$ S. longitude $185^{\circ} 50'$ W. Cape Maria bore N. 25° W. distant forty-four leagues and an half; so that the coast must be almost straight in the direction of S. S. E. $\frac{3}{4}$ E. and N. N. W. $\frac{3}{4}$ W. nearly. In about latitude $35^{\circ} 45'$ is some high land adjoining to the sea; to the southward of which the shore is also high, and has the most desolate and inhospitable appearance that can be imagined. Nothing is to be seen but hills of sand, on which there is scarcely a blade of verdure; and a vast sea, impelled by the westerly winds, breaking upon it in a dreadful surf, renders it not only forlorn but frightful; complicating the idea of danger with desolation, and impressing the mind at once with a sense of misery and death. From this place I steered to the northward, resolving never more to come within the same distance of the coast, except the wind should be very favourable indeed. I stood under a fresh sail all the day, hoping to get an offing by the

ROUND THE WORLD.

197

the next noon, and we made good a course of an hundred and two miles N. 38 W. Our latitude by observation was $35^{\circ} 10'$ S. and Cape Maria bore N. 10 E. distance forty-one miles. In the night, the wind shifted from S. W. by S. to S. and blew fresh. Our course to the noon of the 5th was N. 75 W. distance eight miles. 1772.
January.

At day-break, on the 6th, we saw land, which we took to be Cape Maria, bearing N. N. E. distant eight or nine leagues. And on the 7th, in the afternoon, the land bore east; and some time after we discovered a turtle upon the water, but, being awake, it dived instantly, so that we could not take it. At noon the high land, which has just been mentioned, extended from N. to E. at the distance of five or six leagues; and in two places, a flat gave it the appearance of a bay or inlet. The course that we made good the last four-and-twenty hours was S. 33 E. fifty-three miles, Cape Maria bearing N. 25 W. distant thirty leagues. Saturday 6.
Sunday 7.

We sailed within sight of land all this day, with gentle gales between the N. E. and N. W. and by the next noon had sailed sixty-nine miles, in the direction of S. 37 E. our latitude by observation was $36^{\circ} 39'$ S. The land which on the 4th we had taken for a bay, now bore N. E. by N. distant five leagues and an half, and Cape Maria N. 29 W. forty-seven-leagues. Monday 8.

On the 9th, we continued a south-east course till eight o'clock in the evening, having run seven leagues since noon, with the wind at N. N. E. and N. and being within three or four leagues of the land, which appeared to be low and sandy. I then steered S. E. by S. in a direction parallel with the coast, having from forty-eight to thirty-four fathoms water, with a black sandy bottom. At day-break, the next morning, we found ourselves between two and three leagues from the land, which began to have a better appearance, rising in gentle slopes, and being covered with trees and herbage. We saw a smoke and a few houses, but it appeared to be but thinly inhabited. At seven o'clock we steered S. by E. and afterwards S. Tuesday 9.
Wednesday 10.

1770.
January.

by W. the land lying in that direction. At nine, we were a-breast of a point which rises with an easy ascent from the sea to a considerable height; this point, which lies in latitude $37^{\circ} 43'$, I named **WOODY HEAD**. About eleven miles from this head, in the direction of S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. lies a very small island, upon which we saw a great number of gannets, and which we therefore called **GANNET ISLAND**. At noon, a high craggy point bore E. N. E. distant about a league and a half, to which I gave the name of **ALBETROSS POINT**; it lies in latitude $38^{\circ} 4'$ S. longitude $184^{\circ} 42'$ W. and is distant seven leagues in the direction of S. 17° W. from Woody Head. On the north side of this point the shore forms a bay, in which there appears to be anchorage and shelter for shipping. Our course and distance for the last twenty-four hours was S. 37° E. sixty-nine miles; and at noon this day Cape Maria bore N. 30° W. distant eighty-two leagues. Between twelve and one, the wind shifted at once from N. N. E. to S. S. W. with which we stood to the westward till four o'clock in the afternoon, and then tacked, and stood again in shore till seven, when we tacked again and stood to the westward, having but little wind. At this time Albetross Point bore N. E. distant near two leagues, and the southermost land in sight bore S. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. being a very high mountain, and in appearance greatly resembling the Peak of Teneriffe. In this situation we had thirty fathoms water, and having but little wind all night, we tacked about four in the morning, and stood in for the shore. Soon after it fell calm, and, being in forty-two fathoms water, the people caught a few sea-bream. At eleven a light breeze sprung up from the west, and we made sail to the southward. We continued to steer S. by W. and S. S. W. along the shore, at the distance of about four leagues, with gentle breezes from between N. W. and N. N. E. At seven in the evening, we saw the top of the Peak to the southward, above the clouds which concealed it below; and at this time the southermost land in sight bore S. by W. the variation, by several azimuths, which were taken both in the morning and the evening, appeared to be $14^{\circ} 15'$ easterly.

At

At noon, on the 12th, we were distant about three leagues from the shore which lies under the Peak, but the Peak itself was wholly concealed by clouds; we judged it to bear about S. S. E. and some very remarkable peaked islands, which lay under the shore, bore E. S. E. distant three or four leagues. At seven in the evening we sounded, and had forty-two fathoms, being distant from the shore between two and three leagues; we judged the Peak to bear east, and after it was dark we saw fires upon the shore.

At five o'clock in the morning we saw, for a few minutes, the summit of the Peak, towering above the clouds, and covered with snow; it now bore N. E. It lies in latitude $39^{\circ} 16'$ S. longitude $185^{\circ} 15'$ W. and I named it MOUNT EGMONT, in honour of the Earl; it seems to have a large base, and to rise with a gradual ascent. It lies near the sea, and is surrounded by a flat country of a pleasant appearance, being clothed with verdure and wood, which renders it the more conspicuous, and the shore under it forms a large cape, which I have named CAPE EGMONT. It lies S. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. twenty-seven leagues distant from Albetross Point, and on the north side of it are two small islands, which lie near a remarkable point on the main, that rises to a considerable height in the form of a sugar-loaf. To the southward of the Cape, the land trends away S. E. by E. and S. S. E. and seems to be every where a bold shore. At noon Cape Egmont bore about N. E. and in this direction, at about four leagues from the shore, we had forty fathoms of water. The wind, during the rest of the day, was from W. to N. W. by W. and we continued to steer along the shore S. S. E. and S. E. by E. keeping at the distance of between two and three leagues. At half an hour after seven we had another transient view of Mount Egmont, which bore N. 17 W. distant about ten leagues.

At five the next morning we steered S. E. by S. the coast inclining more southerly; and in about half an hour we saw land bearing S. W. by S. for which we hauled up. At noon the north-west extremity of the land in sight bore S. 63 W. and some high land, which had the appearance of an island lying under the

1770.
January.

main, bore S. S. E. distant five leagues. We were now in a bay, the bottom of which bearing south we could not see, though it was clear in that quarter. Our latitude by observation was $40^{\circ} 27'$ S. longitude $184^{\circ} 39'$ W. At eight in the evening, we were within two leagues of the land which we had discovered in the morning, having run ten leagues since noon: the land which then bore S. 63 W. now bore N. 59 W. at the distance of seven or eight leagues, and had the appearance of an island. Between this land and CAPE EGMONT lies the bay, the west side of which was our situation at this time, and the land here is of a considerable height, and diversified by hill and valley.

C H A P. VI.

Transactions in Queen Charlotte's Sound. Passage through the Streight which divides the two Islands, and back to Cape Turnagain. Horrid Custom of the Inhabitants. Remarkable Melody of Birds. A Visit to a Hippah, and many other Particulars.

THE shore at this place seemed to form several bays, into one of which I proposed to carry the ship, which was very foul, in order to careen her, and at the same time repair some defects, and recruit our wood and water.

Monday 15.

With this view, I kept plying on and off all night, having from eighty to sixty-three fathoms. At day-break, the next morning, I stood for an inlet which runs in S. W. and at eight I got within the entrance, which may be known by a reef of rocks, stretching from the north-west point, and some rocky islands which lie off the south-east point. At nine o'clock, there being little wind, and what there was being variable, we were carried by the tide or current within two cables length of the north-west shore, where we had fifty-four fathoms water, but by the help of our boats we got clear. Just at this time we saw a sea-lion rise twice near the shore, the head of which exactly resembled that of the male, which has been described in the Account of Lord Anson's Voyage. We also saw some of the natives in a canoe cross the bay, and a village

village situated upon the point of an island which lies seven or eight miles within the entrance. At noon, we were the length of this island, but there being little wind, the boats were ordered a-head to row. About one o'clock, we hauled close round the south-west end of the island; and the inhabitants of the village which was built upon it, were immediately up in arms. About two, we anchored in a very safe and convenient cove, on the north-west side of the bay, and facing the south-west end of the island, in eleven fathoms water, with soft ground, and moored with the stream anchor.

1770.
January.

We were about four long cannon shot distant from the village or Hippah, from which four canoes were immediately dispatched, as we imagined, to reconnoitre, and if they should find themselves able, to take us. The men were all well armed, and dressed nearly as they are represented in the figure published by Tasman; two corners of the cloth which they wrapped round the body were passed over the shoulders from behind, and being brought down to the upper edge of it before, were made fast to it just under the breast; but few, or none, had feathers in their hair. They rowed round the ship several times, with their usual tokens of menace and defiance, and at last began the assault by throwing some stones. Tupia expostulated with them, but apparently to very little purpose; and we began to fear that they would oblige us to fire at them, when a very old man in one of the boats expressed a desire of coming on board. We gladly encouraged him in his design, a rope was thrown into his canoe, and she was immediately along-side of the ship: the old man rose up, and prepared to come up the ship's side, upon which all the rest expostulated with great vehemence against the attempt, and at last laid hold of him, and held him back: he adhered however to his purpose, with a calm but steady perseverance, and having at length disengaged himself, he came on board. We received him with all possible expressions of friendship and kindness, and after some time dismissed him, with many presents to his companions. As soon as he was returned on board his canoe, the people in all the rest began to dance, but whether

1770.
January.

whether as a token of enmity or friendship, we could not certainly determine, for we had seen them dance in a disposition both for peace and war. In a short time, however, they retired to their fort, and soon after I went on shore, with most of the gentlemen, at the bottom of the cove, a-breast of the ship.

We found a fine stream of excellent water, and wood in the greatest plenty, for the land here was one forest, of vast extent. As we brought the seine with us, we hauled it once or twice, and with such success that we caught near three hundred weight of fish of different sorts, which was equally distributed among the ship's company.

Tuesday 16. At day-break, while we were busy in careening the ship, three canoes came off to us, having on board above an hundred men, besides several of their women, which we were pleased to see, as in general it is a sign of peace; but they soon afterwards became very troublesome, and gave us reason to apprehend some mischief from them to the people that were in our boats along-side the ship. While we were in this situation the long-boat was sent ashore with some water casks, and some of the canoes attempting to follow her, we found it necessary to intimidate them by firing some small shot; we were at such a distance that it was impossible to hurt them, yet our reproof had its effect, and they desisted from the pursuit. They had some fish in their canoes which they now offered to sell, and which, though it stunk, we consented to buy: for this purpose a man in a small boat was sent among them, and they traded for some time very fairly. At length however, one of them watching his opportunity, snatched at some paper which our market-man held in his hand, and missing it, immediately put himself in a posture of defence, flourishing his patoo-patoo, and making show as if he was about to strike; some small shot were then fired at him from the ship, a few of which struck him upon the knee: this put an end to our trade, but the Indians still continued near the ship, rowing round her many times, and conversing with 'Tupia, chiefly concerning the traditions they had among them with respect to the antiquities of their country. To this subject they were led by the inquiries

1770.
January.

inquiries which Tupia had been directed to make, whether they had ever seen such a vessel as ours, or had heard that any such had been upon their coast? These inquiries were all answered in the negative, so that tradition has preserved among them no memorial of Tasman; though, by an observation made this day, we find that we are only fifteen miles south of Murderer's bay, our latitude being $41^{\circ} 5' 32''$, and Murderer's bay, according to his account, being $40^{\circ} 50''$.

The women in these canoes, and some of the men, had a head dress which we had not seen before. It consisted of a bunch of black feathers, made up in a round form, and tied upon the top of the head, which is entirely covered, and made it twice as high, to appearance, as it was in reality.

After dinner I went in the pinnace with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia, and some others, into another cove, about two miles distant from that in which the ship lay: in our way we saw something floating upon the water, which we took for a dead seal, but upon rowing up to it, found it to be the body of a woman, which to all appearance had been dead some days. We proceeded to our cove, where we went on shore, and found a small family of Indians, who appeared to be greatly terrified at our approach, and all ran away except one. A conversation between this person and Tupia soon brought back the rest, except an old man and a child, who still kept aloof, but stood peeping at us from the woods. Of these people, our curiosity naturally led us to enquire after the body of the woman which we had seen floating upon the water: and they acquainted us, by Tupia, that she was a relation, who had died a natural death; and that, according to their custom, they had tied a stone to the body, and thrown it into the sea, which stone, they supposed, had by some accident been disengaged.

This family, when we came on shore, was employed in dressing some provisions: the body of a dog was at this time buried in their oven, and many provision baskets stood near it. Having cast our eyes carelessly into one of these, as we passed it, we saw two bones pretty nearly picked, which did not seem to be
the

1770.
January,

the bones of a dog, and which, upon a nearer examination, we discovered to be those of a human body. At this sight we were struck with horror, though it was only a confirmation of what we had heard many times since we arrived upon this coast. As we could have no doubt but the bones were human, neither could we have any doubt but that the flesh which covered them had been eaten. They were found in a provision-basket; the flesh that remained appeared manifestly to have been dressed by fire, and in the gristles at the end, were the marks of the teeth which had gnawed them: to put an end however to conjecture, founded upon circumstances and appearances, we directed Tupia to ask what bones they were; and the Indians, without the least hesitation, answered, the bones of a man. They were then asked what was become of the flesh? and they replied that they had eaten it. But, said Tupia, why did you not eat the body of the woman which we saw floating upon the water? The woman, said they, died of disease; besides, she was our relation, and we eat only the bodies of our enemies, who are killed in battle. Upon enquiry who the man was whose bones we had found, they told us, that about five days before, a boat belonging to their enemies came into the bay, with many persons on board, and that this man was one of seven whom they had killed. Tho' stronger evidence of this horrid practice prevailing among the inhabitants of this coast will scarcely be required, we have still stronger to give. One of us asked if they had any human bones with the flesh remaining upon them, and upon their answering us that all had been eaten, we affected to disbelieve that the bones were human, and said that they were the bones of a dog; upon which one of the Indians with some eagerness took hold of his own fore-arm, and thrusting it towards us, said, that the bone which Mr. Banks held in his hand had belonged to that part of the human body; at the same time, to convince us that the flesh had been eaten, he took hold of his own arm with his teeth, and made shew of eating: he also bit and gnawed the bone which Mr. Banks had taken, drawing it through his mouth, and shewing, by signs, that it had afforded a delicious repast: the bone was then returned to Mr. Banks, and he brought it

it away with him. Among the persons of this family, there was a woman who had her arms, legs, and thighs frightfully cut in several places; and we were told that she had inflicted the wounds upon herself, in token of her grief for the loss of her husband, who had been lately killed and eaten by their enemies, who had come from some place to the eastward, towards which the Indians pointed.

1775
January.

The ship lay at the distance of somewhat less than a quarter of a mile from the shore, and in the morning we were awakened by the singing of the birds: the number was incredible, and they seemed to strain their throats in emulation of each other. This wild melody was infinitely superior to any that we had ever heard of the same kind; it seemed to be like small bells, most exquisitely tuned, and perhaps the distance, and the water between, might be no small advantage to the sound. Upon inquiry, we were informed that the birds here always began to sing about two hours after midnight, and continuing their music till sun-rise, were, like our nightingales, silent the rest of the day. In the forenoon, a small canoe came off from the Indian village to the ship, and among those that were in it, was the old man who had first come on board at our arrival in the bay. As soon as it came along-side, Tupia renewed the conversation that had passed the day before, concerning their practice of eating human flesh, during which they repeated what they had told us already: but, said Tupia, where are the heads? do you eat them too? Of these heads, said the old man, we eat only the brains, and the next time I come I will bring some of them to convince you that what we have told you is truth. After some farther conversation between these people and Tupia, they told him that they expected their enemies to come very shortly, to revenge the death of the seven men whom they had killed and eaten.

Wednesd. 17.

On the 18th, the Indians were more quiet than usual, no canoe came near the ship, nor did we see one of them moving on the shore, their fishing, and other usual occupations being totally suspended. We thought they expected an attack on this day, and therefore attended more diligently to what passed on shore; but we saw nothing to gratify our curiosity.

Thursd. 18.

After

1770.
January.

After breakfast we went out in the pinnce, to take a view of the bay, which was of vast extent, and consisted of numberless small harbours and coves in every direction. We confined our excursion, however, to the western side, and the country being an impenetrable forest where we landed, we could see nothing worthy of notice: we killed, however, a good number of shaggs, which we saw sitting upon their nests in the trees, which, whether roasted or stewed, we considered as very good provision. As we were returning, we saw a single man in a canoe fishing; we rowed up to him, and, to our great surprize, he took not the least notice of us, but, even when we were along-side of him, continued to follow his occupation, without adverting to us any more than if we had been invisible. He did not, however, appear to be either sullen or stupid. We requested him to draw up his net, that we might examine it, and he readily complied. It was of a circular form, extended by two hoops, and about seven or eight feet in diameter; the top was open, and sea-ears were fastened to the bottom as a bait; this he let down so low as to lie upon the ground, and when he thought fish enough were assembled over it, he drew it up by a very gentle and even motion, so that the fish rose with it, scarcely sensible that they were lifted, till they came very near the surface of the water, and then were brought out in the net by a sudden jerk. By this simple method he had caught abundance of fish, and indeed they are so plenty in this bay, that the catching them requires neither much labour nor art.

This day, some of our people found in the skirts of the wood, near a hole or oven, three human hip-bones, which they brought on board; a farther proof that these people eat human flesh. Mr. Monkhouse, our Surgeon, also brought on board, from a place where he saw many deserted houses, the hair of a man's head, which he had found, among many other things, tied up to the branches of trees.

Friday 19.

In the morning of the 19th, we set up the armourer's forge, to repair the braces of the tiller, and other iron-work, all hands on board being still busy in careening, and other necessary operations about the vessel.

fel. This day some Indians came on board from another part of the bay, where they said there was a town which we had not seen: they brought plenty of fish, which they sold for nails, having now acquired some notion of their use; and in this traffic no unfair practice was attempted.

1770.
January.

In the morning of the 29th, our old man kept his promise, and brought on board four of the heads of the seven people who had been so much the subject of our inquiries: the hair and flesh were entire, but we perceived that the brains had been extracted; the flesh was soft, but had by some method been preserved from putrefaction, for it had no disagreeable smell. Mr. Banks purchased one of them, but they sold it with great reluctance, and could not by any means be prevailed upon to part with a second; probably they may be preserved as trophies, like the scalps in America, and the jaw-bones in the islands of the South-Seas. Upon examining the head which had been bought by Mr. Banks, we perceived that it had received a blow upon the temple, which had fractured the skull. This day we made another excursion in the pinnace, to survey the bay, but we found no flat large enough for a potatoe-garden, nor could we discover the least prospect of cultivation: we met not a single Indian, but found an excellent harbour, and about eight o'clock in the evening returned on board the ship.

Saturday 20.

On the 21st, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went out fishing with hook and line, and caught an immense quantity every where upon the rocks, in between four and five fathoms water: the seine was hauled every night, and seldom failed to supply the whole ship's company with as much fish as they could eat. This day all the people had leave to go on shore at the watering-place, and divert themselves as they should think proper.

Sunday 21.

In the morning of the 22d, I set out again in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, with a design to examine the head of the inlet; but after rowing about four or five leagues, without so much as coming within sight of it, the wind being contrary, and the day half-spent, we went on shore on

Monday 22.

1770.
January.

on the south-east side, to try what might be discovered from the hills.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander immediately employed themselves in botanizing near the beach; and I, taking a seaman with me, ascended one of the hills. When I reached the summit, I found a view of the inlet intercepted by hills, which in that direction rose still higher, and which was rendered inaccessible by impenetrable woods: I was, however, abundantly compensated for my labour, for I saw the sea on the eastern side of the country, and a passage leading from it to that on the west, a little to the eastward of the entrance of the inlet where the ship now lay. The main land, which lay on the south-east side of this inlet, appeared to be a narrow ridge of very high hills, and to form part of the south-west side of the strait; the land on the opposite side appeared to trend away east as far as the eye could reach; and to the south-east there appeared to be an opening to the sea, which washed the eastern coast: on the east side of the inlet also I saw some islands, which I had before taken to be part of the main land. Having made this discovery, I descended the hill, and as soon as we had taken some refreshment, we set out on our return to the ship. In our way, we examined the harbours and coves which lie behind the islands that I had discovered from the hill; and in this route we saw an old village, in which there were many houses that seemed to have been long deserted: we also saw another village which was inhabited, but the day was too far spent for us to visit it, and we therefore made the best of our way to the ship, which we reached between eight and nine o'clock at night.

Tuesday 23.

The 23d I employed in carrying on a survey of the place; and, upon one of the islands where I landed, I saw many houses, which seemed to have been long deserted, and no appearance of any inhabitant.

Wedn. 24.

On the 24th, we went to visit our friends at the Hippah, or village, on the point of the island, near the ship's station, who had come off to us on our first arrival in the bay. They received us with the utmost confidence and civility, shewing us every part of their habitations, which were commodious and neat. The island

island, or rock, on which this town is situated, is divided from the main by a breach or fissure, so narrow that a man might almost leap from one to the other: the sides of it are every where so steep, as to render the artificial fortification of these people almost unnecessary: there was, however, one slight pallisade, and one small fighting-stage towards that part of the rock where access was least difficult.

1770.
January.

The people here brought us out several human bones, the flesh of which they had eaten, and offered them to sale, for the curiosity of those among us who had purchased them, as memorials of the horrid practice which many, notwithstanding the reports of travellers, have professed not to believe, has rendered them a kind of article of trade. In one part of this village we observed, not without some surprize, a cross exactly like that of a crucifix; it was adorned with feathers; and upon our inquiring for what purpose it had been set up, we were told that it was a monument for a man that was dead. We had before understood, that their dead were not buried, but thrown into the sea; but to our inquiry how the body of the man had been disposed of, to whose memory this cross had been erected, they refused to answer.

When we left these people, we went to the other end of the island, and there, taking water, crossed over to the main, where we saw several houses, but no inhabitants, except a few in some straggling canoes, that seemed to be fishing. After viewing this place, we returned on board the ship to dinner.

During our visit to the Indians this day, Tupia being always of our party, they had been observed to be continually talking of guns, and shooting people; for this subject of their conversation we could not at all account, and it had so much engaged our attention, that we talked of it all the way back, and even after we got on board the ship. We had perplexed ourselves with various conjectures, which were all given up in their turn; but now we learned, that on the 21st one of our officers, upon pretence of going out to fish, had rowed up to the Hippah, and that two or three canoes coming off towards his boat, his fears suggested that an attack was intended, in consequence

1770.
January.

of which three muskets were fired, one with small shot, and two with ball, at the Indians, who retired with the utmost precipitation, having probably come out with friendly intentions, for such their behaviour both before and after expressed, and having no reason to expect such treatment from people who had always behaved to them not only with humanity but kindness, and to whom they were not conscious of having given offence.

Thursd. 25. On the 25th, I made another excursion along the coast in the pinnace, towards the mouth of the inlet, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and going on shore at a little cove, to shoot shaggs, we fell in with a large family of Indians, whose custom it is to disperse themselves among the different creeks and coves, where fish is to be procured in the greatest plenty, leaving a few only in the Hippah, to which the rest repair in times of danger: some of these people came out a good way to meet us, and gave us an invitation to go with them to the rest of their party, which we readily accepted. We found a company of about thirty, men, women, and children, who received us with all possible demonstrations of friendship: we distributed among them a few ribands and beads, and, in return, received the kisses and embraces of both sexes, both young and old: they gave us also some fish, and after a little time we returned, much pleased with our new acquaintance.

Friday 26. In the morning of the 26th, I went out again in the boat, with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and entered one of the bays, which lie on the east side of the inlet, in order to get another sight of the strait, which passed between the eastern and western seas. For this purpose, having landed at a convenient place, we climbed a hill of very considerable height, from which we had a full view of it, with the land on the opposite shore, which we judged to be about four leagues distant; but, as it was in the hazy horizon, we could not see far to the south-east; I resolved, however, to search the passage with the ship, as soon as I should put to sea. Upon the top of this hill we found a parcel of loose stones, with which we erected a pyramid, and left in it some musket-balls, small-shot, beads, and

and other things, which we happened to have about us, that were likely to stand the test of time, and not being of Indian workmanship, would convince any European, who should come to the place and pull it down, that other natives of Europe had been there before him. When this was done, we descended the hill, and made a comfortable meal of the shaggs and fish which our guns and lines had procured us, and which were dressed by the boat's crew in a place that we had appointed. In this place we found another Indian family, who received us, as usual, with strong expressions of kindness and pleasure, shewing us where to procure water, and doing us such other good offices as were in their power. From this place we went to the town, of which the Indians had told us, who visited us on the 19th. This, like that which we had seen before, was built upon a small island or rock, so difficult of access, that we gratified our curiosity at the risk of our necks. The Indians here also received us with open arms, carried us to every part of the place, and shewed us all that it contained. This town, like the other, consisted of between eighty and an hundred houses, and had only one fighting-stage. We happened to have with us a few nails and ribands, and some paper, with which our guests were so gratified, that at our coming away they filled our boat with dried fish, of which we perceived they had laid up great quantities.

1770.
January.

The 27th and 28th were spent in refitting the ship for the sea, fixing a transom for the tiller, getting stones on board to put into the bottom of the bread-room, to bring the ship more by the stern, in repairing the casks, and catching fish.

Saturd. 27.
Sunday 28.

On the 29th, we received a visit from our old man, whose name we found to be TOPAA, and three other natives, with whom Tupia had much conversation. The old man told us, that one of the men who had been fired upon by the officer who had visited their Hippah, under pretence of fishing, was dead; but, to my great comfort, I afterwards discovered that this report was not true, and that if Topaa's discourses were taken literally, they would frequently lead us into mistakes. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were several times

Monday 29.

1770.
January.

on shore during the last two or three days, not without success, but greatly circumscribed in their walks by climbers of a most luxuriant growth, which were so interwoven together, as to fill up the space between the trees about which they grew, and render the woods altogether impassable. This day also I went on shore again myself, upon the western point of the inlet, and, from a hill of considerable height, I had a view of the coast to the N. W. The farthest land I could see in that quarter was an island which has been mentioned before, at the distance of about ten leagues, lying not far from the main. Between this island and the place where I stood, I discovered, close under the shore, several other islands, forming many bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage for shipping. After I had set off the different points for my survey, I erected another pile of stones, in which I left a piece of silver coin, with some musket balls and beads, and a piece of an old pendant flying at the top. In my return to the ship, I made a visit to several of the natives, whom I saw along the shore, and purchased a small quantity of fish.

Tuesday 30.

On the 30th, early in the morning, I sent a boat to one of the islands for celery, and while the people were gathering it, about twenty of the natives, men, women, and children, landed near some empty huts: as soon as they were on shore, five or six of the women sat down upon the ground together, and began to cut their legs, arms, and faces, with shells, and sharp pieces of talc, or jasper, in a terrible manner. Our people understood that their husbands had lately been killed by their enemies: but while they were performing this horrid ceremony, the men set about repairing the huts, with the utmost negligence and unconcern.

The Carpenter having prepared two posts, to be left as memorials of our having visited this place, I ordered them to be inscribed with the ship's name, and the year and month; one of them I set up at the watering-place, hoisting the Union flag upon the top of it, and the other I carried over to the island that lies nearest to the sea, called by the natives MOTUARA. I went first to the village, or Hippah, accompanied by Mr. Monkhouse

house and Tupia, where I met with our old man, and told him and several others by means of Tupia, that we were come to set up a mark upon the island, in order to show to any other ship which should happen to come thither, that we had been there before. To this they readily consented, and promised that they never would pull it down: I then gave something to every one present, and to the old man I gave a silver three-pence, dated 1736, and some spike-nails, with the king's broad arrow cut deep upon them; things which I thought most likely to remain among them: I then took the post to the highest part of the island, and after fixing it firmly in the ground, I hoisted upon it the Union flag, and honoured this inlet with the name of QUEEN CHARLOTTE'S SOUND, at the same time taking formal possession of this and the adjacent country, in the name and for the use of his Majesty King George the Third. We then drank a bottle of wine to her Majesty's health, and gave the bottle to the old man, who had attended us up the hill, and who was mightily delighted with his present.

While the post was setting up, we enquired of the old man concerning the passage into the eastern sea, the existence of which he confirmed; and then asked him about the land to the S. W. of the strait, where we were then situated. This land, he said, consisted of two Whennuas, or islands, which might be circumnavigated in a few days, and which he called TOVY POENAMMOO; the literal translation of the word is, "the water of green talc:" and probably, if we had understood him better, we should have found that Tovy Poenam-moo was the name of some particular place where they got the green talc, or stone, of which they make their ornaments and tools, and not a general name for the whole southern district. He said, there was also a third Whennua on the east side of the strait, the circumnavigation of which would take up many moons: this he called EAHEINOMAUWE, and to the land on the borders of the strait, he gave the name of TIERA WITTE. Having set up our post, and procured this intelligence, we returned on board the ship, and brought the old man with us, who was attended by his canoe, in which, after dinner, he returned home.

1770.
January.

1770.
January.
Wednes. 31.

On the 31st, having completed our wooding, and filled all our water-casks, I sent out two parties, one to cut and make brooms, and another to catch fish. In the evening we had a strong gale from the N. W. with such a heavy rain, that our little wild musicians on shore suspended their song, which till now we had constantly heard during the night, with a pleasure which it was impossible to lose without regret.

February.
Thurs. 1.

On the 1st the gale increased to a storm, with heavy gusts from the high land, one of which broke the hawser that we had fastened to the shore, and obliged us to let go another anchor. Towards midnight the gale became more moderate, but the rain continued with such violence, that the brook which had supplied us with water, overflowed its banks, and carried away ten small casks, which had been left there full of water, and, notwithstanding we searched the whole cove, we could never recover one of them.

Saturday 3.

On the 3d, as I intended to sail the first opportunity, I went over to the Hippah on the east side of the Sound, and purchased a considerable quantity of split and half-dried fish, for sea-stores. The people here confirmed all that the old man had told us concerning the streight and the country, and about noon I took leave of them: some of them seemed to be sorry, and others glad, that we were going. The fish which I had bought, they sold freely, but there were some who shewed manifest signs of disapprobation. As we returned to the ship, some of us made an excursion along the shore to the northward, to traffick with the natives for a farther supply of fish, in which, however, they had no great success. In the evening we got every thing off from the shore, as I intended to sail in the morning, but the wind would not permit.

Sunday 4.

On the 4th, while we were waiting for a wind, we amused ourselves by fishing, and gathering shells and seeds of various kinds; and early in the morning, the

Monday 5.

5th, we cast off the hawser, hove short on the bower, and carried the kedge-anchor out, in order to warp the ship out of the cove; which having done about two o'clock in the afternoon, we hove up the anchor, and got under sail; but the wind soon failing, we were obliged to come to an anchor again a little above Motuara.

When

1770.
February.

When we were under sail, our old man Topaa came on board, to take his leave of us ; and as we were still desirous of making farther inquiries, whether any memory of Tasman had been preserved among these people, Tupia was directed to ask him, whether he had ever heard that such a vessel as ours had before visited the country. To this he replied in the negative, but said, that his ancestors had told him, there had once come to this place a small vessel, from a distant country, called ULIMAROA, in which were four men, who, upon their coming on shore, were all killed. Upon being asked, where this distant land lay, he pointed to the northward. Of Ulimaroa we had heard something before from the people about the Bay of Islands, who said that their ancestors had visited it ; and Tupia had also talked to us of Ulimaroa, concerning which he had some confused traditionary notions, not very different from those of our old man, so that we could draw no certain conclusion from the accounts of either.

Soon after the ship came to an anchor the second time, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on shore, to see if any gleanings of natural knowledge remained, and by accident fell in with the most agreeable Indian family they had seen, which afforded them a better opportunity of remarking the personal subordination among these people, than had before offered. The principal persons were a widow, and a pretty boy about ten years old : the widow was mourning for her husband with tears of blood, according to their custom, and the child, by the death of its father, was become proprietor of the land where we had cut our wood. The mother and the son were sitting upon mats, and the rest of the family, to the number of sixteen or seventeen, of both sexes, sat round them in the open air, for they did not appear to have any house, or other shelter from the weather, the inclemencies of which, custom has probably enabled them to endure without any lasting inconvenience. Their whole behaviour was affable, obliging, and unsuspicious ; they presented each person with fish, and a brand of fire to dress it, and pressed them many times to stay till the morning, which they would certainly have done if they had not expected the ship to sail, greatly regretting that they

1770.
February.

had not been acquainted with them sooner, as they made no doubt but that more knowledge of the manners and disposition of the inhabitants of this country would have been obtained from them in a day, than they had yet been able to acquire during our whole stay upon the coast.

Tuesday 6. On the 6th, about six o'clock in the morning, a light breeze sprung up at north, and we again got under sail; but the wind proving variable, we reached no farther than just without Motuara. In the afternoon, however, a more steady gale at N. by W. set us clear of the sound, which I shall now describe.

The entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound is situated in latitude 41° S. longitude $184^{\circ} 45'$ W. and near the middle of the south-west side of the strait in which it lies. The land of the south-east head of the Sound, called by the natives KOAMAROO, off which lie two small islands and some rocks, makes the narrowest part of the strait: From the north-west head a reef of rocks runs out about two miles, in the direction of N. E. by N. part of which is above the water, and part below. By this account of the heads, the Sound will be sufficiently known. At the entrance, it is three leagues broad, and lies in S. W. by S. S. W. and W. S. W. at least ten leagues, and is a collection of some of the finest harbours in the world. The land forming the harbour or cove in which we lay, is called by the natives TOTARRANUE: the harbour itself, which I called SHIP COVE, is not inferior to any in the Sound, either for convenience or safety; it lies on the west side of the Sound, and is the southernmost of three coves, that are situated within the island of Motuara, which bears east of it. Ship Cove may be entered, either between Motuara and a long island, called by the natives HAMOTE, or between Motuara and the western shore. In the last of these channels are two ledges of rock, three fathoms under water, which may easily be known by the sea weed that grows upon them. In sailing either in or out of the Sound, with little wind, attention must be had to the tides, which flow about nine or ten o'clock at the full and change of the moon, and rise and fall between seven and eight feet perpendicularly. The flood comes in through the
strait,

streight from the S. E. and sets strongly over upon the north-west head, and the reef that lies off it : the ebb sets with still greater rapidity to the S. E. over upon the rocks and islands that lie off the south-east head. The variation of the compass we found from good observation, to be $13^{\circ} 5'$ E.

1770.
January.

The land about this Sound, which is of such a height that we saw it at the distance of twenty leagues, consists wholly of high hills and deep vallies, well stored with a variety of excellent timber, fit for all purposes except masts, for which it is too hard and heavy. The sea abounds with a variety of fish, so that, without going out of the cove where we lay, we caught every day, with the seine and hooks and lines, a quantity sufficient to serve the whole ship's company : and along the shore we found plenty of shaggs, and a few other species of wild fowl, which those who have long lived upon salt provisions will not think despicable food.

The number of inhabitants scarcely exceeds four hundred, and they live dispersed along the shores, where their food, consisting of fish and fern roots, is most easily procured, for we saw no cultivated ground. Upon any appearance of danger, they retire to their Hippahs, or forts ; in this situation we found them, and in this situation they continued for some time after our arrival. In comparison of the inhabitants of other parts of this country, they are poor, and their canoes are without ornament. The little traffic we had with them was wholly for fish, and indeed they had scarcely any thing else to dispose of. They seemed, however, to have some knowledge of iron, which the inhabitants of some other parts had not ; for they willingly took nails for their fish, and sometimes seemed to prefer them to every thing else that we could offer, which had not always been the case. They were at first very fond of paper, but when they found that it was spoiled by being wet, they would not take it ; neither did they set much value upon the cloth of Otaheite ; but English broad-cloth, and red-kersey, were in high estimation ; which shewed that they had sense enough to appretiate the commodities which we offered by their use ; which is more than could be said of some of their neighbours,

1770.
January.

neighbours, who made a much better appearance. Their dress has been mentioned already, particularly their large round head-dresses of feathers, which were far from being unbecoming.

As soon as we got out of the Sound, I stood over to the eastward, in order to get the streight well open before the tide of ebb came on. At seven in the evening, the two small islands which lie off Cape Koamaroo, the south-east head of Queen Charlotte's Sound, bore east, distant about four miles. At this time it was nearly calm, and the tide of ebb setting out, we were, in a very short time, carried by the rapidity of the stream close upon one of the islands, which was a rock rising almost perpendicularly out of the sea. We perceived our danger increase every moment, and had but one expedient to prevent our being dashed to pieces, the success of which a few minutes would determine. We were now within little more than a cable's length of the rock, and had more than seventy-five fathoms water; but upon dropping an anchor, and veering about one hundred and fifty fathoms of cable, the ship was happily brought up. This, however, would not have saved us, if the tide, which set S. by E. had not upon meeting with the island, changed its direction to S. E. and carried us beyond the first point. In this situation, we were not above two cables length from the rocks; and here we remained in the strength of the tide, which set to the S. E. after the rate of at least five miles an hour, from a little after seven till near midnight, when the tide abated, and we began to heave. By three in the morning the anchor was at the bows, and having a light breeze at N. W. we made sail for the eastern shore; but the tide being against us, we made but little way. The wind, however, afterwards freshened, and came to N. and N. E. with which, and the tide of ebb, we were in a short time hurried through the narrowest part of the streight, and then stood away for the southermost land, we had in sight, which bore from us S. by W. Over this land appeared a mountain of stupendous height, which was covered with snow.

Wednes. 7.

The

The narrowest part of the strait, through which we had been driven with such rapidity, lies between Cape Tierawitte, on the coast of Eaheinomauwe and Cape Koamaroo: the distance between them I judged to be between four and five leagues, and, notwithstanding the tide, now its strength is known, may be passed without much danger. It is safest, however, to keep on the north-east shore, for on that side there appeared to be nothing to fear; but on the other shore there are not only the islands and rocks which lie off Cape Koamaroo; but a reef of rocks stretching from these islands six or seven miles to the southward, at the distance of two or three miles from the shore, which I had discovered from the hill, when I took my second view of the strait from the east to the western sea.

1770.
February.

About nine leagues north from Cape Tierawitte, and under the same shore, is a high and remarkable island, which may be distinctly seen from Queen Charlotte's Sound, from which it is distant between six or seven leagues. This island, which was noticed when we passed it on the 14th of January, I have called ENTRY ISLE.

On the east side of Cape Tierawitte, the land trends away S. E. by E. about eight leagues, where it ends in a point, and is the southernmost land on Eaheinomauwe. To this point I have given the name of CAPE PALLISER, in honour of my worthy friend Captain Palliser. It lies in latitude $41^{\circ} 37'$ S. longitude $183^{\circ} 58'$ W. and bore from us this day at noon S. 79 E. distant about thirteen leagues, the ship being then in the latitude of $41^{\circ} 27'$ S. Koamaroo at the same time bearing N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant seven or eight leagues. The southernmost land in sight bore S. 16 W. and the snowy mountains S. W. At this time we were about three leagues from the shore, and a-breast of a deep bay or inlet, to which I gave the name of CLOUDY BAY, and at the bottom of which there appeared low land covered with tall trees.

At three o'clock in the afternoon, we were a-breast of the southernmost point of land that we had seen at noon, which I called CAPE CAMPBELL; it lies S. by W. distant between twelve and thirteen leagues from
Cape

1770.
February.

Cape Coamaroo, in latitude $41^{\circ} 44'$ S. longitude $183^{\circ} 45'$ W. and with Cape Palmer forms the southern entrance of the streight, the distance between them being between thirteen and fourteen leagues W. by S. and E. by N.

From the Cape we steered along the shore S. W. by S. till eight o'clock in the evening, when the wind died away. About half an hour afterwards, however, a fresh breeze sprung up at S. W. and I put the ship right before it. My reason for this, was a notion which some of the officers had just started, that Eaheino-mauwe was not an island, and that the land might stretch away to the S. E. from between Cape Turnagain and Cape Palliser, there being a space of between twelve and fifteen leagues that we had not seen. I had indeed the strongest conviction that they were mistaken, not only from what I had seen the first time I discovered the streight, but from many other concurrent testimonies, that the land in question was an island; but being resolved to leave no possibility of doubt, with respect to an object of such importance, I took the opportunity of the wind's shifting to stand eastward, and accordingly steered N. E. by E. all the night. At nine o'clock in the morning we were a-breast of Cape Palliser, and found the land trend away N. E. towards Cape Turnagain, which I reckoned to be distant about twenty-six leagues: however, as the weather was hazy, so as to prevent our seeing above four or five leagues, I still kept standing to the N. E. with a light breeze at south; and at noon Cape Palliser bore N. 72° W. distant about three leagues.

Thursd. 8.

About three o'clock in the afternoon three canoes came up to the ship, with between thirty and forty people on board, who had been pulling after us with great labour and perseverance for some time. They appeared to be more cleanly, and a better class, than any we had met with since we left the Bay of Islands, and their canoes were also distinguished by the same ornaments which we had seen upon the northerly part of the coast. They came on board with very little invitation, and their behaviour was courteous and friendly: upon receiving presents from us, they made us presents in return, which had not been done by any of the natives that

1770.
February.

that we had seen before. We soon perceived that our guests had heard of us, for as soon as they came on board, they asked for Whow, the name by which nails were known among the people with whom we had trafficked: but though they had heard of nails, it was plain they had seen none: for when nails were given them, they asked Tupia what they were. The term Whow, indeed, conveyed to them the idea not of their quality, but only of their use; for it is the same by which they distinguish a tool, commonly made of bone, which they use both as an augur and a chissel. However, their knowing that we had Whow to sell, was a proof that their connections extended as far north as Cape Kidnappers, which was distant no less than forty-five leagues: for that was the southermost place on this side the coast where he had any traffic with the natives. It is also probable, that the little knowledge which the inhabitants of Queen Charlotte's Sound had of iron, they obtained from their neighbours at Tierawitte; for we had no reason to think that the inhabitants of any part of this coast had the least knowledge of iron or its use before we came among them, especially as when it was first offered they seemed to disregard it as of no value. We thought it probable, that we were now once more in the territories of Teratu; but upon inquiring of these people, they said that he was not their king. After a short time, they went away, much gratified with the presents that we had made them; and we pursued our course along the shore to the N. E. till eleven o'clock the next morning. About this time, the weather happening to clear up, we saw Cape Turn-again, bearing N. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. at the distance of about seven leagues: I then called the officers upon deck, and asked them, whether they were not now satisfied, that Eaheinomauwe was an island; they readily answered in the affirmative, and all doubts being now removed, we hauled our wind to the eastward.

Friday 9.

A N
A C C O U N T
O F A
VOYAGE round the WORLD.

B O O K II.

C H A P. VII.

Range from Cape Turnagain southward along the eastern Coast of Poenammoo, round Cape South, and back to the western Entrance of Cooke's Streight, which completed the Circumnavigation of this Country: with a Description of the Coast, and of Admiralty Bay: The Departure from New Zealand, and various Particulars.

1770.
February.

Friday 9.
Sund. 11.

AT four o'clock in the afternoon of Friday the 9th of February, having tacked, we stood S. W. and continued to make sail to the southward till sunset on the 11th, when a fresh breeze at N. E. had carried us back again the length of Cape Palliser, of which as the weather was clear we had a good view. Between the foot of the high land and the sea there is a low flat border, of which there are some rocks that appear above water. Between this Cape and Cape Turnagain, the land near the shore is, in many places, low and flat, and has a green and pleasant appearance; but farther from the sea it rises into hills. The land between Cape Palliser and Cape Tierawitte is high and makes in table-points; it also seemed to us to form two bays, but we were at too great a distance from this part of the coast, to judge accurately from appearances. The wind having been variable, with calms,

calms, we had advanced no farther by the 12th at noon than latitude $41^{\circ} 52'$, Cape Palliser then bearing north, distant about five leagues; and the snowy mountains S. 83° W. 1770.
February.
Monday 12.

At noon on the 13th, we found ourselves in the latitude of $42^{\circ} 2'$ S. Cape Palliser bearing N. 20° E. distant eight leagues. In the afternoon, a fresh gale sprung up at N. E. and we steered S. W. by W. for the southernmost land in sight, which at sunset bore from us S. 74° W. At this time the variation was $15^{\circ} 4'$ E. Tuesd. 13.

At eight o'clock in the morning of the 14th, having run one and twenty leagues S. 58° W. since the preceding noon, it fell calm. We were then a-breast of the snowy mountain which bore from us N. W. and in this direction lay behind a mountainous ridge of nearly the same height, which rises directly from the sea, and runs parallel with the shore, which lies N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. and S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. The north-west end of the ridge rises inland, not far from Cape Campbell; and both the mountain, and the ridge are distinctly seen as well from Cape Koamaroo as Cape Palliser: from Koamaroo they are distant two and twenty leagues S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and from Cape Palliser thirty leagues W. S. W. and are of a height sufficient to be seen at a much greater distance. At noon this day, we were in latitude $42^{\circ} 34'$ S. The southernmost land in sight bore S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and some low land that appeared like an island, and lay close under the foot of the ridge, bore N. W. by N. about five or six leagues. Wednesd. 14.

In the afternoon when Mr. Banks was out in the boat a shooting, we saw, with our glasses, four double canoes, having on board fifty-seven men, put off from that shore, and made towards him: we immediately made signals for him to come on board; but the ship, with respect to him, being right in the wake of the sun, he did not see them. We were at a considerable distance from the shore, and he was at a considerable distance from the ship, which was between him and the shore; so that it being a dead calm, I began to be in some pain for him, fearing that he might not see the canoes time enough to reach the ship before they should get up with him: soon after, however we saw his boat in motion, and had the pleasure to take him

1770.
February.

on board before the Indians came up, who probably had not seen him, as their attention seemed to be wholly fixed upon the ship. They came within about a stone's cast, and then stopped, gazing at us with a look of vacant astonishment: Tupia exerted all his eloquence to prevail upon them to come nearer, but without any effect. After surveying us for some time, they left us, and made towards the shore; but had not measured more than half the distance between that and the ship before it was dark. We imagined that these people had heard nothing of us, and could not but remark the different behaviour and dispositions of the inhabitants of the different parts of this coast upon their first approaching the vessel. These kept aloof with a mixture of timidity and wonder; others had immediately commenced hostilities, by pelting us with stones: the gentleman whom we had found alone, fishing in his boat, seemed to think us entirely unworthy of his notice; and some, almost without invitation, had come on board with an air of perfect confidence and good-will. From the behaviour of our last visitors, I gave the land from which they had put off, and which, as I have before observed, had the appearance of an island, the name of **LOOKERS-ON**.

Thurs. 15.

At eight o'clock in the evening, a breeze sprung up at S. S. W. with which I stretched off south-east, because some on board thought they saw land in that quarter. In this course we continued till six o'clock the next morning, when we had run eleven leagues, but saw no land, except that which we had left. Having stood to the S. E. with a light breeze, which veered from the west to the north, till noon, our latitude by observation was $42^{\circ} 56'$ S. and the high land that we were a-breast of the preceding noon bore N. N. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. In the afternoon we had a light breeze at N. E. with which we steered west, edging for the land, which was distant about eight leagues. At seven in the evening we were about six leagues from the shore, and the southermost extremity of the land in sight bore W. S. W.

Friday 16.

At day-break on the 16th, we discovered land bearing S. by W. and seemingly detached from the coast we were upon. About eight a breeze sprung up, at
N. by

N. by E. and we steered directly for it. At noon, we were in latitude $43^{\circ} 19'$ S. the peak on the snowy mountain bore N. 20 E. distant twenty seven leagues; the southern extremity of the land we could see bore west, and the land which had been discovered in the morning appeared like an island extending from S. S. W. to S. W. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant about eight leagues. In the afternoon, we stood to the southward of it, with a fresh breeze at north: at eight in the evening, we had run eleven leagues, and the land then extended from S. W. by W. to N. by W. We were then distant about three leagues from the nearest shore, and in this situation had fifty fathoms water, with a fine sandy bottom. The variation of the compass by this morning's amplitude was $14^{\circ} 39'$ E.

1770.
February.

At sun-rise, the next morning, our opinion that the land we had been standing for was an island, was confirmed, by our seeing part of the land of Tovy Poenammoo open to the westward of it, extending as far as W. by S. At eight in the morning, the extremes of the island bore N. 76 W. and N. N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and an opening near the south point, which had the appearance of a bay or harbour, N. 20 W. distant between three and four leagues: in this situation we had thirty-eight fathoms water with a brown sandy bottom.

This island, which I named after Mr. Banks, lies about five leagues from the coast of Tovy Poenammoo; the south point bears S. 21 W. from the highest peak on the snowy mountain, and lies in latitude $53^{\circ} 32'$ S. and in longitude $186^{\circ} 30'$ W. by an observation of the sun and moon which was made this morning: it is of a circular figure, and about twenty-four leagues in compass: it is sufficiently high to be seen at the distance of twelve or fifteen leagues, and the land has a broken irregular surface, with the appearance rather of barrenness than fertility: yet it was inhabited, for we saw smoke in one place, and a few straggling natives in another.

When this island was first discovered in the direction of S. by W. some persons on board were of opinion that they also saw land bearing S S. E. and S. E. by E. I was myself upon the deck at the time, and told

1770.
February.

them, that in my opinion it was no more than a cloud, and that as the sun rose, it would dissipate and vanish. However, as I was determined to leave no subject for disputation which experiment could remove, I ordered the ship to be wore, and steered E. S. E. by compass, in the direction which the land was said to bear from us at that time. At noon we were in latitude $44^{\circ} 7' S.$ the south point of Banks's island bearing north, distant five leagues. By seven o'clock at night we had run eight and twenty miles, when seeing no land, nor any signs of any, but that which we had left, we bore away S. by W. and continued upon that course till the

Sunday 18. next day at noon, when we were in latitude $45^{\circ} 16'$, the south point of Banks's Island bearing N. $6^{\circ} 30' W.$ distant twenty-eight leagues. The variation by the azimuth this morning was $15^{\circ} 30' E.$ As no signs of land had yet appeared to the southward, and as I thought that we had stood far enough in that direction to weather all the land we had left, judging from the report of the natives in Queen Charlotte's Sound, I hauled to the westward.

We had a moderate breeze at N. N. W. and N. till eight in the evening, when it became unsettled; and at ten fixed at south: during the night it blew with such violence that it brought us under our close reefed topails. At eight the next morning, having run twenty-eight leagues upon a W. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. course, and judging ourselves to be to the westward of the land of Tovy Poenammoo, we bore away N. W. with a fresh gale at south. At ten having run eleven miles upon this course, we saw land extending from the S. W. to the N. W. at the distance of about ten leagues, which we hauled up for. At noon, our latitude by observation was $44^{\circ} 38'$, the south-east point of Banks's island bore N. $58^{\circ} 30' E.$ distant thirty leagues, and the main body of the land in sight W. by N. A head sea prevented us from making much way to the southward; at seven in the evening the extremes of the land stretched from S. W. by S. to N. by W. and at six leagues from the shore we had thirty-two fathoms water. At four o'clock the next morning, we stood in for the shore W. by S. and during a course of four leagues, our depth of water was from thirty-two to thirteen

Tuesday 20.

thirteen fathoms. When it was thirteen fathoms we were but three miles distant from the shore, and therefore stood off; its direction is here nearly N. and S. The surface, to the distance of about five miles from the sea, is low and flat; but it then rises into hills of a considerable height. It appeared to be totally barren, and we saw no signs of its being inhabited. Our latitude, at noon, was $44^{\circ} 44'$; and the longitude which we made from Banks's Island to this place was $2^{\circ} 22'$ W. During the last twenty-four hours, though we carried as much sail as the ship would bear, we were driven three leagues to the leeward.

1770.
February.

We continued to stand off and on all this day and the next, keeping at the distance of between four and twelve leagues from the shore, and having water from thirty-five to fifty-three fathoms. On the 22d, at noon, we had no observation, but by the land judged ourselves to be about three leagues farther north than we had been the day before. At sun-set, the weather, which had been hazy, clearing up, we saw a mountain which rose in a high-peak, bearing N. W. by N. and at the same time, we saw the land more distinctly than before, extending from N. to S. W. by S. which, at some distance within the coast, had a lofty and mountainous appearance. We soon found that the accounts which had been given us by the Indians in Queen Charlotte's Sound of the land to the southward were not true; for they had told us that it might be circumnavigated in four days.

Wednes. 21.

Thursd. 22.

On the 23d, having a hollow swell from the S. E. and expecting wind from the same quarter, we kept plying between seven and fifteen leagues from the shore, having from seventy to forty-four fathoms. At noon, our latitude by observation was $44^{\circ} 40'$ S. and our longitude from Banks's Island $1^{\circ} 31'$ W. From this time to six in the evening it was calm; but a light breeze then springing up at E. N. E. we steered S. S. E. all night, edging off from the land, the hollow swell still continuing; our depth of water was from sixty to seventy-five fathoms. While we were becalmed, Mr. Banks, being out in the boat, shot two Port Egmont hens, which were in every respect the same as those that are found in great numbers upon the island of

Friday 23.

1770.
February.

Faro, and were the first of the kind we had seen upon this coast, though we fell in with some a few days before we made land.

Saturday 24.

At day-break, the wind freshened, and before noon we had a strong gale at N. N. E. At eight in the morning we saw the land extending as far as S. W. by S. and steered directly for it. At noon, we were in latitude $45^{\circ} 22'$ S. and the land which now stretched from S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. to N. N. W. appeared to be rudely diversified by hill and valley; in the afternoon we steered S. W. by S. edging in for the land with a fresh gale at north; but though we were at no great distance, the weather was so hazy that we could see nothing distinctly upon it, except a ridge of high hills lying not far from the sea, and parallel to the coast, which in this place stretches S. by W. and N. by E. and seemed to end in a high bluff point to the southward. By eight in the evening we were a-breast of this point; but it being then dark, and I not knowing which way the land trended, we brought to for the night. At this time the point bore west, and was distant about five miles: our depth of water was thirty-seven fathoms, and the bottom consisted of small pebbles.

Sunday 25.

At day-break, having made sail, the point bore north, distant three leagues, and we now found that the land trended from S. W. by W. as far as we could see. This point I named **CAPE SAUNDERS**, in honour of Sir Charles. Our latitude was $45^{\circ} 35'$ S. and longitude $189^{\circ} 4'$ W. By the latitude, and the angles that are made by the coast, this point will be sufficiently known; there is, however, about three or four leagues to the south-west of it, and very near the shore, a remarkable saddle-hill, which is a good direction to it on that quarter. From one league to four leagues north of Cape Saunders, the shore forms two or three bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage, and effectual shelter from the S. W. westerly, and N. westerly winds; but my desire of getting to the southward, in order to ascertain whether this country was an island or a continent, prevented my putting into any of them.

We kept at a small distance from the shore all this morning, with the wind at S. W. and had a very

very distinct view of it: it is of a moderate height, and the surface is broken by many hills, which are green and woody; but we saw no appearance of inhabitants. At noon, Cape Saunders bore N. 30° W. distant about four leagues. We had variable winds and calms till five o'clock in the evening, when it fixed at W. S. W. and soon blew so hard that it put us past our top-sails, and split the fore-sail all to pieces: after getting another to the yard, we continued to stand to the southward under two courses; and at six the next morning, the southermost land in sight bore W. by N. and Cape Saunders N. by W. distant eight leagues: at noon, it bore N. 20° W. fourteen leagues; and our latitude by observation was $46^{\circ} 36'$. The gale continued, with heavy squalls and a large hollow sea all the afternoon; and at seven in the evening we lay to under our fore-sail, with the ship's head to the southward: at noon on the 27th our latitude was $46^{\circ} 54'$, and our longitude from Cape Saunders $1^{\circ} 24'$ E. At seven in the evening, we made sail under our courses; and at eight the next morning set the top-sails close reefed. At noon, our latitude was $47^{\circ} 43'$, and our longitude east from Cape Saunders $2^{\circ} 10'$. At this time we wore, and stood to the northward: in the afternoon, we found the variation to be $16^{\circ} 34'$ E. At eight in the evening, we tacked and stood to the southward, with the wind at west.

At noon this day, our latitude by account was $47^{\circ} 52'$, and our longitude from Cape Saunders $1^{\circ} 8'$ E. We stood to the southward till half an hour past three in the afternoon: and then, being in latitude 48° S. and longitude 188° W. and seeing no appearance of land, we tacked and stood to the northward, having a large swell from the S. W. by W. At noon the next day, our latitude was $46^{\circ} 42'$ S. and Cape Saunders bore N. 46° W. distant eighty-six miles. The southwest swell continuing till the third, confirmed our opinion, that there was no land in that quarter. At four in the afternoon, we stood to the westward with all the sail we could make. In the morning of the 4th, we found the variation to be $16^{\circ} 16'$ E. This day we saw

1770.
February.

Mond. 26.

Tuesd. 27.

Wednesd. 28.

March.
Thursd. 1.

Friday 2.

Saturd. 3.

Sunday 4.

1770.
March.

- some whales and seals, as we had done several times after our having passed the streight; but we saw no seals while we were upon the coast of Eahienomauwe. We sounded both in the night and this morning, but had no ground with one hundred and fifty fathoms. At noon we saw Cape Saunders bearing N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and our latitude, by observation, was $46^{\circ} 31'$ S. At half an hour past one o'clock we saw land bearing W. by S. which we steered for, and before it was dark were within three or four miles of it: during the whole night we saw fires upon it, and at seven in the morning were within about three leagues of the shore, which appeared to be high, but level. At three o'clock in the afternoon, we saw the land extending from N. E. by N. to N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. and soon after we discovered some low land, which appeared like an island, bearing S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. We continued our course to the W. by S. and in two hours we saw high land over the low land, extending to the southward as far as S. W. by S. but it did not appear to be joined to the land to the northward; so that there is either water, a deep bay, or low land between them.
- Monday 5. At noon, on the 6th, we were nearly in the same situation as at noon on the day before. In the afternoon we found the variation, by several azimuths and the amplitude, to be $15^{\circ} 10'$ E. On the 7th, at noon, we were in latitude $47^{\circ} 6'$ S. and had made twelve miles easting during the last twenty-four hours. We stood to the westward the remainder of this day, and all the next till sun-set, when the extremes of the land bore from N. by E. to W. distant about seven or eight leagues: in this situation our depth of water was fifty-five fathoms, and the variation, by amplitude, $16^{\circ} 29'$ E. The wind now veered from the N. to the W. and as we had fine weather, and moon-light, we kept standing close upon the wind to the S. W. all night.
- Tuesday 6. At four in the morning we had sixty fathoms water; and at day-light we discovered under our bow a ledge of rocks, extending from S. by W. to W. by S. upon which the sea broke very high; they were not more than three quarters of a mile distant, yet we had five-and-forty fathoms water. As the wind was at N. W. we could not now weather them; and as I was unwilling

1770.
March.

willing to run to leeward, I tacked and made a trip to the eastward; the wind, however, soon after coming to the northward, enabled us to get clear of all. Our soundings, while we were passing within the ledge, were from thirty-five to forty-seven fathoms, with a rocky bottom.

This ledge lies S. E. six leagues from the southernmost part of the land, and S. E. by E. from some remarkable hills which stand near the shore: about three leagues to the northward of it, there is another ledge, which lies full three leagues from the shore, and on which the sea broke in a dreadful surf. As we passed these rocks to the north in the night, and discovered the others under our bow at break of day, it is manifest that our danger was imminent, and our escape critical in the highest degree: from the situation of these rocks, so well adapted to catch unwary strangers, I called them the TRAPS. Our latitude at noon was $47^{\circ} 26' S.$ The land in sight, which had the appearance of an island, extended from N. E. by N. to N. W. by W. and seemed to be about five leagues distant from the main; the easternmost ledge of rocks bore S. S. E. distant one league and an half, and the northernmost N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant about three leagues. This land is high and barren, with nothing upon it but a few straggling shrubs, for not a single tree was to be seen; it was, however, remarkable for a number of white patches, which I took to be marble, as they reflected the sun's rays very strongly: other patches of the same kind, we had observed in different parts of this country, particularly in Mercury Bay, we continued to stand close upon a wind to the westward, and at sun-set the southernmost point of land bore N. 38° E. distant four leagues, and the westernmost land in sight bore N. 2° E. The point which lies in latitude $47^{\circ} 19' S.$ longitude $192^{\circ} 12' W.$ I named SOUTH CAPE; the westernmost land was a small island, lying off the point of the main.

Supposing South Cape to be the southern extremity of this country, as indeed it proved to be, I hoped to get round it by the west; for a large hollow swell from the south-west, ever since our last hard gale, had convinced me that there was no land in that direction.

1770.
March.
Saturday 10.

In the night we had a hard gale at N. E. by N. and N. which brought us under our courses; but about eight in the morning it became moderate; and at noon, steering to the west, we tacked and stood to the northward, having no land in sight. Our latitude, by observation, was $47^{\circ} 33'$, our longitude, west from the South Cape, $59'$. We stood away N. N. E. close upon a wind, without seeing any land, till two the

Sunday 11.

next morning, when we discovered an island bearing N. W. by N. distant about five leagues. About two hours afterwards we saw land a-head, upon which we tacked and stood off till six, when we stood in to take a nearer view of it. At eleven we were within three leagues of it, but the wind seeming to incline upon the shore, I tacked and stood off to the southward. We had now sailed round the land which we had discovered on the 5th, and which then did not appear to be joined to the main which lay north of it; and being now come to the other side of what we supposed to be water, a bay, or low land, it had the same appearance; but when I came to lay it down upon paper, I saw no reason to suppose it to be an island; on the contrary, I was clearly of opinion, that it made part of the main. At noon, the western extremity of the main bore N. 59° W. and the island which we had seen in the morning S. 59° W. distant about five leagues. It lies in latitude $46^{\circ} 31'$ S. longitude $192^{\circ} 49'$ W. and is nothing but a barren rock, about a mile in circuit, remarkably high, and lies full five leagues distant from the main. This island I named after Dr. Solander, and called it SOLANDER'S ISLAND. The shore of the main lies nearest E. by S. and W. by N. and forms a large open bay, in which there is no appearance of any harbour or shelter for shipping against S. W. and southerly winds. The surface of the country is broken into craggy hills of a great height, on the summits of which are several patches of snow; it is not, however, wholly barren, for we could see wood not only in the vallies, but upon the highest ground, yet we saw no appearance of its being inhabited.

Monday 12.

We continued to stand to the S. W. by S. till eleven o'clock the next morning, when the wind shifted to the S. W. by W. upon which we wore, and stood

to the N. N. W. being then in latitude $47^{\circ} 40'$ S. longitude $193^{\circ} 50'$ W. and having a hollow sea from the S. W. 1770.
March.

During the night, we steered N. N. W. till six in the morning, when, seeing no land, we steered N. by E. till eight, when we steered N. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. to make the land, which at ten we saw bearing E. N. E. but it being hazy, we could distinguish nothing upon it. At noon our latitude, by observation, was 46° S. About two it cleared up, and the land appeared to be high, rude, and mountainous. About half an hour after three I hauled in for a bay, in which there appeared to be good anchorage; but in about an hour, finding the distance too great to run before it would be dark, and the wind blowing too hard to make the attempt safe in the night, I bore away along the shore. Tuesday 13.

This bay, which I called **DUSKY BAY**, lies in latitude $45^{\circ} 47'$ S. it is between three and four miles broad at the entrance, and seems to be full as deep as it is broad: it contains several islands, behind which there must be shelter from all winds, though possibly there may not be sufficient depth of water. The north point of this bay, when it bears S. E. by S. is rendered very remarkable, by five high-peaked rocks which lie off it, and have the appearance of the four fingers and thumb of a man's hand, for which reason I called it **POINT FIVE FINGERS**. The land of this Point is farther remarkable, for being the only level land within a considerable distance. It extends near two leagues to the northward, is lofty, and covered with wood; the land behind it is very different, consisting wholly of mountains, totally barren and rocky; and this difference gives the Cape the appearance of an island.

At sun-set, the southernmost land in sight bore due south, distant about five or six leagues; and as this is the westernmost point of land upon the whole coast, I called it **WEST CAPE**. It lies about three leagues to the southward of Dusky Bay, in the latitude of $45^{\circ} 54'$ S. and in the longitude of $193^{\circ} 17'$ W. The land of this Cape is of a moderate height next the sea, and has nothing remarkable about it, except a very white cliff, two or three leagues to the southward of it; to the

1770.
March.

the southward of it also the land trends away to the S. E. and to the northward it trends N. N. E.

Having brought to for the night, we made sail along the shore at four in the morning, in the direction of N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. with a moderate breeze at S. S. E. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $45^{\circ} 13'$ S. At this time, being about a league and an half from the shore, we sounded, but had no ground with seventy fathoms. We had just passed a small narrow opening in land, where there seemed to be a very safe and convenient harbour, formed by an island which lay in the middle of the opening at east. The opening lies in latitude $45^{\circ} 16'$ S. and on the land behind it are mountains, the summits of which were covered with snow, that appeared to have been recently fallen; and indeed for two days past we had found the weather very cold. On each side the entrance of the opening, the land rises almost perpendicularly from the sea to a stupendous height, and this indeed was the reason why I did not carry the ship into it, for no wind could blow there but right in or right out, in the direction of either east or west, and I thought it by no means adviseable to put into a place whence I could not have got out but with a wind, which, experience had taught me, did not blow more than one day in a month. In this, however, I acted contrary to the opinion of some persons on board, who, in very strong terms, expressed their desire to harbour for present convenience, without any regard to future disadvantages.

In the evening, being about two leagues from the shore, we sounded, and had no ground at 108 fathoms; the variation of the needle, by azimuth, was 14° E. and by amplitude $15^{\circ} 2'$. We made the best of our way along the shore, with what wind we had, keeping at the distance of between two and three leagues. At noon we were in latitude $44^{\circ} 47'$ having run only twelve leagues upon a N. E. $\frac{1}{4}$ N. course, during the last four and twenty hours.

We continued to steer along the shore, in the direction of N. E. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. till six o'clock in the evening, when we brought to for the night. At four in the morning we stood in for the land, and when the day broke we saw what appeared to be an inlet; but, upon a nearer approach,

Thurs. 15.

approach, proved to be only a deep valley between two high lands: we proceeded therefore in the same course, keeping the shore at the distance of between four and five miles. At noon, on the 16th, the northermost point of land in sight bore N. 60 E. at the distance of ten miles, and our latitude, by observation, was $44^{\circ} 5'$, our longitude, from Cape West $2^{\circ} 8' E.$ About two we passed the point, which at noon had been distant ten miles, and found it to consist of red high cliffs, down which there fell a cascade of water in four small streams, and I therefore gave it the name of CASCADE POINT. From this point the land trends first N. 76 E. and afterwards more to the northward. At the distance of eight leagues from Cascade Point, in the direction of E. N. E. and at a little distance from the shore, lies a small low island, which bore from us S. by E. at the distance of about a league and a half.

1770.
May.

Friday 16.

At seven in the evening we brought to, in thirty-three fathoms, with a fine sandy bottom; at ten we had fifty fathoms, and at twelve were in sixty-five fathoms, having driven several miles N. N. W. after our having brought to. At two in the morning we had no ground with 140 fathoms, by which it appears that the soundings extend but a little way from the shore. About this time it fell calm; at eight a breeze sprung up at S. W. with which we steered along the shore, in the direction of N. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2} E.$ at the distance of about three leagues. At six in the evening, being about one league from the shore, we had seventeen fathoms, and at eight, being about three leagues from the shore, we had forty-four; we now shortened sail and brought to, having run ten leagues N. E. by E. since noon.

Saturd. 17.

It was calm most part of the night; but at ten in the morning a light breeze sprung up at S. W. by W. when we made sail again along the shore N. E. by N. having a large swell from the W. S. W. which had risen in the night. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $43^{\circ} 4' S.$ and our longitude from Cape West $4^{\circ} 12' E.$ We observed that the vallies, as well as the mountains, were this morning covered with snow, part of which we supposed to have fallen during the night, when we had rain. At six in the evening we shortened sail, and at ten brought to, at the distance of about five

Sunday 18.

1770.
March.

Monday 19.

five leagues from the shore, where we had 115 fathoms. At midnight, there being little wind, we made sail, and at eight in the morning we stood to the N. E. close upon a wind till noon, when we tacked, being about three leagues from the land, and, by observation, in latitude $42^{\circ} 8'$, and longitude from Cape West $5^{\circ} 5' E.$

Tuesd. 20.

We continued to stand westward till two in the morning, when we made a trip to the eastward, and afterwards stood westward till noon, when, by our reckoning, we were in the latitude of $42^{\circ} 23'$, and longitude from Cape West $5^{\circ} 35' E.$ We now tacked and stood eastward, with a fresh gale at N. by W. till six in the evening, when the wind shifted to the S. and S. S. W.

Wednesd. 21.

with which we steered N. E. by N. till six in the morning, when we hauled in E. by N. to make the land, which we saw soon afterwards. At noon our latitude, by account, was $41^{\circ} 37'$, and our longitude from Cape West $5^{\circ} 42' E.$ We were now within three or four leagues of the land, but, it being foggy, we could see nothing upon it distinctly, and as we had much wind, and a vast swell rolling in upon the shore from the W. S. W. I did not think it safe to go nearer.

In the afternoon we had a gentle breeze from the S. S. W. with which we steered north along the shore till eight, when, being within between two and three leagues, we sounded, and had but thirty-four fathoms; upon which we hauled off N. W. by N. till eleven at night, and then brought to, having sixty-four fathoms.

Thursd. 22.

At four in the morning we made sail to the N. E. with a light breeze at S. S. W. which at eight veered to the westward, and soon after died away. At this time we were within three or four miles of the land, and had fifty-four fathoms, with a large swell from the W. S. W. rolling obliquely upon the shore, which made me fear that I should be obliged to anchor; but by the help of a light air now and then from the S. W. I was able to keep the ship from driving. At noon, the northernmost land in sight bore N. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2} E.$ distant about ten leagues; our latitude, by account, was $40^{\circ} 55' S.$ longitude from Cape West $6^{\circ} 35' E.$ From this time we had light airs from the southward, with intervals of calm,

calm, till noon on the 23d, when our latitude, by observation, was $40^{\circ} 36' 30''$ S. and our longitude from Cape West $6^{\circ} 32'$ E. The easternmost point of land in sight bore E. 10 N. at the distance of seven leagues, and a bluff head or point, of which we had been a-breast at noon the day before, and off which lay some rocks above water, bore S. 18 W. at the distance of six leagues. This point I called Rock's Point. Our latitude was now $40^{\circ} 55'$ S. and having nearly run down the whole of the north-west coast of Tovy Poenammoo, I shall give some account of the face of the country.

1770.
March.

Friday 23.

I have already observed, that on the 11th, when we were off the southern part, the land then seen was craggy and mountainous, and there is great reason to believe that the same ridge of mountains extends nearly the whole length of the island. Between the westernmost land which we saw that day, and the easternmost which we saw on the 13th, there is a space of about six or eight leagues, of which we did not see the coast, though we plainly discovered the mountains inland. The sea-coast near Cape West is low, rising with an easy and gradual ascent to the foot of the mountains, being in most parts covered with wood. From Point Five-Fingers, down to latitude $44^{\circ} 20'$, there is a narrow ridge of hills that rises directly from the sea, and is covered with wood: close behind these hills are the mountains, extending in another ridge of a stupendous height, and consisting of rocks that are totally barren and naked, except where they are covered with snow, which is to be seen in large patches upon many parts of them, and has probably lain there ever since the creation of the world. A prospect more rude, craggy, and desolate, than this country affords from the sea, cannot possibly be conceived; for as far inland as the eye can reach, nothing appears but the summits of rocks, which stand so near together, that instead of vallies there are only fissures between them. From the latitude of $44^{\circ} 20'$, to the latitude of $42^{\circ} 8'$, these mountains lie farther inland, and the sea coast consists of woody hills and vallies, of various height and extent, and has much appearance of fertility; many of the vallies form plains of considerable extent, wholly covered

1770.
March.

vered with wood, but it is very probable that the ground in many places is swampy, and interspersed with pools of water. From latitude $42^{\circ} 8'$, to $41^{\circ} 30'$, the land is not distinguished by any thing remarkable; it rises into hills directly from the sea, and is covered with wood; but the weather being foggy while we were upon this part of the coast, we could see very little inland, except now and then the summits of the mountains, towering above the cloudy mists that obscured them below, which confirmed my opinion, that a chain of mountains extended from one end of the island to the other.

- In the afternoon we had a gentle breeze at S. W. which, before it was quite dark, brought us a-breast of the eastern point which we had seen at noon; but not knowing what course the land took on the other side of it, we brought to in thirty-four fathoms, at the distance of about one league from the shore. At eight in the evening, there being little wind, we filled and stood on till midnight, and then we brought to till four in the morning, when we again made sail, and at break of day we saw low land extending from the point to the S. S. E. as far as the eye could reach, the eastern extremity of which appeared in round hillocks. By this time the gale had veered to the eastward, which obliged us to ply to windward. At noon next day, the eastern point bore S. W. by S. distant sixteen miles, and our latitude was $40^{\circ} 19'$; the wind continuing easterly, we were nearly in the same situation at noon on the day following. About three o'clock the wind came to the westward, and we steered E. S. E. with all the sail we could set till it was dark, and then shortened sail till the morning: as we had thick hazy weather all night, we kept sounding continually, and had from thirty-seven to forty-two fathoms. When the day broke we saw land bearing S. E. by E. and an island lying near it bearing E. S. E. distant about five leagues. This island I knew to be the same that I had seen from the entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound, from which it bears N. W. by N. distant nine leagues. At noon it bore south, distant four or five miles, and the north-west head of the Sound S. E. by S. distant ten leagues and
- Saturd. 24.
- Sunday 25.
- Monday 26.
- Tuesd. 27.

and an half. Our latitude, by observation, was $40^{\circ} 33' S.$

1770.
March.

As we had now circumnavigated the whole country, it became necessary to think of quitting it; but as I had thirty tons of empty water-casks on board, this could not be done till I had filled them; I therefore hauled round the island, and entered a bay which lies between that and Queen Charlotte's Sound, leaving three more islands, which lay close under the western shore, between three and four miles within the entrance, on our starboard hand. While we were running in, we kept the lead continually going, and had from forty to twelve fathoms. At six o'clock in the evening we anchored in eleven fathoms, with a muddy bottom, under the west shore, in the second cove, that lies within the three islands; and as soon as it was light, the next morning, I took a boat and went on shore, to look for a watering place, and a proper birth for the ship, both which I found much to my satisfaction. As soon as the ship was moored, I sent an officer on shore, to superintend the watering, and the Carpenter with his crew to cut wood, while the long-boat was employed in landing the empty casks. Wednes. 28.

In this employment we were busy till the 30th, when the wind seeming to settle at S. E. and our water being nearly completed, we warped the ship out of the cove, that we might have room to get under sail; and at noon I went away in the pinnace, to examine as much of the bay as my time would admit. Friday 30.

After rowing about two leagues up it, I went a-shore upon a point of land on the western side, and having climbed a hill, I saw the western arm of this bay run in S. W. by W. about five leagues farther, yet I could not discover the end of it. There appeared to be several other inlets, or at least small bays, between this and the north west head of Queen Charlotte's Sound, in each of which, I make no doubt, there is anchorage and shelter, as they are all covered from the sea wind by the islands which lie without them. The land about this bay, as far as I could see of it, is of a hilly surface, chiefly covered with trees, shrubs, and fern, which render travelling difficult and fatiguing. In this excursion I was accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander,

1770.
March.

Solander, who found several new plants. We met with some huts, which seemed to have been long deserted, but saw no inhabitants. Mr. Banks examined several of the stones that lay upon the beach, which were full of veins, and had a mineral appearance, but he did not discover any thing in them which he knew to be ore; if he had had an opportunity to examine any of the bare rocks, perhaps he might have been more fortunate. He was also of opinion, that what I had taken for marble in another place, was a mineral substance, and that, considering the correspondence of latitude between this place and South America, it was not improbable but that, by a proper examination, something very valuable might be found.

At my return, in the evening, I found all the wood and water on board, and the ship ready for the sea; I resolved therefore to quit the country, and return home by such a route as might be of most advantage to the service, and upon this subject took the opinion of my officers. I had myself a strong desire to return by Cape Horn, because that would have enabled me finally to determine, whether there is or is not a southern continent; but against this it was a sufficient objection, that we must have kept in a high southern latitude in the very depth of winter, with a vessel which was not thought sufficient for the undertaking; and the same reason was urged against our proceeding directly for the Cape of Good Hope, with still more force, because no discovery of moment could be hoped for in that route; it was therefore resolved that we should return by the East Indies, and that with this view we should, upon leaving the coast, steer westward, till we should fall in with the east coast of New Holland, and then follow the direction of that coast to the northward, till we should arrive at its northern extremity; but if that should be found impracticable, it was further resolved, that we should endeavour to fall in with the land, or islands, said to have been discovered by Quiros.

Saturd. 31.

With this view, at break of day on Saturday the 31st of March, 1770, we got under sail, and put to sea with the advantage of a fresh gale at S. E. and clear weather, taking our departure from the eastern point, which

which we had seen at noon on the 23d, and to which, on this occasion, I gave the name of **CAPE FAREWELL**.

1770.
March.

The bay out of which we had just sailed I called **ADMIRALTY BAY**, giving the name of **CAPE STEPHENS** to the north-west point, and of **CAPE JACKSON** to the south-east, after the two gentlemen who at this time were Secretaries to the Board of Admiralty.

Admiralty Bay may easily be known by the island that has been just mentioned, which lies two miles N. E. of Cape Stephens, in latitude $40^{\circ} 37'$ S. longitude $185^{\circ} 6'$ W. and is of a considerable height. Between this island and Cape Farewell, which are between fourteen and fifteen leagues distant from each other, in the direction of W. by N. and E. by S. the shore forms a large deep bay, the bottom of which we could scarcely see, while we were sailing in a straight line from one Cape to the other; it is, however, probably of less depth than it appeared to be; for as we found the water shallower here, than at the same distance from any other part of the coast, there is reason to suppose, that the land at the bottom which lies next the sea is low, and therefore not easily to be distinguished from it; I have for this reason called it **BLIND BAY**, and am of opinion, that it is the same which was called **Murderer's Bay** by Tasman.

Such particulars of this country and its inhabitants, with their manners and customs, as could be learned while we were circumnavigating the coast, shall now be related.

C H A P. VIII.

A general Account of New Zealand: its first Discovery, Situation, Extent, Climate, and Productions.

NEW ZEALAND was first discovered by Abel Jansen Tasman, a Dutch navigator, whose name has been several times mentioned in this narrative, on the 13th of December, in the year 1642. He traversed the eastern coast from latitude 34° to 43° , and entered the streight which divides the two islands, and in the chart is called **COOK'S STREIGHT**; but being at-

1770.
March.

tacked by the natives soon after he came to anchor, in the place to which he gave the name of Murderer's Bay, he never went on shore. He gave the country the name of STAATEN LAND, or the land of the States, in honour of the States General, and it is now generally distinguished in our maps and charts by the name of NEW ZEALAND. As the whole of this country, except that part of the coast which was seen by Tasman from on board his ship, has from his time, to the voyage of the Endeavour, remained altogether unknown, it has by many been supposed to be part of a southern continent. It is, however, now known to consist of two large islands, divided from each other by a strait or passage, which is about four or five leagues broad.

These islands are situated between the latitudes of 34° and 48° S. and between the longitudes of 181° and 194° W. which is now determined with uncommon exactness, from innumerable observations of the sun and moon, and one of the transits of Mercury, by Mr. Green, a person of known abilities, who, as has been observed before, was sent out by the Royal Society, to observe the transit of Venus in the South Seas.

The northermost of these islands is called by the natives Eaheinomauwe, and the southermost Tovy, or Tavai Poenammoo; yet, as I have observed before, we are not sure whether the name Tovy Poenammoo comprehends the whole southern island, or only part of it. The figure and extent of these islands, with the situation of the bays and harbours they contain, and the smaller islands that lie about them will appear from the chart that I have drawn, every part of which, however, I cannot vouch to be equally accurate. The coast of Eaheinomauwe, from Cape Palliser to East Cape, is laid down with great exactness, both in its figure, and the course and distance from point to point; for the opportunities that offered, and the methods that I used, were such as could scarcely admit of an error. From East Cape to St. Maria van Diemen, the chart, though perhaps not equally exact, is without any error of moment, except possibly in some few places, which are here, and in other parts of the chart, distinguished by a dotted line, and which I had no opportunity

1770.
March.

tunity to examine. From Cape Maria van Diemen to latitude $36^{\circ} 15'$, we were seldom nearer the shore than between five and eight leagues; and therefore the line that marks the sea coast may possibly be erroneous. From latitude $36^{\circ} 15'$ to nearly the length of Entry Island, our course was very near the shore, and in this part of the chart, therefore, there can be no material error, except perhaps at Cape Tierawitte. Between Entry Island and Cape Palliser we were again farther from the shore, and this part of the coast, therefore, may not be laid down with minute exactness; yet, upon the whole, I am of opinion, that this island will be found not much to differ from the figure that I have given it; and that upon the coast there are few or no harbours which are not noticed in the journal, or delineated in the chart. I cannot, however, say as much of Tovy Poenammoo, the season of the year, and the circumstances of the voyage, would not permit me to spend so much time about this island as I had employed upon the other; and the storms that we met with made it both difficult and dangerous to keep near the shore. However, from Queen Charlotte's Sound to Cape Campbell, and as far to the S. W. as latitude 43° , the chart will be found pretty accurate. Between latitude 43° and latitude $44^{\circ} 20'$ the line may be doubted; for of some part of the coast which it represents we had scarcely a view. From latitude $44^{\circ} 20'$ to Cape Saunders, our distance would not permit me to be particular, and the weather was besides extremely unfavourable. From Cape Saunders to Cape South, and even to Cape West, there is also reason to fear that the chart will in many places be found erroneous, as we were seldom able to keep the shore, and were sometimes blown to such a distance, that it could not be seen. From Cape West to Cape Farewell, and even to Charlotte's Sound, it is not more to be trusted.

Tovy Poenammoo is for the most part a mountain-Country, and, to all appearance, a barren country; and the people whom we saw in Queen Charlotte's Sound, those that came off to us under the snowy mountains, and the fires to the west of Cape Saunders, were all

1770.
March.

the inhabitants, and signs of inhabitants, that we discovered upon the whole island.

Eaheinomauwe has a much better appearance; it is indeed not only hilly but mountainous, yet even the hills and mountains are covered with wood, and every valley has a rivulet of water. The soil in these valleys, and in the plains, of which there are many that are not overgrown with wood, is in general light, but fertile, and in the opinion of Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, as well as of every other gentleman on board, every kind of European grain, plants, and fruit, would flourish here in the utmost luxuriance. From the vegetables that we found here, there is reason to conclude, that the winters are milder than those in England, and we found the summer not hotter, though it was more equally warm; so that if this country should be settled by people from Europe, they would, with a little industry, be very soon supplied not only with the necessities, but the luxuries of life in great abundance.

Quadrupeds.

In this country there are no quadrupeds but dogs and rats, at least we saw no other, and the rats are so scarce that many of us never saw them. The dogs live with the people, who breed them for no other purpose than to eat: there might, indeed, be quadrupeds that we did not see; but this is not probable, because the chief pride of the natives, with respect to their dress, is in the skins and hair of such animals as they have, and we never saw the skin of any animal about them but those of dogs and birds. There are indeed seals upon the coast, and we once saw a sea-lion, but we imagine they are seldom caught; for though we saw some of their teeth, which were fashioned into an ornament like a bodkin, and worn by the natives at their breast, and highly valued, we saw none of their skins. There are whales also upon this coast; and though the people did not appear to have any art or instrument, by which such an animal could be taken and killed, we saw pattoo-pattoos in the possession of some of them, which were made of the bone of a whale, or of some other animal whose bone had exactly the same appearance.

Of

Of birds, the species are not many; and of these none, except perhaps the gannet, is the same with those of Europe: here are ducks, indeed, and shaggs of several kinds, sufficiently resembling those of Europe, to be called the same, by those who have examined them very nicely. Here are also hawks, owls, and quails, which differ but little from those of Europe at first sight; and several small birds, whose song, as has been remarked in the course of the narrative, is much more melodious than any that we had ever heard.

1770.
March.

Birds.

The sea coast is also visited by many oceanic birds, particularly albatrosses, sheerwaters, pintados, and a few of the birds which Sir John Narborough has called penguins, and which indeed are what the French call Nuance, and seem to be a middle species between bird and fish; for their feathers, especially those upon their wings, differ very little from scales; and their wings themselves, which they use only in diving, and not to accelerate their motion even upon the surface of the water, may perhaps, with equal propriety, be called fins.

Neither are insects in greater plenty than birds: a few butterflies and beetles, flesh-flies, very like those in Europe, and some musquitos and sand-flies, perhaps exactly the same with those of North America, make up the whole catalogue. Of musquitos and sand-flies, however, which are justly accounted the curse of every country where they abound, we did not see many: there were, indeed, a few in almost every place where we went on shore, but they gave us so little trouble, that we did not make use of the shades which we had provided for the security of our faces.

For this scarcity of animals upon the land, the sea, however, makes an abundant recompence, every creek swarming with fish, which are not only wholesome, but equally delicious with those of Europe. The ship seldom anchored in any station, or with a light gale passed any place, that did not afford us enough, with hook and line, to serve the whole ship's company, especially to the southward. When we lay at anchor, the boats, with hook and line, near the rocks, could take fish in any quantity, and the seine seldom failed of producing a still more ample supply; so that both

1770.
March.

times when we anchored in Cook's Streight, every mess in the ship, that was not careless and improvident, salted as much as lasted many weeks after they went to sea. Of this article, the variety was equal to the plenty: we had mackarel of many kinds, among which, one was exactly the same as we have in England; these came in immense shoals, and were taken by the natives in their seines, who sold them to us at a very easy rate. Besides these, there were fish of many species, which we had never seen before, but to all which the seamen very readily gave names; so that we talked here as familiarly of hakes, bream, cole-fish, and many others, as we do in England; and, though they are by no means of the same family, it must be confessed, that they do honour to the name. But the highest luxury which the sea affords us, even in this place, was the lobster, or sea cray-fish, which are probably the same that in the account of Lord Anson's Voyage are said to have been found at the island of Juan Fernandes, except that, although large, they are not quite equal in size; they differ from ours in England in several particulars, they have a greater number of prickles on their backs, and they are red when first taken out of the water: these we bought also every where to the northward in great quantities of the natives, who catch them by diving near the shore, and finding out where they lie with their feet. We had also a fish that Frier, in his Voyage to the Spanish Main, in South America, has described by the names of Elefant, Peje-gallo, or Poison coq, which, though coarse, we eat very heartily. Several species of the skate, or sting-ray, are also found here, which are still coarser than the elephant; but, as an atonement, we had among many kinds of dog-fish, one spotted with white, which was in flavour exactly similar to our best skate, but much more delicious. We had also flat fish resembling both soles and flounders, besides eels and congers of various kinds, with many others, of which those who shall hereafter visit this coast will not fail to find the advantage, and shell-fish in great variety, particularly clams, cockles, and oysters.

Among

Among the vegetable productions of this country, the trees claim a principal place; for here are forests of vast extent, full of the straightest, the cleanest, and the largest timber-trees that we had ever seen; their size, their grain, and apparent durability, render them fit for any kind of building, and indeed for every other purpose except masts, for which, as I have already observed, they are too hard and too heavy; there is one in particular which, when we were upon the coast, was rendered conspicuous by a scarlet flower, that seemed to be a compendage of many fibres; it is about as large as an oak, and the wood is exceedingly hard and heavy, and excellently adapted to the use of the millwright: there is another which grows in the swamps, remarkably tall and straight, thick enough to make masts for vessels of any size, and, if a judgment may be formed by the direction of its grain, very tough. This, which, as has been before remarked, our Carpenter thought to resemble the pitch-pine, may probably be lightened by tapping, and it will then make the finest masts in the world; it has a leaf not unlike a yew, and bears berries in small bunches.

1770.
March.

Trees,
plants, &c.

Great part of this country is covered with a luxuriant verdure; and our natural historians were gratified by the novelty, if not the variety of the plants. Sow-thistle, garden night-shade, one or two kinds of grass, the same as in England, and two or three kinds of fern, like those of the West Indies, with a few of the plants that are to be found in almost every part of the world, were all, out of about four hundred species, that have hitherto been described by any botanists, or had been seen elsewhere during the course of this voyage, except about five or six which had been gathered at Terra del Fuego.

Of eatable vegetables there are but few; our people, indeed, who had been long at sea, eat with equal pleasure and advantage of wild celery, and a kind of cresses, which grew in great abundance upon all parts of the sea shore. We also, once or twice, met with a plant like what the country people in England call Lambs quarters, or Fathen, which we boiled instead of greens; and once we had the good fortune to find a cabbage-tree, which afforded us a delicious meal; and,

1770.
March.

except the fern-root, and one other vegetable, totally unknown in Europe, and which, though eaten by the natives, was extremely disagreeable to us, we found no other vegetable production that was fit for food, among those that appeared to be the wild produce of the country; and we could find but three esculent plants among those which are raised by cultivation, yams, sweet potatoes, and coccos. Of the yams and potatoes there are plantations consisting of many acres, and I believe that any ship which should happen to be here in the autumn, when they are dug up, might purchase them in any quantity.

Gourds are also cultivated by the natives of this place, the fruit of which furnishes them with vessels for various uses. We also found here the Chinese paper mulberry-tree, the same as that of which the inhabitants of the South Sea islands make their cloth; but it is so scarce, that though the new Zealanders also make cloth of it, they have not enough for any other purpose than to wear as an ornament in the holes which they make in their ears, as I have observed before.

But among all the trees, shrubs, and plants of this country, there is not one that produces fruit, except a berry which has neither sweetness nor flavour, and which none but the boys took pains to gather, should be honoured with that appellation. There is, however, a plant that serves the inhabitants instead of hemp and flax, which excels all that are put to the same purposes in other countries: of this plant there are two sorts; the leaves of both resemble those of flags, but the flowers are smaller, and their clusters more numerous; in one kind they are yellow, and in the other a deep red. Of the leaves of these plants, with very little preparation, they make all their common apparel; and of these they make also their strings, lines, and cordage for every purpose, which are so much stronger than any thing we can make with hemp, that they will not bear a comparison. From the same plant, by another preparation, they draw long slender fibres which shine like silk, and are as white as snow; of these, which are also surprizingly strong, the finer clothes are made; and of the leaves, without any other preparation than splitting them into proper breadths,
and

and tying the strips together, they make their fishing nets ; some of which, as I have before remarked, are of an enormous size.

1770.
March.

A plant, which with such advantage might be applied to so many useful and important purposes, would certainly be a great acquisition to England, where it would probably thrive with very little trouble, as it seems to be hardy, and to affect no particular soil ; being found equally in hill and valley ; in the driest mould, and the deepest bogs : the bog, however, it seems rather to prefer, as near such places we observed it to be larger than elsewhere.

I have already observed, that we found great plenty of iron sand in Mercury Bay, and therefore that iron ore is undoubtedly to be found at no great distance. As to other metals, we had scarcely knowledge enough of the country for conjecture.

If the settling of this country should ever be thought an object worthy the attention of Great Britain, the best place for establishing a colony would be either on the banks of the Thames, or in the country bordering on the Bay of Islands. In either place there would be the advantage of an excellent harbour ; and, by means of the river, settlements might be extended, and a communication established with the inland parts of the country : vessels might be built of the fine timber which abounds in these parts, at very little trouble and expence, fit for such a navigation as would answer the purpose. I cannot indeed exactly assign the depth of water which a vessel intended to navigate this river, even as far up as I went with the boat, should draw, because this depends upon the depth of water that is upon the bar, or flats, which lie before the narrow part of the river, for I had no opportunity to make myself acquainted with them ; but I am of opinion, that a vessel which should draw not more than twelve feet would perfectly answer the purpose.

When we first arrived upon the coast of this country, we imagined it to be much better peopled than we afterwards found it, concluding that the inland parts were populous from the smoke that we saw at a considerable distance from the shore ; and perhaps that
may

1770.
March.

may really be the case with respect to the country behind Poverty Bay, and the Bay of Plenty, where the inhabitants appeared to be more numerous than in other places. But we had reason to believe, that, in general, no part of the country but the sea coast is inhabited; and even there we found the people but thinly scattered, all the western coast from Cape Maria Van Diemen to Mount Egmont being totally desolate; so that upon the whole the number of inhabitants bears no proportion to the extent of country.

CHAP. IX.

A Description of the Inhabitants, their Habitations, Apparel, Ornaments, Food, Cookery, and Manner of Life.

THE stature of the men in general is equal to the largest of those in Europe: they are stout, well limbed, and fleshy; but not fat, like the lazy and luxurious inhabitants of the islands in the South Seas: they are also exceedingly vigorous and active, and have an adroitness, and manual dexterity in an uncommon degree, which are discovered in whatever they do. I have seen the strokes of fifteen paddles on a side in one of their canoes made with incredible quickness, and yet with such minute exactness of time, that all the rowers seemed to be actuated by one common soul. Their colour in general is brown; but in few deeper than that of a Spaniard, who has been exposed to the sun; in many not so deep. The women have not a feminine delicacy in their appearance, but their voice is remarkably soft; and by that, the dress of both sexes being the same, they are principally distinguished: they have, however, like the women of other countries, more airy cheerfulness, and a greater flow of animal spirits, than the other sex. Their hair, both of the head and beard, is black: and their teeth extremely regular, and as white as ivory: the features of both sexes are good; they seem to enjoy high health, and we saw many who appeared to be of a great age. The dispositions both of the men and the

women

1770.
March.

women seemed to be mild and gentle ; they treat each other with the tenderest affection, but are implacable towards their enemies, to whom, as I have before observed, they never give quarter. It may perhaps, at first, seem strange, that where there is so little to be got by victory, there should so often be war ; and that every little district of a country inhabited by people so mild and placid, should be at enmity with all the rest. But possibly more is to be gained by victory among these people than at first appears, and they may be prompted to mutual hostilities by motives which no degree of friendship or affection is able to resist. It appears, by the account that has already been given of them, that their principal food is fish, which can only be procured upon the sea-coast ; and there, in sufficient quantities, only at certain times ; the tribes, therefore, who live inland, if any such there are, and even those upon the coast, must be frequently in danger of perishing by famine. Their country produces neither sheep, nor goats, nor hogs, nor cattle ; tame fowls they have none, nor any art by which those that are wild can be caught in sufficient plenty to serve as provision. If there are any whose situation cuts them off from a supply of fish, the only succedaneum of all other animal food, except dogs, they have nothing to support life, but the vegetables that have already been mentioned, of which the chief are fern root, yams, clams, and potatoes ; when by accident these fail, the distress must be dreadful ; and even among the inhabitants of the coast, many tribes must frequently be reduced to nearly the same situation, either by the failure of their plantations, or the deficiency of their dry stock, during the season when but few fish are to be caught. These considerations will enable us to account, not only for the perpetual danger in which the people who inhabit this country appear to live, by the care which they take to fortify every village, but for the horrid practice of eating those who are killed in battle ; for the hunger of him who is pressed by famine to fight, will absorb every feeling, and every sentiment which would restrain him from allaying it with the body of his adversary. It may however be remarked, that, if this account of the origin of so horrid a practice

1770.
March.

tice is true, the mischief does by no means end with the necessity that produced it : after the practice has been once begun on one side by hunger, it will naturally be adopted on the other by revenge. Nor is this all, for though it may be pretended, by some who wish to appear speculative and philosophical, that whether the dead body of an enemy be eaten or buried, is in itself a matter perfectly indifferent ; as it is, whether the breasts and thighs of a woman should be covered or naked ; and that prejudice and habit only make us shudder at the violation of custom in one instance, and blush at it in the other : yet, leaving this as a point of doubtful disputation, to be discussed at leisure, it may safely be affirmed, that the practice of eating human flesh, whatever it may be in itself, is relatively and in its consequences, most pernicious : tending manifestly to eradicate a principle which is the chief security of human life, and more frequently restrains the hand of murder than the sense of duty, or even the fear of punishment.

Among those who are accustomed to eat the dead, death must have lost much of its horror ; and where there is little horror at the sight of death, there will not be much repugnance to kill. A sense of duty, and fear of punishment, may be more easily surmounted than the feelings of Nature, or those which have been engrafted by Nature by early prejudice and uninterrupted custom. The horror of the murderer arises less from the guilt of the fact, than its natural effect ; and he who has familiarised the effect, will consequently lose much of the horror. By our laws, and our religion, murder and theft incur the same punishment, both in this world and the next ; yet, of the multitude who would deliberately steal, there are but very few who would deliberately kill, even to procure much greater advantage. But there is the strongest reason to believe, that those who have been so accustomed to prepare a human body for a meal, that they can with as little feeling cut up a dead man, as our cook-maids divide a dead rabbit for a fricassée, would feel as little horror in committing a murder as in picking a pocket, and consequently would take away life with as little compunction as property ; so that men, under these circumstances,

circumstances, would be made murderers by the slight temptations that now make them thieves. If any man doubts whether this reasoning is conclusive, let him ask himself whether, in his own opinion, he should not be safer with a man in whom the horror of destroying life is strong, whether, in consequence of natural instinct unsubdued, or of early prejudice, which has nearly an equal influence, than in the power of a man who under any temptation to murder him would be restrained only by considerations of interest; for to these all motives of duty may be reduced, as they must terminate either in hope of good, or fear of evil.

The situation and circumstances, however, of these poor people, as well as their temper, are favourable to those who shall settle as a colony among them. Their situation sets them in need of protection, and their temper renders it easy to attach them by kindness; and whatever may be said in favour of a savage life, among people who live in luxurious idleness upon the bounty of Nature, civilization would certainly be a blessing to those whom her parsimony scarcely furnishes with the bread of life, and who are perpetually destroying each other by violence, as the only alternative of perishing by hunger.

But these people, from whatever cause, being inured to war, and by habit considering every stranger as an enemy, were always disposed to attack us when they were not intimidated by our manifest superiority. At first, they had no notion of any superiority but numbers; and when this was on their side, they considered all our expressions of kindness as the artifices of fear and cunning, to circumvent them, and preserve ourselves: but when we are once convinced of our power, after having provoked us to the use of our fire-arms, though loaded only with small shot, and of our clemency, by our forbearing to make use of weapons so dreadful except in our defence, they became at once friendly, and even affectionate, placing in us the most unbounded confidence, and doing every thing which could incite us to put equal confidence in them. It is also remarkable, that when an intercourse was once established between us, they were very

1770.
March.

very rarely detected in any act of dishonesty. Before, indeed, and while they considered us as enemies, who came upon their coast only to make an advantage of them, they did not scruple by any means to make an advantage of us; and would, therefore, when they had received the price of any thing they had offered to sell, pack up both the purchase and the purchase-money with all possible composure, as so much lawful plunder from the people who had no view but to plunder them.

I have observed that our friends in the South Seas had not even the idea of indecency, with respect to any object or any action; but this was by no means the case with the inhabitants of New Zealand, in whose carriage and conversation there was as much modest reserve and decorum with respect to actions, which yet in their opinion were not criminal, as are to be found among the politest people in Europe. The women were not impregnable; but the terms and manner of compliance were as decent as those in marriage among us, and according to their notions, the agreement was as innocent. When any of our people made an overture to any of their young women, he was given to understand that the consent of her friends was necessary, and by the influence of a proper present, it was generally obtained; but when these preliminaries are settled, it was also necessary to treat the wife for a night, with the same delicacy that is here required by the wife for life, and the lover who persisted to take any liberties by which this was violated, was sure to be disappointed.

One of our gentlemen having made his addresses to a family of the better sort, received an answer, which, translated into our language, according to the mode and spirit of it, as well as the letter, would have been exactly in these terms: "Any of these young ladies will think themselves honoured by your addresses, but you must first make me a suitable present, and you must then come and sleep with us on shore, for day-light must by no means be a witness of what passes between you."

I have already observed, that in personal cleanliness they are not quite equal to our friends at Otaheite; because,

1770.
March.

because, not having the advantage of so warm a climate, they do not so often go into the water; but the most disgusting thing about them is the oil, with which, like the Islanders, they anoint their hair: it is certainly the fat either of fish or of birds, melted down, and though the better sort have it fresh, their inferiors use that which is rancid, and consequently are almost as disagreeable to the smell as a Hottentot; neither are their heads free from vermin, though we observed that they were furnished with combs, both of bone and wood: these combs are sometimes worn stuck upright in the hair as an ornament, a fashion which at present prevails among the ladies of England. The men generally wear their beards short, and their hair tied upon the crown of the head in a bunch, in which they stick the feathers of various birds, in different manners, according to their fancies; sometimes one is placed on each side of the temples, pointing forwards, which we thought made a very disagreeable appearance. The women wear their hair sometimes cropped short, and sometimes flowing over their shoulders.

The bodies of both sexes are marked with the black stains called Amoco, by the same method that is used at Otaheite, and called Tattowing; but the men are more marked, and the women less. The women in general stain no part of their bodies but the lips, though sometimes they are marked with small black patches on other parts: the men, on the contrary, seem to add something every year to the ornaments of the last, so that some of them, who appeared to be of an advanced age, were almost covered from head to foot. Besides the Amoco, they have marks impressed by a method unknown to us, of a very extraordinary kind: they are furrows of about a line deep and a line broad, such as appear upon the bark of a tree which has been cut through, after a year's growth: the edges of these furrows are afterwards indented by the same method, and being perfectly black, they make a most frightful appearance. The faces of the old men are almost covered with these marks; those who are young, black only their lips like the women: when they are somewhat older, they have generally a black patch

1770.
March.

patch upon one cheek, and over one eye, and so proceed gradually, that they may grow old and honourable together : but though we could not but be disgusted with the horrid deformity which these stains and furrows produced in the “human face divine,” we could not but admire the dexterity and art with which they were impressed. The marks upon the face in general are spirals, which are drawn with great nicety, and even elegance, those on one side exactly corresponding with those on the other : the marks on the body somewhat resemble the foliage in old chased ornaments, and the convolutions of fillagree work ; but in these they have such a luxuriance of fancy, that of an hundred, which at first sight appeared to be exactly the same, no two were, upon a close examination, found to be alike. We observed, that the quantity and form of these marks were different in different parts of the coast, and that as the principal seat of them at Otaheite was the breech, in New Zealand it was sometimes the only part which was free, and in general was less distinguished than any other.

The skins of these people, however, are not only dyed, but painted, for as I have before observed, they smear their bodies with red oker, some rubbing it on dry, and some applying it in large patches mixed with oil, which is always wet, and which the least touch will rub off ; so that the transgressions of such of our people as were guilty of ravishing a kiss from these blooming beauties, were most legibly written upon their faces.

The dress of a New Zealander is certainly, to a stranger at first sight, the most uncouth that can be imagined. It is made of the leaves of the flax, which has been described among the vegetable productions of this country : these leaves are split into three or four slips, and the slips, when they are dry, interwoven with each other into a kind of stuff between netting and cloth, with all the ends, which are eight or nine inches long, hanging out on the upper side, like the shag or thrumb mats, which we sometimes see lying in a passage. Of this cloth, if cloth it may be called, two pieces serve for a compleat dress ; one of them is tied over their shoulders with a string, and reaches as low as the knees ; to the end of this string is fastened a bodkin of bone, which

1770.
March.

which is easily passed through any two parts of this upper garment, so as to tack them together; the other piece is wrapped round the waist, and reaches nearly to the ground: the lower garment, however, is worn by the men only upon particular occasions; but they wear a belt, to which a string is fastened, for a very singular use. The inhabitants of the South Sea islands slit up the prepuce so as to prevent it from covering the glans of the penis, but these people, on the contrary, bring the prepuce over the glans, and to prevent it from being drawn back by contraction of the part, they tie the string which hangs from the girdle round the end of it. The glans indeed seemed to be the only part of their body which they were solicitous to conceal, for they frequently threw off all their dress but the belt and string, with the most careless indifference, but shewed manifest signs of confusion, when, to gratify our curiosity, they were requested to untie the string, and never consented but with the utmost reluctance and shame. When they have only their upper garment on, and sit upon their hams, they bear some resemblance to a thatched house; but this covering, though it is ugly, is well adapted to the use of those who frequently sleep in the open air, without any other shelter from the rain.

But besides this coarse shag or thatch, they have two sorts of cloth, which have an even surface, and are very ingeniously made, in the same manner with that manufactured by the inhabitants of South America, some of which we procured at Rio-de Janeiro. One sort is as coarse as our coarsest canvas, and somewhat resembles it in the manner of laying the threads, but it is ten times as strong: the other is formed by many threads lying very close one way, and a few crossing them the other, so as to bind them together; but these are about half an inch asunder, somewhat like the round pieces of cane matting which are sometimes placed under the dishes upon a table. This is frequently striped, and always had a pretty appearance; for it is composed of the fibres of the same plant, which are prepared so as to shine like silk. It is made in a kind of frame of the size of the cloth, generally about five feet long, and four broad, across which the long threads, which lie

1770.
March.

close together, or wrap, are strained, and the cross threads, or woof, are worked in by hand, which must be a very tedious operation.

To both these kinds of cloth they work borders of different colours, in stitches, somewhat like carpeting, or rather like those used in the samplers which girls work at school. These borders are of various patterns, and wrought with a neatness, and even an elegance, which, considering they have no needle, is surprizing: but the great pride of their dress consists in the fur of their dogs, which they use with such œconomy, that they cut it into stripes, and sew them upon their cloth at a distance from each other, which is a strong proof that dogs are not plenty among them; these stripes are also of different colours, and disposed so as to produce a pleasing effect. We saw some dresses that were adorned with feathers instead of fur, but these were not common; and we saw one that was intirely covered with the red feathers of the parrot.

The dress of the man who was killed, when we first went ashore in Poverty Bay, has been described already; but we saw the same dress only once more during our stay upon the coast, and that was in Queen Charlotte's Sound.

The women, contrary to the custom of the sex in general, seemed to affect dress rather less than the men: their hair, which, as I have observed before, is generally cropt short, is never tied upon the top of the head when it is suffered to be long, nor is it ever adorned with feathers. Their garments were made of the same materials, and in the same form, as those of the other sex, but the lower one was always bound fast round them, except when they went into the water to catch lobsters, and then they took great care not to be seen by the men. Some of us happening one day to land upon a small island in Tolaga Bay, we surprized several of them at this employment; and the chaste Diana, with her nymphs, could not have discovered more confusion and distress at the sight of Actæon, than these women expressed upon our approach. Some of them hid themselves among the rocks, and the rest crouched down in the sea till they had made themselves a girdle and apron of such weeds as they could find,
and

and when they came out, even with this veil, we could perceive that their modesty suffered much pain by our presence. The girdle and apron which they wear in common have been mentioned before.

1770.
March.

Both sexes bore their ears, and by stretching them, the holes become large enough to admit a finger at least. In these holes they wear ornaments of various kinds, cloth, feathers, bones of large birds, and even sometimes a stick of wood; and to these receptacles of finery they generally applied the nails which we gave them, and every thing which it was possible they could contain. The women sometimes thrust through them the down of the albatross, which is as white as snow, and which, spreading before and behind the hole in a bunch almost as big as the fist, makes a very singular, and however strange it may be thought, not a disagreeable appearance. Besides the ornaments that are thrust thro' the holes of the ears, many others are suspended to them by strings; such as chisels or bodkins made of green talc, upon which they set a high value, the nails and teeth of their deceased relations, the teeth of dogs, and every thing else that they can get, which they think either curious or valuable. The women also wear bracelets and anklets, made of the bones of birds, shells, or any other substances which they can perforate and string upon a thread. The men had sometimes hanging to a string which went round the neck, a piece of green talc, or whalebone, somewhat in the shape of a tongue, with the rude figure of a man carved upon it; and upon this ornament they set a high value. In one instance, we saw the gristle that divides the nostrils, and called by anatomists, the *septum nasi*, perforated, and a feather thrust through the hole, which projected on each side over the cheeks: it is probable that this frightful singularity was intended as an ornament, but of the many people we saw, we never observed it in any other, nor even a perforation that might occasionally serve for such a purpose.

Their houses are the most inartificially made of any Houses. thing among them, being scarcely equal, except in size, to an English dog-kennel: they are seldom more than eighteen or twenty feet long, eight or ten broad, and

1770.
March.

five or six high, from the pole that runs from one end to the other, and forms the ridge, to the ground: the framing is of wood, generally slender sticks, and both walls and roof consist of dry grass and hay, which, it must be confessed, is very tightly put together; and some are also lined with the bark of trees, so that in cold weather they must afford a very comfortable retreat. The roof is sloping, like those of our barns, and the door is at one end, just high enough to admit a man, creeping upon his hands and knees: near the door is a square hole, which serves the double office of window and chimney, for the fire-place is at the end, nearly in the middle between the two sides: in some conspicuous part, and generally near the door, a plank is fixed, covered with carving after their manner: this they value as we do a picture, and in their estimation it is not an inferior ornament: the side walls and roof project about two feet beyond the walls at each end, so as to form a kind of porch, in which there are benches for the accommodation of the family. That part of the floor which is allotted for the fire-place, is inclosed in a hollow square, by partitions either of wood or stone, and in the middle of it the fire is kindled. The floor along the inside of the walls is thickly covered with straw, and upon this the family sleep.

Furniture. The furniture and implements consist of but few articles, and one chest commonly contains them all, except their provision-baskets, the gourds that hold their fresh water, and the hammers that are used to beat their fern-root, which generally stand without the door: some rude tools, their clothes, arms, and a few feathers to stick in their hair, make the rest of their treasure.

Some of the better sort, whose families are large, have three or four houses inclosed within a court-yard, the walls of which are constructed of poles and hay, and are about ten or twelve feet high.

When we were on shore in the district called Tolaga, we saw the ruins, or rather the frame of a house, for it had never been finished, much superior in size to any that we saw elsewhere: it was thirty feet in length, about fifteen in breadth, and twelve high: the sides of it were adorned with many carved planks, of a work-
manship

ROUND THE WORLD.

261

manfhip much fuperior to any other that we had met with in the country; but for what purpofe it was built, or why it was deferted, we could never learn.

But thefe people, though in their houfes they are fo well defended from the inclemency of the weather, feem to be quite indifferent whether they have any fhelter at all during their excursions in fearch of fern-roots and fifh, fometimes feting up a fmall ftake to windward, and fometimes altogether neglecting even that precaution, fleeping with their women and children under bufhes, with their weapons ranged round them, in the manner that has been already defcribed. The party confifting of forty or fifty, whom we faw at Mercury Bay, in a diftrict which the natives call Opoorage, never erected the leaft fhelter while we ftayed there, though it fometimes rained inceffantly for four-and-twenty hours together.

The articles of their food have been enumerated already; the principal, which to them is what bread is to the inhabitants of Europe, is the roots of fern which grows upon the hills, and is nearly the fame with what grows upon our high commons in England, and is called indifferently fern, bracken, or brakes. The birds which fometimes ferve them for a feaft, are chiefly penguins and albatrofles, with a few other fpecies that have been occasionally mentioned in this narrative.

Having no vefiel in which water can be boiled, their cookery confifts wholly of baking and roafting. They bake nearly in the fame manner as the inhabitants of the South Seas: and to the account that has been already given of their roafting, nothing need be added, but that the long fkewer, or spit, to which the flefh is faftened, is placed ftoping towards the fire, by fetting one ftone againft the bottom of it, and fupporting it near the middle with another, by the moving of which to a greater or lefs diftance from the end, the degree of obliquity is increafed or diminifhed at pleafure.

To the northward, as I have obferved, there are plantations of yams, fweet potatoes, and cocoas, but we faw no fuch to the fouthward; the inhabitants therefore of that part of the country muft fubfift wholly upon

1770.
March.

fern-root and fish, except the scanty and accidental resource which they may find in sea-fowl and dogs; and that fern and fish are not to be procured at all seasons of the year, even at the sea-side, and upon the neighbouring hills, is manifest from the stores of both that we saw laid up dry, and the reluctance which some of them expressed at selling any part of them to us when we offered to purchase them, at least the fish, for sea-stores: and this particular seems to confirm my opinion, that this country scarcely sustains the present number of its inhabitants, who are urged to perpetual hostilities by hunger, which naturally prompted them to eat the dead bodies of those who were slain in the contest.

Water is their universal and only liquor, as far as we could discover; and if they have really no means of intoxication, they are, in this particular, happy beyond any other people that we have yet seen or heard of.

As there is, perhaps, no source of disease, either critical or chronic, but intemperance and inactivity, it cannot be thought strange that these people enjoy perfect and uninterrupted health. In all our visits to their towns, where young and old, men and women, crowded about us, prompted by the same curiosity that carried us to look at them, we never saw a single person who appeared to have any bodily complaint; nor, among the numbers that we have seen naked, did we once perceive the slightest eruption upon the skin, or any marks that an eruption had left behind. At first, indeed, observing that some of them, when they came off to us, were marked in patches with a white flowery appearance upon different parts of their bodies, we thought that they were leprous, or highly scorbutic; but, upon examination, we found that these marks were owing to their having been wetted by the spray of the sea in their passage, which, when it was dried away, left the salts behind it in a fine white powder.

Another proof of health, which we have mentioned upon a former occasion, is the facility with which the wounds healed that had left scars behind them, and that we saw in a recent state; when we saw the man who had

had been shot with a musket-ball through the fleshy part of his arm, his wound seemed to be so well digested, and in so fair a way of being perfectly healed, that if I had not known that no application had been made to it, I should certainly have inquired, with a very interested curiosity, after the vulnerary herbs and surgical art of the country.

A farther proof that human nature is here untainted with disease, is the great number of old men that we saw, many of whom, by the loss of their hair and teeth, appeared to be very ancient, yet none of them were decrepit; and though not equal to the young in muscular strength, were not a whit behind them in cheerfulness and vivacity.

C H A P. X.

Of the Canoes and Navigation of the Inhabitants of New Zealand; their Tillage, Weapons, and Music; Government, Religion, and Language: With some Reasons against the Existence of a Southern Continent.

THE ingenuity of these people appears in nothing ^{Canoes.} more than in their canoes; they are long and narrow, and in shape very much resemble a New-England whale-boat; the larger sort seem to be built chiefly for war, and will carry from forty to eighty or an hundred armed men: we measured one which lay ashore at Tolaga, she was sixty-eight feet and an half long, five feet broad, and three feet and an half deep; the bottom was sharp, with straight sides like a wedge, and consisted of three lengths, hollowed out to about two inches, or an inch and an half thick, and well fastened together with strong plaiting; each side consisted of one entire plank, sixty-three feet long, ten or twelve inches broad, and about an inch and quarter thick, and these were fitted and lashed to the bottom part with great dexterity and strength. A considerable number of thwarts were laid from gunwale to gunwale, to which they were securely lashed on each side, as a strengthening to the boat. The ornament at the head projected five

1770.
March.

five or six feet beyond the body, and was about four feet and an half high; the ornament at the stern was fixed upon the end, as the stern-post of a ship is upon her keel, and was about fourteen feet high, two feet broad, and an inch and an half thick: they both consisted of boards of carved work, of which the design was much better than the execution. All their canoes, except a few at Opoorage or Mercury Bay, which were of one piece, and hollowed by fire, are built after this plan, and few are less than twenty feet long: some of the smaller sort have out-riggers, and sometimes two of them are joined together, but this is not common. The carving upon the stern and head ornaments of the inferior boats, which seem to be intended wholly for fishing, consists of the figure of a man, with a face as ugly as can be conceived, and a monstrous tongue thrust out of the mouth, with the white shells of sea-ears stuck in for the eyes. But the canoes of the superior kind *, which seem to be their men of war, are magnificently adorned with open work, and covered with loose fringes of black feathers, which had a most elegant appearance: the gunwale boards were also frequently carved in a grotesque taste, and adorned with tufts of white feathers placed upon a black ground. Of visible objects that are wholly new, no verbal description can convey a just idea, but in proportion as they resemble some that are already known, to which the mind of the reader must be referred; the carving of these people being of a singular kind, and not in the likeness of any thing that is known on our side of the ocean, either “ in the heaven above, or in the “ earth beneath, or in the waters that are under the “ earth.”

The paddles are small, light, and neatly made; the blade is of an oval shape, or rather of a shape resembling a large leaf, pointed at the bottom, broadest in the middle, and gradually losing itself in the shaft, the whole length being about six feet, of which the shaft or loom, including the handle, is four, and the blade two. By the help of these oars they push on their boats with amazing velocity.

In

* See plate, Vol. II. page 164.

1770.
March.

In sailing they are not expert, having no art of going otherwise than before the wind: the sail is of netting or mat, which is set up between two poles that are fixed upright upon each gunwale, and serve both for masts and yards: two ropes answered the purpose of sheets, and were consequently fastened above to the top of each pole. But clumsy and inconvenient as this apparatus is, they make good way before the wind, and are steered by two men who sit in the stern, with each a paddle in his hand for that purpose.

Having said thus much of their workmanship, I **Tools** shall now give some account of their tools; they have adzes, axes, and chisels, which serve them also as augurs for boring of holes: as they have no metal, their adzes and axes are made of a hard black stone, or of a green talc, which is not only hard but tough; and their chisels of human bone, or small fragments of jasper, which they chip off from a block in sharp angular pieces like a gun-flint. Their axes they value above all that they possess, and never would part with one of them for any thing that we could give: I once offered one of the best axes I had in the ship, besides a number of other things, for one of them, but the owner would not sell it; from which I conclude that good ones are scarce among them. Their small tools of jasper, which are used in finishing their nicest work, they use till they are blunt, and then, as they have no means of sharpening them, throw them away. We had given the people at Tolaga a piece of glass, and in a short time they found means to drill a hole through it, in order to hang it round the neck as an ornament by a thread; and we imagine the tool must have been a piece of this jasper. How they bring their large tools first to an edge, and sharpen the weapon which they call Patoo-Patoo, we could not certainly learn; but probably it is by bruising the same substance to powder, and with this grinding two pieces against each other.

Their nets, particularly their seine, which is of an **Nets** enormous size, have been mentioned already: one of these seems to be the joint work of a whole town, and I suppose it to be the joint property also: the other net, which is circular, and extended by two or three hoops,

1770.
March.

hoops, has been particularly described, as well as the manner of baiting and using it. Their hooks are of bone or shell, and in general are ill made. To receive the fish when it is caught, and to hold their other provisions, they have baskets of various kinds and dimensions very neatly made of wicker work.

Tillage.

They excel in tillage, as might naturally be expected where the person that sows is to eat the produce, and where there is so little besides that can be eaten: when we first came to TEGADOO, a district between Poverty Bay and East Cape, their crops were just covered, and had not yet begun to sprout; the mould was as smooth as in a garden, and every root had its small hillock, ranged in a regular quincunx by lines, which with the pegs were still remaining in the field. We had not an opportunity to see any of the husbandmen work, but we saw what serves them at once for spade and plough: this instrument is nothing more than a long narrow stake sharpened to an edge at one end, with a short piece fastened transversely at a little distance above it, for the convenience of pressing it down with the foot. With this they turn up pieces of ground six or seven acres in extent, though it is not more than three inches broad; but as the soil is light and sandy, it makes little resistance.

Tillage, weaving, and other arts of peace, seem to be best known and most practised in the northern part of this country; for there is little appearance of any of them in the south: but the arts of war flourish equally through the whole coast.

Weapons.

Of weapons they have no great variety, but such as they have are well fitted for destruction; they have spears, darts, battle-axes, and the Patoo-Patoo. The spear is fourteen or fifteen feet long, pointed at both ends, and sometimes headed with bone: these are grasped by the middle, so that the part behind balancing that before, makes a push more difficult to be parried, than that of a weapon which is held by the end. The dart and other weapons have been sufficiently described already; and it has also been remarked, that these people have neither sling nor bow. They throw the dart by hand, and so they do stones; but darts and stones are seldom used except in defending their

1770.
March.

their forts. Their battles, whether in boats or on shore, are generally hand to hand, and the slaughter must consequently be great, as a second blow with any of their weapons is unnecessary, if the first takes place: their trust, however, seems to be principally placed in the Patoo-Patoo, which is fastened to their wrists by a strong strap, lest it should be wrenched from them, and which the principal people generally wear sticking in their girdles, considering it is a military ornament, and part of their dress, like the poniard of the Asiatic, and the sword of the European. They have no defensive armour; but, besides their weapons, the Chiefs carried a staff of distinction, in the same manner as our officers do the spontoon: this was generally the rib of a whale, as white as snow, with many ornaments of carved work, dog's hair, and feathers; but sometimes it was a stick, about six feet long, adorned in the same manner, and inlaid with a shell like mother-of-pearl. Those who bore this mark of distinction were generally old, at least past the middle age, and were also more marked with the Amoco than the rest.

One or more persons, thus distinguished, always appeared in each canoe, when they came to attack us, according to the size of it. When they came within about a cable's length of the ship, they used to stop, and the Chiefs rising from their seat, put on a dress which seemed appropriated to the occasion, generally of dog's skin, and holding out their decorated staff, or a weapon, directed the rest of the people what they should do. When they were at too great a distance to reach us with a lance or a stone, they presumed that we had no weapon with which we could reach them; here then the defiance was given, and the words were almost universally the same, Haromai, haromai, harre uta a Patoo-Patoo oge: "Come to us, come on shore, and we will kill you with our Patoo-Patoos." While they were uttering these menaces they came gradually nearer and nearer, till they were close along-side; talking at intervals in a peaceable strain, and answering any questions that we asked them; and at intervals renewing their defiance and threats, till being encouraged by our apparent timidity, they began their war-song and dance, as a prelude to an attack, which always

1770.
March.

ways follows, and was sometimes continued till it became absolutely necessary to repress them by firing some small shot; and sometimes ended after throwing a few stones on board, as if content with having offered us an insult which we did not dare to revenge.

The war-dance consists of a great variety of violent motions, and hideous contortions of the limbs, during which the countenance also performs its part: the tongue is frequently thrust out to an incredible length, and the eye-lids so forcibly drawn up, that the white appears both above and below, as well as on each side of the lid, so as to form a circle round it; nor is any thing neglected that can render the human shape frightful and deformed: at the same time they brandish their spears, shake their darts, and cleave the air with their Patoo-Patoos. This horrid dance is always accompanied by a song; it is wild indeed, but not disagreeable, and every strain ends in a loud and deep sigh, which they utter in concert. In the motions of the dance, however horrid, there is a strength, firmness, and agility, which we could not but behold with admiration; and in their song they keep time with such exactness, that I have often heard above an hundred paddles struck against the sides of their boats at once, so as to produce but a single sound, at the division of their music.

A song not altogether unlike this, they sometimes sing without the dance, and as a peaceable amusement: they have also other songs which are sung by the women, whose voices are remarkably mellow and soft, and have a pleasing and tender effect; the time is slow, and the cadence mournful; but it is conducted with more taste than could be expected among the poor ignorant savages of this half desolate country; especially as it appeared to us, who were none of us much acquainted with music as a science, to be sung in parts; it was at least sung by many voices at the same time.

They have sonorous instruments, but they can scarcely be called instruments of music; one is the shell, called the Triton's trumpet, with which they make a noise not unlike that which our boys sometimes make with a cow's horn: the other is a small wooden pipe, resembling

1770.
March.

resembling a child's nine-pin, only much smaller, and in this there is no more music than in a pea-whistle. They seem sensible, indeed, that these instruments are not musical, for we never heard an attempt to sing to them, or to produce with them any measured tones that bore the least resemblance to a tune.

To what has been already said, of the practice of eating human flesh, I shall only add, that in almost every cove where we landed we found fresh bones of men, near the place where fires had been made; and that among the heads that were brought on board by the old man, some seemed to have false eyes, and ornaments in their ears, as if alive. That which Mr. Banks bought was sold with great reluctance by the possessor: the head was manifestly that of a young person, about fourteen or fifteen years of age, and by the contusions on one side appeared to have received many violent blows, and indeed a part of the bone near the eye was wanting. These appearances confirmed us in the opinion, that the natives of this country give no quarter, nor take any prisoners to be killed and eaten at a future time, as is said to have been a practice among the Indians of Florida; for if prisoners had been taken, this poor young creature, who cannot be supposed capable of making much resistance, would probably have been one, and we knew that he was killed with the rest; for the fray had happened but a few days before.

The towns, or Hippahs, of these people, which are all fortified, have been sufficiently described already, and from the Bay of Plenty to Queen Charlotte's Sound, they seem to be the constant residence of the people; but above Poverty Bay, Hawke's Bay, Tega-doo, and Tolaga, we saw no Hippahs, but single houses scattered at a distance from each other; yet upon the sides of the hills there were stages of a great length, furnished with stones and darts, probably as retreats for the people at the last extremity, as upon these stages a fight may be carried on with much advantage against those below, who may be reached with great effect by darts and stones, which it is impossible for them to throw up with equal force. And indeed the forts themselves seem to be no farther serviceable, than

1770.
March.

than by enabling the possessors to repel a sudden attack; for as there is no supply of water within the lines, it would be impossible to sustain a siege. A considerable stock of fern-root and dry fish is indeed laid up in them, but they may be reserved against seasons of scarcity, and that such seasons there are, our observations left us no room to doubt; besides, while an enemy should be prowling in the neighbourhood, it would be easy to snatch a supply of water from the side of the hill, though it would be impossible to dig up fern-root or catch fish.

In this district, however, the people seemed to live in a state of conscious security, and to avail themselves of their advantage: their plantations were more numerous, their canoes were more decorated, and they had not only finer carving, but finer clothes. This part of the coast also was much the most populous, and possibly their apparent peace and plenty might arise from their being united under one Chief, or King; for the inhabitants of all this part of the country told us, that they were the subjects of Teratu. When they pointed to the residence of this Prince, it was in a direction which we thought inland, but which, when we knew the country better, we found to be the Bay of Plenty.

Government.

It is much to be regretted, that we were obliged to leave this country without knowing any thing of Teratu by his name. As an Indian monarch, his territory is certainly extensive; he was acknowledged from Cape Kidnappers to the northward, and westward as far as the Bay of Plenty, a length of coast upwards of eighty leagues; and we do not yet know how much farther westward his dominions may extend: possibly the fortified towns which we saw in the Bay of Plenty may be his barrier, especially as at Mercury Bay he was not acknowledged, nor indeed any other single Chief; for wherever we landed, or spoke with the people upon that coast, they told us that we were at but a small distance from their enemies.

In the dominions of Teratu we saw several subordinate Chiefs, to whom great respect was paid, and by whom justice was probably administered; for upon our complaint to one of them, of a theft that had been committed

committed on board the ship by a man that came with him, he gave him several blows and kicks, which the other received as the chastisement of authority, against which no resistance was to be made, and which he had no right to resent. Whether this authority was possessed by appointment or inheritance we could not learn; but we observed that the Chiefs, as well here as in other parts, were elderly men. In other parts, however, we learned that they possessed their authority by inheritance.

1770.
March.

The little societies which we found in the southern parts seemed to have several things in common, particularly their fine clothes and fishing nets. Their fine clothes, which possibly might be the spoils of war, were kept in a small hut, which was erected for that purpose in the middle of the town: the nets we saw making in almost every house, and the several parts being afterwards collected were joined together. Less account seems to be made of the women here than in the South Sea islands; such at least was the opinion of Tupia, who complained of it as an indignity to the sex. We observed that the two sexes eat together; but how they divide their labour we do not certainly know. I am inclined to believe that the men till the ground, make nets, catch birds, and go out in their boats to fish; and that the women dig up fern roots, collect lobsters and other shell fish near the beach, dress the victuals, and weave cloth: such at least were their employments when we had an opportunity of observing them, which was but seldom; for in general our appearance made a holiday wherever we went, men, women and children flocking round us, either to gratify their curiosity, or to purchase some of the valuable merchandize which we carried about with us, consisting principally of nails, paper, and broken glass.

Of the religion of these people it cannot be supposed that we could learn much; they acknowledge the influence of superior beings, one of whom is supreme, and the rest subordinate; and gave nearly the same account of the origin of the world, and the production of mankind, as our friends in Otaheite: Tupia, however, seemed to have a much more deep and extensive knowledge of these subjects than any of the people here;

Religion.

1770.
March.

here; and whenever he was disposed to instruct them, which he sometimes did in a long discourse, he was sure of a numerous audience, who listened in profound silence, with such reverence and attention, that we could not but wish them a better teacher.

What homage they pay to the deities they acknowledge we could not learn; but we saw no place of public worship, like the Morais of the South Sea Islands; yet we saw, near a plantation of sweet potatoes, a small area, of a square figure, surrounded with stones, in the middle of which one of the sharpened stakes which they use as a spade was set up, and upon it was hung a basket of fern roots: upon inquiry, the natives told us, that it was an offering to the gods, by which the owner hoped to render them propitious, and obtain a plentiful crop.

Dead.

As to their manner of disposing of their dead, we could form no certain opinion of it, for the accounts that we received by no means agreed. In the northern parts, they told us that they buried them in the ground; and in the southern, that they threw them into the sea: it is however certain that we saw no grave in the country, and that they affected to conceal every thing relating to their dead with a kind of mysterious secrecy. But whatever may be the sepulchre, the living are themselves the monuments; for we saw scarcely a single person of either sex whose body was not marked by the scars of wounds which they had inflicted upon themselves as a testimony of their regret for the loss of a relation or friend: some of these wounds we saw in a state so recent, that the blood was scarcely staunch, which shews that death had been among them while we were upon the coast; and makes it more extraordinary that no funeral ceremony should have fallen under our notice: some of the scars were very large and deep, and in many instances had greatly disfigured the face. One monument indeed was observed of another kind, the cross that was set up near Queen Charlotte's Sound.

Having now given the best account in my power of the customs and opinions of the inhabitants of New Zealand, with their boats, nets, furniture, and dress, I shall only remark, that the similitude between these particu-

1770.
March.

particulars here and in the South Sea islands is a very strong proof that the inhabitants have the same origin; and that the common ancestors of both, were natives of the same country. They have both a tradition that their ancestors, at a very remote period of time, came from another country; and, according to the tradition of both, that the name of that country was HEAWIJE; but the similitude of the language seems to put the matter altogether out of doubt. I have already observed, that Tupia, when he accosted the people here in the language of his own country, was perfectly understood; and I shall give a specimen of the similitude, by a list of words in both languages, according to the dialect of the northern and southern islands of which New Zealand consists, by which it will appear that the language of Otaheite does not differ more from that of New Zealand, than the language of the two islands from each other.

ENGLISH.	NEW ZEALAND.		OTAHEITE.
	<i>Northern.</i>	<i>Southern.</i>	
<i>A Chief,</i>	Eareete,	Eareete,	Earee.
<i>A man,</i>	Taata,	Taata,	Taata.
<i>A woman,</i>	Whahine,	Whahine,	Ivahine.
<i>The head,</i>	Eupo,	Heaowpoho,	Eupo.
<i>The hair,</i>	Macauwe,	Heoo-oo,	Roourou.
<i>The ear,</i>	Terringa,	Hetaheyei,	Terrea.
<i>The forehead,</i>	Erai,	Heai,	Erai.
<i>The eyes,</i>	Mata,	Hemata,	Mata.
<i>The cheeks,</i>	Paparinga,	Hepapaeh,	Paparea.
<i>The nose,</i>	Ahewh,	Heeh,	Ahew.
<i>The mouth,</i>	Hangoutou,	Hegaowai,	Outou.
<i>The chin,</i>	Ecouwai,	Hakaoewai,	
<i>The arm,</i>	Haringaringu,		Rema.
<i>The finger,</i>	Maticara,	Hermaigawh,	Maneow.
<i>The belly,</i>	Ateraboo,		Oboo.
<i>The navel,</i>	Apeto,	Heeapeto,	Peto.
<i>Come hither,</i>	Haromai,	Heromai,	Harromai.
<i>Fish,</i>	Heica,	Heica,	Eyca.
<i>A lobster,</i>	Kooura,	Kooura,	Tooura.
<i>Cocoas,</i>	Taro,	Taro,	Taro.
<i>Sweet potatoes,</i>	Cumala,	Cumala,	Cumala.
<i>Yams,</i>	Tuphwhe,	Tuphwhe,	Tuphwhe.
VOL. II.		T	<i>Birds,</i>

1770. March.	<i>Birds,</i>	Mannu,	Mannu,	Mannu.
	<i>No,</i>	Kaoura,	Kaoura,	Oure.
	<i>One,</i>	Tahai,		Tahai.
	<i>Two,</i>	Rua,		Rua.
	<i>Three,</i>	Torou,		Torou.
	<i>Four,</i>	Ha,		Hea.
	<i>Five,</i>	Rema,		Rema.
	<i>Six,</i>	Ono,		Ono.
	<i>Seven,</i>	Etu,		Hetu.
	<i>Eight,</i>	Warou,		Warou.
	<i>Nine,</i>	Iva,		Heva.
	<i>Ten,</i>	Angahourou,		Ahourou.
	<i>The testb,</i>	Hennihew,	Heneaho,	Nihio.
	<i>The wind,</i>	Mehow,		Mattai.
	<i>A thief,</i>	Amootoo,		Teto.
	<i>To examine,</i>	Mataketake,		Mataitai.
	<i>To sing,</i>	Eheara,		Heiva.
	<i>Bad,</i>	Keno,	Keno,	Eno.
	<i>Trees,</i>	Eratou,	Eratou,	Eraou.
	<i>Grandfather,</i>	Toubouna,	Toubouna,	Toubouna.
	<i>What do you</i>	} Owy Terra,		Owy Terra.
	<i>call this or</i>			
	<i>that,</i>			

By this specimen, I think, it appears to demonstration that the language of New Zealand and Otaheite is radically the same. The language of the northern and southern parts of New Zealand differs chiefly in the pronunciation, as the same English word is pronounced *gate* in Middlesex, and *geate* in Yorkshire: and as the southern and northern words were not written down by the same person, one might possibly use more letters to produce the same sound than the other.

I must also observe, that it is the genius of the language, especially in the southern parts, to put some article before a noun, as we do *the* or *a*; the articles used here are generally *be* or *ko*: it is also common here to add the word *oria* after another word, as an iteration, especially if it is an answer to a question; as we say *yes indeed, to be sure, really, certainly*: this sometimes led our gentlemen into the formation of words of an enormous length, judging by the ear only, without being able.

able to refer each sound into its signification. An example will make this perfectly understood.

1770.
March.

In the Bay of Islands there is a remarkable one, called by the natives MATU ARO. One of our gentlemen having asked a native the name of it, he answered, with the particle, Kematuario; the gentleman hearing the sound imperfectly, repeated his question, and the Indian repeating his answer, added öeia, which made the word Kematuarioöeia; and thus it happened that in the log book I found Matuario transformed into Cumettiwarroweia: and the same transformation, by the same means, might happen to an English word. Suppose a native of New Zealand at Hackney church, to inquire, "What village is this?" The answer would be, "It is Hackney." Suppose the question to be repeated with an air of doubt and uncertainty, the answer might be, "It is Hackney indeed;" and the New Zealander, if he had the use of letters, would probably record, for the information of his countrymen, that during his residence among us he had visited a village called "Ityshakneeindede." The article used by the inhabitants of the South Sea islands, instead of *be* or *ko*, is *to* or *ta*, but the word *oeia* is common to both; and when we began to learn the language, it led us into many ridiculous mistakes.

But supposing these islands, and those in the South Seas, to have been peopled originally from the same country, it will perhaps for ever remain a doubt what country that is: we were, however, unanimously of opinion, that the people did not come from America, which lies to the eastward; and except there should appear to be a continent to the southward, in a moderate latitude, it will follow that they came from the westward.

Thus far our navigation has certainly been unfavourable to the notion of a southern continent, for it has swept away at least three-fourths of the positions upon which it has been founded. The principal navigators, whose authority has been urged on this occasion, are Tasman, Juan Fernandes, Hermite, the commander of a Dutch Squadron, Quiros, and Roggewein; and the track of the Endeavour has demonstrated that the land seen by these persons, and supposed to be part of a continent,

1770.
March.

continent, is not so; it has also totally subverted the theoretical arguments which have been brought to prove that the existence of a southern continent is necessary to preserve an equilibrium between the two hemispheres; for upon this principle what we have already proved to be water, would render the southern hemisphere too light. In our route to the northward, after doubling Cape Horn, when we were in the latitude of 40° , our longitude was 110° ; and in our return to the southward, after leaving Ulietea, when we were again in latitude 40° , our longitude was 145° ; the difference is 35° . When we were in latitude 30° , the difference of longitude between the two tracks was 21° , which continued till we were as low as 20° ; but a single view of the chart will convey a better idea of this than the most minute description: yet as upon a view of the chart it will appear that there is a large space extending quite to the Tropics, which neither we, nor any other navigators to our knowledge have explored, and as there will appear to be room enough for the cape of a southern continent to extend northward into a low southern latitude, I shall give my reasons for believing there is no cape, of any southern continent, to the northward of 40° S.

Notwithstanding what has been laid down by some geographers in their maps, and alledged by Mr. Dalrymple, with respect to Quiros, it is improbable in the highest degree that he saw to the southward of two islands, which he discovered in latitude 25 or 26, and which I suppose may lie between the longitude of 130° and 140° W. any signs of a continent, much less any thing which, in his opinion, was a known or indubitable sign of such land; for if he had, he would certainly have sailed southward in search of it, and if he had sought supposing the signs to have been indubitable, he must have found: the discovery of a southern continent was the ultimate object of Quiros's voyage, and no man appears to have had it more at heart; so that if he was in latitude 26° S. and in longitude 146° W. where Mr. Dalrymple has placed the islands he discovered, it may fairly be inferred that no part of a southern continent extends to that latitude.

It

I have given my reasons for thinking that there is no continent to the northward of latitude 40° S. Of what may lie farther to the southward than 40° I can give no opinion; but I am so far from wishing to discourage any future attempt, finally to determine a

As to myself, I am thinking that I should like to go to land, in my next voyage to the South Sea, either eastward or westward, a few days before I shall be within sight of New Zealand. I am much frequented by great flocks of birds, but they were generally seen at a very remote distance from any coast, and I am so sure that I frequently saw pieces of ice, that I can not infer the vicinity of land from this, because I have been informed, upon indisputable authority, that a considerable quantity of the beans called *Oleas*, which are known to grow no where but in the West Indies, are every year thrown upon the coast of Ireland, which is not less than twelve hundred leagues distant.

Thus have I given my reasons for thinking that there is no continent to the northward of latitude 40° S. Of what may lie farther to the southward than 40° I can give no opinion; but I am so far from wishing to discourage any future attempt, finally to determine a

1770.
March.

question, which has long been an object of attention to many nations, that now this voyage has reduced the only possible scite of a continent in the southern hemisphere, north of latitude 40° , to so small a space, I think it would be pity to leave that any longer unexamined, especially as the voyage may turn to good account, besides determining the principal question, if no continent should be found, by the discovery of new islands in the tropical regions, of which there is probably a great number, that no European vessel has ever yet visited. Tupia from time to time gave us an account of about one hundred and thirty, and in a chart drawn by his own hand, he actually laid down no less than seventy-four.

AN
ACCOUNT
OF A
VOYAGE round the WORLD.

BOOK III.

CHAP. I.

The Run from New Zealand to Botany Bay, on the East Coast of New Holland, now called New South Wales. Various Incidents that happened there. With some Account of the Country and its Inhabitants.

HAVING sailed from Cape Farewell, which lies in latitude $40^{\circ} 33'$ S. longitude 186° W. on Saturday the 31st of March, 1770, we steered westward, with a fresh gale at N. N. E. and at noon, on the 2d of April, our latitude, by observation, was 40° , our longitude from Cape Farewell $2^{\circ} 31'$ W. 1770.
March.
Saturd 31.
April.
Monday 2.

In the morning of the 9th, being in latitude $38^{\circ} 29'$ S. we saw a tropic bird, which in so high a latitude is very uncommon. Monday 9.

In the morning of the 10th, being in latitude $38^{\circ} 51'$ S. longitude $202^{\circ} 43'$ W. we found the variation, by the amplitude, to be $11^{\circ} 25'$ E. and by the azimuth $11^{\circ} 20'$. Tuesd. 10.

In the morning of the 11th, the variation was $13^{\circ} 48'$, which is two degrees and an half more than the day before, though I expected to have found it less. Wedn. 11.

1770.
April.

- In the course of the 13th, being in latitude $39^{\circ} 23' S.$ longitude $204^{\circ} 2' W.$ I found the variation to be $12^{\circ} 27' E.$ and in the morning of the 14th it was $11^{\circ} 30'.$
- Friday 13. This day we also saw some flying-fish. On the 15th we
- Saturd. 14. saw an egg-bird and a gannet; and as these are birds that never go far from the land, we continued to sound all night, but had no ground with 130 fathoms. At
- Sunday 15. noon, on the 16th, we were in latitude $39^{\circ} 45' S.$ longitude $208^{\circ} W.$ At about two o'clock the wind came about to the W. S. W. upon which we tacked and stood to the N. W. soon after a small land-bird perched upon the rigging, but we had no ground with 120 fathoms. At eight we wore and stood to the southward till twelve at night, and then wore and stood to the
- Monday 16. N. W. till four in the morning, when we again stood to the southward, having a fresh gale at W. S. W. with squalls and dark weather till nine, when the weather became clear, and there being little wind, we had an opportunity to take several observations of the sun and moon, the mean result of which gave $207^{\circ} 56' W.$ longitude; our latitude at noon was $39^{\circ} 36' S.$ We had now a hard gale from the southward, and a great sea from the same quarter, which obliged us to run under our fore-sail and mizen all night, during which we sounded every two hours, but had no ground with 120 fathoms.
- Tuesday 17. In the morning of the 18th we saw two Port Egmont hens, and a pintado bird, which are certain signs of approaching land, and indeed, by our reckoning, we could not be far from it, for our longitude was now one degree to the westward of the east side of Van Diemen's land, according to the longitude laid down by Tasman, whom we could not suppose to have erred much in so short a run as from this land to New Zealand; and by our latitude we could not be above fifty or fifty-five leagues from the place whence he took his departure. All this day we had frequent squalls and a great swell.
- Wednesday 18. At one in the morning we brought to and sounded, but had no ground with 130 fathoms. At six we saw land extending from N. E. to W. at the distance of five or six leagues, having eighty fathoms water, with a fine sandy bottom.
- Thursd. 19.

We

1770.
April.

We continued standing westward, with the wind at S. S. W. till eight, when we made all the sail we could, and bore away along the shore N. E. for the easternmost land in sight, being at this time in latitude $37^{\circ} 58'$ S. and longitude $210^{\circ} 39'$ W. The southernmost point of land in sight, which bore from us W. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. I judged to lie in latitude 38° , longitude $211^{\circ} 7'$, and gave it the name of POINT HICKS, because Mr. Hicks, the First Lieutenant, was the first who discovered it. To the southward of this Point no land was to be seen, though it was very clear in that quarter, and by our longitude, compared with that of Tasman, not as it is laid down in the printed charts, but in the extracts from Tasman's journal, published by Rembrantse, the body of Van Diemen's land ought to have borne due south: and indeed, from the sudden falling of the sea, after the wind abated, I had reason to think it did; yet as I did not see it, and as I found this coast trend N. E. and S. W. or rather more to the eastward, I cannot determine whether it joins to Van Diemen's land or not.

At noon we were in latitude $37^{\circ} 50'$, longitude $210^{\circ} 29'$ W. The extremes of the land extended from N. W. to E. N. E. and a remarkable point before N. 20 E. at the distance of about four leagues. This point rises in a round hillock, very much resembling the Ram Head at the entrance of Plymouth Sound, and therefore I called it by the same name. The variation by an azimuth, taken this morning, was $3^{\circ} 7'$ E. and what we had now seen of the land appeared low and level; the sea-shore was a white sand, but the country within was green and woody. About one o'clock we saw three water-spouts at once, two were between us and the shore, and the third at some distance, upon our larboard quarter: this phænomenon is so well known, that it is not necessary to give a particular description of it here.

At six o'clock in the evening we shortened sail, and brought to for the night, having fifty-six fathoms water, and a fine sandy bottom. The northernmost land in sight then bore N. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and a small island lying close to a point on the main bore W. distant two leagues. This point, which I called CAPE HOWE,
may

1770.
April.

may be known by the trending of the coast, which is north on the one side, and south-west on the other; it may also be known by some round hills upon the main, just within it.

Friday 20.

We brought to for the night, and at four in the morning made sail along shore to the northward. At six, the northermost land in sight bore N. N. W. and we were at this time about four leagues from the shore. At noon we were in latitude $36^{\circ} 51'$ S. longitude $209^{\circ} 53'$ W. and about three leagues distant from the shore. The weather being clear, gave us a good view of the country, which has a very pleasing appearance: it is of a moderate height, diversified by hills and vallies, ridges and plains, interspersed with a few lawns of no great extent, but in general covered with wood; the ascent of the hills and ridges is gentle, and the summits are not high. We continued to sail along the shore to the northward, with a southerly wind, and in the afternoon we saw smoke in several places, by which we knew the country to be inhabited. At six in the evening we shortened sail and sounded; we found forty-four fathoms water, with a clear sandy bottom, and stood on under an easy sail till twelve, when we brought to for the night, and had ninety fathoms water.

Saturd. 21.

At four in the morning we made sail again, at the distance of about five leagues from the land, and at six we were a-breast of a high mountain, lying near the shore, which, on account of its figure, I called MOUNT DROMEDARY; under this mountain the shore forms a point, to which I gave the name of POINT DROMEDARY, and over it there is a peaked hillock. At this time, being in latitude $36^{\circ} 18'$ S. longitude $209^{\circ} 55'$ W. we found the variation to be $10^{\circ} 42'$ E.

Between ten and eleven, Mr. Green and I took several observations of the sun and moon, the mean result of which gave $209^{\circ} 17'$ longitude W. By an observation made the day before, our longitude was $210^{\circ} 9'$ W. from which $20'$ being subtracted, there remained $209^{\circ} 49'$, the longitude of the ship this day at noon; the mean of which, with this day's observation, give $209^{\circ} 33'$, by which I fix the longitude of this coast. At noon our latitude was $35^{\circ} 49'$ S. Cape Dromedary bore

1770.
April.

bore S. 30 W. at the distance of twelve leagues, and an open bay, in which were three or four small islands, bore N. W. by W. at the distance of five or six leagues. This bay seemed to afford but little shelter from the sea winds, and yet it is the only place where there appeared a probability of finding anchorage upon the whole coast. We continued to steer along the shore N. by E. and N. N. E. at the distance of about three leagues, and saw smoke in many places near the beach. At five in the evening we were a-breast of a point of land which rose in a perpendicular cliff, and which, for that reason, I called POINT UPRIGHT. Our latitude was $35^{\circ} 35'$ S. when this Point bore from us due west, distant about two leagues. In this situation we had about thirty-one fathoms water, with a sandy bottom. At six in the evening, the wind falling, we hauled off E. N. E. and at this time the northermost land in sight bore N. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At midnight, being in seventy fathoms water, we brought to till four in the morning, when we made sail in for the land: but at day-break found our situation nearly the same as it had been at five the evening before, by which it was apparent, that we had been driven about three leagues to the southward, by a tide or current, during the night. After this we steered along the shore N. N. E. with a gentle breeze at S. W. and were so near the land as to distinguish several of the natives upon the beach, who appeared to be of a black or very dark colour. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was $35^{\circ} 27'$ S. and longitude $209^{\circ} 23'$ W. Cape Dromedary bore S. 28 W. distant nineteen leagues, a remarkable peaked hill, which resembled a square dove-house, with a dome at the top, and which, for that reason, I called the PIGEON-HOUSE, bore N. $32^{\circ} 30'$ W. and a small low island, which lay close under the shore, bore N. W. distant about two or three leagues. When I first discovered this island, in the morning, I was in hopes, from its appearance, that I should have found shelter for the ship behind it, but when we came near it, it did not promise security even for the landing of a boat: I should, however, have attempted to send a boat on shore, if the wind had not veered to that direction, with a large hollow sea

Sunday 22.

1770.
April.

sea rolling in upon the land from the S. E. which indeed had been the case ever since we had been upon it. The coast still continued to be of a moderate height, forming alternately rocky points and sandy beaches; but within, between Mount Dromedary and the Pigeon-House, we saw high mountains, which, except two, are covered with wood; these two lie inland behind the Pigeon-House, and are remarkably flat at the top, with steep rocky cliffs all round them, as far as we could see. The trees, which almost every where clothe this country, appear to be large and lofty. This day the variation was found to be $9^{\circ} 50'$ E. and, for the two last days, the latitude, by observation, was twelve or fourteen miles to the southward of the ship's account, which could have been the effect of nothing but a current setting in that direction. About four in the afternoon, being near five leagues from the land, we tacked and stood off S. E. and E. and the wind having veered in the night from E. to N. E. and N. we tacked about four in the morning, and stood in, being then about nine or ten leagues from the shore. At eight the wind began to die away, and soon after it was calm. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $35^{\circ} 38'$, and our distance from the land about six leagues. Cape Dromedary bore S. 37° W. distant seventeen leagues, and the Pigeon-House N. 40° W. in this situation we had seventy-four fathoms water. In the afternoon we had variable light airs and calms till six in the evening, when a breeze sprung up at N. by W. At this time, being about four or five leagues from the shore, we had seventy fathoms water. The Pigeon-House bore N. 45° W. Mount Dromedary S. 30° W. and the northernmost land in sight N. 19° E.

Tuesday 24.

We stood to the north-east till noon the next day, with a gentle breeze at N. W. and then we tacked and stood westward. At this time our latitude, by observation, was $35^{\circ} 10'$ S. and longitude $208^{\circ} 51'$ W. A point of land which I had discovered on St. George's Day, and which therefore I called CAPE GEORGE, bore W. distant nineteen miles, and the Pigeon-House (the latitude and longitude of which I found to be $35^{\circ} 19'$ S. and $209^{\circ} 42'$ W.) S. 75° W. In the morning we had

1770.
April.

had found the variation, by amplitude, to be $7^{\circ} 50'$ E. and by several azimuths $7^{\circ} 54'$ E. We had a fresh breeze at N. W. from noon till three; it then came to the west, when we tacked and stood to the northward. At five in the evening, being about five or six leagues from the shore, with the Pigeon-house bearing W. S. W. distant about nine leagues, we had eighty-six fathoms water; and at eight having thunder and lightning, with heavy squalls, we brought to in 120 fathoms.

At three in the morning, we made sail again to the northward, having the advantage of a fresh gale at S. W. At noon, we were about three or four leagues from the shore, and in latitude $34^{\circ} 22'$ S. longitude $208^{\circ} 36'$ W. In the course of this day's run from the preceding noon, which was forty-five miles north-east, we saw smoke in several places near the beach. About two leagues to the northward of Cape George, the shore seemed to form a bay, which promised shelter from the north-east winds; but as the wind was with us, it was not in my power to look into it without beating up, which would have cost me more time than I was willing to spare. The north point of this bay, on account of its figure, I named LONG NOSE; its latitude $35^{\circ} 6'$, and about eight leagues north of it there lies a point, which, from the colour of the land about it, I called RED POINT: its latitude is $34^{\circ} 29'$, and longitude $208^{\circ} 45'$ W. To the north-west of Red Point, and a little way inland, stands a round hill, the top of which looks like the crown of a hat. In the afternoon of this day, we had a light breeze at N. N. W. till five in the evening, when it fell calm: at this time, we were between three and four leagues from the shore, and had forty-eight fathoms water: the variation by azimuth was $8^{\circ} 48'$ E. and the extremities of this land were from N. E. by N. to S. W. by S. Before it was dark, we saw smoke in several places along the shore, and a fire two or three times afterwards. During the night we lay becalmed, driving in before the sea till one in the morning, when we got a breeze from the land, with which we steered N. E. being in thirty-eight fathoms. At noon it veered to N. E. by N. and we were then in latitude $34^{\circ} 10'$ S. longitude 208°

Wedn. 25.

Thursd. 26.

1770.
April.

208° 27' W. the land was distant about five leagues, and extended from S. 37 W. to N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. In this latitude, there are some white cliffs, which rise perpendicularly from the sea to a considerable height. We stood off the shore till two o'clock, and then tacked and stood in till six, when we were within four or five miles of it, and at that distance had fifty fathoms water. The extremities of the land bore from S. 28 W. to N. 25° 30' E. We now tacked and stood off till twelve, then

Friday 27. tacked and stood in again till four in the morning, when we made a trip off till day-light; and during all this time we lost ground, owing to the variableness of the winds. We continued at the distance of between four and five miles from the shore, till the afternoon, when we came within two miles, and I then hoisted out the pinnace and yawl, to attempt a landing; but the pinnace proved to be so leaky, that I was obliged to hoist her in again. At this time we saw several of the natives walking briskly along the shore, four of whom carried a small canoe upon their shoulders: we flattered ourselves that they were going to put her into the water, and come off to the ship; but finding ourselves disappointed, I determined to go on shore in the yawl, with as many as it would carry: I embarked, therefore, with only Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia and four rowers: we pulled for that part of the shore where the Indians appeared, near which four small canoes were lying at the water's edge. The Indians sat down upon the rocks, and seemed to wait for our landing; but to our great regret, when we came within about a quarter of a mile, they ran away into the woods: we determined however to go ashore, and endeavour to procure an interview, but in this we were again disappointed, for we found so great a surf beating upon every part of the beach, that landing with our little boat was altogether impracticable: we were therefore obliged to be content with gazing at such objects as presented themselves from the water: the canoes, upon a nearer view, seemed very much to resemble those of the smaller sort at New Zealand. We observed, that among the trees on shore, which were not very large, there was no underwood; and could distinguish that many of them were of the palm kind,
and

1770.
April.

and some of them cabbage-trees: after many a wishful look we were obliged to return, with our curiosity rather excited than satisfied, and about five in the evening got on board the ship. About this time it fell calm, and our situation was by no means agreeable: we were now not more than a mile and a half from the shore, and within some breakers, which lay to the southward, but happily a light breeze came off the land, and carried us out of danger: with this breeze we stood to the northward, and at day-break we discovered a bay, which seemed to be well sheltered from all winds, and into which therefore I determined to go with the ship. The pinnace being repaired, I sent her, with the Master, to sound the entrance, while I kept turning up, having the wind right out. At noon, the mouth of the bay bore N. N. W. distant about a mile, and seeing a smoke on the shore, we directed our glasses to the spot, and soon discovered ten people, who, upon our nearer approach, left the fire, and retired to a little eminence, whence they could conveniently observe our motions. Soon after two canoes, each having two men on board, came to the shore just under the eminence, and the men joined the rest on the top of it. The pinnace, which had been sent a-head to sound, now approached the place; upon which all the Indians retired farther up the hill, except one, who hid himself among some rocks near the landing-place. As the pinnace proceeded along the shore, most of the people took the same route, and kept a-breast of her at a distance; when she came back, the Master told us, that in a cove a little within the harbour, some of them had come down to the beach, and invited him to land by many signs and words of which he knew not the meaning; but that all of them were armed with long pikes and a wooden weapon shaped somewhat like a cimeter. The Indians who had not followed the boat, seeing the ship approach, used many threatening gestures, and brandished their weapons; particularly two, who made a very singular appearance, for their faces seemed to have been dusted with a white powder, and their bodies painted with broad streaks of the same colour, which passing obliquely over their breasts and backs, looked not unlike the cross-belts worn by

1770.
April.

by our soldiers ; the same kind of streaks were also drawn round their legs and thighs like broad garters : each of these men held in his hand the weapon that had been described to us as like a cimeter, which appeared to be about two feet and a half long, and they seemed to talk to each other with great earnestness.

We continued to stand into the bay, and early in the afternoon anchored under the south shore, about two miles within the entrance, in six fathoms water, the south point bearing S. E. and the north point E. As we came in we saw, on both points of the bay, a few huts, and several of the natives, men, women, and children. Under the south head we saw four small canoes, with each one man on board, who were very busily employed in striking fish with a long pike or spear : they ventured almost into the surf, and were so intent upon what they were doing, that although the ship passed within a quarter of a mile of them, they scarcely turned their eyes towards her ; possibly being deafened by the surf, and their attention wholly fixed upon their business or sport, they neither saw nor heard her go past them.

The place where the ship had anchored was a-breast of a small village, consisting of about six or eight houses ; and while we were preparing to hoist out the boat, we saw an old woman, followed by three children, come out of the wood ; she was loaded with fire-wood, and each of the children had also its little burden. When she came to the houses three more children, younger than the others, came out to meet her ; she often looked at the ship, but expressed neither fear nor surprise ; in a short time she kindled a fire, and the four canoes came in from fishing. The men landed, and having hauled up their boats, began to dress their dinner, to all appearance, wholly unconcerned about us, though we were within half a mile of them. We thought it remarkable, that of all the people we had yet seen, not one had the least appearance of clothing, the old woman herself being destitute even of a fig-leaf.

After dinner the boats were manned, and we set out from the ship, having Tupia of our party. We intended to land where we saw the people, and began to hope, that as they had so little regarded the ship's coming

1770.
April.

coming into the bay, they would as little regard our coming on shore; in this, however, we were disappointed, for as soon as we approached the rocks, two of the men came down upon them to dispute our landing, and the rest ran away. Each of the two champions was armed with a lance about ten feet long, and a short stick, which he seemed to handle as if it was a machine to assist him in managing or throwing the lance. They called to us in a very loud tone, and in a harsh dissonant language, of which neither we nor Tupia understood a single word: they brandished their weapons, and seemed resolved to defend their coast to the uttermost, though they were but two, and we were forty. I could not but admire their courage, and being very unwilling that hostilities should commence with such inequality of force between us, I ordered the boat to lie upon her oars: we then parlied by signs for about a quarter of an hour, and, to bespeak their goodwill, I threw them nails, beads, and other trifles, which they took up, and seemed to be well pleased with. I then made signs that I wanted water, and, by all the means that I could devise, endeavoured to convince them that we would do them no harm. They now waved to us, and I was willing to interpret it as an invitation; but upon our putting the boat in, they came again to oppose us. One appeared to be a youth about nineteen or twenty, and the other a man of middle age: as I had now no other resource, I fired a musquet between them. Upon the report, the youngest dropped a bundle of lances upon the rock, but, recollecting himself, in an instant he snatched them up again with great haste. A stone was then thrown at us, upon which I ordered a musquet to be fired with small shot, which struck the eldest upon the legs, and he immediately ran to one of the houses, which was distant about an hundred yards. I now hoped that our contest was over, and we immediately landed; but we had scarcely left the boat when he returned, and we then perceived, that he had left the rock only to fetch a shield or target for his defence. As soon as he came up, he threw a lance at us, and his comrade another; they fell where we stood thickest, but happily hurt nobody. A third musquet with small-shot was then fired at them,

1770.
April.

upon which one of them threw another lance, and both immediately ran away: If we had pursued, we might probably have taken one of them; but Mr. Banks suggesting that the lances might be poisoned, I thought it not prudent to venture into the woods. We repaired immediately to the huts, into one of which we found the children, who had hidden themselves behind a shield and some bark; we peeped at them, but left them in their retreat, without their knowing that they had been discovered, and we threw into the house, when we went away, some beads, ribands, pieces of cloth, and other presents, which we hoped would procure us the goodwill of the inhabitants when they should return; but the lances which we found lying about we took away with us, to the number of about fifty; they were from six to seven feet long, and all of them had four prongs, in the manner of a fish-gig, each of which was pointed with fish-bone, and very sharp: we observed that they were smeared with a viscous substance of a green colour, which favoured the opinion of their being poisoned, though we afterwards discovered that it was a mistake; they appeared, by the sea-weed that we found sticking to them, to have been used in striking fish. Upon examining the canoes that lay upon the beach, we found them to be the worst we had ever seen; they were between twelve and fourteen feet long, and made of the bark of a tree, in one piece, which was drawn together and tied up at each end, the middle being kept open by sticks, which were placed across them from gunwale to gunwale, as thwarts. We then searched for fresh water, but found none, except in a small hole which had been dug in the sand.

Having re embarked in our boat, we deposited our lances on board the ship, and then went over to the north point of the bay, where we had seen several of the inhabitants when we were entering it, but which we now found totally deserted. Here, however, we found fresh water, which trickled down from the top of the rocks, and stood in pools among the hollows at the bottom; but it was situated so, as not be procured for our use without difficulty.

In

In the morning, therefore, I sent a party of men to that part of the shore where we first landed, with orders to dig holes in the sand, where the water might gather; but going a-shore myself with the gentlemen soon afterwards, we found, upon a more diligent search, a small stream, more than sufficient for our purpose.

1770.
April.

Sunday 29.

Upon visiting the hut where we had seen the children, we were greatly mortified to find that the beads and ribands, which we had left there the night before, had not been moved from their places, and that not an Indian was to be seen.

Having sent some empty water-casks on shore, and left a party of men to cut wood, I went myself in the pinnace to sound, and examine the bay; during my excursion I saw several of the natives, but they all fled at my approach. In one of the places where I landed I found several small fires, and fresh muscles broiling upon them; here also I found some of the largest oyster-shells I had ever seen.

As soon as the wooders and waterers came on board to dinner, ten or twelve of the natives came down to the place, and looked with great attention and curiosity at the casks, but did not touch them; they took away, however, the canoes which lay near the landing-place, and again disappeared. In the afternoon, when our people were again a-shore, sixteen or eighteen Indians, all armed, came boldly within about an hundred yards of them, and then stopped: two of them advanced somewhat nearer; and Mr. Hicks, who commanded the party on shore, with another, advanced to meet them, holding out presents to them as he approached, and expressing kindness and amity by every sign he could think of, but all without effect; for before he could get up with them they retired, and it would have answered no purpose to pursue. In the evening I went with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to a sandy cove on the north side of the bay, where, in three or four hauls with the seine, we took above three hundred weight of fish, which was equally divided among the ship's company.

The next morning, before day-break, the Indians came down to the houses that were a-breast of the ship,

Monday 30.

1770.
April.

and were heard frequently to shout very loud. As soon as it was light they were seen walking along the beach, and soon after they retired to the woods, where, at the distance of about a mile from the shore, they kindled several fires.

Our people went a-shore as usual, and with them Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, who, in search of plants, repaired to the woods. Our men, who were employed in cutting grass, being the farthest removed from the main body of the people, a company of fourteen or fifteen Indians advanced towards them, having sticks in their hands, which, according to the report of the Serjeant of the marines, shone like a musquet. The grass-cutters, upon seeing them approach, drew together, and repaired to the main body. The Indians, being encouraged by this appearance of a flight, pursued them; they stopped, however, when they were within about a furlong of them, and after shouting several times went back into the woods. In the evening they came again in the same manner, stopped at the same distance, shouted, and retired. I followed them myself, alone and unarmed, for a considerable way along the shore, but I could not prevail upon them to stop.

This day Mr. Green took the sun's meridian altitude, a little within the south entrance of the bay, which gave the latitude 34° S. the variation of the needle was $11^{\circ} 3'$ E.

May.
Tuesday 1.

Early the next morning the body of Forby Sutherland, one of our seamen, who died the evening before, was buried near the watering-place, and from this incident I called the south point of this bay SUTHERLAND POINT. This day we resolved to make an excursion into the country. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, myself, and seven others, properly accoutred for the expedition, set out, and repaired first to the huts near the watering-place, whither some of the natives continued every day to resort; and though the little presents which we had left there before had not yet been taken away, we left others of somewhat more value, consisting of cloth, looking-glasses, combs, and beads, and then went up into the country. We found the soil
to

to be either swamp or light sand, and the face of the country finely diversified by wood and lawn. The trees are tall, straight, and without underwood, standing at such a distance from each other, that the whole country, at least where the swamps do not render it incapable of cultivation, might be cultivated without cutting down one of them: between the trees the ground is covered with grass, of which there is great abundance, growing in tufts about as big as can well be grasped in the hand, which stand very close to each other. We saw many houses of the inhabitants, and places where they had slept upon the grass without any shelter; but we saw only one of the people, who the moment he discovered us ran away. At all these places we left presents, hoping that at length they might produce confidence and good-will. We had a transient and imperfect view of a quadruped about as big as a rabbit: Mr. Banks's greyhound, which was with us, got sight of it, and would probably have caught it, but the moment he set off he lamed himself, against a stump which lay concealed in the long grass. We afterwards saw the dung of an animal which fed upon grass, and which we judged could not be less than a deer; and the footsteps of another, which was clawed like a dog, and seemed to be about as big as a wolf: we also tracked a small animal, whose foot resembled that of a polecat or weasel. The trees over our heads abounded with birds of various kinds, among which were many of exquisite beauty, particularly loriquets and cockatoos, which flew in flocks of several scores together. We found some wood which had been felled by the natives with a blunt instrument, and some that had been barked. The trees were not of many species; among others there was a large one, which yielded a gum not unlike the *sanguis draconis*; and in some of them steps had been cut, at about three feet distance from each other, for the convenience of climbing them.

From this excursion we returned between three and four o'clock, and having dined on board, we went ashore again at the watering-place, where a party of men were filling casks. Mr. Gore, the Second Lieutenant, had been sent out in the morning with a boat, to dredge for oysters at the head of the bay; when he

1770.
May.

had performed this service, he went a-shore, and having taken a midshipman with him, and sent the boat away, set out to join the waterers by land. In his way he fell in with a body of two-and-twenty Indians, who followed him, and were often not more than twenty yards distant; when Mr. Gore perceived them so near, he stopped, and faced about, upon which they stopped also; and when he went on again, continued their pursuit: they did not, however, attack him, though they were all armed with lances, and he and the midshipman got in safety to the watering-place. The Indians, who had slackened their pursuit when they came in sight of the main body of our people, halted at about the distance of a quarter of a mile, where they stood still. Mr. Monkhouse, and two or three of the waterers, took it in their heads to march up to them; but seeing the Indians keep their ground till they came pretty near them, they were seized with a sudden fear, very common to the rash and fool-hardy, and made a hasty retreat. This step, which insured the danger that it was taken to avoid, encouraged the Indians, and four of them running forward discharged their lances at the fugitives with such force, that, flying no less than forty yards, they went beyond them. As the Indians did not pursue, our people, recovering their spirits, stopped to collect the lances, when they came up to the place where they lay; upon which the Indians, in their turn, began to retire. Just at this time I came up, with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia; and being desirous to convince the Indians that we were neither afraid of them, nor intended them any mischief, we advanced towards them, making signs of expostulation and entreaty, but they could not be persuaded to wait till we could come up. Mr. Gore told us, that he had seen some of them up the bay, who had invited him by signs to come on shore, which he, certainly with great prudence, declined.

Wednesd. 1. The morning of the next day was so rainy, that we were all glad to stay on board. In the afternoon, however, it cleared up, and we made another excursion along the sea-coast to the southward. We went a-shore, and Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander gathered many plants; but

1770.
May.

but besides these we saw nothing worthy of notice. At our first entering the woods, we met with three of the natives, who instantly ran away; more of them were seen by some of the people, but they all disappeared, with great precipitation, as soon as they found that they were discovered. By the boldness of these people at our first landing, and the terror that seized them at the sight of us afterwards, it appears that they were sufficiently intimidated by our fire-arms; not that we had any reason to think the people much hurt by the small-shot which we were obliged to fire at them, when they attacked us at our coming out of the boat; but they had probably seen the effects of them, from their lurking places, upon the birds that we had shot. Tupia, who was now become a good marksman, frequently strayed from us to shoot parrots, and he told us, that, while he was thus employed, he had once met with nine Indians, who, as soon as they perceived he saw them, ran from him in great confusion and terror.

The next day twelve canoes, in each of which was Thursday 3. a single Indian, came towards the watering-place, and were within half a mile of it a considerable time; they were employed in striking fish, upon which, like others that we had seen before, they were so intent that they seemed to regard nothing else. It happened, however, that a party of our people were out a shooting near the place, and one of the men, whose curiosity might at length perhaps be roused, by the report of the fowling-pieces, was observed by Mr. Banks to haul up his canoe upon the beach, and go towards the shooting party; in something more than a quarter of an hour he returned, launched his canoe, and went off in her to his companions. This incident makes it probable, that the natives acquired a knowledge of the destructive power of our fire-arms, when we knew nothing of the matter; for this man was not seen by any of the party whose operations he had reconnoitred.

While Mr. Banks was gathering plants near the watering-place, I went with Dr. Solander and Mr. Monkhouse to the head of the bay, that I might examine that part of the country, and make farther attempts to form some connection with the natives. In

1770.
May.

our way we met with eleven or twelve small canoes, with each a man in it, probably the same that were afterwards a-breast of the shore, who all made into shoal water upon our approach. We met other Indians on shore the first time we landed, who instantly took to their canoes, and paddled away. We went up the country to some distance, and found the face of it nearly the same with that which has been described already, but the soil was much richer; for instead of sand, I found a deep black mould, which I thought very fit for the production of grain of any kind. In the woods we found a tree which bore fruit, that in colour and shape resembled a cherry; the juice had an agreeable tartness, though but little flavour. We found also interspersed some of the finest meadows in the world; some places, however, were rocky, but these were comparatively few: the stone is sandy, and might be used with advantage for building. When we returned to the boat, we saw some smoke upon another part of the coast, and went thither in hopes of meeting with the people, but at our approach these also ran away. We found six small canoes, and six fires very near the beach, with some muscles roasting upon them, and a few oysters lying near; by this we judged that there had been one man in each canoe, who having picked up some shell-fish had come a-shore to eat it, and made his separate fire for that purpose. We tasted of their cheer, and left them in return some strings of beads, and other things which we thought would please them. At the foot of a tree in this place we found a small well of fresh water, supplied by a spring, and the day being now far spent we returned to the ship. In the evening Mr. Banks made a little excursion with his gun, and found such a number of quails, resembling those in England, that he might have shot as many as he pleased; but his object was variety, and not number.

Friday 4.

The next morning, as the wind would not permit me to sail, I sent several parties into the country, to try again whether some intercourse could not be established with the natives. A midshipman, who belonged to one of these parties, having straggled a long way from his companions, met with a very old man
and

1770.
May.

and woman, and some little children ; they were sitting under a tree by the water side, and neither party saw the other till they were close together ; the Indians shewed signs of fear, but did not attempt to run away. The man happened to have nothing to give them but a parrot that he had shot ; this he offered, but they refused to accept it, withdrawing themselves from his hand either through fear or aversion. His stay with them was but short, for he saw several canoes near the beach fishing, and being alone, he feared they might come a-shore and attack him : he said, that these people were very dark coloured, but not black ; that the man and woman appeared to be very old, being both grey-headed ; that the hair of the man's head was bushy, and his beard long and rough ; that the woman's hair was cropped short, and both of them were stark naked. Mr. Monkhouse the Surgeon, and one of the men, who were with another party near the watering-place, also strayed from their companions, and as they were coming out of a thicket observed six Indians standing together, at the distance of about fifty yards. One of them pronounced a word very loud, which was supposed to be a signal, for a lance was immediately thrown at him out of the wood, which very narrowly missed him. When the Indians saw that the weapon had not taken effect, they ran away with the greatest precipitation ; but on turning about towards the place whence the lance had been thrown, he saw a young Indian, whom he judged to be about nineteen or twenty years old, come down from a tree, and he also ran away with such speed as made it hopeless to follow him. Mr. Monkhouse was of opinion that he had been watched by these Indians in his passage through the thicket, and that the youth had been stationed in the tree, to discharge the lance at him, upon a signal as he should come by ; but however this be, there could be no doubt but that he was the person who threw the lance.

In the afternoon, I went myself with a party over to the north shore, and while some of our people were hauling the seine, we made an excursion a few miles into the country, proceeding afterwards in the direction of the coast. We found this place without wood, and some-

1770.
May.

somewhat resembling our moors in England; the surface of the ground, however, was covered with a thin brush of plants, about as high as the knees: the hills near the coast are low, but others rise behind them, increasing by a gradual ascent to a considerable distance, with marthes and morasses between. When we returned to the boat, we found that our people had caught with the seine a great number of small fish, which are well known in the West-Indies, and which our sailors call Leather-jackets, because their skin is remarkably thick. I had sent the second Lieutenant out in the yawl a striking, and when we got back to the ship, we found that he also had been very successful. He had observed that the large sting-rays, of which there is great plenty in the bay, followed the flowing tide into very shallow water; he therefore took the opportunity of flood, and struck several in not more than two or three feet water: one of them weighed no less than two hundred and forty pounds after his entrails were taken out.

The next morning, as the wind continued northerly I sent out the yawl again, and the people struck one still larger, for when his entrails were taken out he weighed three hundred and thirty-six pounds.

The great quantity of plants which Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander collected in this place induced me to give it the name of BOTANY BAY. It is situated in the latitude of 34° S. longitude $208^{\circ} 37'$ W. It is capacious, safe, and convenient, and may be known by the land on the sea-coast, which is nearly level, and of a moderate height; in general higher than it is farther inland, with steep rocky cliffs next the sea, which have the appearance of a long island lying close under the shore. The harbour lies about the middle of this land, and in approaching it from the southward, is discovered before the ship comes a-breast of it; but from the northward it is not discovered so soon: the entrance is a little more than a quarter of a mile broad, and lies in W. N. W. To sail into it the southern shore should be kept on board, till the ship is within a small bare island, which lies close under the north shore; within this island the deepest water on
that

that side is seven fathoms, shallowing to five a good way up. At a considerable distance from the south shore there is a shoal, reaching from the inner south point quite to the head of the harbour; but over towards the north and north-west shore, there is a channel of twelve or fourteen feet at low water, for three or four leagues, up to a place where there is three or four fathoms, but here I found very little fresh water. We anchored near the south shore, about a mile within the entrance, for the convenience of sailing with a southerly wind, and because I thought it the best situation for watering: but I afterwards found a very fine stream on the north shore, in the first sandy cove within the island, before which a ship might lie almost land-locked, and procure wood as well as water in great abundance. Wood indeed is every where plenty, but I saw only two kinds which may be considered as timber. These trees are as large, or larger than the English oak, and one of them has not a very different appearance: this is the same that yields the reddish gum like *sanguis draconis*, and the wood is heavy, hard, and dark-coloured, like *lignum vitæ*; the other grows tall and strait, something like the pine; and the wood of this, which has some resemblance to the live oak of America, is also hard and heavy. There are a few shrubs, and several kinds of the palm; mangroves also grow in great plenty near the head of the bay. The country in general is level, low, and woody, as far as we could see. The woods, as I have before observed, abound with birds of exquisite beauty, particularly of the parrot kind; we found also crows here, exactly the same with those in England. About the head of the harbour, where there are large flats of sand and mud, there is great plenty of water-fowl, most of which were altogether unknown to us: one of the most remarkable was black and white, much larger than a swan, and in shape somewhat resembling a pelican. On these banks of sand and mud there are great quantities of oysters, muscles, cockles, and other shell-fish, which seem to be the principal subsistence of the inhabitants, who go into shoal water with their little canoes, and pick them out with their hands. We did not observe that they eat any of them raw, nor do they
always

1770.
May.

always go on shore to dress them, for they have frequently fires in their canoes for that purpose. They do not however subsist wholly upon this food, for they catch a variety of other fish, some of which they strike with gigs, and some they take with hook and line. All the inhabitants that we saw were stark naked: they did not appear to be numerous, nor to live in societies, but like other animals were scattered about along the coast, and in the woods. Of their manner of life, however, we could know but little, as we were never able to form the least connection with them: after the first contest at our landing, they would never come near enough to parley; nor did they touch a single article of all that we had left at their huts, and the places they frequented, on purpose for them to take away.

During my stay in this harbour, I caused the English colours to be displayed on shore every day and the ship's name, and the date of the year, to be inscribed upon one of the trees near the watering-place.

It is high-water here at the full and change of the moon about eight o'clock, and the tide rises and falls perpendicularly between four and five feet.

C H A P. IV.

The Range from Botany Bay to Trinity Bay; with a farther Account of the Country, its Inhabitants and Productions.

Sunday 6.

AT day-break, on Sunday the 6th of May 1770, we set sail from Botany Bay, with a light breeze at N. W. which soon after coming to the southward, we steered along the shore N. N. E. and at noon our latitude, by observation, was $33^{\circ} 50'$ S. At this time we were between two and three miles distant from the land, and a-breast of a bay, or harbour, in which there appeared to be good anchorage, and which I called **PORT JACKSON**. This harbour lies three leagues to the northward of Botany Bay: the variation, by several azimuths, appeared to be 8° E. At sun-set the northernmost land in sight bore N. 26° E. and some broken land, that seemed to form a bay, bore N. 40° W. distant four leagues. This bay, which lies in latitude $33^{\circ} 42'$, I called
BROKEN

BROKEN BAY. We steered along the shore N. N. E. all night, at the distance of about three leagues from the land, having from thirty-two to thirty-six fathoms water, with a hard sandy bottom.

1770.
May.

Soon after sun-rise on the 7th, I took several azimuths, with four needles belonging to the azimuth compass, the mean result of which gave the variation $7^{\circ} 56'$ E. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $33^{\circ} 22'$ S. We were about three leagues from the shore; the northernmost land in sight bore N. 19 E. and some lands which projected in three bluff points, and which, for that reason, I called **CAPE THREE POINTS**, bore S. W. distant five leagues. Our longitude from Botany Bay was 19' E.. In the afternoon, we saw smoke in several places upon the shore, and in the evening, found the variation to be $8^{\circ} 25'$ E. At this time we were between two and three miles from the shore, in twenty-eight fathoms; and at noon the next day, we had not advanced one step to the northward. We stood off shore, with the wind northerly, till twelve at night, and at the distance of about five leagues, had seventy fathoms; at the distance of six leagues we had eighty fathoms, which is the extent of the soundings; for at the distance of ten leagues, we had no ground with 150 fathoms.

Mond. 7.
Tuesd. 8.

The wind continuing northerly, till the morning of the 10th, we continued to stand in and off the shore, with very little change of situation in other respects; but a gale then springing up at S. W. we made the best of our way along the shore to the northward. At sun-rise, our latitude was $33^{\circ} 2'$ S. and the variation 8° E. At nine in the forenoon, we passed a remarkable hill, which stood a little way inland, and somewhat resembled the crown of a hat: and at noon, our latitude, by observation, was $32^{\circ} 53'$ S. and our longitude 208° W. We were about two leagues distant from the land, which extended from N. 41 E. to S. 41 W. and a small round rock, or island, which lay close under the land, bore S. 82° W. distant between three and four leagues. At four in the afternoon, we passed, at the distance of about a mile, a low rocky point, which I called **POINT STEPHENS**, on the north side of which is an inlet, which I called **PORT STEPHENS**: this inlet appeared to me,

me,

1770.
May.

Friday 11.

me, from the mast head, to be sheltered from all winds. It lies in latitude $33^{\circ} 40'$, longitude $207^{\circ} 51'$, and at the entrance are three small islands, two of which are high; and on the main near the shore are some high round hills, which at a distance appear like islands. In passing this bay, at the distance of two or three miles from the shore, our soundings were from thirty-three to twenty-seven fathoms, from which I conjectured that there must be a sufficient depth of water within it. At a little distance within land we saw smoke in several places; and at half an hour past five, the northernmost land in sight bore N. 36° E. and Point Stephens S. W. distant four leagues. Our soundings in the night, were from forty-eight to sixty-two fathoms, at the distance of between three and four leagues from the shore, which made in two hillocks. This Point I called **CAPE HAWKE**: it lies in the latitude of $32^{\circ} 14'$ S. longitude: $207^{\circ} 30'$ W. and at four o'clock in the morning bore W. distant about eight miles; at the same time the northernmost land in sight bore N. 6° E. and appeared like an island. At noon, this land bore N. 8° E. the northernmost land in sight N. 13° E. and Cape Hawke S. 37° W. Our latitude, by observation, was $32^{\circ} 2'$ S. which was twelve miles to the southward of that given by the log; so that probably we had a current setting that way: by the morning amplitude and azimuth the variation was $9^{\circ} 10'$ E. During our run along the shore, in the afternoon, we saw fires in several places, at a little distance from the beach, and one upon the top of a hill, which was the first we had seen upon elevated ground since our arrival upon the coast. At sunset, we had twenty-three fathoms, at the distance of a league and an half from the shore: the northernmost land then bore N. 13° E. and three hills, remarkably large and high, lying contiguous to each other, and not far from the beach, N. N. W. As these hills bore some resemblance to each other, we called them the **THREE BROTHERS**. They lie in latitude $31^{\circ} 40'$, and may be seen fourteen or sixteen leagues. We steered N. E. by N. all night, having from twenty-seven to sixty-seven fathoms, at the distance of between two and six leagues from the shore.

At

At day-break we steered north, for the northernmost land in sight. At noon, we were four leagues from the shore, and, by observation, in latitude $31^{\circ} 18' S.$ which was fifteen miles to the southward of that given by the log; our longitude $206^{\circ} 58' W.$ In the afternoon we stood in for the land, where we saw smoke in several places, till six in the evening, when, being within three or four miles of it, and in twenty-four fathoms of water, we stood off with a fresh breeze at N. and N. N. W. till midnight, when we had 118 fathoms, at the distance of eight leagues from the land, and then tacked. At three in the morning the wind veered to the westward, when we tacked and stood to the northward. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $30^{\circ} 43' S.$ and our longitude $206^{\circ} 45' W.$ At this time we were between three and four leagues from the shore, the northernmost part of which bore from us N. 13 W. and a point, or head land, on which we saw fires that produced a great quantity of smoke, bore W. distant four leagues. To this point I gave the name of **SMOKEY CAPE**: it is of a considerable height, and over the pitch of the point is a round hillock; within it are two others, much higher and larger, and within them the land is very low. Our latitude was $30^{\circ} 31' S.$ longitude $206^{\circ} 54' W.$ this day the observed latitude was only five miles south of the log. We saw smoke in several parts along the coast, besides that seen upon Smokey Cape.

1770.
May.
Saturd. 12.

Sund. 13.

In the afternoon, the wind being at N. E. we stood off and on, and at three or four miles distance from the shore had thirty fathoms water: the wind afterwards coming cross off land, we stood to the northward, having from thirty to twenty-one fathoms, at the distance of four or five miles from the shore.

At five in the morning the wind veered to the north, and blew fresh, attended with squalls: at eight it began to thunder and rain, and in about an hour it fell calm, which gave us an opportunity to sound, and we had eighty-six fathoms at between four and five leagues from the shore: soon after this we had a gale from the southward, with which we steered N. by W. for the northernmost land in sight. At noon, we were about four leagues from the shore, and by observation in latitude

30°

Mond. 24.

1770.
May.

30° 22' which was nine miles to the southward of our reckoning, longitude 206° 39' W. Some lands near the shore, of a considerable height, bore W.

As we advanced to the northward, from Botany Bay, the land gradually increased in height, so that in this latitude it may be called a hilly country. Between this latitude and the Bay, it exhibits a pleasing variety of ridges, hills, vallies, and plains, all clothed with wood, of the same appearance with that which has been particularly described: the land near the shore is in general low and sandy, except the points, which are rocky, and over many of them are high hills, which, at their first rising out of the water, have the appearance of islands. In the afternoon we had some small rocky islands between us and the land, the southernmost of which lies in latitude 30° 10', and the northernmost 29° 58', and somewhat more than two leagues from the land: about two miles without the northernmost island we had thirty-three fathoms water. Having the advantage of a moon, we steered along the shore all night, in the direction of N. and N. by E. keeping at the distance of about three leagues from the land, and having from twenty to twenty-five fathoms water. As soon as it was light, having a fresh gale, we made

Tuesday 15. all the sail we could, and at nine o'clock in the morning, being about a league from the shore, we discovered smoke in many places, and having recourse to our glassess, we saw about twenty of the natives, who had each a large bundle upon his back, which we conjectured to be palm leaves for covering their houses: we continued to observe them above an hour, during which they walked upon the beach, and up a path that led over a hill of a gentle ascent, behind which we lost sight of them: not one of them was observed to stop and look towards us, but they trudged along, to all appearance, without the least emotion either of curiosity or surprize; though it is impossible they should not have seen the ship by a casual glance as they walked along the shore, and though she must, with respect to every other object they had yet seen, have been little less stupendous and unaccountable than a floating mountain with all its woods would have been to us.

At

1770.
May.

At noon our latitude, by observation, was $28^{\circ} 39'$ S. and longitude $206^{\circ} 27'$ W. A high point of land, which I named CAPE BYRON, bore N. W. by W. at the distance of three miles. It lies in latitude $28^{\circ} 37' 30''$ S. longitude $206^{\circ} 30'$ W. and may be known by a remarkable sharp peaked mountain, which lies inland, and bears from it N. W. by W. From this point, the land trends N. 13. W. inland it is high and hilly, but low near the shore; to the southward of the point it is also low and level. We continued to steer along the shore with a fresh gale, till sun-set, when we suddenly discovered breakers a-head, directly in the ship's course, and also on our larboard bow. At this time we were about five miles from the land, and had twenty fathoms water: we hauled up east till eight, when we had run eight miles, and increased our depth of water to forty-four fathoms: we then brought to, with the ship's head to the eastward, and lay upon this tack till ten, when having increased our sounding to seventy-eight fathoms, we wore, and lay with the ship's head to the land till five in the morning, when we made sail, and at day-
light were greatly surprized to find ourselves farther to the southward, than we had been the evening before, though the wind had been southerly, and blown fresh all night: we now saw the breakers again within us, and passed them at the distance of one league. They lie in latitude $28^{\circ} 8'$ S. stretching off east two leagues from a point of land, under which is a small island. Their situation may always be known by the peaked mountain which has been just mentioned, and which bears from them S. W. by W. for this reason I have named it MOUNT WARNING. It lies seven or eight leagues inland, in latitude $28^{\circ} 22'$ S. The land about it is high and hilly, but it is of itself sufficiently conspicuous to be at once distinguished from every other object. The point off which these shoals lie, I have named POINT DANGER. To the northward of this point the land is low, and trends N. W. by N. but it soon turns again more to the northward.

Wed. 16

At noon we were about two leagues from the land, and by observation, in latitude $27^{\circ} 46'$ S. which was seventeen miles to the southward of the log; our lon-

1770.
May.

gitude was $206^{\circ} 26'$ W. Mount Warning bore S. 26° W. distant fourteen leagues, and the northernmost land in sight bore N. We pursued our course along the shore, at the distance of about two leagues, in the direction of N. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. till between four and five in the afternoon, when we discovered breakers on our larboard bow. Our depth of water was thirty-seven fathoms, and at sun-set the northernmost land bore N. by W. the breakers N. W. by W. distant four miles, and the northernmost land set at noon, which formed a point, and to which I gave the name of POINT LOOK-OUT, W. distant four miles, in the latitude of $27^{\circ} 6'$. On the north side of this Point the shore forms a wide open bay, which I called MORETON'S BAY, in the bottom of which the land is so low that I could but just see it from the top-mast head. The breakers lie between three and four miles from Point Look-out; and at this time we had a great sea from the southward, which broke upon them very high. We stood on N. N. E. till eight o'clock, when having passed the breakers, and deepened our water to fifty-two fathoms, we brought to till midnight when we made sail again to the N. N. E.

Thurs. 17. At four in the morning we had 135 fathoms, and when the day broke, I perceived that during the night I had got much farther northward, and from the shore, than I expected from the course we steered, for we were distant at least seven leagues; I therefore hauled in N. W. by W. with a fresh gale at S. S. W. The land that was farthest to the north the night before, now bore S. S. W. distant about six leagues, and I gave it the name of CAPE MORETON, it being the north point of Moreton's Bay: its latitude is $26^{\circ} 56'$ and its longitude is $206^{\circ} 28'$. From Cape Moreton the land trends away west, farther than can be seen, for there is a small space, where at this time no land is visible, and some on board having also observed that the sea looked paler than usual, were of opinion that the bottom of Moreton's Bay opened into a river: we had here thirty-four fathoms water, and a fine sandy bottom: this alone would have produced the change that had been observed in the colour of the water; and it was by no means necessary to suppose a river to account for the land at the bottom of the Bay not being visible; for supposing the land there

1770.
May.

there to be as low as we knew it to be in a hundred other parts of the coast, it would have been impossible to see it from the station of the ship; however, if any future navigator should be disposed to determine the question, whether there is or is not a river in this place, which the wind would not permit us to do, the situation may always be found by three hills which lie to the northward of it, in the latitude of $26^{\circ} 53'$. These hills lie but a little inland, and not far from each other: they are remarkable for the singular form of their elevation, which very much resembles a glass-house, and for which reason I called them the GLASS HOUSES: the northernmost of the three is the highest and largest: there are also several other peaked hills inland to the northward of these, but they are not nearly so remarkable. At noon our latitude was, by observation, $26^{\circ} 28'$ S. which was ten miles to the northward of the log, a circumstance which had never before happened upon this coast; our longitude was $206^{\circ} 46'$. At this time we were between two and three leagues from the land, and had twenty-four fathoms water. A low bluff point, which was the south head of a sandy bay, bore N. 62 W. distant three leagues, and the northernmost point of land in sight bore N. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. This day we saw smoke in several places, and some at a considerable distance inland.

In steering along the shore at the distance of two leagues, our soundings were from twenty-four to thirty-two fathoms, with a sandy bottom. At six in the evening, the northernmost point of land bore N. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. distant four leagues; at ten it bore N. W. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and as we had seen no land to the northward of it, we brought to, not well knowing which way to steer.

At two in the morning, however, we made sail with Friday 18. the wind at S. W. and at day-light we saw the land extending as far as N. $\frac{3}{4}$ E. the point we had set the night before S. W. by W. distant between three and four leagues. It lies in latitude $25^{\circ} 58'$, longitude $206^{\circ} 48'$ W. the land within it is of a moderate and equal height, but the point itself is so unequal, that it looks like two small islands lying under the land, for which reason I gave it the name of DOUBLE ISLAND POINT; it may also be known by the white cliffs on the north side of it. Here the land trends to the N. W. and

1770.
May.

forms a large open bay, the bottom of which is so low a flat, that from the deck it could scarcely be seen. In crossing this bay, our depth of water was from thirty to twenty-two fathoms, with a white sandy bottom. At noon we were about three leagues from the shore, in latitude $25^{\circ} 34'$ S. longitude $206^{\circ} 45'$ W. Double Island Point bore S. $\frac{3}{4}$ W. and the northernmost land in sight N. $\frac{3}{4}$ E. This part of the coast, which is of a moderate height, is more barren than any we had seen, and the soil more sandy. With our glasses we could discover that the sands, which lay in great patches of many acres; were moveable, and that some of them had not been long in the place they possessed; for we saw, in several parts, trees half buried, the tops of which were still green; and in others, the naked trunks of such as the sand had surrounded long enough to destroy. In other places the woods appeared to be low and shrubby, and we saw no signs of inhabitants. Two water snakes swam by the ship; they were beautifully spotted, and in every respect like land snakes, except that their tails were broad and flat, probably to serve them instead of fins in swimming. In the morning of this day the variation was $8^{\circ} 20'$ E. and in the evening $8^{\circ} 36'$. During the night we continued our course to the northward, with a light breeze from the land, being distant from it between two and three leagues, and having from twenty-three to twenty-seven fathoms, with a fine sandy bottom.

Saturd. 19.

At noon on the 19th, we were about four miles from the land, with only thirteen fathoms. Our latitude was $25^{\circ} 4'$, and the northernmost land in sight bore N. 21° W. distant eight miles. At one o'clock, being still four miles distant from the shore, but having seventeen fathoms water, we passed a black bluff head, or point of land, upon which a great number of the natives were assembled, and which therefore I called INDIAN HEAD: it lies in latitude $25^{\circ} 3'$. About four miles N. by W. of this Head, is another very like it, from whence the land trends away somewhat more to the westward: next to the sea it is low and sandy, and behind it nothing was to be seen, even from the mast-head.

1770.
May.

head. Near Indian Head we saw more of the natives, and upon the neighbouring shore fires by night, and smoke by day. We kept to the northward all night, at the distance of from four miles to four leagues from the shore, and with a depth of water from seventeen to thirty-four fathoms. At day-break, the northern-
most land bore from us W. S. W. and seemed to end in a point, from which we discovered a reef running out to the northward, as far as we could see. We had hauled our wind to the westward before it was light, and continued the course till we saw the breakers upon our lee bow. We now edged away N. W. and N. N. W. along the east side of the shoal, from two to one mile distant, having regular soundings from thirteen to seven fathoms, with a fine sandy bottom. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $20^{\circ} 26'$, which was thirteen miles to the northward of the log. We judged the extreme point of the shoal to bear from us about N. W. and the point from which it seemed to run out bore S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant twenty miles. This point I named SANDY CAPE, from two very large patches of white sand which lay upon it. It is sufficiently high to be seen at the distance of twelve leagues, in clear weather, and lies in latitude $24^{\circ} 45'$, longitude $206^{\circ} 51'$; the land trends from it S. W. as far as can be seen. We kept along the east side of the shoal till two in the afternoon, when, judging that there was a sufficient depth of water upon it to allow passage for the ship, I sent the boat a-head to sound, and upon her making the signal for more than five fathoms, we hauled our wind, and stood over the tail of it, in six fathoms. At this time we were in latitude $24^{\circ} 22'$, and Sandy Cove bore S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant eight leagues; but the direction of the shoal is nearest N. N. W. and S. S. E. It is remarkable, that when on board the ship we had six fathoms, the boat, which was scarcely a quarter of a mile to the southward, had little more than five, and that immediately after six fathoms we had thirteen, and then twenty, as fast as the man could cast the lead; from these circumstances, I conjectured that the west side of the shoal was steep. This shoal I called the BREAK SEA SPIT, because we had now smooth water, and to the southward of it we had always a high sea from the

Sunday 20.

1770.
May.

Monday 21.

S. E. At six in the evening the land of Sandy Cape extended from S. 17 E. to S. 27 E. at the distance of eight leagues; our depth of water was twenty-three fathoms; with the same soundings we stood to the westward all night. At seven in the morning we saw, from the mast-head, the land of Sandy Cape bearing S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant about thirteen leagues. At nine we discovered land to the westward, and soon after saw smoke in several places. Our depth of water was now decreased to seventeen fathoms, and by noon we had no more than thirteen, though we were seven leagues from the land, which extended from S. by W. to W. N. W. Our latitude at this time was $24^{\circ} 28'$ S. For a few days past we had seen several of the sea birds called boobies, not having met with any of them before. Last night a small flock of them passed the ship, and went away to the N. W. and in the morning, from about half an hour before sun-rise, to half an hour after, flights of them were continually coming from the N. N. W. and flying to the S. S. E. nor was one of them seen to fly in any other direction; we therefore conjectured that there was a lagoon, river, or inlet of shallow water, in the bottom of the deep bay, to the southward of us, whither these birds resorted to feed in the day; and that, not far to the northward, there were some islands to which they repaired in the night. To this bay I gave the name of HERVEY'S BAY, in honour of Captain Hervey. In the afternoon we stood in for the land, steering S. W. with a gentle breeze at S. E. till four o'clock, when, being in latitude $24^{\circ} 36'$, about two leagues from the shore, and having nine fathoms water, we bore away along the coast N. W. by W. and at the same time could see land extending to the S. S. E. about eight leagues. Near the sea, the land is very low, but within there are some lofty hills, all thickly clothed with wood. While we were running along the shore, we shallowed our water from nine to seven fathoms, and at one time we had but six, which determined us to anchor for the night.

Tuesday 22.

At six in the morning we weighed, with a gentle breeze from the southward, and steered N. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. edging in for the land till we got within two miles of it,

it, with water from seven to eleven fathoms. We then steered N. N. W. as the land lay, and at noon our latitude was $24^{\circ} 19'$. We continued in the same course, at the same distance, with from twelve fathoms to seven, till five in the evening, when we were a-breast of the south point of a large open bay, in which I intended to anchor. During this course we discovered, with our glasses, that the land was covered with palm-nut-trees, which we had not seen from the time of our leaving the islands within the tropic. We also saw two men walking along the shore, who did not condescend to take the least notice of us. In the evening, having hauled close upon a wind, and made two or three trips, we anchored about eight o'clock in five fathoms, with a fine sandy bottom. The south point of the bay bore E. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. distant two miles, the north point N. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ N. and about the same distance from the shore.

Early the next morning I went a-shore, with a party Wedn. 23. of men, in order to examine the country, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, the other gentlemen, and Tupia: the wind blew fresh, and we found it so cold, that, being at some distance from the shore, we took our clokes, as a necessary equipment for the voyage. We landed a little within the south point of the bay, where we found a channel leading into a large lagoon: this channel I proceeded to examine, and found three fathoms water till I got about a mile up it, where I met with a shoal, upon which there was little more than one fathom, but having passed over it, I had three fathoms again. The entrance of this channel lies close to the south point of the bay, being formed by the shore on the east, and on the west by a large spit of sand; it is about a quarter of a mile broad, and lies in S. by W. In this place there is room for a few ships to lie in great security, and a small stream of fresh water: I would have rowed into the lagoon, but was prevented by shallows. We found several bogs, and swamps of salt water, upon which, and by the sides of the lagoon, grows the true mangrove, such as is found in the West Indies, and the first of the kind that we had met with. In the branches of these mangroves there were many nests of a remarkable kind of ant, that was as green as

1770.
May.

grafs : when the branches were disturbed they came out in great numbers, and punished the offender by a much sharper bite than ever we had felt from the same kind of animal before. Upon these mangroves also we saw small green caterpillars in great numbers; their bodies were thick set with hairs, and they were ranged upon the leaves, side by side, like a file of soldiers, to the number of twenty or thirty together : when we touched them, we found that the hair on their bodies had the quality of a nettle, and gave us a much more acute though less durable pain. The country here is manifestly worse than about Botany Bay; the soil is dry and sandy, but the sides of the hills are covered with trees, which grow separately, without underwood. We found here the tree that yields a gum like the *sanguis draconis*; but it is somewhat different from the trees of the same kind which we had seen before, for the leaves are longer, and hang down like those of the weeping willow. We found also much less gum upon them, which is contrary to the established opinion, that the hotter the climate, the more gums exude. Upon a plant also, which yielded a yellow gum, there was less than upon the same kind of plant in Botany Bay. Among the shoals and sand-banks we saw many large birds, some in particular of the same kind that we had seen in Botany Bay, much bigger than swans, which we judged to be pelicans; but they were so shy that we could not get within gun-shot of them. Upon the shore we saw a species of the bustard, one of which we shot, it was as large as a turkey, and weighed seventeen pounds and an half. We all agreed that this was the best bird we had eaten since we left England, and in honour of it we called this inlet BUSTARD BAY. It lies in latitude $24^{\circ} 4'$, longitude $208^{\circ} 18'$. The sea seemed to abound with fish; but, unhappily, we tore our seine all to pieces at the first haul. Upon the mud-banks, under the mangroves, we found innumerable oysters of various kinds; among others the hammer oyster, and a large proportion of small pearl oysters; if in deeper water there is equal plenty of such oysters at their full growth, a pearl fishery might certainly be established here to very great advantage.

The

1770.
May.

The people who were left on board the ship said, that while we were in the woods about twenty of the natives came down to the beach, a-breast of her, and having looked at her some time, went away; but we that were a-shore, though we saw smoke in many places, saw no people: the smoke was at places too distant for us to get to them by land, except one, to which we repaired: we found ten small fires burning within a few paces of each other; but the people were gone: we saw near them several vessels of bark, which we supposed to have contained water, and some shells and fish-bones, the remains of a recent meal. We saw also, lying upon the ground, several pieces of soft bark, about the length and breadth of a man, which we imagined might be their beds; and, on the windward side of the fires, a small shade about a foot and a half high, of the same substance. The whole was in a thicket of close trees, which afforded good shelter from the wind. The place seemed to be much trodden, and as we saw no house, nor any remains of a house, we were inclined to believe that as these people had no cloaths, they had no dwelling; but spent their nights, among the other commoners of Nature, in the open air: and Tupia himself, with an air of superiority and compassion, shook his head, and said that they were 'Taata Enos, 'poor wretches.' I measured the perpendicular height of the last tide, and found it to be eight feet above low-water mark, and from the time of low-water this day, I found that it must be high-water at the full and change of the moon at eight o'clock.

At four o'clock in the morning we weighed, and with a gentle breeze at south made sail out of the bay. In standing out our soundings were from five to fifteen fathoms; and at day-light, when we were in the greatest depth, and a-breast of the north head of the bay, we discovered breakers stretching out from it N. N. E. between two and three miles, with a rock at the outermost point of them, just above water. While we were passing these rocks, at the distance of about half a mile, we had from fifteen to twenty fathoms, and as soon as we had passed them, we hauled along shore W. N. W. for the farthest land we had in sight. At noon
our

Thursd. 24.

1770.
May.

our latitude by observation was $23^{\circ} 52'$ S. the north part of Bustard Bay bore S. 62° E. distant ten miles; and the northermost land in sight N. 60° W. the longitude was $208^{\circ} 37'$, and our distance from the shore six miles, with fourteen fathoms water,

Friday 25.

Till five in the afternoon it was calm, but afterwards we steered before the wind N. W. as the land lay till ten at night, and then brought to, having had all along fourteen and fifteen fathoms. At five in the morning we made sail; and at day-light the northernmost point of the main bore N. 70° W. Soon after we saw more land, making like islands, and bearing N. W. by N. At nine, we were a-breast of the point, at the distance of one mile, with fourteen fathoms water. This point I found to lie directly under the tropic of Capricorn; and for that reason I called it CAPE CAPRICORN: its longitude is $208^{\circ} 58'$ W. it is of a considerable height, looks white and barren, and may be known by some islands which lie to the N. W. of it, and some small rocks at the distance of about a league S. E. On the west side of the Cape there appeared to be a lagoon, and on the two spits which formed the entrance we saw an incredible number of the large birds that resemble a pelican. The northernmost land now in sight bore from Cape Capricorn N. 24° W. and appeared to be an island; but the main land trended W. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. which course we steered, having from fifteen to six fathoms, and from six to nine, with a hard sandy bottom. At noon, our latitude by observation was $23^{\circ} 24'$ S. Cape Capricorn bore S. 60° E. distant two leagues; and a small island N. by E. two miles: in this situation we had nine fathoms, being about four miles from the main, which, next the sea, is low and sandy, except the points which are high and rocky. The country inland is hilly, but by no means of a pleasing aspect. We continued to stand to the N. W. till four o'clock in the afternoon, when it fell calm; and we soon after anchored in twelve fathoms, having the main land and islands in a manner all round us, and Cape Capricorn bearing S. 54° E. distant four leagues. In the night we found the rise and fall near seven feet; and the flood to set to the westward, and the ebb to the eastward, which

is just contrary to what we found when we were at anchor to the eastward of Bustard Bay.

1770.
May.

Saturd. 26.

At six in the morning we weighed, with a gentle breeze at south, and stood away to the N. W. between the outermost range of islands and the main, leaving several small islands between the main and the ship, which we passed at a very little distance: our soundings being irregular, from twelve to four fathoms, I sent a boat a-head to sound. At noon we were about three miles from the main, and about the same distance from the islands without us: our latitude by observation was $23^{\circ} 7'$ S. the main land here is high and mountainous; the islands which lie off it are also most of them high, and of a small circuit, having an appearance rather of barrenness than fertility. At this time we saw smoke in many places at a considerable distance inland, and therefore conjectured that there might be a lagoon, river, or inlet running up the country, the rather, as we had passed two places which had the appearance of being such; but our depth of water was too little to encourage me to venture where I should probably have less. We had not stood to the northward above an hour, before we suddenly fell into three fathoms; upon which I anchored, and sent away the Master to sound the channel which lay to the leeward of us, between the northermost island and the main: it appeared to be pretty broad, but I suspected that it was shallow, and so indeed it was found; for the Master reported at his return that in many places he had only two fathoms and an half, and where we lay at anchor we had only sixteen feet, which was not two feet more than the ship drew. While the Master was sounding the channel, Mr. Banks tried to fish from the cabin windows with hook and line: the water was too shallow for fish; but the ground was almost covered with crabs, which readily took the bait, and sometimes held it so fast in their claws, that they did not quit their hold till they were considerably above water. These crabs were of two sorts, and both of them such as we had not seen before: one of them was adorned with the finest blue that can be imagined, in every respect equal to the ultramarine, with which all his claws, and every joint was deeply tinged; the under part of him was white,

and

1770.
May.

and so exquisitely polished, that in colour and brightness it exactly resembled the white of old china: the other was also marked with the ultramarine upon his joints, and his toes, but somewhat more sparingly; and his back was marked with three brown spots which had a singular appearance. The people who had been out with the boat to sound, reported, that upon an island where we had observed two fires, they had seen several of the inhabitants, who called to them, and seemed very desirous that they should land. In the evening the wind veered to E. N. E. which gave us an opportunity to stretch three or four miles back by the way we came; after which, the wind shifted to the south, and obliged us again to anchor in six fathoms.

Sunday 27. At five in the morning I sent away the Master to search for a passage between the islands, while we got the ship under sail; and as soon as it was light we followed the boat, which made a signal that a passage had been found. As soon as we got again into the deep water, we made sail to the northward, as the land lay, with soundings from nine fathoms to fifteen, and some small islands still without us. At noon we were about two leagues distant from the main; and by observation in latitude $22^{\circ} 53'$ S. The northernmost point of land in sight now bore N. N. W. distant ten miles. To this point I gave the name of CAPE MANIFOLD, from the number of high hills which appeared over it: it lies in latitude $22^{\circ} 43'$ S. and distant about seventeen leagues from Cape Capricorn, in the direction of N. 26. W. Between these Capes the shore forms a large bay, which I called KEPPEL BAY; and I also distinguished the islands by the name of KEPPEL'S ISLANDS. In this bay there is good anchorage; but what refreshments it may afford, I know not: we caught no fish, though we were at anchor; but probably there is fresh water in several places, as both the islands and the main are inhabited. We saw smoke and fires upon the main; and upon the islands we saw people. At three in the afternoon we passed Cape Manifold, from which the land trends N. N. W. The land of the Cape is high, rising in hills directly from the sea; and may be known by three islands which lie off it, one of them near the shore, and the other two eight miles out
at

1770.
May.

at sea. One of these islands is low and flat, and the other high and round. At six o'clock in the evening we brought to, when the northernmost part of the main in sight bore N. W. and some islands which lie off it N. 31 W. Our soundings after twelve o'clock were from twenty to twenty-five fathoms, and in the night from thirty to thirty-four.

At day-break we made sail, Cape Manifold bearing *Moody* S. by E. distant eight leagues, and the islands which I had set the night before were distant four miles in the same direction. The farthest visible point of the main bore N. 67 W. at the distance of twenty-two miles; but we could see several islands to the northward of this direction. At nine o'clock in the afternoon we were a-breast of the point which I called **CAPE TOWNSHEND**. It lies in latitude $22^{\circ} 15'$; longitude $209^{\circ} 43'$: the land is high and level, and rather naked than woody. Several islands lie to the northward of it, at the distance of four or five miles out at sea; three or four leagues to the S. E. the shore forms a bay, in the bottom of which there appeared to be an inlet or harbour. To the westward of the Cape the land trends S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and there forms a very large bay, which turns to the eastward, and probably communicates with the inlet, and makes the land of the Cape an island. As soon as we got round this Cape, we hauled our wind to the westward, in order to get within the islands, which lie scattered in the bay in great numbers, and extend out to sea as far as the eye could reach even from the mast-head: these islands vary both in height and circuit from each other; so that, although they are very numerous, no two of them are alike. We had not stood long upon a wind before we came into shoal water, and were obliged to tack at once to avoid it. Having sent a boat a-head, I bore away W. by N. many small islands, rocks, and shoals, lying between us and the main, and many of a larger extent without us: our soundings till near noon were from fourteen to seventeen fathoms, when the boat made the signal for meeting with shoal water: upon this we hauled close upon a wind to the eastward, but suddenly fell into three fathoms and a quarter; we immediately dropped an anchor, which brought the ship
up

1770.
May.

up with all her sails standing. When the ship was brought up we had four fathoms, with a coarse sandy bottom, and found a strong tide setting to the N. W. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. at the rate of near three miles an hour, by which we were so suddenly carried upon the shoal. Our latitude by observation was $22^{\circ} 8'$ S. Cape Townshend bore E. 16 S. distant thirteen miles; and the westernmost part of the main in sight W. $\frac{3}{4}$ N. At this time a great number of islands lay all round us.

In the afternoon, having sounded round the ship, and found that there was water sufficient to carry her over the shoal, we weighed, and about three o'clock made sail and stood to the westward, as the land lay, having sent a boat a-head to sound. At six in the evening we anchored in ten fathoms, with a sandy bottom, about two miles distance from the main; the westernmost part of which bore W. N. W. and a great number of islands, lying a long way without us, were still in sight.

Tuesday 29.

At five o'clock the next morning I sent away the Master with two boats to sound the entrance of an inlet which bore from us west, at about the distance of a league, into which I intended to go with the ship, that I might wait a few days till the moon should increase, and in the mean time examine the country. As soon as the ship could be got under sail, the boats made the signal for anchorage; upon which we stood in, and anchored in five fathoms water, about a league within the entrance of the inlet; which, as I observed a tide to flow and ebb considerably, I judged to be a river that ran up the country to a considerable distance. In this place I had thoughts of laying the ship a-shore, and cleaning her bottom; I therefore landed with the Master in search of a convenient place for that purpose, and was accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. We found walking here exceedingly troublesome, for the ground was covered with a kind of grass, the seeds of which were very sharp and bearded backwards; so that whenever they stuck into our clothes, which indeed was at every step, they worked forwards by means of the beard, till they got at the flesh; and at the same time we were surrounded by a cloud of musquitos, which incessantly tormented us with their stings.

We

1770.
May.

We soon met with several places where the ship might conveniently be laid a-shore; but to our great disappointment, we could find no fresh water. We proceeded, however, up the country, where we found gum trees, like those that we had seen before, and observed, that here also the gum was in very small quantities. Upon the branches of these trees, and some others, we found ants nests made of clay, as big as a bushel, something like those described in Sir Hans Sloan's Natural History of Jamaica, vol. ii. p. 221. tab. 258, but not so smooth: the ants which inhabited these nests were small, and their bodies white; but upon another species of the tree we found a small black ant, which perforated all the twigs, and having worked out the pith, occupied the pipe which had contained it; yet the parts in which these insects had thus formed a lodgment, and in which they swarmed in amazing numbers, bore leaves and flowers, and appeared to be in as flourishing a state as those that were found. We found also an incredible number of butterflies, so that for the space of three or four acres the air was so crowded with them, that millions were to be seen in every direction, at the same time that every branch and twig was covered with others that were not upon the wing. We found here also a small fish of a singular kind; it was about the size of a minnow, and had two very strong breast-fins: we found it in places that were quite dry, where we supposed it might have been left by the tide; but it did not seem to have become languid by the want of water, for upon our approach it leaped away, by the help of the breast-fins, as nimbly as a frog: neither indeed did it seem to prefer water to land; for when we found it in the water, it frequently leaped out, and pursued its way upon dry ground. We also observed, that when it was in places where small stones were standing above the surface of the water, at a little distance from each other, it chose rather to leap from stone to stone, than to pass through the water; and we saw several of them pass entirely over puddles in this manner, till they came to dry ground, and then leap away.

In the afternoon we renewed our search after fresh water, but without success, and therefore I determined to

1770.
May.

to make my stay here but short; however, having observed from an eminence, that the inlet penetrated a considerable way into the country, I determined to trace it in the morning.

Wednes. 30.

At sun-rise I went a-shore, and climbing a considerable hill, I took a view of the coast, and the islands that lie off it, with their bearings, having an azimuth compass with me for that purpose; but I observed, that the needle differed very considerably in its position, even to thirty degrees, in some places more, in others less; and once I found it differ from itself no less than two points in the distance of fourteen feet. I took up some of the loose stones that lay upon the ground, and applied them to the needle, but they produced no effect; and I therefore concluded that there was iron ore in the hills, of which I had remarked other indications both here and in the neighbouring parts. After I had made my observations upon the hill, I proceeded with Dr. Solander up the inlet; I set out with the first of the flood, and long before high water I had advanced above eight leagues. Its breadth thus far was from two to five miles, upon a S. W. by S. direction; but here it opened every way, and formed a large lake, which to the N. W. communicated with the sea; and I not only saw the sea in this direction, but found the tide of flood coming strongly in from that point; I also observed an arm of this lake extending to the eastward, and it is not improbable that it may communicate with the sea in the bottom of the bay, which lies to the westward of Cape Townshend. On the south side of the lake is a ridge of high hills, which I was very desirous to climb; but it being high-water, and the day far spent, I was afraid of being bewildered among the shoals in the night, especially as the weather was dark and rainy, and therefore I made the best of my way to the ship. In this excursion I saw only two people, and they were at a distance; they followed the boat along the shore a good way, but the tide running strongly in my favour, I could not prudently wait for them: I saw, however, several fires in one direction, and smoke in another, but they also were at a distance. While I was tracing the inlet with Dr. Solander, Mr. Banks was endeavouring to penetrate into

1770.
May.

into the country, where several of the people, who had leave to go a-shore, were also rambling about. Mr. Banks and his party found their course obstructed by a swamp covered with mangroves, which, however, they resolved to pass; the mud was almost knee deep, yet they resolutely went on; but before they got half way, they repented of their undertaking. The bottom was covered with branches of trees interwoven with each other; sometimes they kept their footing upon them, sometimes their feet slipped through, and sometimes they were so entangled among them, that they were forced to free themselves by groping in the mud and slime with their hands. In about an hour, however, they crossed it, and judged it might be about a quarter of a mile over. After a short walk, they came up to a place where there had been four small fires, and near them some shells and bones of fish that had been roasted; they found also heaps of grass laid together, where four or five people appeared to have slept. The Second Lieutenant, Mr. Gore, who was at another place, saw a little water lying in the bottom of a gully, and near it the track of a large animal: some bustards were also seen, but none of them shot, nor any other bird except a few of the beautiful loriquets, which we had seen in Botany Bay. Mr. Gore, and one of the Midshipmen, who were in different places, said, that they had heard the voices of Indians near them, but had seen none. The country in general appeared sandy and barren, and being destitute of fresh water, it cannot be supposed to have any settled inhabitants. The deep gullies, which were worn by torrents from the hills, prove, that at certain seasons the rains here are very copious and heavy.

The inlet in which the ship lay I called THIRSTY SOUND, because it afforded us fresh water. It lies in latitude $22^{\circ} 10'$ S. and longitude $210^{\circ} 18'$ W. and may be known by a group of small islands lying under the shore, from two to five leagues distant, in the direction of N. W. and by another group of islands that lie right before it, between three and four leagues out at sea. Over each of the points that form the entrance is a high round hill, which on the N. W. is a peninsula, that at high-water is surrounded by the sea; they

1770.
May.

are bold to both the shores, and the distance between them is about two miles.. In this inlet is good anchorage in seven, six, five, and four fathoms, and places very convenient for laying a ship down, where, at spring-tides, the water does not rise less than sixteen or eighteen feet. The tide flows at the full and change of the moon about eleven o'clock. I have already observed; that here is no fresh water, nor could we procure refreshment of any other kind. We saw two turtles, but we were not able to take either of them; neither did we catch either fish or wild fowl, except a few small land birds; we saw indeed the same sorts of water fowl as in Botany Bay, but they were so shy that we could not get a shot at them.

Thursd. 31.

As I had not therefore a single inducement to stay longer in this place, I weighed anchor at six o'clock in the morning of Thursday the 31st of May, and put to sea. We stood to the N. W. with a fresh breeze at S. S. E. and kept without the group of islands that lie in shore, and to the N. W. of Thirsty Sound, as there appeared to be no safe passage between them and the main: at the same time we had a number of islands without us, extending as far as we could see. During our run in this direction, our depth of water was ten, eight, and nine fathoms. At noon the west point of Thirsty Sound, which I have called PIER HEAD, bore S. 36 E. distant five leagues; the east point of the other inlet, which communicates with the Sound, bore S. by W. distant two leagues; the group of islands just mentioned lay between us and the point, and the farthest part of the main in sight, on the other side of the inlet, bore N. W. Our latitude, by observation, was $21^{\circ} 53'$. At half an hour after twelve the boat, which was sounding a-head, made the signal for shoal water, and we immediately hauled our wind to the N. E. At this time we had seven fathoms, at the next cast five, and at the next three, upon which we instantly dropped an anchor that brought the ship up. Pier Head, the north-west point of Thirsty Sound, bore S. E. distant six leagues, being half way between the islands which lie off the east point of the western inlet, and three small islands which lie directly without them. It was now the first of the flood, which we found to set N. W.

1770.
June.

N. W. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and having sounded about the shoal, upon which we had three fathoms, and found deep water all round it, we got under sail, and having hauled round the three islands that have been just mentioned, came to anchor under the lee of them, in fifteen fathoms water; and the weather being dark, hazy, and rainy, we remained there till seven o'clock in the morning. At this time we got again under sail, and stood to the N. W. with a fresh breeze at S. S. E. having the main land in sight, and a number of islands all round us, some of which lay out at sea as far as the eye could reach. The western inlet, which in the chart is distinguished by the name of Broad Sound, we had now all open; at the entrance it is at least nine or ten leagues wide; in it, and before it, lie several islands, and probably shoals also, for our soundings were very irregular, varying suddenly from ten to four fathoms. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $21^{\circ} 29'$ S. a point of land which forms the north-west entrance into Broad Sound, and which I have named CAPE PALMERSTON, lying in latitude $21^{\circ} 30'$, longitude $210^{\circ} 54'$ W. bore W. by N. distant three leagues. Our latitude was $21^{\circ} 27'$, our longitude $210^{\circ} 57'$. Between this Cape and Cape Townshend lies the bay which I have called the BAY OF INLETS. We continued to stand to the N. W. and N. W. by N. as the land lay, under an easy sail, having a boat a-head to sound. At first the soundings were very irregular, from nine to four fathoms, but afterwards they were regular from nine to eleven. At eight in the evening, being about two leagues from the main land, we anchored in eleven fathoms, with a sandy bottom, and soon after we found the tide setting, with a slow motion, to the westward. At one o'clock it was slack, or low water; and at half an hour after two the ship trended to the eastward, and rode so till six in the morning, when the tide had risen eleven feet. We now got under sail, and stood away, in the direction of the coast, N. N. W. From what we had observed of the tide during the night, it is plain that the flood came from the N. W. whereas the preceding day, and several days before, it came from the S. E. nor was this the first or even second time that we remarked the same thing. At sun-rise this morning we found the variation to be $6^{\circ} 45'$ E. and in steering along the shore,

Friday 1.

Saturd. 2.

1770.

June:

shore, between the island and the main, at the distance of about two leagues from the main, and three or four from the island, our soundings were regular from twelve to nine fathoms; but about eleven o'clock in the forenoon we were again embarrassed with shoal water, having at one time not more than three fathoms; yet we got clear, without casting anchor. At noon we were about two leagues from the main, and four from the islands without us. Our latitude, by observation, was $20^{\circ} 56'$, and a high promontory, which I named **CAPE HILLSBOROUGH**, bore W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. distant seven miles. The land here is diversified by mountains, hills, plains, and vallies, and seems to be well clothed with herbage and wood. The islands which lie parallel to the coast, and from five to eight or nine miles distant, are of various height and extent, scarcely any of them are more than five leagues in circumference, and many are not four miles: besides this chain of islands, which lies at a distance from the coast, there are others much less, which lie under the land, from which we saw smoke rising in different places. We continued to steer along the shore at the distance of about two leagues, with regular soundings from nine to ten fathoms. At sun-set the farthest part of the main bore N. 48° W. and to the northward of this lay some high land, which I took to be an island, and of which the north-west point bore 41° W. but not being sure of a passage, I came to an anchor about eight o'clock in the evening, in ten fathoms water, with a muddy bottom. About ten we had a tide setting to the northward, and at two it had fallen nine feet; after this it began to rise, and the flood came from the northward, in the direction of the islands which lay out to sea; a plain indication that there was no passage to the N. W. This, however, had not appeared at day-break, when we got under sail and stood to the N. W. At eight o'clock in the morning we discovered low land, quite across what we took for an opening, which proved to be a bay, about five or six leagues deep; upon this we hauled our wind to the eastward round the north point of the bay, which at this time bore from us N. E. by N. distant four leagues: from this point we found the land trend away N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and a streight or passage between

Sunday 3.

1770.
June.

between it and a large island, or islands, lying parallel to it. Having the tide of ebb in our favour, we stood for this passage, and at noon were just within the entrance; our latitude, by observation, was $20^{\circ} 26'$ S. Cape Hillsborough bore S. by E. distant ten leagues; and the north point of the bay S. 19° W. distant four miles. This point, which I named CAPE CONWAY, lies in latitude $26^{\circ} 36'$ S. longitude $211^{\circ} 28'$ W. and the bay, which lies between this Cape and Cape Hillsborough, I called REPULSE BAY. The greatest depth of water which we found in it was thirteen fathoms, and the least eight. In all parts there was safe anchorage, and I believe that, upon proper examination, some good harbours would be found in it, especially at the north side within Cape Conway; for just within that Cape there lie two or three small islands, which alone would shelter that side of the bay from the southerly and south-easterly winds, that seem to prevail here as a trade. Among the many islands that lie upon this coast, there is one more remarkable than the rest; it is of a small circuit, very high and peaked, and lies E. by S. ten miles from Cape Conway, at the south end of the passage. In the afternoon we steered through this passage, which we found to be from three to seven miles broad, and eight or nine leagues in length, N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. S. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. It is formed by the main on the west, and by the islands on the east, one of which is at least five leagues in length; our depth of water, in running through, was from twenty to five-and-twenty fathoms, with good anchorage every where; and the whole passage may be considered as one safe harbour, exclusive of the small bays and coves which abound on each side, where ships might lie as in a basin. The land both upon the main and the islands is high, and diversified by hill and valley, wood and lawn, with a green and pleasant appearance. On one of the islands we discovered, with our glasses, two men and a woman, and a canoe with an outrigger, which appeared to be larger, and of a construction very different from those of bark tied together at the ends, which we had seen upon other parts of the coast; we hoped therefore that the people here had made some farther advances beyond mere animal life, than those that we had seen

1770.
June.

Mond. 4.

before. At six o'clock in the evening we were nearly the length of the north end of the passage; the north-westernmost point of the main in sight bore N. 45 W. and the north end of the island N. N. E. with an open sea between the two points. As this passage was discovered on Whitsunday, I called it WHITSUNDAY'S PASSAGE, and I called the islands that form it CUMBERLAND ISLANDS, in honour of his Royal Highness the Duke. We kept under an easy sail, with the lead going all night, being at the distance of about three leagues from the shore, and having from twenty-one to twenty-three fathoms water. At day-break we were a-breast of the point which had been the farthest in sight to the north-west the evening before, which I named CAPE GLOUCESTER. It is a lofty promontory, in latitude $19^{\circ} 59'$ S. longitude $211^{\circ} 49'$ W. and may be known by an island which lies out at sea N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. at the distance of five or six leagues from it, and which I called HOLBORNE ISLE; there are also islands lying under the land, between Holborne Isle and Whitsunday's Passage. On the west side of Cape Gloucester the land trends away S. W. and S. S. W. and forms a deep bay, the bottom of which I could but just see from the mast head; it is very low, and a continuation of the low land which we had seen at the bottom of Repulse Bay. This bay I called EDGCUMBE BAY, but without staying to look into it, we continued our course to the westward, for the farthest land we could see in that direction, which bore W. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. and appeared very high. At noon we were about three leagues from the shore, by observation, in latitude $19^{\circ} 47'$ S. and Cape Gloucester bore S. 63 E. distant seven leagues and an half. At six in the evening we were a-breast of the westernmost point just mentioned, at about three miles distance; and because it rises abruptly from the low lands which surround it, I called it CAPE UPSTART. It lies in latitude $19^{\circ} 39'$ S. longitude $212^{\circ} 32'$ W. fourteen leagues W. N. W. from Cape Gloucester, and is of a height sufficient to be seen at the distance of twelve leagues: inland there are some high hills or mountains, which, like the cape, afford but a barren prospect. Having passed this cape, we continued standing to the W. N. W.

1770.
June.

Tuesday

as the land lay, under an easy sail, having from sixteen to ten fathoms, till two o'clock in the morning, when we fell into seven fathoms, upon which we hauled our wind to the northward, judging ourselves to be very near land. At day-break we found our conjecture to be true, being within little more than two leagues of it. In this part of the coast the land, being very low, is nearer than it appears to be, though it is diversified with here and there a hill. At noon we were about four leagues from the land in fifteen fathoms water, and our latitude, by observation, was $19^{\circ} 12' S$. Cape Upstart bearing $S. 32^{\circ} 30' E$. distant twelve leagues. About this time some very large columns of smoke were seen rising from the low lands. At sun-set, the preceding night, when we were close under Cape Upstart, the variation was nearly $9^{\circ} E$. and at sun-rise this day it was no more than $5^{\circ} 35'$; I judged therefore that it had been influenced by iron ore, or other magnetical matter, contained under the surface of the earth.

We continued to steer W. N. W. as the land lay, with twelve or fourteen fathoms water, till noon on the 6th, when our latitude, by observation, was $19^{\circ} 1' S$. and we had the mouth of a bay all open, extending from $S. \frac{1}{2} W$. to $S. W. \frac{1}{2} S$. distant two leagues. This bay, which I named CLEVELAND BAY, appeared to be about five or six miles in extent every way; the east point I named CAPE CLEVELAND, and the west, which had the appearance of an island, MAGNETICAL ISLE, as we perceived that the compass did not traverse well when we were near it; they are both high, and so is the main land within them, the whole forming a surface the most rugged, rocky, and barren of any we had seen upon the coast; it was not, however, without inhabitants, for we saw smoke in several parts of the bottom of the bay. The northernmost land that was in sight at this time bore N. W. and it had the appearance of an island, for we could not trace the main land farther than W. by N. We steered W. N. W. keeping the main land on board, the outermost part of which, at sun-set, bore W. by N. but without it lay high land, which we judged not to be part of it,

1770.
June.

Thursd. 7.

At day-break we were a-breast of the eastern part of this land, which we found to be a group of islands, lying about five leagues from the main. At this time, being between the two shores, we advanced slowly to the N. W. till noon, when our latitude, by observation, was $18^{\circ} 49'$ S. and our distance from the main about five leagues: the north-west part of it bore from us N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. the islands extending from N. to E. and the nearest being distant about two miles: Cape Cleveland bore S. 50 E. distant eighteen leagues. Our soundings, in the course that we had sailed between this time and the preceding noon, were from fourteen to eleven fathoms.

In the afternoon we saw several large columns of smoke upon the main; we saw also some people and canoes; and upon one of the islands what had the appearance of cocoa-nut-trees. As a few of these nuts would now have been very acceptable, I sent Lieutenant Hicks a-shore, and with him went Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, to see what refreshment could be procured, while I kept standing in for the island with the ship. About seven o'clock in the evening they returned, with an account that what we had taken for cocoa-nut-trees were a small kind of cabbage-palm, and that, except about fourteen or fifteen plants, they had met with nothing worth bringing away. While they were ashore they saw none of the people; but just as they had put off one of them came very near the beach, and shouted with a loud voice: it was so dark that they could not see him, however they turned towards the shore, but when he heard the boat putting back he ran away, or hid himself, for they could not get a glimpse of him, and though they shouted he made no reply. After the return of the boats, we stood away N. by W. for the northernmost land in sight, of which we were a-breast at three o'clock in the morning, having passed all the islands three or four hours before. This land, on account of its figure, I named POINT HILLOCK: it is of a considerable height, and may be known by a round hillock, or rock, which joins to the point, but appears to be detached from it. Between this cape and Magnetical Isle, the shore forms a large bay, which

Friday 8.

1770.
June.

which I called HALIFAX BAY: before it lay the group of islands which has been just mentioned, and some others, at a less distance from the shore. By these islands the Bay is sheltered from all winds, and it affords good anchorage. The land near the beach in the bottom of the Bay, is low and woody, but farther back it is one continued ridge of high land, which appeared to be barren and rocky. Having passed Point Hillock, we continued standing to the N. N. W. as the land trended, having the advantage of a light moon. At six, we were a-breast of a point of land which lies N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant eleven miles from Point Hillock, which I named CAPE SANDWICH. Between these two points the land is very high, and the surface is craggy and barren. Cape Sandwich may be known not only by the high craggy land over it, but by a small island which lies east of it, at the distance of a mile, and some others that lie about two leagues to the northward. From Cape Sandwich the land trends W. and afterwards N. forming a fine large bay, which I called ROCKINGHAM BAY, where there appears to be good shelter, and good anchorage, but I did not stay to examine it: I kept the ranging along the shore to the northward, for a cluster of small islands, which lie off the northern point of the Bay. Between the three outermost of these islands, and those near the shore, I found a channel of about a mile broad, through which I passed, and upon one of the nearest islands we saw with our glasses about thirty of the natives, men, women, and children, all standing together, and looking with great attention at the ship, the first instance of curiosity that we had seen among them: they were all stark naked, with short hair, and of the same complexion with those that we had seen before. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was $17^{\circ} 59'$, and we were a-breast of the north point of Rockingham Bay, which bore from us W. at the distance of about two miles. This boundary of the Bay is formed by an island of considerable height, which in the chart is distinguished by the name of DUNK ISLE, and which lies so near the shore as not to be easily distinguished from it. Our longitude was $213^{\circ} 57'$ W. Cape Sandwich bore S. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant nineteen miles, and the northernmost land in sight N.

1770.
June.

N $\frac{1}{2}$ W. our depth of water for the last ten hours had not been more than sixteen, nor less than seven fathoms. At sun-set the northern extremity of the land bore N. 25 W. and we kept our course N. by W. along the coast, at the distance of between three and four leagues, with an easy sail all night, having from twelve to fifteen fathoms water.

Saturday 9.

At six o'clock in the morning we were a-breast of some small islands, which we called FRANKLAND'S ISLES, and which lie about two leagues distant from the main land. The most distant point in sight to the northward bore N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and we thought it was part of the main, but afterwards found it to be an island of considerable height, and about four miles in circuit. Between this island and a point on the main, from which it is distant about two miles, I passed with the ship. At noon, we were in the middle of the channel, and by observation in the latitude of $16^{\circ} 57'$ S. with twenty fathoms water. The point on the main, of which we were now a-breast, I called CAPE GRAFTON: its latitude is $16^{\circ} 57'$ S. and longitude $214^{\circ} 6'$ W. and the land here, as well as the whole coast, for about twenty leagues to the southward, is high, has a rocky surface, and is thinly covered with wood: during the night we had seen several fires, and about noon some people. Having hauled round Cape Grafton, we found the land trend away N. W. by W. and three miles to the westward of the Cape we found a bay, in which we anchored about two miles from the shore, in four fathoms water with an oozy bottom. The east point of the bay bore S. 74° E. the west point S. 83° W. and a low, green, woody island, which lies in the offing, N. 35° E. This island, which lies N. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant three or four leagues from Cape Grafton, is called in the chart GREEN ISLAND.

As soon as the ship was brought to an anchor, I went ashore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. As my principal view was to procure some fresh water, and as the bottom of the bay was low land covered with mangroves, where it was not probable fresh water was to be found, I went out towards the Cape, and found two small streams, which however were rendered very difficult of access by the surf and rocks upon

upon the shore: I saw also, as I came round the Cape, a small stream of water run over the beach, in a sandy cove, but I did not go in with the boat, because I saw that it would not be easy to land. When we got a-shore, we found the country every where rising into steep rocky hills, and as no fresh water could conveniently be procured, I was unwilling to lose time by going in search of lower land elsewhere: we therefore made the best of our way back to the ship, and about midnight we weighed and stood to the N. W. having but little wind, with some showers of rain. At four in the morning, the breeze freshened at S. by E. and the weather became fair: we continued steering N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. as the land lay, at about three leagues distant, with ten, twelve, and fourteen fathoms water. At ten we hauled off north, in order to get without a small low island, which lay at about two leagues distance from the main, and great part of which at this time, it being high water, was overflowed: about three leagues to the north-west of this island, close under the main land, is another island, the land of which rises to a greater height, and which at noon bore from us N. 55 W. distant seven or eight miles. At this time our latitude was $16^{\circ} 20'$ S. Cape Grafton bore S. 29 E. distant forty miles, and the northernmost point of land in sight N. 20 W. our depth of water was fifteen fathoms. Between this point and Cape Grafton the shore forms a large, but not a very deep bay, which being discovered on Trinity Sunday, I called TRINITY BAY. Sund. 10.

C H A P. V.

Dangerous Situation of the Ship in her Course from Trinity Bay to Endeavour River.

HITHERTO we had safely navigated this dangerous coast, where the sea in all parts conceals shoals that suddenly project from the shore, and rocks that rise abruptly like a pyramid from the bottom, for an extent of two and twenty degrees of latitude, more than one thousand three hundred miles; and therefore hitherto none of the names which distinguish the several parts

1770.
June.

parts of the country that we saw, are memorials of distress; but here we became acquainted with misfortune, and we therefore called the point which we had just seen farthest to the northward, **CAPE TRIBULATION**.

This Cape lies in latitude $16^{\circ} 6'$ S. and longitude $214^{\circ} 39'$ W. We steered along the shore N. by W. at the distance of between three and four leagues, having from fourteen to twelve and ten fathoms water: in the offing we saw two islands, which lie in latitude 16° S. and about six or seven leagues from the main. At six in the evening, the northernmost land in sight bore N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and two low woody islands, which some of us took to be rocks above water, bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At this time we shortened sail, and hauled off shore E. N. E. and N. E. by E. close upon a wind, for it was my design to stretch off all night, as well to avoid the danger we saw a-head, as to see whether any islands lay in the offing, especially as we were now near the latitude assigned to the islands which were discovered by Quiros, and which some geographers, for what reason I know not, have thought fit to join to this land. We had the advantage of a fine breeze, and a clear moonlight night, and in standing off from six till near nine o'clock, we deepened our water from fourteen to twenty-one fathoms; but while we were at supper it suddenly shoaled, and we fell into twelve, ten, and eight fathoms, within the space of a few minutes; I immediately ordered every body to their station, and all was ready to put about and come to an anchor, but meeting at the next cast of the lead with deep water again, we concluded that we had gone over the tail of the shoals which we had seen at sun-set, and that all danger was past: before ten, we had twenty and one and twenty fathoms, and this depth continuing, the gentlemen left the deck in great tranquillity, and went to bed; but a few minutes before eleven, the water shallowed at once from twenty to seventeen fathoms, and before the lead could be cast again, the ship struck, and remained immoveable, except by the heaving of the surge, that beat her against the crags of the rock upon which she lay. In a few moments every body was upon the deck, with countenances

tenances which sufficiently expressed the horrors of our situation. We had stood off the shore three hours and a half, with a pleasant breeze, and therefore knew that we could not be very near it, and we had too much reason to conclude that we were upon a rock of coral, which is more fatal than any other, because the points of it are sharp, and every part of the surface so rough as to grind away whatever is rubbed against it, even with the gentlest motion. In this situation all the sails were immediately taken in, and the boats hoisted out to examine the depth of water round the ship: we soon discovered that our fears had not aggravated our misfortune; and that the vessel had been lifted over a ledge of the rock, and lay in a hollow within it: in some places there was from three to four fathoms, and in others not so many feet. The ship lay with her head to the N. E. and at the distance of about thirty yards on the starboard side, the water deepened to eight, ten, and twelve fathoms. As soon as the long-boat was out, we struck our yards and top-masts, and carried out the stream anchor on the starboard bow, got the coasting anchor and cable into the boat, and were going to carry it out the same way; but upon sounding a second time round the ship, the water was found deepest a-stern: the anchor therefore was carried out from the starboard quarter instead of the starboard bow, that is, from the stern instead of the head, and having taken ground, our utmost force was applied to the capstan, hoping that if the anchor did not come home, the ship would be got off, but to our great misfortune and disappointment we could not move her: during all this time she continued to beat with great violence against the rock, so that it was with the utmost difficulty that we kept upon our legs; and to complete the scene of distress, we saw, by the light of the moon, the sheathing boards from the bottom of the vessel floating away all round her, and at last her false keel, so that every moment was making way for the sea to rush in which was to swallow us up. We had now no chance but to lighten her, and we had lost the opportunity of doing that to the greatest advantage, for unhappily we went on shore just at high water, and by this time it had

con-

1770.
June.

considerably fallen, so that after she should be lightened so as to draw as much less water as the water had sunk, we should be but in the same situation as at first; and the only alleviation of this circumstance was, that as the tide ebbed the ship settled to the rocks, and was not beaten against them with so much violence. We had indeed some hope from the next tide, but it was doubtful whether she would hold together so long, especially as the rock kept grating her bottom under the starboard bow with such force as to be heard in the fore store-room. This however was no time to indulge conjecture, nor was any effort remitted in despair of success: that no time might be lost, the water was immediately started in the hold, and pumped up; six of our guns, being all we had upon the deck, our iron and stone ballast, casks, hoop staves, oil jars, decayed stores, and many other things that lay in the way of heavier materials, were thrown overboard with the utmost expedition, every one exerting himself with an alacrity almost approaching to cheerfulness, without the least repining or discontent; yet the men were so far impressed with a sense of their situation, that not an oath was heard among them, the habit of profaneness, however strong, being instantly subdued, by the dread of incurring guilt when death seemed to be so near.

Monday 11. While we were thus employed, day broke upon us, and we saw the land at about eight leagues distance, without any island in the intermediate space, upon which, if the ship should have gone to pieces, we might have been set a-shore by the boats, and from which they might have taken us by different turns to the main: the wind however gradually died away, and early in the forenoon it was a dead calm; if it had blown hard, the ship must inevitably have been destroyed. At eleven in the forenoon we expected high water, and anchors were got out, and every thing made ready for another effort to heave her off if she should float, but to our inexpressible surprize and concern she did not float by a foot and an half, though we had lightened her near fifty ton, so much did the day-tide fall short of that in the night. We now proceeded to lighten her still more, and threw overboard every

1770.
June.

every thing that it was possible for us to spare: hitherto she had not admitted much water, but as the tide fell, it rushed in so fast, that two pumps, incessantly worked, could scarcely keep her free. At two o'clock she lay heeling two or three streaks to starboard, and the pinnacle, which lay under her bows, touched the ground: we had now no hope but from the tide at midnight, and to prepare for it we carried out our two bower anchors, one on the starboard quarter, and the other right a-stern, got the blocks and tackle which were to give us a purchase upon the cables in order, and brought the falls, or ends of them, in a-baft, straining them tight, that the next effort might operate upon the ship, and by shortening the length of the cable between that of the anchors, draw her off the ledge upon which she rested, towards the deep water. About five o'clock in the afternoon, we observed the tide begin to rise, but we observed at the same time that the leak increased to a most alarming degree, so that two more pumps were manned, but unhappily only one of them would work: three of the pumps however were kept going, and at nine o'clock the ship righted, but the leak had gained upon us so considerably, that it was imagined she must go to the bottom as soon as she ceased to be supported by the rock: this was a dreadful circumstance, so that we anticipated the floating of the ship not as an earnest of deliverance, but as an event that would probably precipitate our destruction. We well knew that our boats were not capable of carrying us all on shore, and that when the dreadful crisis should arrive, as all command and subordination would be at an end, a contest for preference would probably ensue, that would increase the horrors even of ship-wreck, and terminate in the destruction of us all by the hands of each other; yet we knew that if any should be left on board to perish in the waves, they would probably suffer less upon the whole than those who should get on shore, without any lasting or effectual defence against the natives, in a country, where even nets and fire-arms would scarcely furnish them with food; and where, if they should find the means of subsistence, they must be condemned to languish out the remainder of life in a desolate

1770.
June.

desolate wilderness, without the possession, or even hope, of any domestic comfort, and cut off from all commerce with mankind, except the naked savages who prowled the desert, and who perhaps were some of the most rude and uncivilized upon the earth.

To those only who have waited in a state of such suspense, death has approached in all his terrors; and as the dreadful moment that was to determine our fate came on, every one saw his own sensations pictured in the countenances of his companions: however, the capstan and windlace were manned with as many hands as could be spared from the pumps, and the ship floating about twenty minutes after ten o'clock, the effort was made, and she was heaved into deep water. It was some comfort to find that she did not now admit more water than she had done upon the rock; and though, by the gaining of the leak upon the pumps, there was no less than three feet nine inches water in the hold, yet the men did not relinquish their labour, and we held the water as it were at bay; but having now endured excessive fatigue of body and agitation of mind for more than four-and-twenty hours, and having but little hope of succeeding at last, they began to flag: none of them could work at the pump more than five or six minutes together, and then, being totally exhausted, they threw themselves down upon the deck, though a stream of water was running over it from the pumps between three and four inches deep; when those who succeeded them had worked their spell, and were exhausted in their turn, they threw themselves down in the same manner, and the others started up again, and renewed their labour; thus relieving each other till an accident was very near putting an end to their efforts at once. The planking which lines the inside of the ship's bottom is called the cieling, and between this, and the outside planking, there is a space of about eighteen inches: the man who till this time had attended the well to take the depth of water, had taken it only to the cieling, and gave the measure accordingly; but he being now relieved, the person who came in his stead, reckoned the depth to the outside planking, by which it appeared in a few minutes to have gained upon the pumps eighteen

1770.
June.

teen inches, the difference between the planking without and within. Upon this, even the bravest was upon the point of giving up his labour with his hope, and in a few minutes every thing would have been involved in all the confusion of despair. But this accident, however dreadful in its first consequences, was eventually the cause of our preservation: the mistake was soon detected, and the sudden joy which every man felt upon finding his situation better than his fears had suggested, operated like a charm, and seemed to possess him with a strong belief that scarcely any real danger remained. New confidence and new hope, however founded, inspired new vigour; and though our state was the same as when the men first began to slacken in their labour, through weariness and despondency, they now renewed their efforts with such alacrity and spirit, that before eight o'clock in the morning the lake was so far from Tuesd. 12. having gained upon the pumps, that the pumps had gained considerably upon the leak. Every body now talked of getting the ship into some harbour, as a thing not to be doubted, and as hands could be spared from the pumps, they were employed in getting up the anchors: the stream anchor and best bower we had taken on board; but it was found impossible to save the little bower, and therefore it was cut away at a whole cable: we lost also the cable of the stream anchor among the rocks; but in our situation these were trifles which scarcely attracted our notice. Our next business was to get up the fore-top-mast and fore-yard, and warp the ship to the south-east, and at eleven, having now a breeze from the sea, we once more got under sail and stood for the land.

It was, however, impossible long to continue the labour by which the pumps had been made to gain upon the leak, and as the exact situation of it could not be discovered, we had no hope of stopping it within. In this situation, Mr. Monkhouse, one of my midshipmen, came to me and proposed an expedient that he had once seen used on board a merchant ship, which sprung a leak that admitted above four feet water an hour, and which by this expedient was brought safely from Virginia to London; the master having such confidence in it, that he took her out of harbour, knowing her condition,

1770.

June.

dition, and did not think it worth while to wait till the leak could be otherwise stopped. To this man, therefore, the care of the expedient, which is called fothering the ship, was immediately committed, four or five of the people being appointed to assist him, and he performed it in this manner: He took a lower studding sail, and having mixed together a large quantity of oakum and wool, chopped pretty small, he stitched it down in handfuls upon the sail, as lightly as possible, and over this he spread the dung of our sheep and other filth; but horse dung, if we had had it, would have been better. When the sail was thus prepared, it was hauled under the ship's bottom by ropes, which kept it extended, and when it came under the leak, the suction which carried in the water, carried in with it the oakum and wool from the surface of the sail, which in other parts the water was not sufficiently agitated to wash off. By the success of this expedient our leak was so far reduced, that instead of gaining upon three pumps, it was easily kept under with one. This was a new source of confidence and comfort; the people could scarcely have expressed more joy if they had been already in port; and their views were so far from being limited to running the ship a-shore in some harbour, either of an island or the main, and building a vessel out of her materials, to carry us to the East Indies, which had so lately been the utmost object of our hope, that nothing was now thought of but ranging along the shore in search of a convenient place to repair the damage she had sustained, and then prosecuting the voyage upon the same plan as if nothing had happened. Upon this occasion I must observe, both in justice and gratitude to the ship's company, and the gentlemen on board, that although in the midst of our distress every one seemed to have a just sense of his danger, yet no passionate exclamations, or frantic gestures, were to be heard or seen; every one appeared to have the perfect possession of his mind, and every one exerted himself to the uttermost, with a quiet and patient perseverance, equally distant from the tumultuous violence of terror, and the gloomy inactivity of despair.

In the mean time, having light airs at E. S. E. we got up the main-top mast, and main-yard, and kept edging

edging in for the land, till about six o'clock in the evening, when we came to an anchor in seventeen fathoms water, at the distance of seven leagues from the shore, and one from the ledge of rocks upon which we had struck.

1770.
June.

This ledge or shoal lies in latitude $15^{\circ} 45'$ S. and between six or seven leagues from the main. It is not however the only shoal on this part of the coast, especially to the northward; and at this time we saw one to the southward, the tail of which we passed over, when we had uneven soundings about two hours before we struck. A part of this shoal is always above water, and has the appearance of white sand: a part also of that upon which we had lain is dry at low water, and in that place consists of sand stones; but all the rest of it is a coral rock.

While we lay at anchor for the night, we found that the ship made about fifteen inches water an hour, from which no immediate danger was to be apprehended; and at six o'clock in the morning, we weighed and stood to the N. W. still edging in for the land with a gentle breeze at S. S. E. At nine we passed close without two small islands that lie in latitude $15^{\circ} 41'$ S. and about four leagues from the main: to reach these islands had, in the height of our distress, been the object of our hope, or perhaps rather of our wishes, and therefore I called them HOPE ISLANDS. At noon we were about three leagues from the land, and in latitude $15^{\circ} 37'$ S. the northernmost part of the main in sight bore N. 30 W. and Hope Islands extended from S. 30 E. to S. 40 E. In this situation we had twelve fathoms water, and several sand-banks without us. At this time the leak had not increased; but that we might be prepared for all events, we got the sail ready for another stoppage. In the afternoon, having a gentle breeze at S. E. by E. I sent out the Master with two boats, as well to sound a-head of the ship, as to look out for a harbour where we might repair our defects, and put the ship in a proper trim. At three o'clock we saw an opening that had the appearance of an harbour, and stood off and on while the boats examined it, but they soon found that there was not depth of water in it sufficient for the ship. When it was near sun-set, there being many

Wednes. 13

1770.
June.

shoals about us, we anchored in four fathoms, at the distance of about two miles from the shore, the land extending from N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. to S. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. The pinnacle was still out with one of the mates; but at nine o'clock she returned, and reported, that about two leagues to leeward she had discovered just such a harbour as we wanted, in which there was a sufficient rise of water, and every other convenience that could be desired, either for laying the ship ashore, or heaving her down.

Thursd. 24.

In consequence of this information, I weighed at six o'clock in the morning, and having sent two boats a-head, to lie upon the shoals that we saw in our way, we ran down to the place; but notwithstanding our precaution, we were once in three fathoms water. As soon as these shoals were passed, I sent the boats to lie in the channel that led to the harbour, and by this time it began to blow. It was happy for us that a place of refuge was at hand; for we soon found that the ship would not work, having twice missed stays: our situation, however, though it might have been much worse, was not without danger: we were entangled among shoals, and I had great reason to fear being driven to leeward, before the boats could place themselves so as to prescribe our course. I therefore anchored in four fathoms, about a mile from the shore, and then made the signal for the boats to come on board. When this was done, I went myself and buoyed the channel, which I found very narrow; the harbour also I found smaller than I expected, but most excellently adapted to our purpose; and it is remarkable, that in the whole course of our voyage we had seen no place which, in our present circumstances, could have afforded us the same relief. At noon, our latitude was $15^{\circ} 26' S$. During all the rest of this day, and the whole night, it blew too fresh for us to venture from our anchor and run into the harbour; and for our farther security, we got down the top-gallant yards, unbent the main-sail and some of the small sails; got down the fore-top-gallant mast, and the gibb boom, and sprit-sail, with a view to lighten the ship forwards as much as possible, in order to come at her leak, which we supposed to be somewhere in that part; for in all the joy of our unexpected deliverance, we had not forgot that at this time there was nothing but a lock of wool between us and destruction. The
gale

1770.
June.

gale continuing, we kept our station all the 15th. On the 16th, it was somewhat more moderate; and about six o'clock in the morning, we hove the cable short, with a design to get under sail, but were obliged to desist, and veer it out again. It is remarkable that the sea breeze, which blew fresh when we anchored, continued to do so almost every day while we staid here; it was calm only while we were upon the rock, except once; and even the gale that afterwards wafted us to the shore, would then certainly have beaten us to pieces. In the evening of the preceding day, we had observed a fire near the beach over against us; and as it would be necessary for us to stay some time in this place, we were not without hope of making an acquaintance with the people. We saw more fires upon the hills to-day, and with our glasses discovered four Indians going along the shore, who stopped, and made two fires; but for what purpose it was impossible we should guess.

The scurvy now began to make its appearance among us, with many formidable symptoms. Our poor Indian, Tupia, who had some time before complained that his gums were sore and swelled, and who had taken plentifully of our lemon juice by the Surgeon's direction, had now livid spots upon his legs, and other indubitable testimonies that the disease had made a rapid progress, notwithstanding all our remedies, among which the bark had been liberally administered. Mr. Green, our astronomer, was also declining; and these, among other circumstances, imbibtered the delay which prevented our going ashore.

In the morning of the 17th, though the wind was still fresh, we ventured to weigh, and push in for the harbour; but in doing this we twice run the ship aground: the first time she went off without any trouble, but the second time she stuck fast. We now got down the fore-yard, fore-top-masts, and booms, and taking them overboard, made a raft of them along-side of the ship. The tide was happily rising, and about one o'clock in the afternoon, she floated. We soon warped her into the harbour, and having moored her along-side of a steep beach to the south, we got the anchors, cables, and all the hawsers on shore before night.

1770.
June.

C H A P. VI.

Transactions while the Ship was refitting in Endeavour River: a Description of the adjacent Country, its Inhabitants, and Productions.

Monday 18. **I**N the morning of Monday the 18th, a stage was made from the ship to the shore, which was so bold that she floated at twenty feet distance: two tents were also set up, one for the sick, and the other for stores and provisions, which were landed in the course of the day. We also landed all the empty water casks, and part of the stores. As soon as the tent for the sick was got ready for their reception, they were sent ashore to the number of eight or nine; and the boat was dispatched to haul the seine, in hopes of procuring some fish for their refreshment; but she returned without success. In the mean time, I climbed one of the highest hills among those that overlooked the harbour, which afforded by no means a comfortable prospect: the low land near the river is wholly overrun with mangroves, among which the salt water flows every tide; and the high land appeared to be every where stony and barren. In the mean time Mr. Banks had also taken a walk up the country, and met with the frames of several old Indian houses, and places where they had dressed shell-fish; but they seemed not to have been frequented for some months. Tupia, who had employed himself in angling, and lived intirely upon what he caught, recovered in a surprising degree; but Mr. Green still continued to be extremely ill.

Tuesday 19. The next morning I got the four remaining guns out of the hold, and mounted them upon the quarter-deck; I also got a spare anchor and anchor-stock ashore, and the remaining part of the stores and ballast that were in the hold: set up the smith's forge, and employed the armourer and his mate to make nails and other necessities for the repairs of the ship. In the afternoon all the officers stores and the ground tier of water were got out; so that nothing remained in the fore and main hold, but the coals, and a small quantity of stone ballast. This day

1770.
June.

day Mr. Banks crossed the river to take a view of the country on the other side: he found it consist principally of sand-hills, where he saw some Indian houses, which appeared to have been very lately inhabited. In his walk he met with vast flocks of pigeons and crows: of the pigeons, which were exceedingly beautiful, he shot several, but the crows, which were exactly like those in England, were so shy, that he could not get within reach of them.

On the 20th, we landed the powder, and got out the stone ballast and wood, which brought the ship's draught of water to eight feet ten inches forward, and thirteen feet abaft; and this I thought, with the difference that would be made by trimming the coals aft, would be sufficient; for I found that the water rose and fell perpendicularly eight feet at the spring-tides: but as soon as the coals were trimmed from over the leak, we could hear the water rush in a little abaft the foremast, about three feet from the keel: this determined me to clear the hold intirely. This evening Mr. Banks observed that in many parts of the inlet there were large quantities of pumice stones, which lay at a considerable distance above high-water mark; whither they might have been carried either by the freshes or extraordinary high tides, for there could be no doubt but that they came from the sea.

The next morning we went early to work, and by four o'clock in the afternoon had got out all the coals, cast the moorings loose, and warped the ship a little higher up the harbour to a place which I thought most convenient for laying her a-shore in order to stop the leak. Her draught of water forward was now seven feet nine inches, and abaft thirteen feet six inches. At eight o'clock, it being high-water, I hauled her bow close a-shore; but kept her stern a-float, because I was afraid of helping her; it was however necessary to lay the whole of her as near the ground as possible.

At two o'clock in the morning of the 22d, the tide left her, and gave us an opportunity to examine the leak, which we found to be at her floor heads, a little before the starboard fore-chains. In this place the rocks had made their way through four planks, and even into the timbers; three more planks were much damaged,

1770.
June.

damaged, and the appearance of these breaches was very extraordinary: there was not a splinter to be seen, but all was as smooth, as if the whole had been cut away by an instrument: the timbers in this place were happily very close, and if they had not, it would have been absolutely impossible to have saved the ship. But after all, her preservation depended upon a circumstance still more remarkable: in one of the holes, which was big enough to have sunk us, if we had had eight pumps instead of four, and been able to keep them incessantly going, was in great measure plugged up by a fragment of the rock, which, after having made the wound, was left sticking in it; so that the water which at first had gained upon our pumps, was what came in at the interstices, between the stone and the edges of the hole that received it. We found also several pieces of the fothering, which had made their way between the timbers, and in a great measure stopped those parts of the leak which the stone had left open. Upon further examination, we found that, besides the leak, considerable damage had been done to the bottom; great part of the sheathing was gone from under the larboard bow; a considerable part of the false keel was also wanting, and these indeed we had seen swim away in fragments from the vessel, while she lay beating against the rock: the remainder of it was in so shattered a condition that it had better have been gone, and the fore-foot and main keel were also damaged, but not so as to produce any immediate danger: what damage she might have received abaft could not yet be exactly known, but we had reason to think it was not much, as but little water made its way into her bottom, while the tide kept below the leak which has already been described. By nine o'clock in the morning the carpenters got to work upon her, while the smiths were busy in making bolts and nails. In the mean time, some of the people were sent on the other side of the water to shoot pigeons for the sick, who at their return reported that they had seen an animal as large as a greyhound, of a slender make, a mouse colour, and extremely swift; they discovered also many Indian houses, and a fine stream of fresh water.

The

1770.
June.

Saturd. 23.

The next morning I sent a boat to haul the seine; but at noon it returned with only three fish, and yet we saw them in plenty leaping about the harbour. This day the Carpenter finished the repairs that were necessary on the starboard side, and at nine o'clock in the evening we heeled the ship the other way, and hauled her off about two feet, for fear of neiping. This day almost every body had seen the animal which the pigeon-shooters had brought an account of the day before; and one of the seamen, who had been rambling in the woods, told us at his return, that he verily believed he had seen the devil. We naturally inquired in what form he had appeared, and his answer was in so singular a stile that I shall set down his own words: "He was, says John, as large as a one gallon keg, and very like it: he had horns and wings, yet he crept so slowly through the grass, that if I had not been *afeard* I might have touched him." This formidable apparition we afterwards discovered to have been a bat; and the bats here must be acknowledged to have a frightful appearance, for they are nearly black, and full as large as a partridge; they have indeed no horns, but the fancy of a man who thought he saw the devil might easily supply that defect.

Sunday 24.

Early on the 24th the carpenters began to repair the sheathing under the larboard bow, where we found two planks cut about half through; and in the mean time I sent a party of men, under the direction of Mr. Gore, in search of refreshments for the sick; this party returned about noon with a few palm-cabbages, and a bunch or two of wild plantains; the plantains were the smallest I had ever seen, and the pulp, though it was well tasted, was full of small stones. As I was walking this morning, at a little distance from the ship, I saw myself one of the animals which had been so often described; it was of a light mouse colour, and in size and shape very much resembling a greyhound; it had a long tail also, which it carried like a greyhound; and I should have taken it for a wild dog, if, instead of running, it had not leaped like a hare or deer; its legs were said to be very slender, and the print of its foot to be like that of a goat; but where I saw it, the grass was so high that the legs were concealed, and the ground

was

1770.
June.

was too hard to receive the track. Mr. Banks also had an imperfect view of this animal, and was of opinion that its species was hitherto unknown.

After the ship was hauled ashore, all the water that came into her of course went backwards; so that, although she was dry forward, she had nine feet water abaft. As in this port, therefore, her bottom could not be examined on the inside, I took the advantage of the tide being out, this evening, to get the master and two of the men to go under her, and examine her whole larboard side without. They found the sheathing gone about the floor-heads a-breast of the main-mast, and part of a plank a little damaged; but all agreed that she had received no other material injury. The loss of her sheathing alone was a great misfortune, as the worms would now be let into her bottom, which might expose us to great inconvenience and danger; but as I knew no remedy for the mischief but heaving her down, which would be a work of immense labour and long time, if practicable at all in our present situation, I was obliged to be content. The carpenters, however, continued to work under her bottom in the evening, till they were prevented by the tide: the morning tide did not ebb out far enough to permit them to work at all; for we had only one tolerable high and low tide in four-and-twenty hours, as indeed we had experienced when we lay upon the rock. The position of the ship, which threw the water in her a-baft, was very near depriving the world of all the knowledge which Mr. Banks had endured so much labour, and so many risks to procure; for he had removed the curious collection of plants, which he made during the whole voyage, into the bread-room, which lies in the after part of the ship, as a place of the greatest security; and nobody having thought of the danger to which laying her head so much higher than the stern would expose them, they were this day found under water. Most of them, however, were, by indefatigable care and attention, restored to a state of preservation, but some were entirely spoiled and destroyed.

Monday 25.

The 25th was employed in filling water and overhauling the rigging, and at low water the carpenters finished

1770.
June.

finished the repairs under the larboard bow, and every other place which the tide would permit them to come at: some casks were then lashed under her bows, to facilitate her floating; and at night, when it was high water, we endeavoured to heave her off, but without success, for some of the casks that were lashed to her gave way.

The morning of the 26th was employed in getting more casks ready for the same purpose; and in the afternoon we lashed no less than eight-and-thirty under the ship's bottom; but, to our great mortification, these also proved ineffectual, and we found ourselves reduced to the necessity of waiting till the next spring-tide. Tuesday 26.

This day some of our gentlemen, who had made an excursion into the woods, brought home the leaves of a plant, which was thought to be the same that in the West Indies is called coccos, but upon trial the roots proved too acrid to be eaten; the leaves, however, were little inferior to spinnage. In the place where these plants were gathered grew plenty of the cabbage-trees, which have occasionally been mentioned before, a kind of wild plantain, the fruit of which was so full of stones as scarcely to be eatable; another fruit was also found, about the size of a small golden pippin, but flatter, and of a deep purple colour; when first gathered from the tree it was very hard and disagreeable, but after being kept a few days became soft, and tasted very much like an indifferent damascene.

The next morning we began to move some of the weight from the after-part of the ship forward, to ease her; in the mean time the Armourer continued to work at the forge, the Carpenter was busy in caulking the ship, and the men employed in filling water and over-hauling the rigging. In the forenoon I went myself in the pinnace up the harbour, and made several hauls with the seine, but caught only between twenty and thirty fish, which were given to the sick and convalescent. Wedn. 27.

On the 28th Mr. Banks went with some of the seamen up the country, to shew them the plant which in the West Indies is called Indian kale, and which served us for greens. Tupia had much meliorated the root Thurs. 28.

LIEUT. COOK'S VOYAGE

1770.
June.

root of the cocos, by giving them a long dressing in his country oven, but they were so small that we did not think them an object for the ship. In their walk they found one tree which had been notched for the convenience of climbing it, in the same manner with those we had seen in Botany Bay; they saw also many nests of white ants, which resemble those of the East Indies, the most pernicious insects in the world. The nests were of a pyramidical figure, from a few inches to six feet high, and very much resembled the stones in England, which are said to be monuments of the Druids. Mr. Gore, who was also this day four or five miles up the country, reported that he had seen the footsteps of men, and tracked animals of three or four different sorts, but had not been fortunate enough to see either man or beast.

Friday 29.

At two o'clock in the morning of the 29th I observed, in conjunction with Mr. Green, an emerſion of Jupiter's first ſatellite; the time here was $2^h 18' 53''$, which gave the longitude of this place $214^{\circ} 42' 30''$ W. its latitude is $15^{\circ} 26'$ S. At break of day I ſent the boat again with the ſeine, and in the afternoon it returned, with as much fiſh as enabled me to give every man a pound and an half. One of my miſhipmen, an American, who was this day abroad with his gun, reported that he had ſeen a wolf, exactly like thoſe which he had been uſed to ſee in his own country, and that he had ſhot at it, but did not kill it.

Saturd. 30.

The next morning, encouraged by the ſucceſs of the day before, I ſent the boat again to haul the ſeine, and another party to gather greens; I ſent alſo ſome of the young gentlemen to take a plan of the harbour, and went myſelf upon a hill, which lies over the ſouth point, to take a view of the ſea. At this time it was low water, and I ſaw, with great concern, innumerable ſand-banks and ſhoals lying all along the coaſt in every direction. The innermoſt lay about three or four miles from the ſhore, the outermoſt extended as far as I could ſee with my glaſs, and many of them did but juſt riſe above water. There was ſome appearance of a paſſage to the northward, and I had no hope of getting clear but in that direction; for as the wind blows conſtantly from the S. E. it would have been difficult,

difficult, if not impossible, to return back to the southward.

1770.
June.

Mr. Gore reported, that he had this day seen two animals like dogs, of a straw colour, that they ran like a hare, and were about the same size. In the afternoon the people returned from hauling the seine, with still better success than before, for I was now able to distribute two pounds and an half to each man: the greens that had been gathered I ordered to be boiled among the pease, and they made an excellent mess, which, with two copious supplies of fish, afforded us unspeakable refreshment.

The next day, July the 1st, being Sunday, every body had liberty to go a-shore, except one from each mess, who were again sent out with the seine. The seine was again equally successful, and the people who went up the country gave an account of having seen several animals, though none of them were to be caught. They saw a fire also about a mile up the river, and Mr. Gore, the Second Lieutenant, picked up the husk of a cocoa-nut, which had been cast upon the beach, and was full of barnacles; this probably might come from some island to windward, perhaps from the Terra del Espirito Santo of Quiros, as we were now in the latitude where it is said to lie. This day the thermometer in the shade rose to 87, which was higher than it had been at any day since we came upon this coast.

July.

Sunday 1.

Early the next morning I sent the master in the pin-nace, out of the harbour, to sound about the shoals in the offing, and look for a channel to the northward. At this time we had a breeze from the land, which continued till about nine o'clock, and was the first we had had since our coming into the river. At low water we lashed some empty casks under the ship's bows, having some hope that, as the tides were rising, she would float the next high water. We still continued to fish with great success, and at high water we again attempted to heave the ship off, but our utmost efforts were still ineffectual.

Mond. 2.

The next day at noon the Master returned, and reported, that he had found a passage out to sea between the shoals, and described its situation. The shoals, he said,

Tuesd. 3.

1770.
July.

said, consisted of coral rocks, many of which were dry at low water, and upon one of which he had been a-shore. He found here some cockles, of so enormous a size, that one of them was more than two men could eat, and a great variety of other shell-fish, of which he brought us a plentiful supply. In the evening he had also landed in a bay about three leagues to the northward of our station, where he disturbed some of the natives who were at supper; they all fled with the greatest precipitation at his approach, leaving some fresh sea eggs and a fire ready kindled behind them, but there was neither house nor hovel near the place. We observed, that although the shoals that lie just within sight of the coast, abound with shell-fish, which may be easily caught at low water, yet we saw no such shells about the fire-places on shore. This day an alligator was seen to swim about the ship for some time, and at high water we made another effort to float her, which happily succeeded: we found, however, that by lying so long with her head a-ground, and her stern a float, she had sprung a plank between decks, a-breast of the main-chains, so that it was become necessary to lay her a-shore again.

Wednes. 4.

The next morning was employed in trimming her upon an even keel; and in the afternoon, having warped her over, and waited for high water, we laid her a-shore on the sand-bank, on the south side of the river; for the damage she had received already from the great descent of the ground, made me afraid to lay her broad-side to the shore in the same place from which we had just floated her. I was now very desirous to make another trial to come at her bottom, where the sheathing had been rubbed off; but though she had scarcely four feet water under her, when the tide was out, yet that part was not dry.

Thurs. 5.

On the 5th I got one of the Carpenter's crew, a man in whom I could confide, to go down again to the ship's bottom, and examine the place. He reported, that three streaks of the sheathing, about eight feet long, were wanting, and that the main plank had been a little rubbed: this account perfectly agreed with the report of the Master, and others, who had been under her bottom before. I had the comfort, however, to find
the

1770.
July.

the Carpenter of opinion, that this would be of little consequence, and therefore, the other damage being repaired, she was again floated at high water, and moored along-side the beach, where the stores had been deposited: we then went to work to take the stores on board, and put her in a condition for the sea. This day Mr. Banks crossed to the other side of the harbour, where, as he walked along a sandy beach, he found innumerable fruits, and many of them such as no plants which he had discovered in this country produced; among others were some cocoa-nuts, which Tupia said had been opened by a kind of crab, which, from his description, we judged to be the same that the Dutch call Beurs Krabbe, and which we had not seen in these seas. All the vegetable substances which he found in this place were encrusted with marine productions, and covered with barnacles; a sure sign that they must have come far by sea, and, as the trade-wind blows right upon the shore, probably from Terra del Espíritu Santo, which has been mentioned already.

The next morning Mr. Banks, with Lieutenant Friday 6.
Gore, and three men, set out in a small boat up the river, with a view to spend two or three days in an excursion, to examine the country, and kill some of the animals which had been so often seen at a distance.

On the 7th I sent the Master again out to sound about Saturday 7.
the shoals, the account which he brought me of a channel being by no means satisfactory; and we spent the remainder of this day, and the morning of the next, in fishing and other necessary occupations.

About four o'clock in the afternoon Mr. Banks and Sunday 8.
his party returned, and gave us an account of their expedition. Having proceeded about three leagues among swamps and mangroves, they went up into the country, which they found to differ but little from what they had seen before; they pursued their course therefore up the river, which at length was contracted into a narrow channel, and was bounded, not by swamps and mangroves, but by steep banks, that were covered with trees of a most beautiful verdure, among which was that which in the West Indies is called Mohoe, or the bark tree, the *hibiscus tiliaceus*. The land within

1770.
July.

within was in general low, and had a thick covering of long grass; the soil seemed to be such as promised great fertility, to any who should plant and improve it. In the course of the day Tupia saw an animal, which, by his description, Mr. Banks judged to be a wolf; they also saw three other animals, but could neither catch nor kill one of them, and a kind of bat as large as a partridge; but this also eluded all their diligence and skill. At night they took up their lodging close to the banks of the river, and made a fire, but the musquitos swarmed about them in such numbers, that their quarters were almost untenable; they followed them into the smoke, and almost into the fire, which, hot as the climate was, they could better endure than the stings of these insects, which were an intolerable torment. The fire, the flies, and the want of a better bed than the ground, rendered the night extremely uncomfortable, so that they passed it not in sleep, but in restless wishes for the return of day. With the first dawn they set out in search of game, and, in a walk of many miles, they saw four animals of the same kind, two of which Mr. Banks's greyhound fairly chased; but they threw him out at a great distance, by leaping over the long thick grass, which prevented his running: this animal was observed not to run upon four legs, but to bound or hop forward upon two, like the Jerbua, or *Mus Jaculus*. About noon they returned to the boat, and again proceeded up the river, which was soon contracted into a fresh water brook, where, however, the tide rose to a considerable height. As the evening approached it became low water, and it was then so shallow that they were obliged to get out of the boat and drag her along, till they could find a place in which they might, with some hope of rest, pass the night. Such a place at length offered, and while they were getting the things out of the boat, they observed a smoke at the distance of about a furlong: as they did not doubt but that some of the natives, with whom they had so long and earnestly desired to become personally acquainted, were about the fire, three of the party went immediately towards it, hoping that so small a number would not put them to flight: when

1770.
July.

when they came up to the place, however, they found it deserted, and therefore they conjectured, that before they had discovered the Indians, the Indians had discovered them. They found the fire still burning, in the hollow of an old tree that was become touch-wood, and several branches of trees newly broken down, with which children appeared to have been playing: they observed also many footsteps upon the sand, below high water mark, which were certain indications that the Indians had been recently upon the spot. Several houses were found at a little distance, and some ovens dug in the ground in the same manner as those of Otaheite, in which victuals appeared to have been dressed since the morning, and, scattered about them, lay some shells of a kind of clam, and some fragments of roots, the refuse of the meal. After regretting their disappointment, they repaired to their quarters, which was a broad sand-bank, under the shelter of a bush. Their beds were plantain leaves, which they spread upon the sand, and which were as soft as a mattress; their cloaks served them for bed-clothes, and some bunches of grass for pillows; with these accommodations they hoped to pass a better night than the last, especially as, to their great comfort, not a musquito was to be seen. Here then they lay down, and, such is the force of habit, they resigned themselves to sleep, without once reflecting upon the probability and danger of being found by the Indians in that situation. If this appears strange, let us for a moment reflect, that every danger, and every calamity, after a time becomes familiar, and loses its effect upon the mind. If it were possible that a man should first be made acquainted with his mortality, or even with the inevitable debility and infirmities of old age, when his understanding had arrived at its full strength, and life was endeared by the enjoyments of youth, and vigour, and health, with what an agony of terror and distress would the intelligence be received! yet, being gradually acquainted with these mournful truths, by insensible degrees, we scarce know when, they lose all their force, and we think no more of the approach of old age and death, than these wanderers of an unknown desert did of a less obvious and certain evil,

1770.
July.

the approach of the native savages, at a time when they must have fallen an easy prey to their malice or their fears: and it is remarkable, that the greater part of those who have been condemned to suffer a violent death, have slept the night immediately preceding their execution; though there is, perhaps, no instance of a person accused of a capital crime having slept the first night of his confinement. Thus is the evil of life in some degree a remedy for itself; and though every man at twenty deprecates fourscore, almost every man is as tenacious of life at fourscore as at twenty; and if he does not suffer under any painful disorder, loses as little of the comforts that remain, by reflecting that he is upon the brink of the grave, where the earth already crumbles under his feet, as he did of the pleasures of his better days, when his dissolution, though certain, was supposed to be at a distance.

Our travellers having slept, without once awaking, till the morning, examined the river, and finding the tide favoured their return, and the country promised nothing worthy of a farther search, they re-imbarked in their boat, and made the best of their way to the ship.

Soon after the arrival of this party, the Master also returned, having been several leagues out to sea, and he was now of opinion, that there was no getting out where before he thought there had been a passage; his expedition, however, was by no means without its advantage; for having been a second time upon the rock where he had seen the large cockles, he met with a great number of turtle, three of which he caught, that together weighed seven hundred and ninety-one pounds, though he had no better instrument than a boat-hook.

Monday 9.

The next morning, therefore, I sent him out again, with proper instruments for taking them, and Mr. Banks went with him; but the success did not at all answer our expectations, for, by the unaccountable conduct of the officer, not a single turtle was taken, nor could he be persuaded to return. Mr. Banks, however, went a-shore upon the reef, where he saw several of the large cockles, and having collected many shells, and marine productions, he returned at eleven o'clock

o'clock at night, in his own small boat, the Master still continuing with the large one upon the rock. In the afternoon seven or eight of the natives had appeared on the south side of the river, and two of them came down to the sandy point, opposite to the ship; but upon seeing me put off in a boat to speak with them, they all ran away with the greatest precipitation.

1770.
July.

As the Master continued absent with the boat all night, I was forced to send the Second Lieutenant for him early the next morning in the yawl; and soon after Tuesday 10. four of the natives appeared upon the sandy point, on the north side of the river, having with them a small wooden canoe with outriggers. They seemed for some time to be busily employed in striking fish. Some of our people were for going over to them in a boat, but this I would by no means permit, repeated experience having convinced me that it was more likely to prevent than procure an interview. I was determined to try what could be done by a contrary method, and accordingly let them alone, without appearing to take the least notice of them. This succeeded so well, that at length two of them came in the canoe within musket shot of the ship, and there talked a great deal in a very loud tone. We understood nothing that they said, and therefore could answer their harangue only by shouting, and making all the signs of invitation and kindness that we could devise. During this conference, they came insensibly nearer and nearer, holding up their lances, not in a threatening manner, but as if to intimate, that if we offered them any injury they had weapons to revenge it. When they were almost along-side of us, we threw them some cloth, nails, beads, paper, and other trifles, which they received without the least appearance of satisfaction. At last, one of the people happened to throw them a small fish; at this they expressed the greatest joy imaginable, and intimating by signs that they would fetch their companions, immediately paddled away towards the shore. In the mean time some of our people, and among them Tupia, landed on the opposite side of the river. The canoe, with all the four Indians, very soon returned to the ship, and came quite along-

A a 2

side,

1770.
July.

side, without expressing any fear or distrust. We distributed some more presents among them, and soon after they left us, and landed on the same side of the river where our people had gone a-shore: every man carried in his hand two lances, and a stick, which is used in throwing them, and advanced to the place where Tupia and the rest of our people were sitting. Tupia soon prevailed upon them to lay down their arms, and come forward without them; he then made signs that they should sit down by him, with which they complied, and seemed to be under no apprehension or constraint; several more of us then going a-shore, they expressed some jealousy lest we should get between them and their arms; we took care, however, to shew them that we had no such intention, and having joined them, we made them some more presents, as a farther testimony of our good-will, and our desire to obtain theirs. We continued together, with the utmost cordiality, till dinner-time, and then, giving them to understand that we were going to eat, we invited them by signs to go with us; this, however, they declined, and as soon as we left them, they went away in their canoe. One of these men was somewhat above the middle age, the other three were young; they were in general of the common stature, but their limbs were remarkably small; their skin was of the colour of wood-foot, or what would be called a dark chocolate colour; their hair was black, but not woolly; it was short cropped, in some lank, and in others curled. Dampier says, that the people whom he saw on the western coast of this country wanted two of their fore-teeth, but these had no such defect; some part of their bodies had been painted red, and the upper lip and breast of one of them was painted with streaks of white, which he called *Carbanda*; their features were far from being disagreeable, their eyes were lively, and their teeth even and white, their voices were soft and tuneable, and they repeated many words after us with great facility. In the night Mr. Gore and the Master returned with the long-boat, and brought one turtle and a few shell-fish. The yawl had been left upon the shoal with six men, to make a farther trial for turtle.

The

1770.
July.

Wednes. 11.

The next morning we had another visit from four of the natives, three of them had been with us before, but the fourth was a stranger, whose name, as we learned from his companions who introduced him, was YAPARICO. This gentleman was distinguished by an ornament of a very striking appearance, it was the bone of a bird, nearly as thick as a man's finger, and five or six inches long, which he had thrust into a hole, made in the gristle that divides the nostrils; of this we had seen one instance, and only one, in New Zealand; but, upon examination, we found, that among all these people this part of the nose was perforated, to receive an ornament of the same kind. They had also holes in their ears, though nothing was then hanging to them, and had bracelets upon the upper part of their arms, made of plaited hair, so that, like the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, they seem to be fond of ornament, though they are absolutely without apparel; and one of them, to whom I had given part of an old shirt, instead of throwing it over any part of his body, tied it as a fillet round his head. They brought with them a fish, which they gave us, as we supposed, in return for the fish that we had given them the day before. They seemed to be much pleased, and in no haste to leave us; but seeing some of our gentlemen examine their canoe with great curiosity and attention, they were alarmed, and jumping immediately into it, paddled away without speaking a word.

About two the next morning the yawl, which had been left upon the shoal, returned with three turtles, and a large skate. As it seemed now probable that this fishery might be prosecuted with advantage, I sent her out again, after breakfast, for a further supply. Soon after three Indians ventured down to Tupia's tent, and were so well pleased with their reception, that one of them went with the canoe to fetch two others, whom we had never seen: when he returned, he introduced the strangers by name, a ceremony which, upon such occasions, was never omitted. As they had received the fish that was thrown into their canoe, when they first approached the ship, with so much pleasure, some fish was offered to them now, and we were greatly sur-

1770.
July.

prized to see that it was received with the greatest indifference: they made signs, however, to some of the people, that they should dress it for them, which was immediately done; but after eating a little of it, they threw the rest to Mr. Banks's dog. They staid with us all the forenoon, but would never venture above twenty yards from their canoe. We now perceived that the colour of their skin was not so dark as it appeared, what we had taken for their complexion, being the effects of dirt and smoke, in which, we imagined, they contrived to sleep, notwithstanding the heat of the climate, as the only means in their power to keep off the musquitos. Among other things that we had given them when we first saw them, were some medals, which we had hung round their necks by a riband; and these ribands were so changed by smoke, that we could not easily distinguish of what colour they had been. This incident led us more narrowly to examine the colour of their skin. While these people were with us, we saw two others on the point of land that lay on the opposite side of the river, at the distance of about two hundred yards, and by our glasses discovered them to be a woman and a boy; the woman, like the rest, being stark naked. We observed, that all of them were remarkably clean limbed, and exceedingly active and nimble. One of these strangers had a necklace of shells, very prettily made, and a bracelet upon his arm, formed of several strings, so as to resemble what in England is called gymp: both of them had a piece of bark tied over the forehead, and were disfigured by the bone in the nose. We thought their language more harsh than that of the Islanders in the South Sea, and they were continually repeating the word *chercau*, which we imagined to be a term expressing admiration, by the manner in which it was uttered: they also cried out, when they saw any thing new, *cher, tut, tut, tut, tut!* which probably had a similar signification. Their canoe was not above ten feet long, and very narrow, but it was fitted with an outrigger, much like those of the islands, though in every respect very much inferior: when it was in shallow water they set it on with poles, and when in deep they worked it with paddles about four feet long; it contained just four people, so that the people who visited

us to-day, went away at two turns. Their lances were like those that we had seen in Botany Bay, except that they had but a single point, which in some of them was the sting of the ray, and barbed with two or three sharp bones of the same fish: it was indeed a most terrible weapon, and the instrument which they used in throwing it, seemed to be formed with more art than any we had seen before. About twelve o'clock next day the yawl returned, with another turtle and a large sting-ray, and in the evening was sent out again. 1770.
July.

The next morning two of the Indians came on board, but after a short stay went along the shore, and applied themselves with great diligence to the striking of fish. Mr. Gore, who went out this day with his gun, had the good fortune to kill one of the animals which had been so much the subject of our speculation; an idea of it will be best conceived by the cut, page 345, without which the most accurate verbal description would answer very little purpose, as it has not similitude enough to any animal already known, to admit of illustration by reference. In form it is most like the gerbua, which it also resembles in its motion, as has been observed already; but it greatly differs in size, the gerbua not being larger than a common rat, and this animal, when full grown, being as big as a sheep; this individual was a young one, much under its full growth, weighing only thirty-eight pounds; the head, neck, and shoulders are very small, in proportion to the other parts of the body; the tail is nearly as long as the body, thick near the rump, and tapering towards the end; the fore-legs of this individual were only eight inches long, and the hind-legs two-and-twenty; its progress is by successive leaps or hops, of a great length, in an erect posture; the fore-legs are kept bent close to the breast, and seemed to be of use only for digging; the skin is covered with a short fur, of a dark mouse or grey colour, excepting the head and ears, which bear a slight resemblance to those of a hare. This animal is called by the natives *Kanguroo*. Friday 13.
Saturd. 14.

The next day our kanguroo was dressed for dinner, and proved most excellent meat. We might now indeed be said to fare sumptuously every day, for we had turtle in great plenty, and we all agreed that they were

1770.
July.

much better than any we had tasted in England, which we imputed to their being eaten fresh from the sea, before their natural fat had been wasted, or their juices changed, by a diet and situation so different from what the sea affords them, as garbage and a tub. Most of those that we caught here were of the kind called green turtle, and weighed from two to three hundred weight, and when these were killed, they were always found to be full of turtle grass, which our naturalists took to be a kind of *conferva*; two of them were loggerheads, the flesh of which was much less delicious, and in their stomachs nothing was to be found but shells.

Monday 16. In the morning of the 16th, while the people were employed, as usual, in getting the ship ready for the sea, I climbed one of the hills on the north side of the river, from which I had an extensive view of the inland country, and found it agreeably diversified by hills, vallies, and large plains, which in many places were richly covered with wood. This evening we observed an emersion of Jupiter's first satellite, which gave $214^{\circ} 53' 45''$ of longitude. The observation which was made on the 29th of June gave $214^{\circ} 42' 30''$; the mean is $214^{\circ} 48' 7\frac{1}{2}''$, the longitude of this place west of Greenwich.

Tuesday 17. On the 17th I sent the Master and one of the Mates in the pinnace, to look for a channel to the northward, and I went myself with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander into the woods, on the other side of the water. Tupia, who had been thither by himself, reported, that he had seen three Indians, who had given him some roots about as thick as a man's finger, in shape not much unlike a raddish, and of a very agreeable taste. This induced us to go over, hoping that we should be able to improve our acquaintance with the natives: in a very little time we discovered four of them in a canoe, who as soon as they saw us came a-shore, and, though they were all strangers, walked up to us, without any signs of suspicion or fear. Two of these had necklaces of shells, which we could not persuade them to part with for any thing we could give them: we presented them however with some beads, and after a short stay

stay they departed. We attempted to follow them, hoping that they would conduct us to some place where we should find more of them, and have an opportunity of seeing their women; but they made us understand by signs, that they did not desire our company.

1770.
July.

At eight o'clock the next morning we were visited Wedn. 18. by several of the natives, who were now become quite familiar. One of them, at our desire, threw his lance, which was about eight feet long: it flew with a swiftness and steadiness that surprised us, and though it was never more than four feet from the ground, it entered deeply into a tree at fifty paces distance. After this they ventured on board, where I left them, to all appearance much entertained, and went again with Mr. Banks to take a view of the country; but chiefly to indulge an anxious curiosity, by looking round us upon the sea, of which our wishes almost persuaded us we had formed an idea more disadvantageous than the truth. After having walked about seven or eight miles along the shore to the northward, we ascended a very high hill, and were soon convinced that the danger of our situation was at least equal to our apprehensions; for in whatever direction we turned our eyes, we saw rocks and shoals without number, and no passage out to sea, but through the winding channels between them, which could not be navigated without the last degree of difficulty and danger. We returned therefore to the ship, not in better spirits than when we left it; we found several natives still on board, and we were told that the turtles, of which we had then no less than twelve upon the deck, had fixed their attention more than any thing else in the ship.

On the 19th in the morning we were visited by ten Thursd. 19. of the natives, the greater part from the other side of the river, where we saw six or seven more, most of them women, and, like all the rest of the people we had seen in this country, they were stark naked. Our guests brought with them a greater number of lances than they had ever done before, and having laid them up in a tree, they set a man and a boy to watch them: the rest then came on board, and we soon perceived that

1770.
July.

that they had determined to get one of our turtle, which was probably as great a dainty to them as to us. They first asked us, by signs, to give them one; and being refused, they expressed, both by looks and gestures, great disappointment and anger. At this time we happened to have no victuals dressed, but I offered one of them some biscuit, which he snatched and threw overboard with great disdain. One of them renewed his request to Mr. Banks, and upon a refusal stamped with his foot, and pushed him from him in a transport of resentment and indignation: having applied by turns to almost every person who appeared to have any command in the ship, without success, they suddenly seized two of the turtles, and dragged them towards the side of the ship where their canoe lay: our people soon forced them out of their hands, and replaced them with the rest. They would not however relinquish their enterprise, but made several other attempts of the same kind, in all which being equally disappointed, they suddenly leaped into their canoe in a rage, and began to paddle towards the shore. At the same time, I went into the boat with Mr. Banks, and five or six of the ship's crew, and we got ashore before them, where many more of our people were already engaged in various employments; as soon as they landed, they seized their arms, and, before we were aware of their design, they snatched a brand from under a pitch kettle which was boiling, and making a circuit to the windward of the few things we had on shore, they set fire to the grass in their way, with surprising quickness and dexterity: the grass, which was five or six feet high, and as dry as stubble, burnt with amazing fury; and the fire made a rapid progress towards a tent of Mr. Banks's, which had been set up for Tupia when he was sick, taking in its course a sow and pigs, one of which it scorched to death. Mr. Banks leaped into a boat, and fetched some people from on board, just time enough to save his tent, by hauling it down upon the beach; but the smith's forge, at least such part of it as would burn, was consumed. While this was doing, the Indians went to a place at some distance where several of our people were washing, and where our nets, among which was the

1770.
July.

the seine, and a great quantity of linen, were laid out to dry ; here they again set fire to the grass, entirely disregarding both treats and entreaties. We were therefore obliged to discharge a musquet, loaded with small shot, at one of them, which drew blood at the distance of about forty yards, and this putting them to flight, we extinguished the fire at this place before it had made much progress ; but where the grass had been first kindled, it spread into the woods to a great distance. As the Indians were still in sight, I fired a musquet, charged with ball, a-breast of them among the mangroves, to convince them that they were not yet out of our reach : upon hearing the ball they quickened their pace, and we soon lost sight of them. We thought they would now give us no more trouble ; but soon after we heard their voices in the woods, and perceived that they came nearer and nearer. I set out, therefore, with Mr. Banks and three or four more, to meet them : when our parties came in sight of each other, they halted, except one old man, who came forward to meet us : at length he stopped, and having uttered some words, which we were very sorry we could not understand, he went back to his companions, and the whole body slowly retreated. We found means however to seize some of their darts, and continued to follow them about a mile : we then sat down upon some rocks, from which we could observe their motions, and they also sat down at about an hundred yards distance. After a short time, the old man again advanced towards us, carrying in his hand a lance without a point : he stopped several times, at different distances, and spoke ; we answered by reckoning and making such signs of amity as we could devise ; upon which the messenger of peace, as we supposed him to be, turned and spoke aloud to his companions, who then set up their lances against a tree, and advanced towards us in a friendly manner : when they came up, we returned the darts or lances that we had taken from them, and we perceived with great satisfaction that this rendered the reconciliation compleat. We found in this party four persons whom we had never seen before, who as usual were introduced to us by name ; but the man who had been wounded in the attempt

1770.
July.

tempt to burn our nets and linen, was not among them; we knew however that he could not be dangerously hurt, by the distance at which the shot reached him. We made all of them presents of such trinkets as we had about us, and they walked back with us towards the ship: as we went along, they told us, by signs, that they would not set fire to the grass any more; and we distributed among them some musquet balls, and endeavoured to make them understand their use and effect. When they came a-breast of the ship, they sat down, but could not be prevailed upon to come on board; we therefore left them, and in about two hours they went away, soon after which we perceived the woods on fire at about two miles distance. If this accident had happened a very little while sooner, the consequence might have been dreadful; for our powder had been aboard but a few days, and the store tent, with many valuable things which it contained, had not been removed many hours. We had no idea of the fury with which grass would burn in this hot climate, nor consequently of the difficulty of extinguishing it; but we determined, that if it should ever again be necessary for us to pitch our tents in such a situation, our first measure should be to clear the ground round us.

In the afternoon we got every thing on board the ship, new birthed her, and let her swing with the tide; and at night the Master returned, with the discouraging account that there was no passage for the ship to the northward.

Friday 20.

The next morning, at low water, I went and sounded and buoyed the bar, the ship being now ready for the sea. We saw no Indians this day, but all the hills round us for many miles were on fire, which at night made a most striking and beautiful appearance.

Saturd. 21.

The 21st passed without our getting sight of any of the inhabitants, and indeed without a single incident

Sunday 22.

worth notice. On the 22d we killed a turtle for the day's provision, upon opening which we found a wooden harpoon, or turtle-peg, about as thick as a man's finger, near fifteen inches long, and bearded at the end, such as we had seen among the natives, sticking through both shoulders: it appeared to have been struck

struck a considerable time, for the wound had perfectly healed up over the weapon.

1770.
July.

Monday 23.

Early in the morning of the 23d I sent some people into the country to gather a supply of the greens which have been before-mentioned by the name of Indian Kale; and one of them having straggled from the rest, suddenly fell in with four Indians, three men and a boy, whom he did not see till, by turning short in the wood, he found himself among them. They had kindled a fire, and were broiling a bird of some kind, and part of a kangaroo, the remainder of which, and a cockatoo, hung at a little distance upon a tree: the man, being unarmed, was at first greatly terrified; but he had the presence of mind not to run away, judging very rightly, that he was most likely to incur danger by appearing to apprehend it; on the contrary, he went and sat down by them, and, with an air of cheerfulness and good humour, offered them his knife, the only thing he had about him which he thought would be acceptable to them; they received it, and having handed it from one to the other, they gave it him again: he then made an offer to leave them; but this they seemed not disposed to permit: still however he dissembled his fears, and sat down again; they considered him with great attention and curiosity, particularly his clothes, and then felt his hands and face, and satisfied themselves that his body was of the same texture with their own. They treated him with the greatest civility, and having kept him about half an hour, they made signs that he might depart: he did not wait for a second dismissal, but when he left them, not taking the direct way to the ship, they came from their fire and directed him; so that they well knew whence he came.

In the mean time, Mr. Banks, having made an excursion on the other side of the river to gather plants, found the greatest part of the cloth that had been given to the Indians lying in a heap together, probably as useless lumber, not worth carrying away: and perhaps, if he had sought further, he might have found the other trinkets; for they seemed to set very little value upon any thing we had, except our turtle,

1770.
July.

turtle, which was a commodity that we were least able to spare.

The blowing weather, which prevented our attempt to get out to sea, still continuing, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again out on the 24th to see whether any new plant could be picked up: they traversed the woods all day without success; but as they were returning through a deep valley, the sides of which, though almost as perpendicular as a wall, were covered with trees and bushes; they found lying upon the ground several marking nuts, the *Anacardium Orientale*; these put them upon a new scent, and they made a most diligent search after the tree that bore them, which perhaps no European botanist ever saw; but to their great mortification they could not find it: so that, after spending much time, and cutting down four or five trees, they returned quite exhausted with fatigue to the ship.

On the 25th, having made an excursion up the river, I found a canoe belonging to our friends the Indians, whom we had not seen since the affair of the turtle; they had left it tied to some mangroves, about a mile distant from the ship, and I could see by their fires that they were retired at least six miles directly inland.

As Mr. Banks was again gleaning the country for his Natural History on the 26th, he had the good fortune to take an animal of the *Opossum* tribe: it was a female, and with it he took two young ones: it was found much to resemble the remarkable animal of the kind, which *Monf. de Buffon* has described in his Natural History by the name of *Phalanger*, but it was not the same. *Monf. Buffon* supposes this tribe to be peculiar to America, but in this he is certainly mistaken; and probably, as *Pallas* has observed in his *Zoology*, the *Phalanger* itself is a native of the East Indies, as the animal which was caught by Mr. Banks resembled it in the extraordinary conformation of the feet, in which it differs from animals of every other tribe.

On the 27th Mr. Gore shot a kangaroo, which, with the skin, entrails, and head, weighed eighty-four pounds. Upon examination, however, we found that this animal was not at its full growth, the innermost grinders not being

being yet formed. We dressed it for dinner the next day ; but to our great disappointment, we found it had a much worse flavour than we had eaten before.

1770.
July.

Saturd. 28.

The wind continued in the same quarter, and with the same violence, till five o'clock in the morning of the 29th, when it fell calm ; soon after a light breeze sprung up from the land, and it being about two hours ebb, I sent a boat to see what water was upon the bar ; in the mean time we got the anchor up, and made all ready to put to sea. But when the boat came back, the officer reported that there were only thirteen feet water upon the bar, which was six inches less than the ship drew. We were therefore obliged to come to, and the sea breeze setting in again about eight o'clock, we gave up all hope of sailing that day.

Sunday 29.

We had fresh gales at S. E. with hazy weather and rain, till two in the morning of the 31st, when the weather being somewhat more moderate, I had thoughts of trying to warp the ship out of the harbour ; but upon going out myself first in the boat, I found it still blow too fresh for the attempt. During all this time the pinnace and yawl continued to ply the net and hook with tolerable success ; sometimes taking a turtle, and frequently bringing in from two to three hundred weight of fish.

Mond. 30.

Tuesday 31.

On the first of August the Carpenter examined the pumps, and, to our great mortification, found them all in a state of decay, owing, as he said, to the sap's having been left in the wood ; one of them was so rotten as, when hoisted up, to drop to pieces, and the rest were little better ; so that our chief trust was now in the soundness of our vessel, which happily did not admit more than one inch of water in an hour.

August.

Wedn. 1.

At six o'clock in the morning of Friday the 3d we made another unsuccessful attempt to warp the ship out of the harbour ; but at five o'clock in the morning of the 4th, our efforts had a better effect, and about seven, we got once more under sail, with a light air from the land, which soon died away, and was followed by the sea-breezes from S. E. by S. with which we stood off to sea E. by N. having the pinnace a-head, which was ordered to keep sounding continually. The yawl had been sent to the turtle bank, to take up the net

Friday 3.

Saturd. 4.

net

1770.
August.

net which had been left there; but as the wind freshened, we got out before her. A little before noon we anchored in fifteen fathoms water, with a sandy bottom; for I did not think it safe to run in among the shoals, till I had well viewed them, at low-water, from the mast-head, which might determine me which way to steer: for as yet I was in doubt whether I should beat back to the southward, round all the shoals, or seek a passage to the eastward or the northward, all which at present appeared to be equally difficult and dangerous. When we were at anchor the harbour from which we sailed bore S. 70 W. distant about five leagues; the northernmost point of the main in sight, which I named CAPE BEDFORD, and which lies in latitude $15^{\circ} 16'$ S. longitude $214^{\circ} 45'$ W. bore N. 20 W. distant three leagues and a half; but to the N. E. of this Cape we could see land which had the appearance of two high islands: the turtle banks bore east, distant one mile: our latitude by observation was $15^{\circ} 32'$ S. and our depth of water in standing off from the land was from three and an half to fifteen fathoms.

C H A P. VII.

Departure from Endeavour River; a particular Description of the Harbour there, in which the Ship was refitted, the adjacent Country, and several Islands near the Coast: the Range from Endeavour River to the Northern Extremity of the Country, and the Dangers of that Navigation.

TO the harbour which we had now left, I gave the name of ENDEAVOUR RIVER. It is only a small harbour, or creek, which runs in a winding channel three or four leagues inland, and at the head of which there is a small brook of fresh water: there is not depth of water for shipping above a mile within the bar, and at this distance only on the north side, where the bank is so steep for near a quarter of a mile, that a ship may lie a-float at low water, so near the shore as to reach it with a stage, and the situation is extremely

1770.
August.

extremely convenient for heaving down ; but at low water, the depth upon the bar is not more than nine or ten feet, nor more than seventeen or eighteen at the height of the tide ; the difference between high and low water, at spring tides, being about nine feet. At the new and full of the moon it is high water between nine and ten o'clock : it must also be remembered, that this part of the coast is so barricaded with shoals, as to make the harbour still more difficult of access ; the safest approach is from the southward, keeping the main land close upon the board all the way. Its situation may always be found by the latitude, which has been very accurately laid down. Over the south point is some high land, but the north point is formed by a low sandy beach, which extends about three miles to the northward, where the land begins again to be high.

The chief refreshment that we procured here was turtle, but as they were not to be had without going five leagues out to sea, and the weather was frequently tempestuous, we did not abound with this dainty : what we caught, as well as the fish, was always equally divided among us all by weight, the meanest person on board having the same share as myself ; and I think every commander, in such a voyage as this, will find it his interest to follow the same rule. In several parts of the sandy beaches, and sand hills near the sea, we found purslain, and a kind of bean that grows upon a stalk, which creeps along the ground : the purslain we found very good when it was boiled, and the beans are not to be despised, for we found them of great service to our sick : the best greens, however, that could be procured here, were the tops of the cocos, which have been mentioned already, as known in the West Indies by the name of Indian kale : these were, in our opinion, not much inferior to spinnage, which in taste they somewhat resemble ; the roots indeed are not good, but they might probably be meliorated by proper cultivation. They are found here chiefly in boggy ground. The few cabbage palms that we met with, were in general small, and yielded so little cabbage that they were not worth seeking.

1770.
August.

Besides the kangaroo and the opossum, that have been already mentioned, and a kind of polecat, there are wolves upon this part of the coast, if we were not deceived by the tracks upon the ground, and several species of serpents; some of the serpents are venomous, and some harmless: there are no tame animals here except dogs, and of these we saw but two or three, which frequently came about the tents, to pick up the scraps and bones that happened to lie scattered near them. There does not indeed seem to be many of any animal, except the kangaroo; we scarcely saw any other above once, but this we met with almost every time we went into the woods. Of land fowls we saw crows, kites, hawks, cockatoos of two sorts, one white and the other black, a very beautiful kind of loriquets, some parrots, pigeons of two or three sorts, and several small birds not known in Europe. The water fowls are herons, whistling ducks, which perch, and, I believe, roost upon trees, wild geese, curlews, and a few others, but these do not abound. The face of the country, which has been occasionally mentioned before, is agreeably diversified by hill and valley, lawn and wood. The soil of the hills is hard, dry, and stony, yet it produces coarse grass besides wood; the soil of the plains and valleys is in some places sand, and in some clay; in some also it is rocky and stony, like the hills; in general, however, it is well clothed, and has at least the appearance of fertility. The whole country, both hill and valley, wood and plain, abounds with ant hills, some of which are six or eight feet high, and twice as much in circumference. The trees here are not of many sorts; the gum tree, which we found on the southern part of the coast, is the most common, but here it is not so large: on each side of the river, thro' its whole course, there are mangroves in great numbers, which in some places extend a mile within the coast. The country is in all parts well watered, there being several fine rivulets at a small distance from each other, but none in the place where we lay, at least not during the time we were there, which was the dry season; we were however well supplied with water by springs, which were not far off.

In

In the afternoon of the 4th, we had a gentle breeze at S. E. and clear weather, but as I did not intend to sail till the next morning, I sent all the boats to the reef, to get what turtle and shell fish they could. At low water, I went up to the mast-head, and took a view of the shoals, which made a very threatening appearance: I could see several at a remote distance, and part of many of them was above water. The sea appeared most open to the north-east of the turtle reef, and I came to a resolution to stretch out that way close upon a wind, because if we should find no passage, we could always return the way we went. In the evening the boats brought in a turtle, a sting-ray, and as many large cockles as came to about a pound and a half a man, for in each of them there was not less than two pounds of meat: in the night also we caught several sharks, which, though not a dainty, were an acceptable increase of our fresh provisions.

1770.
August.

Saturday 4.

In the morning I waited till half ebb before I weighed, because at that time the shoals begin to appear, but the wind then blew so hard, that I was obliged to remain at an anchor: in the afternoon, however, the gale becoming more moderate, we got under sail, and stood out upon a wind N. E. by E. leaving the turtle reef to windward, and having the pinnacle sounding a-head: we had not kept this course long, before we discovered shoals before us, and upon both the bows; and at half an hour after four, having run about eight miles, the pinnacle made the signal for shoal water, where we little expected it: upon this we tacked, and stood on and off, while the pinnacle stretched farther to the eastward, and night approaching, I came to an anchor in twenty fathoms water, with a muddy bottom. Endeavour River then bore S. 52 W. Cape Bedford W. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. distant five leagues, the northermost land in sight, which had the appearance of an island, N. and a shoal, a small sandy part of which appeared above water, bore N. E. distant between two and three miles: in standing off from turtle reef to this place, we had from fourteen to twenty fathoms water, but when the pinnacle was about a mile farther to the E. N. E. there was no more than four or five feet water, with rocky ground; and yet this did not appear to us in the

Sunday 5.

1770.

August.

Monday 6.

ship. In the morning of the 6th we had a strong gale, so that instead of weighing, we were obliged to veer away more cable, and strike our top-gallant yards. At low water, myself, with several of the officers, kept a look out at the mast-head, to see if any passage could be discovered between the shoals, but nothing was in view except breakers, extending from the S. round by the E. as far as N. W. and out to sea beyond the reach of our sight; these breakers, however, did not appear to be caused by one continued shoal, but by several, which lay detached from each other: on that which lay farthest to the eastward, the sea broke very high, which made me think it was the outermost, for upon many of these within, the breakers were inconsiderable, and from about half ebb to half flood, they were not to be seen at all, which makes sailing among them still more dangerous, especially as the shoals here consist principally of coral rocks, which are as steep as a wall; upon some of them however, and generally at the north end, there are patches of sand, which are covered only at high water, and which are to be discerned at some distance. Being now convinced that there was no passage to sea, but through the labyrinth formed by these shoals, I was altogether at a loss which way to steer; when the weather should permit us to get under sail. It was the Master's opinion, that we should beat back the way we came, but this would have been an endless labour, as the wind blew strongly from that quarter, almost without intermission; on the other hand, if no passage could be found to the northward, we should be compelled to take that measure at last. These anxious deliberations engaged us till eleven o'clock at night, when the ship drove, and obliged us to veer away to a cable and one third, which brought her up; but in the morning, the gale increasing, she drove again, and we therefore let go the small bower, and veered away to a whole cable upon it, and two cables on the other anchors, yet she still drove, tho' not so fast; we then got down top gallant-masts, and struck the yards and top-masts close down, and at last had the satisfaction to find that she rode. Cape Bedford now bore W. S. W. distant three leagues and an half, and in this situation we had shoals to the eastward, extending

Tuesday 7.

ing from the S. E. by S. to the N. N. W. the nearest of which was about two miles distant. As the gale continued, with little remission, we rode till seven o'clock in the morning of the 10th, when, it being more moderate, we weighed, and stood in for the land, having at length determined to seek a passage along the shore to the northward, still keeping the boat a-head: during our run in we had from nineteen to twelve fathoms: after standing in about an hour, we edged away for three small islands that lay N. N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. three leagues from Cape Bedford, which the Master had visited while we were in port. At nine o'clock, we were a-breast of them, and between them and the main: between us and the main there was another low island, which lies N. N. W. four miles from the three islands; and in this channel we had fourteen fathoms water. The northermost point of land in sight now bore N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant about two leagues. Four or five leagues to the north of this head-land we saw three islands, near which lay some that were still smaller, and we could see the shoals and reefs without us, extending to the northward, as far as these islands: between these reefs and the head-land, we directed our course, leaving to the eastward a small island, which lies N. by E. distant four miles from the three islands. At noon we were got between the head-land and the three islands: from the head-land we were distant two leagues, and from the islands four; our latitude, by observation, was $14^{\circ} 51'$. We now thought we saw a clear opening before us, and hoped that we were once more out of danger; in this hope, however, we soon found ourselves disappointed, and for that reason I called the head-land CAPE FLATTERY. It lies in latitude $14^{\circ} 56'$ S. longitude $214^{\circ} 43'$ W. and is a lofty promontory, making next the sea in two hills, which have a third behind them, with low sandy ground on each side: it may however be still better known by the three islands out at sea: the northermost and largest lies about five leagues from the Cape, in the direction of N. N. E. From Cape Flattery the land trends away N. W. and N. W. by W. We steered along the shore N. W. by W. till one o'clock, for what we thought the open channel, when the petty officer at the mast-head cried out that he saw land a-head, extending quite round to the islands that lay without us,

1770.
August.

and a large reef between us and them ; upon this I ran up to the mast-head myself, from whence I very plainly saw the reef, which was now so far to windward that we could not weather it ; but the land a-head, which he had supposed to be the main, appeared to me to be only a cluster of small islands. As soon as I got down from the mast-head, the Master and some others went up, who all insisted that the land a-head was not islands, but the main ; and to make their report still more alarming, they said that they saw breakers all round us. In this dilemma we hauled upon a wind in for the land, and made the signal for the boat that was sounding a-head to come on board, but as she was far to leeward, we were obliged to edge away to take her up, and soon after we came to an anchor, under a point of the main, in somewhat less than five fathoms, and at about the distance of a mile from the shore. Cape Flattery now bore S. E. distant three leagues and an half. As soon as the ship was at anchor I went a-shore upon the point, which is high, and afforded me a good view of the sea-coast, trending away N. W. by W. eight or ten leagues, which, the weather not being very clear, was as far as I could see. Nine or ten small low islands, and some shoals, appeared off the coast ; I saw also some large shoals between the main and the three high islands, without which I was clearly of opinion there were more islands, and not any part of the main. Except the point I was now upon, which I called POINT LOOK-OUT, and Cape Flattery, the main land to the northward of Cape Bedford is low, and chequered with white sand and green bushes, for ten or twelve miles inland, beyond which it rises to a considerable height. To the northward of Point Look-out, the coast appeared to be shoal and flat for a considerable distance, which did not encourage the hope that the channel we had hitherto found in with the land would continue. Upon this point, which was narrow, and consisted of the finest white sand we had ever seen, we discovered the footsteps of people, and we saw also smoke and fire at a distance up the country.

In the evening I returned to the ship, and resolved the next morning to visit one of the high islands in the offing, from the top of which, as they lay five leagues

leagues out to sea, I hoped to discover more distinctly the situation of the shoals, and the channel between them.

1779.
August.

In the morning therefore of the 11th I set out in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr. Banks, whose fortitude and curiosity made him a party in every expedition, for the northermost and largest of the three islands; and at the same time I sent the Master in the yawl to leeward, to sound between the low islands and the main. In my way I passed over a reef of coral rock and sand, which lies about two leagues from the island, and I left another to leeward, which lies about three miles from it. On the north part of the reef, to the leeward, there is a low sandy island, with trees upon it; and upon the reef which we passed over we saw several turtle; we chased one or two, but having little time to spare, and the wind blowing fresh, we did not take any.

About one o'clock we reached the island, and immediately ascended the highest hill, with a mixture of hope and fear, proportioned to the importance of our business, and the uncertainty of the event. When I looked round I discovered a reef of rocks, lying between two and three leagues without the islands, and extending in a line N. W. and S. E. farther than I could see, upon which the sea broke in a dreadful surf; this, however, made me think that there were no shoals beyond them, and I conceived hopes of getting without these, as I perceived several breaks or openings in the reef, and deep water between that and the island, I continued upon this hill till sun-set, but the weather was so hazy during the whole time, that I came down much disappointed. After reflecting upon what I had seen, and comparing the intelligence I had gained with what I expected, I determined to stay upon the island all night, hoping that the morning might be clearer, and afford me a more distinct and comprehensive view. We therefore took up our lodging under the shelter of a bush which grew upon the beach; and at three in the morning, having sent the pinnace with one of the Mates whom I had brought out with me, to sound between the island and the reefs, and examine what appeared to be a channel through them, I climbed the

1770.
August.

hill a second time, but, to my great disappointment, found the weather much more hazy than it had been the day before. About noon the pinnacle returned, having been as far as the reef, and found between fifteen and twenty-eight fathoms of water ; but it blew so hard that the Mate did not dare to venture into one of the channels, which, he said, appeared to him to be very narrow. This, however, did not discourage me, for I judged, from his description of the place he had been at, that he had seen it to disadvantage. While I was busy in my survey, Mr. Banks was attentive to his favourite pursuit, and picked up several plants which he had not before seen. We found the island, which is visible at twelve leagues distance, to be about eight leagues in circumference, and in general very rocky and barren. On the north-west side, however, there are some sandy bays, and some low land, which is covered with long thin grass, and trees of the same kind with those upon the main : this part also abounded with lizards of a very large size, some of which we took. We found also fresh water in two places, one was a running stream, but that was a little brackish where I tasted it, which was close to the sea ; the other was a standing pool, close behind the sandy beach, and this was perfectly sweet and good. Notwithstanding the distance of this island from the main, we saw, to our great surprize, that it was sometimes visited by the natives, for we found seven or eight frames of their huts, and vast heaps of shells, the fish of which we supposed had been their food. We observed that all these huts were built upon eminences, and entirely exposed to the S. E. contrary to those which we had seen upon the main ; for they were all built either upon the side of a hill, or under some bushes which afforded them shelter from the wind. From these huts, and their situation, we concluded that at some seasons of the year the weather here is invariably calm and fine, for the inhabitants have no boat which can navigate the sea to so great a distance, in such weather as we had from the time of our first coming upon the coast. As we saw no animals upon this place but lizards, I called it LIZARD ISLAND ; the other two high islands, which lie at the distance of four or five miles

1770.
August.

miles from it, are comparatively small ; and near them lie three others smaller still, and low, with several shoals or reefs, especially to the S. E. There is, however, a clear passage from Cape Flattery to these islands, and even quite to the outward reefs, leaving Lizard Island to the north-west, and the others to the south-east.

At two in the afternoon, there being no hope of clear weather, we set out from Lizard Island to return to the ship, and in our way landed upon the low sandy island with trees upon it, which we had remarked in our going out. Upon this island we saw an incredible number of birds, chiefly sea-fowl : we found also the nest of an eagle with young ones, which we killed, and the nest of some other bird, we knew not what, of a most enormous size : it was built with sticks upon the ground, and was no less than six-and-twenty feet in circumference, and two feet eight inches high. We found also that this place had been visited by the Indians, probably to eat turtle, many of which we saw upon the island, and a great number of their shells, piled one upon another in different places:

To this spot we gave the name of EAGLE ISLAND, and after leaving it we steered S. W. directly for the ship, sounding all the way, and we had never less than eight fathoms, nor more than fourteen, the same depth of water that I had found between this and Lizard Island.

When I got on board, the Master informed me that he had been down to the low islands, between which and the main I had directed him to sound : that he judged them to lie about three leagues from the main ; that without them he found from ten to fourteen fathoms, and between them and the main seven, but that a flat, which ran two leagues out from the main, made this channel narrow. Upon one of these low islands he slept, and was ashore upon others ; and he reported, that he saw every where piles of turtle-shells, and fins hanging upon the trees in many places, with the flesh upon them, so recent that the boat's crew eat of them ; he saw also two spots clear of grass, which appeared to have been lately dug up, and from the shape and size of them he conjectured they were graves.

After

1770.
August.

After considering what I had seen myself, and the report of the Master, I was of opinion that the passage to leeward would be dangerous, and that by keeping in with the main we should run the risk of being locked in by the great reef, and at last be compelled to return back in search of another passage, by which, or any other accident that should cause the same delay, we should infallibly lose our passage to the East Indies, and endanger the ruin of the voyage, as we had now but little more than three months provisions on board at short allowance.

Having stated this opinion, and the facts and appearances upon which it was founded, to the officers, it was unanimously agreed, that the best thing we could do would be to quit the coast altogether, till we could approach it with less danger.

Monday 13.

In the morning therefore, at break of day, we got under sail, and stood out N. E. for the north-west end of Lizard Island, leaving Eagle Island to windward, and some other islands and shoals to the leeward, and leaving the pinnacle a-head to ascertain the depth of water in every part of our course. In this channel we had from nine to fourteen fathoms. At noon the north-west end of Lizard Island bore E. S. E. distant one mile: our latitude, by observation, was $14^{\circ} 38'$, and our depth of water fourteen fathoms. We had a steady gale at S. E. and by two o'clock we just fetched to windward of one of the channels or openings in the outer reef, which I had seen from the island. We now tacked, and made a short trip to the S. W. while the Master in the pinnacle examined the channel; he soon made the signal for the ship to follow, and in a short time she got safe out. As soon as we got without the breakers, we had no ground with one hundred and fifty fathoms, and found a large sea rolling in from the S. E. a certain sign that neither land nor shoals were near us in that direction.

Our change of situation was now visible in every countenance, for it was most sensibly felt in every breast. We had been little less than three months entangled among shoals and rocks, that every moment threatened us with destruction, frequently passing our nights at anchor, within hearing of the surge that broke

1779.
August.

broke over them; sometimes driving towards them, even while our anchors were out, and knowing that if by any accident, to which an almost continual tempest exposed us, they should not hold, we must in a few minutes inevitably perish. But now, after having sailed no less than three hundred and sixty leagues, without once having a man out of the chains heaving the lead, even for a minute, which perhaps never happened to any other vessel, we found ourselves in an open sea, with deep water, and enjoyed a flow of spirits, which was equally owing to our late dangers and our present security; yet the very waves, which by their swell convinced us that we had no rocks or shoals to fear, convinced us also that we could not safely put the same confidence in our vessel as before she had struck; for the blows she received from them so widened her leaks, that she admitted no less than nine inches water in an hour, which, considering the state of our pumps, and the navigation that was still before us, would have been a subject of more serious consideration, to people whose danger had not so lately been so much more imminent.

The passage or channel, through which we passed into the open sea beyond the reef, lies in latitude 14° 32' S. and may always be known by the three high islands within it, which I have called the ISLANDS OF DIRECTION, because by these a stranger may find a safe passage through the reef quite to the main. The channel lies from Lizard Island N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. distant three leagues, and is about one third of a mile broad, and not more in length. Lizard Island, which is, as I have before observed, the largest and the northermost of the three, affords safe anchorage under the north-west side, fresh water, and wood for fuel. The low islands and shoals also, which lie between it and the main, abound with turtle and fish, which may probably be caught in all seasons of the year, except when the weather is very tempestuous; so that, all things considered, there is not perhaps a better place for ships to refresh at upon the whole coast than this island. And, before I dismiss it, I must observe, that we found upon it, as well as upon the beach in and about Endeavour River, bamboos, cocoa-nuts, pumice-stone, and

1770.
August.

and the seeds of plants which are not the produce of this country, and which, it is reasonable to suppose, are brought from the eastward by the trade-winds. The islands which were discovered by Quiros, and called Australia del Espiritu Santa, lie in this parallel, but how far to the eastward cannot now be ascertained; in most charts they are placed in the same longitude with this country, which, as appears by the account of his voyage which has been published, he never saw; for that places his discoveries no less than two-and-twenty degrees to the eastward of it.

As soon as we were without the reef we brought to, and having hoisted in the boats, we stood off and on upon a wind all night; for I was not willing to run to leeward till I had a whole day before me. In the

Tuesd. 14. morning, at day-break, Lizard Island bore S. 15 E. distant ten leagues; and we then made sail and stood away N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. till nine o'clock, when we stood N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. having the advantage of a fresh gale at S. E. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $13^{\circ} 46'$ S. and at this time we had no land in sight. At six in the evening we shortened sail, and brought the ship to, with her head to the N. E. and at six in

Wednesd. 15. the morning made sail and steered west, in order to get within sight of the land, that I might be sure not to over-shoot the passage, if a passage there was, between this land and New Guinea. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $13^{\circ} 2'$ S. longitude 216° W. which was $1^{\circ} 23'$ W. of Lizard Island. At this time we had no land in sight; but a little before one o'clock we saw high land from the mast-head, bearing W. S. W. At two we saw more land to the N. W. of that we had seen before; it appeared in hills, like islands, but we judged it to be a continuation of the main land. About three we discovered breakers between the land and the ship, extending to the southward farther than we could see; but to the north we thought we saw them terminate a-breast of us. What we took for the end of them in this direction, however, soon appeared to be only an opening in the reef; for we presently saw them again, extending northward beyond the reach of our sight. Upon this we hauled close upon a wind, which was now at E. S. E. and we had scarcely trimmed

1770.
August.

med our sails before it came to E. by N. which was right upon the reef, and consequently made our clearing it doubtful. At sunset the northermost part of it that was in sight bore from us N. by E. and was two or three leagues distant; this however being the best tack to clear it, we kept standing to the northward with all the sail we could set till midnight; when, being afraid of standing too far in this direction, we tacked and stood to the southward, our run from sunset to this time being six leagues N. and N. by E. When we had stood about two miles S. S. E. it fell calm; we had sounded several times during the night, but had no bottom with one hundred and forty fathoms, neither had we any ground now with the same length of line; yet, about four in the morning, we plainly heard the roaring of the surf, and at break of day saw it foaming to a vast height, at not more than a mile's distance. Our distress now returned upon us with a double force; the waves, which rolled in upon the reef, carried us towards it very fast; we could reach no ground with an anchor, and had not a breath of wind for the sail. In this dreadful situation, no resource was left us but the boats; and to aggravate our misfortune, the pinnacle was under repair: the long-boat and yawl, however, were put into the water, and sent a-head to tow, which, by the help of our sweeps abaft, got the ship's head round to the northward; which, if it could not prevent our destruction, might at least delay it. But it was six o'clock before this was effected, and we were not then a hundred yards from the rock upon which the same billow, which washed the side of the ship, broke to a tremendous height the very next time it rose; so that between us and destruction there was only a dreary valley, no wider than the base of one wave, and even now the sea under us was unfathomable, at least no bottom was to be found with a hundred and twenty fathoms. During this scene of distress, the Carpenter had found means to patch up the pinnacle; so that she was hoisted out, and sent a-head, in aid of the other boats, to tow; but all our efforts would have been ineffectual, if, just at this crisis of our fate, a light air of wind had not sprung up, so light, that any other time we should

Thursd. 16.

1770.
August.

should not have observed it, but which was enough to turn the scale in our favour, and, in conjunction with the assistance which was afforded us by the boats, to give the ship a perceptible motion obliquely from the reef. Our hopes now revived; but in less than ten minutes it was again a dead calm, and the ship was again driven towards the breakers, which were not now two hundred yards distant. The same light breeze however returned before we had lost all the ground it had enabled us to gain, and lasted about ten minutes more. During this time we discovered a small opening in the reef, at about the distance of a quarter of a mile: I immediately sent out one of the Mates to examine it, who reported that its breadth was not more than the length of the ship, but that within it there was smooth water: this discovery seemed to render our escape possible, and that was all, by pushing the ship through the opening, which was immediately attempted. It was uncertain indeed whether we could reach it; but if we should succeed thus far, we made no doubt of being able to get through: in this however we were disappointed, for having reached it by the joint assistance of our boats and the breeze, we found that in the mean time it had become high water, and to our great surprize we met the tide of ebb rushing out of it like a mill-stream. We gained however some advantage, though in a manner directly contrary to our expectations; we found it impossible to go through the opening, but the stream that prevented us carried us about a quarter of a mile: it was too narrow for us to keep in it longer; yet this tide of ebb so much assisted the boats, that by noon we had got an offing of near two miles. We had, however, reason to despair of deliverance, even if the breeze which had now died away should revive, for we were still embayed in the reef; and the tide of ebb being spent, the tide of flood, notwithstanding our utmost efforts, again drove the ship into the bight. About this time, however, we saw another opening, near a mile to the westward, which I immediately sent the First Lieutenant, Mr. Hicks, in the small boat to examine: in the mean time we struggled hard with the flood, sometimes gaining a little, and sometimes losing; but every

1770.
August.

every man still did his duty with as much calmness and regularity as if no danger had been near. About two o'clock, Mr. Hicks returned with an account that the opening was narrow and dangerous, but that it might be passed: the possibility of passing it was sufficient encouragement to make the attempt, for all danger was less imminent than our present situation. A light breeze now sprung up at E. N. E. with which, by the help of our boats, and the very tide of flood, that, without an opening, would have been our destruction, we entered it, and were hurried through with amazing rapidity, by a torrent that kept us from driving against either side of the channel, which was not more than a quarter of a mile in breadth. While we were shooting this gulph, our soundings were from thirty to seven fathoms, very irregular, and the ground at bottom very foul.

As soon as we had got within the reef, we anchored in nineteen fathoms, over a bottom of coral and shells. And now, such is the vicissitude of life, we thought ourselves happy in having regained a situation, which, but two days before, it was the utmost object of our hope to quit. Rocks and shoals are always dangerous to the mariner, even where their situation has been ascertained; they are more dangerous in seas which have never before been navigated, and in this part of the globe they are more dangerous than in any other; for here they are reefs of coral rock, rising like a wall almost perpendicularly out of the unfathomable deep, always overflowed at high-water, and at low-water dry in many places; and here the enormous waves of the vast Southern Ocean, meeting with so abrupt a resistance, break, with inconceivable violence, in a surf which no rocks or storms in the northern hemisphere can produce. The danger of navigating unknown parts of this ocean was now greatly increased, by our having a crazy ship, and being short of provisions and every other necessary; yet the distinction of a first discoverer made us cheerfully encounter every danger, and submit to every inconvenience; and we chose rather to incur the censure of imprudence and temerity, which the idle and voluptuous so liberally bestow upon unsuccessful fortitude and perseverance, than leave a country

1770.
August.

country which we had discovered unexplored, and give colour to a charge of timidity and irresolution.

Friday 17.

Having now congratulated ourselves upon getting within the reef, notwithstanding we had so lately congratulated ourselves upon getting without it, I resolved to keep the main land on board in my future route to the northward, whatever the consequence might be; for if we had now gone without the reef again, it might have carried us so far from the coast, as to prevent my being able to determine, whether this country did, or did not, join to New Guinea; a question which I was determined to resolve from my first coming within sight of land. However, as I had experienced the disadvantage of having a boat under repair, at a time when it was possible I might want to use her, I determined to remain fast at anchor, till the pinnacle was perfectly refitted. As I had no employment for the other boats, I sent them out in the morning to the reef, to see what refreshment could be procured, and Mr. Banks, in his little boat, accompanied by Dr. Solander, went with them. In this situation I found the variation by amplitude and azimuth to be $4^{\circ} 9'$ E. and at noon, our latitude by observation was $12^{\circ} 38'$ S. and our longitude $216^{\circ} 45'$ W. The main land extended from N. 66 W. to S. W. by S. and the nearest part of it was distant about nine leagues. The opening through which we passed I called PROVIDENTIAL CHANNEL; and this bore E. N. E. distant ten or twelve miles: on the main land within us was a lofty promontory which I called CAPE WEYMOUTH; on the north side of which is a bay which I called WEYMOUTH BAY: they lie in latitude $12^{\circ} 42'$ S. longitude $127^{\circ} 15'$ W. At four o'clock in the afternoon the boats returned with two hundred and forty pound of the meat of shell-fish, chiefly of cockles, some of which were as much as two men could move, and contained twenty pounds of good meat. Mr. Banks also brought back many curious shells and Mollusca; besides many species of coral, among which was that called the Tubipora musica.

Saturd. 18.

At six o'clock in the morning we got under sail, and stood away to the N. W. having two boats a-head to direct

direct us; our soundings were very irregular, varying five or six fathoms every cast, between ten and twenty-seven. A little before noon we passed a low sandy island, which we left on our starboard side, at the distance of two miles. At noon our latitude was $12^{\circ} 28'$, and our distance from the main about four leagues: it extended from S. by W. to N. 71° W. and some small islands from N. 40° W. to 54° W. Between us and the main were several shoals, and some without us, besides the main or outermost reef, which we could see from the mast-head, stretching away to the N. E. At two in the afternoon, as we were steering N. W. by N. we saw a large shoal right a-head, extending three or four points upon each bow; upon this we hauled up N. N. E. and N. E. by N. to get round the north point of it, which we reached by four, and then edged away to the westward, and ran between the north end of this shoal and another, which lies two miles to the northward of it, having a boat all the way a-head sounding; our depth of water was still very irregular, from twenty-two to eight fathoms. At half an hour after six, we anchored in thirteen fathoms: the northernmost of the small islands seen at noon bore W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. distant three miles: these islands are distinguished in the chart by the name of **FORBES'S ISLANDS**, and lie about five leagues from the main, which here forms a high point that we called **BOLT HEAD**, from which the land trends more westerly, and is in that direction all low and sandy; to the southward it is high and hilly, even near the sea.

At six in the morning we got again under sail, and Sunday 19. steered for an island which lay at a small distance from the main, and at this time bore from us N. 40° W. distant about five leagues: our course was soon interrupted by shoals; however, by the help of the boats, and a good look-out from the top of the mast, we got into a fair channel that led us down to the island, between a very large shoal on our starboard side and several small ones towards the main: in this channel we had from twenty to thirty fathoms water. Between eleven and twelve o'clock we hauled round the northeast side of the island, leaving it between us and the main, from which it is distant about seven or eight miles. This island is about a league in circuit, and

1770.
August.

we saw upon it five of the natives, two of whom had lances in their hands; they came down upon a point, and having looked a little while at the ship, retired. To the N. W. of it are several low islands and quays, which lie not far from the main: and to the northward and eastward are several other islands and shoals; so that we were now encompassed on every side: but having lately been exposed to much greater danger, and rocks and shoals being grown familiar, we looked at them comparatively with little concern. The main land appeared to be low and barren, interspersed with large patches of the very fine white sand, which we had found upon Lizard Island and different parts of the main. The boats had seen many turtle upon the shoals which they passed, but it blew too hard for them to take any. At noon our latitude by observation was 12° and our longitude $217^{\circ} 25'$: our depth of water was fourteen fathoms; and our course and distance, reduced to a strait line, was, between this time and the preceding noon, N. 29 W. thirty-two miles.

The main land within the islands that have been just mentioned forms a point, which I called CAPE GRENVILLE: it lies in latitude $11^{\circ} 58'$ longitude $217^{\circ} 38'$; and between it and Bolt Head is a bay, which I called TEMPLE BAY. At the distance of nine leagues from Cape Grenville, in the direction of E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. lie some high islands, which I called SIR CHARLES HARDY'S ISLES; and those which lie off the Cape I called COCKBURN'S ISLES. Having lain by for the boats, which had gone out of their station, till about one o'clock, we then took the yawl in tow; and the pinnace having got a-head, we filled, and stood N. by W. for some small islands which lay in that direction; such at least they were in appearance, but upon approaching them, we perceived that they were joined together by a large reef: upon this we edged away N. W. and left them on our starboard hand; we steered between them and the islands that lay off the main, having a clear passage, and from fifteen to twenty-three fathoms water. At four o'clock, we discovered some low islands and rocks, bearing W. N. W. and stood directly for them: at half an hour after six, we anchored on the north-east side of the northernmost of them, at one mile distance,

and

1770.
August.

and in six fathoms. These islands are N. W. four leagues from Cape Grenville, and from the number of birds that I saw upon them, I called them BIRD ISLES. A little before sun-set we were in sight of the main land, which appeared all very low and sandy, extending as far to the northward as N. W. by N. some shoals, quays, and low sandy isles stretching away to the N. E.

At six o'clock in the morning, we got under sail, Monday 20. with a fresh breeze at E. and stood away N. N. W. for some low islands in that direction, but were soon obliged to haul close upon a wind to weather a shoal which we discovered upon our larboard bow, having at the same time others to the eastward: by the time we had weathered this shoal to leeward, we had brought the islands well upon our lee bow; but seeing some shoals run off from them, and some rocks on our starboard bow, which we did not discover till we were very near them, I was afraid to go to windward of the islands, and therefore brought to, and having made the signal for the pinnace, which was a-head, to come on board, I sent her to leeward of the islands, with orders to keep along the edge of the shoal, which ran off from the south side of the southernmost island, sending the yawl at the same time, to run over the shoal in search of turtle. As soon as the pinnace had got to a proper distance, we wore, and stood after her: as we ran to leeward of this island, we took the yawl in tow, she having seen only one small turtle, and therefore made but little stay upon the shoal. The island we found to be a small spot of land, with some trees upon it, and we could discern many huts, or habitations of the natives, whom we supposed occasionally to visit these islands from the main, they being only five leagues distant, to catch turtle, when they come ashore to lay their eggs. We continued to stand after the pinnace N. N. E. and N. by E. for two other low islands, having two shoals without us, and one between us and the main. At noon, we were about four leagues from the main, which we saw extending to the northward, as far as N. W. by N. all flat and sandy. Our latitude, by observation, was $11^{\circ} 23'$ S. and our longitude $217^{\circ} 46'$ W. our soundings were from fourteen to

1770.
August.

twenty-three fathoms; but these, as well as the shoals and islands, which are too numerous to be particularly mentioned, will be best seen upon the chart. By one o'clock we had run nearly the length of the southernmost of the two islands in sight, and finding that the going to the windward of them would carry us too far from the main, we bore up and ran to leeward, where finding a fair open passage, we steered N. by W. in a direction parallel to the main, leaving a small island which lay between it and the ship, and some low sandy isles and shoals without us, of all which we lost sight by four o'clock, and saw no more before the sun went down: at this time the farthest part of the land in sight bore N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and soon after we anchored in thirteen fathoms, upon soft ground, at the distance of about five leagues from the land, where we lay till daylight.

Tuesd. 21.

Early in the morning we made sail again, and steered N. N. W. by compass, for the northernmost land in sight; and at this time, we observed the variation of the needle to be $3^{\circ} 6'$ E. At eight o'clock, we discovered shoals a-head, and on our larboard bow, and saw that the northernmost land, which we had taken for the main, was detached from it, and that we might pass between them, by running to leeward of the shoals on our larboard bow, which were now near us: we therefore wore and brought to, sending away the pinnace and yawl to direct us, and then steered N. W. along the S. W. or inside of the shoals, keeping a good look-out from the mast-head, and having another shoal on our larboard side: we found however a good channel of a mile broad between them, in which we had from ten to fourteen fathoms. At eleven o'clock, we were nearly the length of the land detached from the main, and there appeared to be no obstruction in the passage between them, yet having the long-boat a-stern, and rigged, we sent her away to keep in shore upon our larboard bow, and at the same time dispatched the pinnace a-starboard; precautions which I thought necessary, as we had a strong flood that carried us an end very fast, and it was near high-water: as soon as the boats were a-head, we stood after them, and by noon got through the passage. Our latitude, by observation,

was

was then $10^{\circ} 36'$, and the nearest part of the main, which we soon after found to be the northernmost, bore W. 2 S. distant between three or four miles: we found the land which was detached from the main, to be a single island, extending from N. to N. 75° E. distant between two and three miles; at the same time we saw other islands at a considerable distance, extending from N. by W. to W. N. W. and behind them another chain of high land, which we judged also to be islands: there were still other islands, extending as far as N. 71° W. which at this time we took for the main.

The point of the main which forms the side of the channel through which we had passed, opposite to the island, is the northern promontory of the country, and I called it YORK CAPE. Its longitude is $218^{\circ} 24'$ W. the latitude of the north point is $10^{\circ} 37'$, and of the east point $10^{\circ} 42'$ S. The land over the east point, and to the southward of it, is rather low, and as far as the eye can reach, very flat, and of a barren appearance. To the southward of the Cape the shore forms a large open bay, which I called NEWCASTLE Bay, and in which are some small low islands and shoals; the land adjacent is also very low, flat, and sandy. The land of the northern part of the Cape is more hilly, the vallies seem to be well cloathed with wood, and the shore forms some small bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage. Close to the eastern point of the Cape are three small islands, from one of which a small ledge of rocks runs out into the sea: there is also an island close to the northern point. The island that forms the streight or channel through which we had passed, lies about four miles without these, which, except two, are very small: the southernmost is the largest, and much higher than any part of the main land. On the north-west side of this island there appeared to be good anchorage, and on shore, vallies that promised both wood and water. These islands are distinguished in the chart by the name of YORK ISLES. To the southward, and south-east, and even to the eastward and northward of them, there are several other low islands, rocks, and shoals: our depth of water in sailing between them and the main, was twelve, thirteen, and fourteen fathoms.

1770.
August.

We stood along the shore to the westward, with a gentle breeze at S. E. by S. and when we had advanced between three and four miles, we discovered the land a-head, which, when we first saw it, we took for the main, to be islands detached from it by several channels: upon this we sent away the boats, with proper instructions, to lead us through that channel which was next the main; but soon after discovering rocks and shoals in this channel, I made a signal for the boats to go through the next channel to the northward, which lay between these islands, leaving some of them between us and the main: the ship followed, and had never less than five fathoms water in the narrowest part of the channel, where the distance from island to island was about one mile and a half.

After four o'clock in the afternoon we anchored, being about a mile and a half, or two miles, within the entrance, in six fathoms and a half, with clear ground: the channel here had begun to widen, and the islands on each side of us were distant about a mile: the main land stretched away to the S. W. the farthest point in view bore S. 48 W. and the southernmost point of the islands, on the north west side of the passage, bore S. 76 W. Between these two points we could see no land, so that we conceived hopes of having, at last, found a passage into the Indian sea; however, that I might be able to determine with more certainty, I resolved to land upon the island which lies at the south-east point of the passage. Upon this island we had seen many of the inhabitants when we first came to an anchor, and when I went into the boat, with a party of men, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in order to go ashore, we saw ten of them upon a hill, nine of them were armed with such lances as we had been used to see, and the tenth had a bow, and a bundle of arrows, which we had never seen in the possession of the natives of this country before: we also observed, that two of them had large ornaments of mother-of-pearl hanging round their necks. Three of these, one of whom was the bow-man, placed themselves upon the beach a-breast of us, and we expected that they would have opposed our landing, but when we came within about a musket's shot of the beach, they walked leisurely away. We immediately

immediately climbed the highest hill, which was not more than three times as high as the mast-head, and the most barren of any we had seen. From this hill, no land could be seen between the S. W. and W. S. W. so that I had no doubt of finding a channel through. The land to the north-west of it consisted of a great number of islands of various extent, and different heights, ranged one behind another, as far to the northward and westward as I could see, which could not be less than thirteen leagues. As I was now about to quit the eastern coast of New Holland, which I had coasted from latitude 38 to this place, and which I am confident no European had ever seen before, I once more hoisted English colours, and though I had already taken possession of several particular parts, I now took possession of the whole eastern coast, from latitude 38° to this place, latitude 10½ S. in right of his Majesty King George the Third, by the name of NEW SOUTH WALES, with all the bays, harbours, rivers, and islands situated upon it: we then fired three vollies of small arms, which were answered by the same number from the ship. Having performed this ceremony upon the island, which we called POSSESSION ISLAND, we re-imbarked in our boat, but a rapid ebb tide setting N. E. made our return to the vessel very difficult and tedious. From the time of our last coming among the shoals, we constantly found a moderate tide, and flood setting to the N. W. and the ebb to the S. E. At this place it is high water at the full and change of the moon, about one or two o'clock, and the water rises and falls perpendicularly about twelve feet. We saw smoke rising in many places from the adjacent lands and islands, as we had done upon every part of the coast, after our last return to it through the reef.

We continued at anchor all night, and between seven and eight o'clock in the morning, we saw three or four of the natives upon the beach gathering shell-fish; we discovered, by the help of our glasses, that they were women, and, like all the other inhabitants of this country, stark naked. At low water, which happened about ten o'clock, we got under sail, and stood to the S. W.

Wednes. 22.

Thursd. 23.

1770.
August

with a light breeze at E. which afterwards veered to N. by E. our depth of water was from six to ten fathoms, except in one place, where we had but five. At noon Possession Island bore N. 53 E. distant four leagues, the western extremity of the main land in sight bore S. 43 W. distant between four and five leagues, and appeared to be extremely low, the south-west point of the largest island on the north-west side of the passage bore N. 71 W. distant eight miles, and this point I called **CAPE CORNWALL**. It lies in latitude $10^{\circ} 43'$ S. longitude 219° W. and some low islands that lie about the middle of the passage, which I called **WALLIS'S ISLES**, bore W. by S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. distant about two leagues: our latitude, by observation, was $10^{\circ} 46'$ S. We continued to advance with the tide of flood W. N. W. having little wind, and from eight to five fathoms water. At half an hour after one, the pinnacle, which was a-head, made the signal for shoal water, upon which we tacked, and sent away the yawl to sound also: we then tacked again, and stood after them: in about two hours, they both made the signal for shoal water, and the tide being nearly at its greatest height, I was afraid to stand on, as running a-ground at that time might be fatal; I therefore came to an anchor in something less than seven fathoms, sandy ground. Wallis's Islands bore S. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant five or six miles, the islands to the northward extended from S. 73 E. to N. 10 E. and a small island, which was just in sight, bore N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. Here we found the flood tide set to the westward, and the ebb to the eastward.

Friday 24.

After we had come to an anchor, I sent away the Master in the long-boat to sound, who, upon his return in the evening, reported, that there was a bank stretching north and south, upon which there were but three fathoms, and that beyond it there were seven. About this time it fell calm, and continued so till nine the next morning, when we weighed, with a light breeze at S. S. E. and steered N. W. by W. for the small island which was just in sight, having first sent the boats a-head to sound: the depth of water was eight, seven, six, five, and four fathoms, and three fathoms

1770.
August.

fathoms upon the bank, it being now the last quarter ebb. At this time, the northermost island in sight bore N. 9 E. Cape Cornwall E. distant three leagues, and Wallis's Isles S. 3 E. distant three leagues. This bank, at least so much as we have sounded, extends nearly N. and S. but to what distance I do not know: its breadth is not more than half a mile at the utmost. When we had got over the bank, we deepened our water to six fathoms three quarters, and had the same depth all the way to the small island a-head, which we reached by noon, when it bore S. distant about half a mile. Our depth of water was now five fathoms, and the northernmost land in sight, which is part of the same chain of islands that we had seen to the northward from the time of our first entering the streight, bore N. 71 E. Our latitude, by observation, was $10^{\circ} 33'$ S. and our longitude $219^{\circ} 22'$ W. in this situation, no part of the main was in sight. As we were now near the island, and had but little wind, Mr. Banks and I landed upon it, and found it, except a few patches of wood, to be a barren rock, the haunt of birds, which had frequented it in such numbers, as to make the surface almost uniformly white with their dung: of these birds, the greater part seemed to be boobies, and I therefore called the place BOOBY ISLAND. After a short stay, we returned to the ship, and in the mean time the wind had got to the S. W. it was but a gentle breeze, yet it was accompanied by a swell from the same quarter, which, with other circumstances, confirmed my opinion that we were got to the westward of Carpentaria, or the northern extremity of New Holland, and had now an open sea to the westward, which gave me great satisfaction, not only because the dangers and fatigues of the voyage were drawing to an end, but because it would no longer be a doubt whether New Holland and New Guinea were two separate islands, or different parts of the same.

The north-east entrance of this passage, or streight, lies in the latitude of $10^{\circ} 39'$ S. and in the longitude of $218^{\circ} 36'$ W. It is formed by the main or the northern extremity of New Holland, on the S. E. and by a congeries of islands, which I called the PRINCE OF WALES'S ISLANDS, to the N. W. and it is probable that these islands extend quite to New Guinea. They differ

1770.
August.

differ very much both in height and circuit, and many of them seemed to be well clothed with herbage and wood: upon most, if not all of them, we saw smoke, and therefore there can be no doubt of their being inhabited: it is also probable, that among them there are at least as good passages as that we came through, perhaps better, though better need not be desired, if the access to it, from the eastward, were less dangerous: that a less dangerous access may be discovered, I think there is little reason to doubt, and to find it little more seems to be necessary, than to determine how far the principal, or outer reef, which bounds the shoals to the eastward, extends towards the north, which I would not have left to future navigators, if I had been less harrassed by danger and fatigue, and had had a ship in better condition for the purpose.

To this channel, or passage, I have given the name of the ship, and called it ENDEAVOUR STREIGHTS. Its length from N. E. to S. W. is ten leagues, and it is about five leagues broad, except at the north-east entrance, where it is somewhat less than two miles, being contracted by the islands which lie there. That which I called Possession Island is of a moderate height and circuit, and this we left between us and the main, passing between it and two small round islands, which lie about two miles to the N. W. of it. The two small islands, which I called Wallis's Islands, lie in the middle of the south-west entrance, and these we left to the southward. Our depth of water in the streight was from four to nine fathoms, with every where good anchorage, except upon the bank which lies two leagues to the northward of Wallis's Islands, where, at low water, there are but three fathoms: for a more particular knowledge of this streight, and of the situations of the several islands and shoals on the eastern coast of New Wales, I refer to the chart, where they are delineated with all the accuracy that circumstances would admit; yet, with respect to the shoals, I cannot pretend that one half of them are laid down, nor can it be supposed possible that one half of them should be discovered in the course of a single navigation: many islands also must have escaped my pencil, especially between latitude 20° and 22° , where we saw islands out at
sea

1770.
August.

sea as far as an island could be distinguished; it must not therefore be supposed, by future navigators, that where no shoal or island is laid down in my chart, no shoal or island will be found in these seas: it is enough that the situation of those that appear in the chart is faithfully ascertained, and, in general, I have the greatest reason to hope that it will be found as free from error as any that has not been corrected by subsequent and successive observations. The latitudes and longitudes of all, or most of the principal head-lands and bays, may be confided in; for we seldom failed of getting an observation once at least every day, by which to correct the latitude of our reckoning, and observations for settling the longitude were equally numerous, no opportunity that was offered by the sun and moon being suffered to escape. It would be injurious to the memory of Mr. Green, not to take this opportunity of attesting that he was indefatigable both in making observations and calculating upon them; and that, by his instructions and assistance, many of the petty officers were enabled both to observe and calculate with great exactness. This method of finding the longitude at sea, may be put into universal practice, and may always be depended upon within half a degree, which is sufficient for all nautical purposes. If, therefore, observing and calculating were considered as necessary qualifications for every sea officer, the labours of the speculative theorist to solve this problem might be remitted, without much injury to mankind: neither will it be so difficult to acquire this qualification, or put it in practice, as may at first appear; for, with the assistance of the nautical almanack, and astronomical éphemeris, the calculations for finding the longitude will take up little more time than the calculation of an azimuth for finding the variation of the compass.

1770.
August.

C H A P. VIII.

Departure from New South Wales. A particular Description of the Country, its Products, and People. A Specimen of the Language; and some Observations upon the Currents and Tides.

OF this country, its products, and its people, many particulars have already been related in the course of the narrative, being so interwoven with the events, as not to admit of a separation. I shall now give a more full and circumstantial description of each, in which, if some things should happen to be repeated, the greater part will be found new.

New Holland, or, as I have now called the eastern coast, New South Wales, is of a larger extent than any other country in the known world that does not bear the name of a continent. The length of coast along which we sailed, reduced to a straight line, is no less than twenty-seven degrees of latitude, amounting to near 200 miles, so that its square surface must be much more than equal to all Europe. To the southward of 33 or 34, the land in general is low and level; farther northward it is hilly, but in no part can be called mountainous, and the hills and mountains, taken together, make but a small part of the surface, in comparison with the vallies and plains. It is, upon the whole, rather barren than fertile, yet the rising ground is chequered by woods and lawns, and the plains and vallies are in many places covered with herbage: the soil however is frequently sandy, and many of the lawns, or savannahs, are rocky and barren, especially to the northward, where, in the best spots, vegetation was less vigorous than in the southern part of the country; the trees were not so tall, nor was the herbage so rich. The grass in general is high but thin, and the trees, where they are largest, are seldom less than forty feet asunder; nor is the country inland, as far as we could examine it, better cloathed than the sea coast. The banks of the bays are covered with mangroves, to the distance of a mile within the beach, under which the soil is a rank mud, that

1770.
August.

that is always overflowed by a spring tide; farther in the country we sometimes met with a bog, upon which the grass was very thick and luxuriant, and sometimes with a valley that was cloathed with underwood. The soil in some parts seemed to be capable of improvement, but the far greater part is such as can admit of no cultivation. The coast, at least that part of it which lies to the northward of 25° S. abounds with fine bays and harbours, where vessels may lie in perfect security from all winds.

If we may judge by the appearance of the country while we were there, which was in the very height of the dry season, it is well watered. We found innumerable small brooks and springs, but no great rivers; these brooks, however, probably become large in the rainy season. Thirsty Sound was the only place where fresh water was not to be procured for the ship, and even there one or two small pools were found in the woods, though the face of the country was every where intersected by salt-creeks and mangrove-land.

Of trees there is no great variety. Of those that could be called timber, there are but two sorts; the largest is the gum-tree, which grows all over the country, and has been mentioned already: it has narrow leaves, not much unlike a willow, and the gum, or rather resin, which it yields, is of a deep red, and resembles the *sanguis draconis*: possibly it may be the same, for this substance is known to be the produce of more than one plant. It is mentioned by Dampier, and is perhaps the same that Tasman found upon Diemen's Land, where, he says, he saw "Gum of the trees, " and gum lac of the ground." The other timber tree is that which grows somewhat like our pines, and has been particularly mentioned in the account of Botany Bay. The wood, of both these trees, as I have before remarked, is extremely hard and heavy. Besides these, here are trees covered with a soft bark that is easily peeled off, and is the same that in the East Indies is used for the caulking of ships.

We found here the palm of three different sorts: the first, which grows in great plenty to the southward, has leaves that are plaited like a fan; the cabbage of these is small, but exquisitely sweet, and the nuts, which

1770.
August.

which it bears in great abundance, are very good food for hogs. The second sort bore a much greater resemblance to the true cabbage-tree of the West Indies; its leaves were large and pinnated, like those of the cocoa-nut; and these also produced a cabbage, which though not so sweet as the other, was much larger. The third sort, which, like the second, was found only in the northern parts, was seldom more than ten feet high, with small pinnated leaves, resembling those of some kind of fern; it bore no cabbage, but a plentiful crop of nuts, about the size of a large chestnut, but rounder. As we found the hulls of these scattered round the places where the Indians had made their fires, we took for granted that they were fit to eat; those, however, who made the experiment, paid dear for their knowledge of the contrary, for they operated both as an emetic and cathartic with great violence. Still, however, we made no doubt but that they were eaten by the Indians; and judging that the constitution of the hogs might be as strong as theirs, though our own had proved to be so much inferior, we carried them to the sty; the hogs eat them, indeed, and for some time, we thought, without suffering any inconvenience; but in about a week they were so much disordered that two of them died, and the rest were recovered with great difficulty. It is probable, however, that the poisonous quality of these nuts may lie in the juice, like that of the cassada of the West Indies, and that the pulp, when dried, may be not only wholesome but nutritious. Besides these species of the palm and mangroves, there were several small trees and shrubs, altogether unknown in Europe, particularly one which produced a very poor kind of fig; another that bore what we called a plum, which it resembled in colour, but not in shape, being flat on the sides like a little cheese; and a third that bore a kind of purple apple, which, after it had been kept a few days, became eatable, and tasted somewhat like a damascene.

Here is a great variety of plants to enrich the collection of a botanist, but very few of them are of the esculent kind. A small plant, with long, narrow, grassy leaves, resembling that kind of bullrush, which in England is called the Cat's-tail, yields a resin of a bright yellow

yellow colour, exactly resembling gambouge,, except that it does not stain; it has a sweet smell, but its properties we had no opportunity to discover, any more than those of many others with which the natives appear to be acquainted, as they have distinguished them by names.

1770.
August.

I have already mentioned the root and leaves of a plant resembling the cocos of the West Indies, and a kind of bean; to which may be added, a sort of parsley and purselain, and two kinds of yams, one shaped like a raddish, and the other round and covered with stringy fibres: both sorts are very small, but sweet, and we never could find the plants that produced them, though we often saw the places where they had been newly dug up; it is probable that the drought had destroyed the leaves, and we could not, like the Indians, discover them by the stalks.

Most of the fruits of this country, such as they are, have been mentioned already. We found one in the southern part of the country resembling a cherry, except that the stone was soft; and another not unlike a pine-apple in appearance, but of a very disagreeable taste, which is well known in the East Indies, and is called by the Dutch *Pyn Appel Boomen*.

Of the quadrupeds, I have already mentioned the dog, and particularly described the kangaroo, and the animal of the opossum kind, resembling the phalanger of Buffon; to which I can add only one more, resembling a polecat, which the natives call Quoll; the back is brown, spotted with white, and the belly white unmixed. Several of our people said they had seen wolves, but perhaps if we had not seen tracks that favoured the account, we might have thought them little more worthy of credit than he who reported that he had seen the devil.

Of bats, which hold a middle place between the beasts and the birds, we saw many kinds, particularly one which, as I have observed already, was larger than a partridge. We were not fortunate enough to take one either alive or dead, but it was supposed to be the same as Buffon has described by the name of Rouset or Rouget.

The

1770.
August.

The sea and other water-fowl of this country are gulls, shaggs, soland-geese, or gannets, of two sorts, boobies, noddies, curleus, ducks, pelicans of an enormous size, and many others. The land birds are crows, parrots, paroquets, cockatoos, and other birds of the same kind, of exquisite beauty; pigeons, doves, quails, bustards, herons, cranes, hawks, and eagles. The pigeons flew in numerous flocks, so that, notwithstanding their extreme shyness, our people frequently killed ten or twelve of them in a day; these birds are very beautiful, and crested very differently from any we had seen before.

Among other reptiles, here are serpents of various kinds, some noxious and some harmless, scorpions, centipeds, and lizards. The insects are but few; the principal are the musquito, and the ant. Of the ant there are several sorts; some are as green as a leaf, and live upon trees, where they build their nests of various sizes, between that of a man's head and his fist. These nests are of a very curious structure; they are formed by bending down several of the leaves, each of which is as broad as a man's hand, and gluing the points of them together, so as to form a purse; the viscus used for this purpose is an animal juice, which Nature has enabled them to elaborate. Their method of first bending down the leaves we had not an opportunity to observe, but we saw thousands uniting all their strength to hold them in this position, while other busy multitudes were employed within, in applying the gluten that was to prevent their returning back. To satisfy ourselves that the leaves were bent, and held down by the effort of these diminutive artificers, we disturbed them in their work; and as soon as they were driven from their station, the leaves on which they were employed sprung up with a force much greater than we could have thought them able to conquer by any combination of their strength. But though we gratified our curiosity at their expence, the injury did not go unrevenge, for thousands immediately threw themselves upon us, and gave us intolerable pain with their stings, especially those which took possession of our necks and our hair, from whence they were not easily driven; the sting was scarcely less painful than that of a bee,

but

but, except it was repeated, the pain did not last more than a minute.

1770.
August.

Another sort are quite black, and their operations and manner of life are not less extraordinary. Their habitations are the inside of the branches of a tree, which they contrive to excavate, by working out the pith almost to the extremity of the slenderest twig; the tree at the same time flourishing as if it had no such inmate. When we first found the tree, we gathered some of the branches, and were scarcely less astonished than we should have been to find that we had profaned a consecrated grove, where every tree, upon being wounded, gave signs of life; for we were instantly covered with legions of these animals, swarming from every broken bough, and inflicting their stings with incessant violence. They are mentioned by Rumphius in his *Herbarium Amboinense*, vol. ii. p. 257. but the tree in which he saw their dwelling is very different from that in which we found them.

A third kind we found nested in the root of a plant, which grows on the bark of trees in the manner of mistletoe, and which they had perforated for that use. This root is commonly as big as a large turnip, and sometimes much bigger; when we cut it, we found it intersected by innumerable winding passages, all filled with these animals, by which, however, the vegetation of the plant did not appear to have suffered any injury. We never cut one of these roots that was not inhabited, though some were not bigger than a hazel-nut. The animals themselves are very small, not more than half as big as the common red ant in England. They had stings, but scarcely force enough to make them felt; they had, however, a power of tormenting us in an equal, if not a greater degree; for the moment we handled the root, they swarmed from innumerable holes, and running about those parts of the body that were uncovered, produced a titillation more intolerable than pain, except it is increased to great violence. Rumphius has also given an account of this bulb and its inhabitants, vol. vi. p. 120, where he mentions another sort that are black.

1770.
August.

We found a fourth kind, which are perfectly harmless, and almost exactly resemble the white ants of the East Indies; the architecture of these is still more curious than that of the others. They have houses of two sorts, one is suspended on the branches of trees, and the other erected upon the ground: those upon the trees are about three or four times as big as a man's head, and are built of a brittle substance, which seems to consist of small parts of vegetables kneaded together with a glutinous matter, which their bodies probably supply; upon breaking this crust, innumerable cells, swarming with inhabitants, appear in a great variety of winding directions, all communicating with each other, and with several apertures that lead to other nests upon the same tree: they have also one large avenue, or covered way, leading to the ground, and carried on under it to the other nest or house that is constructed there. This house is generally at the root of a tree, but not of that upon which their other dwellings are constructed; it is formed like an irregularly sided cone, and sometimes is more than six feet high, and nearly as much in diameter. Some are smaller, and these are generally flat sided, and very much resemble in figure the stones which are seen in many parts of England, and supposed to be the remains of druidical antiquity. The outside of these is of well-tempered clay, about two inches thick; and within are the cells, which have no opening outwards, but communicate only with the subterranean way to the houses on the tree, and to the tree near which they are constructed, where they ascend up the root, and so up the trunk and branches, under covered ways of the same kind as those by which they descended from their other dwellings. To these structures on the ground they probably retire in the winter, or rainy seasons, as they are proof against any wet that can fall; which those in the tree, though generally constructed under some over-hanging branch, from the nature and thinness of their crust, or wall, cannot be.

The sea in this country is much more liberal of food to the inhabitants than the land; and though fish is not quite so plenty here, as they generally are in higher latitudes, yet we seldom hauled the seine without taking
from

1770.
August.

from fifty to two hundred weight. They are of various sorts; but, except the mullet, and some of the shell-fish, none of them are known in Europe; most of them are palatable, and some are very delicious. Upon the shoals and reefs there are incredible numbers of the finest green turtle in the world, and oysters of various kinds, particularly the rock-oyster and the pearl-oyster. The gigantic cockles have been mentioned already; besides which there are sea cray-fish, or lobsters, and crabs; of these, however, we saw only the shells. In the rivers and salt creeks there are alligators.

The only person who has hitherto given any account of this country, or its inhabitants, is Dampier; and though he is, in general, a writer of credit, yet in many particulars he is mistaken. The people whom he saw, were indeed inhabitants of a part of the coast very distant from that which we visited; but we also saw inhabitants upon parts of the coast very distant from each other, and there being a perfect uniformity in person and customs among them all, it is reasonable to conclude, that distance in another direction has not considerably broken it.

The number of inhabitants in this country appears to be very small in proportion to its extent. We never saw so many as thirty of them together but once, and that was at Botany Bay, when men, women, and children assembled upon a rock, to see the ship pass by: when they manifestly formed a resolution to engage us, they never could muster above fourteen or fifteen fighting men; and we never saw a number of their sheds or houses together that could accommodate a larger party. It is true, indeed, that we saw only the sea-coast on the eastern side, and that between this and the western shore there is an immense tract of country wholly unexplored; but there is great reason to believe that this immense tract is either wholly desolate, or at least still more thinly inhabited than the parts we visited. It is impossible that the inland country should subsist inhabitants at all seasons without cultivation. It is extremely improbable that the inhabitants of the coast should be totally ignorant of arts of cultivation which were practised inland; and it

1770.
August.

is equally improbable that, if they knew such arts, there should be no traces of them among them. It is certain, that we did not see one foot of ground in a state of cultivation in the whole country, and therefore it may well be concluded, that where the sea does not contribute to feed the inhabitants, the country is not inhabited.

The only tribe with which we had any intercourse, we found where the ship was careened; it consisted of one-and-twenty persons, twelve men, seven women, one boy, and one girl; the women we never saw but at a distance, for when the men came over the river they were always left behind. The men here, and in other places, were of a middle size, and in general well made, clean limbed, and remarkably vigorous, active and nimble; their countenances were not altogether without expression, and their voices were remarkably soft and effeminate.

Their skins were so uniformly covered with dirt, that it was very difficult to ascertain their true colour; we made several attempts, by wetting our fingers and rubbing it, to remove the incrustations, but with very little effect. With the dirt they appear nearly as black as a Negroe, and, according to our best discoveries, the skin itself is of the colour of wood-foot, or what is commonly called chocolate colour. Their features are far from being disagreeable, their noses are not flat, nor are their lips thick; their teeth are white and even, and their hair naturally long and black; it is, however, universally cropped short; in general it is straight, but sometimes it has a slight curl; we saw none that was not matted and filthy, though without oil or grease, and, to our great astonishment, free from lice. Their beards were of the same colour with their hair, and bushy and thick; they are not, however, suffered to grow long. A man whom we had seen one day with his beard somewhat longer than his companions, we saw the next with it somewhat shorter, and upon examination found the ends of the hairs burnt: from this incident, and our having never seen any sharp instrument among them, we concluded that both the hair and the beard were kept short by singeing them.

Both

Both sexes, as I have already observed, go stark naked, and seem to have no more sense of indecency, in discovering the whole body, than we have in discovering our hands and face. Their principal ornament is the bone which they thrust through the cartilage that divides the nostrils from each other: what perversion of taste could make them think this a decoration, or what could prompt them, before they had worn it or seen it worn, to suffer the pain and inconveniency that must of necessity attend it, is perhaps beyond the power of human sagacity to determine: as this bone is as thick as a man's finger, and between five and six inches long: it reaches quite across the face, and so effectually stops up both the nostrils, that they are forced to keep their mouths wide open for breath, and snuffle so when they attempt to speak, that they are scarcely intelligible even to each other. Our seamen, with some humour, called it their spritsail-yard; and indeed it had so ludicrous an appearance, that till we were used to it, we found it difficult to refrain from laughter. Beside this nose-jewel, they had necklaces made of shells, very neatly cut and strung together: bracelets of small cord, wound two or three times about the upper part of their arm, and a string of plaited human hair about as thick as a thread of yarn, tied round the waist. Besides these, some of them had gorgets of shells hanging round the neck, so as to reach across the breast. But though these people wear no clothes, their bodies have a covering besides the dirt, for they paint them both white and red: the red is commonly laid on in broad patches upon the shoulders and breast; and the white in stripes, some narrow, and some broad: the narrow were drawn over the limbs, and the broad over the body, not without some degree of taste. The white was also laid on in small patches upon the face, and drawn in a circle round each eye. The red seemed to be ochre, but what the white was we could not discover: it was close grained, saponaceous to the touch, and almost as heavy as white lead; possibly it might be a kind of *Steatites*, but to our great regret we could not procure a bit of it to examine. They have holes in their ears, but we never saw any thing worn in them.

1770.
August.

Upon such ornaments as they had, they set so great a value, that they would never part with the least article for any thing we could offer; which was the more extraordinary, as our beads and ribbons were ornaments of the same kind, but of a more regular form and more showy materials. They had indeed no idea of traffic, nor could we communicate any to them: they received the things that we gave them; but never appeared to understand our signs when we required a return. The same indifference, which prevented them from buying what we had, prevented them also from attempting to steal: if they had coveted more, they would have been less honest; for when we refused to give them a turtle, they were enraged, and attempted to take it by force, and we had nothing else upon which they seemed to set the least value; for, as I have before observed, many of the things that we had given them, we found left negligently about in the woods, like the playthings of children, which please only while they are new. Upon their bodies we saw no marks of disease or sores, but large scars in irregular lines, which appeared to be the remains of wounds which they had inflicted upon themselves with some blunt instrument, and which we understood by signs to have been memorials of grief for the dead.

They appeared to have no fixed habitations, for we saw nothing like a town or village in the whole country. Their houses, if houses they may be called, seem to be formed with less art and industry than any we had seen, except the wretched hovels at Terra del Fuego, and in some respects they are inferior even to them. At Botany Bay, where they were best, they were just high enough for a man to sit upright in; but not large enough for him to extend himself at his whole length in any direction: they are built with pliable rods about as thick as a man's finger, in the form of an oven, by sticking the two ends into the ground, and then covering them with palm leaves, and broad pieces of bark: the door is nothing but a large hole at one end, opposite to which the fire is made, as we perceived by the ashes. Under houses, or sheds, they sleep, coiled up with their heels to their heads; and in this position one of them will
hold

1770.
August.

hold three or four persons. As we advanced northward, and the climate became warmer, we found these sheds still more slight: they were built, like the others, of twigs, and covered with bark; but none of them were more than four feet deep, and one side was intirely open: the close side was always opposed to the course of the prevailing wind, and opposite to the open side was the fire, probably more as a defence from the musquitos than the cold. Under these hovels it is probable, that they thrust only their heads and the upper part of their bodies, extending their feet towards the fire. They were set up occasionally by a wandering hord, in any place that would furnish them for a time with subsistence, and left behind them when, after it was exhausted, they went away: but in places where they remained only for a night or two, they slept without any shelter, except the bushes or grass, which is here near two feet high. We observed, however, that tho' the sleeping huts which we found upon the main, were always turned from the prevailing wind, those upon the islands were turned towards it; which seems to be a proof that they have a mild season here, during which the sea is calm, and that the same weather, which enables them to visit the islands, makes the air welcome even while they sleep.

The only furniture belonging to these houses that fell under our observation, is a kind of oblong vessel made of bark, by the simple contrivance of tying up the two ends with a withy, which not being cut off serves for a handle; these we imagined were used as buckets to fetch water from the spring, which may be supposed sometimes to be at a considerable distance. They have however a small bag, about the size of a moderate cabbage-net, which is made by laying threads loop within loop, somewhat in the manner of knitting used by our ladies to make purses. This bag the man carries loose upon his back by a small string which passes over his head; it generally contains a lump or two of paint and resin, some fish-hooks and lines, a shell or two, out of which their hooks are made, a few points of darts, and their usual ornaments, which includes the whole worldly treasure of the richest man among them.

D d 4

Their

1770.
August.

Their fish-hooks are very neatly made, and some of them are exceedingly small. For striking turtle they have a peg of wood which is about a foot long, and very well bearded; this fits into a socket, at the end of a staff of light wood, about as thick as a man's wrist, and about seven or eight feet long: to the staff is tied one end of a loose line about three or four fathoms long, the other end of which is fastened to the peg. To strike the turtle, the peg is fixed into the socket, and when it has entered his body, and is retained there by the barb, the staff flies off and serves for a float to trace their victim in the water; it assists also to tire him, till they can overtake him with their canoes, and haul him a-shore. One of these pegs, as I have mentioned already, we found buried in the body of a turtle, which had healed up over it. Their lines are from the thickness of a half inch rope to the fineness of a hair, and are made of some vegetable substance, but what in particular, we had no opportunity to learn.

Their food is chiefly fish, though they sometimes contrive to kill the kangaroo, and even birds of various kinds; notwithstanding they are so shy that we found it difficult to get within reach of them with a fowling-piece. The only vegetable that can be considered as an article of food is the yam; yet doubtless they eat the several fruits which have been mentioned among other productions of the country; and indeed we saw the shells and hulls of several of them lying about the places where they had kindled their fire.

They do not appear to eat any animal food raw; but having no vessel in which water can be boiled, they either broil it upon the coals, or bake it in a hole by the help of hot stones, in the same manner as is practised by the inhabitants of the islands in the South Seas.

Whether they are acquainted with any plant that has an intoxicating quality, we do not know; but we observed that several of them held leaves of some sort constantly in their mouths, as an European does tobacco, and an East Indian betel: we never saw the plant, but when they took it from their mouths at our request; possibly it might be a species of the betel;
but

but whatever it was, it had no effect upon the teeth or the lips.

1770.
August.

As they have no nets, they catch fish only by striking, or with a hook and line, except such as they find in the hollows of the rocks and shoals, which are dry at half ebb.

Their manner of hunting we had no opportunity to see; but we conjectured, by the notches which they had every where cut in large trees in order to climb them, that they took their station near the tops of them, and there watched for such animals as might happen to pass near enough to be reached by their lances: it is possible also, that in this situation they might take birds when they came to roost.

I have observed, that when they went from our tents upon the banks of Endeavour River, we could trace them by the fires which they kindled in their way; and we imagined that these fires were intended some way for the taking the kangaroo, which we observed to be so much afraid of fire, that our dogs could scarcely force it over places which had been newly burned, though the fire was extinguished.

They produce fire with great facility, and spread it in a wonderful manner. To produce it, they take two pieces of dry soft wood, one is a stick about eight or nine inches long, the other piece is flat: the stick they shape into an obtuse point at one end, and pressing it upon the other, turn it nimbly, by holding it between both their hands as we do a chocolate mill, often shifting their hands up, and then moving them down upon it, to increase the pressure as much as possible. By this method they get fire in less than two minutes, and from the smallest spark they increase it with great speed and dexterity. We have often seen one of them run along the shore, to all appearance with nothing in his hand, who stooping down for a moment, at the distance of every fifty or a hundred yards, left fire behind him, as we could see first by the smoke, and then by the flame among the drift wood, and other litter which was scattered along the place. We had the curiosity to examine one of these planters of fire when he set off, and we saw him wrap up a small spark in dry grass, which, when he had run a little way, having been fanned by the

1770
August.

the air that his motion produced, began to blaze; he then laid it down in a place convenient for his purpose, inclosing a spark of it in another quantity of grass, and so continued his course.

There are perhaps few things in the history of mankind more extraordinary than the discovery and application of fire: it will scarcely be disputed that the manner of producing it, whether by collision or attrition, was discovered by chance: but its first effects would naturally strike those to whom it was a new object with consternation and terror: it would appear to be an enemy to life and nature, and to torment and destroy whatever was capable of being destroyed or tormented; and therefore it seems not easy to conceive what should incline those, who first saw it receive a transient existence from chance, to produce it by design. It is by no means probable that those who first saw fire approached it with the same caution, as those who are familiar with its effects, so as to be warmed only and not burned; and it is reasonable to think that the intolerable pain which, at its first appearance, it must produce upon ignorant curiosity, would sow perpetual enmity between this element and mankind; and that the same principle which incites them to crush a serpent, would incite them to destroy fire, and avoid all means by which it would be produced, as soon as they were known. These circumstances considered, how men became sufficiently familiar with it to render it useful, seems to be a problem very difficult to solve: nor is it easy to account for the first application of it to culinary purposes, as the eating both animal and vegetable food raw, must have become a habit, before there was fire to dress it, and those who have considered the force of habit will readily believe, that to men, who had always eaten the flesh of animals raw, it would be as disagreeable dressed, as to those who have always eaten it dressed it would be raw. It is remarkable that the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego produce fire from a spark by collision, and that the happier natives of this country, New Zealand, and Otaheite, produce it by the attrition of one combustible substance against another; is there not then some reason to suppose that these different operations correspond with the manner in which chance

1770.
August.

chance produced fire in the neighbourhood of the torrid and frigid zones? Among the rude inhabitants of a cold country, neither any operation of art, or occurrence of accident, could be supposed so easily to produce fire by attrition, as in a climate where every thing is hot, dry, and adust, teeming with a latent fire which a slight degree of motion was sufficient to call forth; in a cold country, therefore, it is natural to suppose that fire was produced by the accidental collision of two metallic substances, and in a cold country, for that reason, the same expedient was used to produce it by design: but in hot countries, where two combustible substances easily kindle by attrition, it is probable that the attrition of such substances first produced fire, and here it was therefore natural for art to adopt the same operation, with a view to produce the same effect. It may indeed be true that fire is now produced in many cold countries by attrition, and in many hot by a stroke; but perhaps upon enquiry there may appear reason to conclude, that this has arisen from the communication of one country with another, and that with respect to the original production of fire in hot and cold countries, the distinction is well founded.

There may perhaps be some reason to suppose that men became gradually acquainted with the nature and effects of fire, by its permanent existence in a volcano, there being remains of volcanos, or vestiges of their effects, in almost every part of the world: by a volcano, however, no method of producing fire, otherwise than by contact, could be learned; the production and application of fire, therefore, still seem to afford abundant subject of speculation to the curious.

The weapons of these people are spears or lances, and these are of different kinds: some that we saw upon the southern part of the coast had four prongs, pointed with bone, and barbed; the points were also smeared with a hard resin, which gave them a polish, and made them enter deeper into what they struck. To the northward, the lance has but one point: the shaft is made of cane, or the stalk of a plant somewhat resembling a bullrush, very strait and light, and from eight to fourteen feet long, consisting of several

1770.

August.

several joints, where the pieces are let into each other, and bound together; to this are fitted points of different kinds; some are of a hard heavy wood, and some are the bones of fish; we saw several that were pointed with the stings of the sting-ray, the largest that they could procure, and barbed with several that were smaller, fastened on in a contrary direction; the points of wood were also sometimes armed with sharp pieces of broken shells, which were stuck in, and at the junctures covered with resin: the lances that are thus barbed, are indeed dreadful weapons, for when once they have taken place, they can never be drawn back without tearing away the flesh, or leaving the sharp ragged splinters of the bone or shell which forms the beard behind them in the wound. These weapons are thrown with great force and dexterity; if intended to wound at a short distance, between ten and twenty yards, simply with the hand, but if at the distance of forty or fifty, with an instrument which we called a throwing stick. This is a plain smooth piece of a hard reddish wood, very highly polished, about two inches broad, half an inch thick, and three feet long, with a small knob, or hook at one end, and a cross piece about three or four inches long at the other: the knob at one end is received in a small dint or hollow, which is made for that purpose in the shaft of the lance near the point, but from which it easily slips, upon being impelled, forward; when the lance is laid along upon this machine, and secured in a proper position by the knob, the person that is to throw it holds it over his shoulder, and after shaking it, delivers both the throwing stick and lance with all his force; but the stick being stopped by the cross piece which comes against the shoulder, with a sudden jerk, the lance flies forward with incredible swiftness, and with so good an aim, that at the distance of fifty yards these Indians were more sure of their mark than we could be with a single bullet. Besides these lances, we saw no offensive weapon upon this coast, except when we took our last view of it with our glasses, and then we thought we saw a man with a bow and arrows, in which it is possible we might be mistaken. We saw, however, at Botany Bay, a shield or target, of an oblong shape, about

1770.
August.

about three feet long, and eighteen inches broad, which was made of the bark of a tree: this was fetched out of a hut by one of the men that opposed our landing, who, when he ran away, left it behind him, and upon taking it up, we found that it had been pierced through with a single pointed lance near the center. These shields are certainly in frequent use among the people here, for though this was the only one that we saw in their possession, we frequently found trees from which they appeared manifestly to have been cut, the marks being easily distinguished from those that were made by cutting buckets: sometimes also we found the shields cut out, but not yet taken off from the tree, the edges of the bark only being a little raised by wedges, so that these people appear to have discovered that the bark of a tree becomes thicker and stronger by being suffered to remain upon the trunk after it has been cut round.

The canoes of New Holland are as mean and rude as the houses. Those on the southern part of the coast are nothing more than a piece of bark, about twelve feet long, tied together at the ends, and kept open in the middle by small bows of wood; yet in a vessel of this construction we once saw three people. In shallow water they are set forward by a pole, and in deeper by paddles, about eighteen inches long, one of which the boatman holds in each hand; mean as they are, they have many conveniencies, they draw but little water; and they are very light, so that they go upon mud banks to pick up shell fish, the most important use to which they can be applied, better perhaps than vessels of any other construction. We observed, that in the middle of these canoes there was a heap of sea-weed, and upon that a small fire; probably that the fish may be broiled and eaten the moment it is caught.

The canoes that we saw when we advanced farther to the northward, are not made of bark, but of the trunk of a tree hollowed, perhaps by fire. They are about fourteen feet long, and, being very narrow, are fitted with an outrigger to prevent their oversetting. These are worked with paddles, that are so large as to require both hands to manage one of them: the outside is wholly unmarked by any tool, but at each end the wood

1770.

August.

wood is left longer at the top than at the bottom, so that that there is a projection beyond the hollow part resembling the end of a plank; the sides are tolerably thin, but how the tree is felled and fashioned, we had no opportunity to learn. The only tools that we saw among them are an adze, wretchedly made of stone, some small pieces of the same substance in form of a wedge, a wooden mallet, and some shells and fragments of coral. For polishing their throwing sticks, and the points of their lances, they use the leaves of a kind of wild fig-tree, which bites upon wood almost as keenly as the shave-grass of Europe, which is used by our joiners: with such tools, the making even such a canoe as I have described, must be a most difficult and tedious labour: to those who have been accustomed to the use of metal, it appears altogether impracticable; but there are few difficulties that will not yield to patient perseverance, and he, who does all he can, will certainly produce effects that greatly exceed his apparent power.

The utmost freight of these canoes is four people, and if more at any time wanted to come over the river, one of those who came first was obliged to go back for the rest: from this circumstance, we conjectured that the boat we saw, when we were lying in Endeavour River, was the only one in the neighbourhood: we have however some reason to believe that the bark canoes are also used where the wooden ones are constructed, for upon one of the small islands where the natives had been fishing for turtle, we found one of the little paddles which had belonged to such a boat, and would have been useless on board any other.

By what means the inhabitants of this country are reduced to such a number as it can subsist, is not perhaps very easy to guess; whether, like the inhabitants of New Zealand, they are destroyed by the hands of each other in contests for food; whether they are swept off by accidental famine, or whether there is any cause which prevents the increase of the species, must be left for future adventurers to determine. That they have wars, appears by their weapons; for supposing the lances to serve merely for the striking of fish, the shield could be intended for nothing but a defence against men;

1770.
August.

men; the only mark of hostility, however, which we saw among them, was the perforation of the shield by a spear which had been just mentioned, for none of them appeared to have been wounded by an enemy. Neither can we determine whether they are pusillanimous or brave; the resolution with which two of them attempted to prevent our landing, when we had two boats full of men, in Botany Bay, even after one of them was wounded with small shot, gave us reason to conclude that they were not only naturally courageous, but that they had acquired a familiarity with the dangers of hostility, and were, by habit as well as nature, a daring and warlike people; but their precipitate flight from every other place that we approached, without even a menace, while they were out of our reach, was an indication of uncommon tameness and timidity, such as those who had only been occasionally warriors must be supposed to have shaken off, whatever might have been their natural disposition. I have faithfully related facts, the reader must judge of the people for himself.

From the account that has been given of our commerce with them, it cannot be supposed that we should know much of their language; yet as this is an object of great curiosity, especially to the learned, and of great importance in their researches into the origin of the various nations that have been discovered, we took some pains to bring away such a specimen of it as might, in a certain degree, answer the purpose; and I shall now give an account how it was procured. If we wanted to know the name of a stone, we took a stone up into our hands, and, as well as we could, intimated by signs that we wished they should name it: the word that they pronounced upon the occasion, we immediately wrote down. This method, though it was the best we could contrive, might certainly lead us into many mistakes; for if an Indian was to take up a stone, and ask us the name of it, we might answer a pebble or a flint; so when we took up a stone, and ask an Indian the name of it, he might pronounce a word that distinguished the species and not the genus, or that, instead of signifying stone simply, might signify a rough stone,

1770.
August.

stone, or a smooth stone; however, as much as possible to avoid mistakes of this kind, several of us contrived, at different times, to get from them as many words as we could, and having noted them down, compared our lists: those which were the same in all, and which, according to every one's account, signified the same thing, we ventured to record, with a very few others, which, from the simplicity of the subject, and the ease of expressing our question with plainness and precision by a sign, have acquired equal authority.

English.	New Holland.	English.	New Holland.
<i>The bead,</i>	Wageegee.	<i>Nails,</i>	Kulke.
<i>Hair,</i>	Morye.	<i>Sun,</i>	Gallan.
<i>Eyes,</i>	Meul.	<i>Fire,</i>	Meanang.
<i>Ears,</i>	Melea.	<i>A stone,</i>	Walba.
<i>Lips,</i>	Yembe.	<i>Sand,</i>	Yowall.
<i>Nose,</i>	Bonjoo.	<i>A rope,</i>	Gurka.
<i>Tongue,</i>	Ungar.	<i>A man,</i>	Bama.
<i>Beard,</i>	Wallar.	<i>A male turtle,</i>	Poinga.
<i>Neck,</i>	Doomboo.	<i>A female,</i>	Mameingo.
<i>Nipples,</i>	Cayo.	<i>A canoe,</i>	Marigan.
<i>Hands,</i>	Marigal.	<i>To paddle,</i>	Pelenyo.
<i>Thighs,</i>	Coman.	<i>Sit down,</i>	Takai.
<i>Navel,</i>	Toolpoor.	<i>Smooth,</i>	Mier Carrar.
<i>Knees,</i>	Pongo.	<i>A dog,</i>	Cotta, or Kota.
<i>Feet,</i>	Edamal.	<i>A loriquet,</i>	{ Perpere, or pier-pier.
<i>Heel,</i>	Kniorror.	<i>Blood,</i>	Garmbe.
<i>Cockatoo,</i>	Wanda.	<i>Wood,</i>	Yocou.
<i>The soal of the foot,</i>	{ Chumal.	<i>The bone in the nose,</i>	{ Tapoot.
<i>Ankle,</i>	Chongurn.	<i>A bag,</i>	Carngala.
<i>Arms,</i>	Aco, or Acol.	<i>A great cockle,</i>	Moingo.
<i>Thumb,</i>	Eboorbalga.	<i>Cocos, yams,</i>	Maracotu.

The

ROUND THE WORLD.

41

English. New Holland. New Holland. English.

1770.
August.

<i>The fore, middle, and ring fingers.</i>	{ Egalbaiga.	Cherr, Cherco, Yarcaw,	{ <i>Expressions, as we sup- posed, of ad- miration, which they continually used when they were in company with us.</i>
<i>The little finger.</i>	{ Nakil, or E- boornakil.	Tut, tut, tut, tut,	
<i>The sky,</i>	{ Kere, or Kearre.		
<i>A father,</i>	Dunjo.		
<i>A son,</i>	Jamure.		

I shall now quit this country, with a few observations relative to the currents and tides upon the coast. From latitude 32° , and somewhat higher, down to Sandy Cape, in latitude $24^{\circ} 46'$, we constantly found a current setting to the southward, at the rate of about ten or fifteen miles a day, being more or less, according to our distance from the land; for it always ran with more force in shore than in the offing; but I could never satisfy myself whether the flood-tide came from the southward, the eastward, or the northward: I inclined to the opinion that it came from the south-east, but the first time we anchored off the coast, which was in latitude $24^{\circ} 30'$, about ten leagues to the south-east of Bustard Bay, I found that it came from the north-west; on the contrary thirty leagues farther to the north-west, on the south side of Keppel Bay, I found that it came from the east, and at the northern part of that Bay it came from the northward, but with a much slower motion than it had come from the east: on the east side of the bay of Inlets, it set strongly to the westward, as far as the opening of Broad Sound; but on the north side of that Sound, it came with a very slow motion from the north-west; and when we lay at anchor before Repulse Bay, it came from the northward: to account for its course in all this variety of directions, we need only admit that the flood-tide comes from the east or south-east. It is well known, that where there are deep inlets, and large creeks into low lands, running up from the sea, and not occasioned by rivers of fresh water, there will always be a great

1770.
August.

indraught of the flood-tide, the direction of which will be determined by the position or direction of the coast which forms the entrance of such inlet, whatever be its course at sea; and where the tides are weak, which upon this coast is generally the case, a large inlet will, if I may be allowed the expression, attract the flood-tide for many leagues.

A view of the chart will at once illustrate this position. To the northward of Whitsunday's passage there is no large inlet, consequently the flood sets to the north-ward, or north-westward, according to the direction of the coast, and the ebb to the south, or south-eastward, at least such is their course at a little distance from the land, for very near it they will be influenced by small inlets. I also observed, that we had only one high tide in twenty-four hours, which happened in the night. The difference between the perpendicular rise of the water in the day and the night, when there is a spring tide, is no less than three feet, which, where the tides are so inconsiderable as they are here, is a large proportion of the whole difference between high and low water. This irregularity of the tides, which is worthy of notice, we did not discover till we were run ashore, and perhaps farther to the northward it is still greater: after we got within the reef the second time, we found the tides more considerable than we had ever done before, except in the Bay of Inlets, and possibly this may be owing to the water being more confined between the shoals; here also the flood sets to the north-west, and continues in the same direction to the extremity of New Wales; from whence its direction is west and south-west into the Indian sea.

C H A P. IX.

The Passage from New South Wales to New Guinea, with an Account of what happened upon landing there.

Thurs. 23.

IN the afternoon of Thursday August 23d, after leaving Booby Island, we steered W. N. W. with light airs from the S. S. W. till five o'clock, when it fell calm, and the tide of ebb soon after setting to the N. E.

N. E. we came to an anchor in eight fathom water, with a soft sandy bottom. Booby Island bore S. 50 E. distant five miles, and the Prince of Wales's Isles extended from N. E. by N. to S. 55 E. between these there appeared to be a clear open passage, extending from N. 46 E. to E. by N.

1770.
August.

At half an hour after five in the morning of the Friday 24. 25th, as we were purchasing the anchor, the cable parted about eight or ten fathoms from the ring: the ship then began to drive; but I immediately dropped another anchor, which brought her up before she got more than a cable's length from the buoy; the boats were then sent to sweep for the anchor, but could not succeed. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $10^{\circ} 30' S.$ As I was resolved not to leave the anchor behind, while there remained a possibility of recovering it, I sent the boats again after dinner, with a small line, to discover where it lay; this being happily effected, we swept for it with a hawser, and by the same hawser hove the ship up to it: we proceeded to weigh it, but just as we were about to ship it, the hawser slipped, and we had all our labour to repeat: by this time it was dark, and we were obliged to suspend our operations till the morning.

As soon as it was light, we swept it again, and heaved it to the bows: by eight o'clock, we weighed the other anchor, got under sail, and, with a fine breeze at E. N. E. stood to the north west. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $10^{\circ} 18' S.$ longitude $219^{\circ} 39' W.$ At this time we had no land in sight, but about two miles to the southward of us lay a large shoal, upon which the sea broke with great violence, and part of which, I believe, is dry at low water. It extends N. W. and S. E. and is about five leagues in circuit. Our depth of water, from the time we weighed till now, was nine fathoms, but it soon shallowed to seven fathoms; and at half an hour after one, having run eleven miles between noon and that time, the boat which was a-head made the signal for shoal-water; we immediately let go an anchor, and brought the ship up with all the sails standing, for the boat having just been relieved, was at but a little distance; upon looking out from the ship, we saw shoal water almost

1770.
August.

all round us, both wind and tide at the same time setting upon it. The ship was in six fathoms, but upon sounding round her, at the distance of half a cable's length, we found scarcely two. This shoal reached from the east, round by the north and west, as far as the south east, so that there was no way for us to get clear but that by which we came. This was another hair's breadth escape, for it was near high-water, and there ran a short cockling sea, which must very soon have bulged the ship if she had struck; and if her direction had been half a cable's length more either to the right or left, she must have struck before the signal for the shoal was made. The shoals which, like these, lie a fathom or two under water, are the most dangerous of any, for they do not discover themselves till the vessel is just upon them, and then indeed the water looks brown, as if it reflected a dark cloud. Between three and four o'clock the tide of ebb began to make, and I sent the master to sound to the southward and south-westward, and in the mean time, as the ship trended, I weighed anchor, and with a little sail stood first to the southward, and afterwards edging away to the westward, got once more out of danger. At sun-set, we anchored in ten fathoms, with a sandy bottom, having a fresh gale at E. S. E.

Sunday 26.

At six in the morning we weighed again and stood west, having as usual, first sent a boat a-head to sound. I had intended to steer N. W. till I had made the south coast of New Guinea, designing, if possible, to touch upon it; but upon meeting with these shoals, I altered my course, in hopes of finding a clearer channel, and deep water. In this I succeeded, for by noon our depth of water was gradually increased to seventeen fathoms. Our latitude was now by observation $10^{\circ} 10'$ S. and our longitude $220^{\circ} 12'$ W. No land was in sight. We continued to steer west till sun-set, our depth of water being from twenty-seven to twenty-three fathoms; we then shortened sail, and kept upon a wind all night; four hours on one tack, and four on another. At day-light, we made all the sail we could, and steered W. N. W. At noon our latitude by observation was $9^{\circ} 55'$ S. longitude 221° W. variation $2^{\circ} 30'$ E. We continued our N. W. course till sun-

Monday 27.

1770.
August.

sun-set, when we again shortened sail, and hauled close upon a wind to the northward : our depth of water was twenty-one fathoms. At eight we tacked and stood to the southward till twelve : then stood to the northward with little sail till day-light : our soundings were from twenty-five to seventeen fathoms, the water growing gradually shallow as we stood to the north, in order to make the land of New Guinea : from the time of our making sail till noon, the depth of water gradually decreased from seventeen to twelve fathoms, with a stoney and shelly bottom. Our latitude by observation was now $8^{\circ} 52'$ S. which is in the same parallel as that in which the southern parts of New Guinea are laid down in the charts ; but there are only two points so far to the south, and I reckoned that we were a degree to the westward of them both, and therefore did not see the land, which trends more to the northward. We found the sea here to be in many parts covered with brown scum, such as sailors generally call spawn. When I first saw it, I was alarmed, fearing that we were among shoals ; but upon sounding, we found the same depth of water as in other places. This scum was examined both by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, but they could not determine what it was : it was formed of innumerable small particles, not more than half a line in length, each of which in the microscope appeared to consist of thirty or forty tubes ; and each tube was divided through its whole length by small partitions into many cells, like the tubes of the conferva ; they were supposed to belong to the vegetable kingdom, because upon burning them they produced no smell like that of an animal substance. The same appearance had been observed upon the coast of Brazil and New Holland, but never at any considerable distance from the shore. In the evening a small bird hovered about the ship, and at night settling among the rigging, was taken. It proved to be exactly the same bird which Dampier has described, and of which he has given a rude figure, by the name of a Noddy from New Holland. [See his Voyages, vol. iii. p. 98. Table of Birds, Fig. 5.]

Tuesday 28.

1770
August.

Wednes. 29.

We continued standing to the northward with a fresh gale at E. by E. and S. E. till six in the evening, having very irregular soundings, the depth changing at once from twenty-four fathoms to seven. At four, we had seen the land from the mast-head, bearing N. W. by N. it appeared to be very low, and to stretch from W. N. W. to N. N. E. distant four or five leagues. We now hauled close upon a wind till seven, then tacked and stood to the southward till twelve, at which time we wore and stood to the northward till four in the morning, then laid the head of the vessel off till day-light, when we again saw the land, and stood in N. N. W. directly for it, with a fresh gale at E. by S. Our soundings during the night were very irregular, from seven to five fathoms, suddenly changing from deep to shallow, and from shallow to deep, without in the least corresponding with our distance from the land. At half an hour after six in the morning a small low land, which lay at the distance of about a league from the main, bore N. by W. distant five miles; this island lies in latitude $8^{\circ} 13'$ S. longitude $221^{\circ} 25'$ W. and I find it laid down in the charts by the names of Bartholomew and Whermoyfen. We now steered N. W. by W. W. N. W. W. by W. S. and S. W. by W. as we found the land lie, with from five to nine fathoms; and though we reckoned we were not more than four leagues from it, yet it was so low and level that we could but just see it from the deck. It appeared however to be well covered with wood, and among other trees, we thought we could distinguish the cocoa-nut. We saw smoke in several places, and therefore knew there were inhabitants. At noon we were about three leagues from the land; the westernmost part of which that was in sight bore S. 79° W. Our latitude by observation was $8^{\circ} 19'$ S. and longitude $221^{\circ} 44'$ W. The island of St. Bartholomew bore N. 74° E. distant twenty miles.

After steering S. W. by W. six miles, we had shoal water on our starboard, which I sent the yawl to sound, and at the same time hauled off upon a wind till four o'clock, and though during that time we had run six miles, we had not deepened our water an inch. I then

then edged away S. W. four miles more, but finding it still shoal water I brought to, and called the boats aboard. At this time, being between three and four leagues from the shore, and the yawl having found only three fathoms water in the place to which I had sent her to sound, I hauled off close upon a wind, and weathered the shoal about half a mile.

Between one and two o'clock we passed a bay, or inlet, before which lies a small island that seems to shelter it from the southerly winds; but I very much doubt whether there is sufficient depth of water behind it for shipping. I could not attempt to determine the question, because the S. E. trade wind blows right into the bay, and we had not as yet had any breeze from the land.

We stretched off to sea till twelve o'clock, when we were about eleven leagues from the land, and had deepened our water to twenty-nine fathoms. We now tacked and stood in till five in the morning, when, being in six fathoms and an half, we tacked, and laid the head of the vessel off till day-light, when we saw the land bearing N. W. by W. at about the distance of four leagues. We now made sail, and steered first W. S. W. then W. by S. but coming into five fathoms and a half, we hauled off S. W. till we deepened our water to eight fathoms, and then kept away W. by S. and W. having nine fathoms, and the land just in sight from the deck; we judged it to be about four leagues distant, and it was very low and woody. Great quantities of the brown scum continued to appear upon the water, and the sailors, having given up the notion of its being spawn, found a new name for it, and called it Sea Saw-dust. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $8^{\circ} 30'$ S. our longitude $222^{\circ} 34'$ W. and Saint Bartholomew's Isle bore N. 69 E. distant seventy-four miles. Thurs. 30.

As all this coast appears to have been very minutely examined by the Dutch, and as our track with the soundings will appear by the chart, it is sufficient to say, that we continued our course to the northward, with very shallow water, upon a bank of mud, at such a distance from the shore as that it could scarcely be seen from the ship till the 3d of September. During

1770.
August.

ing this time we made many attempts to get near enough to go on shore, but without success; and having now lost six days of fair wind, at a time when we knew the south-east monsoon to be nearly at an end, we began to be impatient of farther delay, and determined to run the ship in as near to the shore as possible, and then land with the pinnace, while she kept playing off and on, to examine the produce of the country, and the disposition of the inhabitants. For the two last days we had, early in the morning, a light breeze from the shore, which was strongly impregnated with the fragrance of the trees, shrubs, and herbage that covered it, the smell being something like that of Gum Benjamin. On the 3d of September, at day-break, we saw the land extending from N. by E. to S. E. at about four leagues distance, and we then kept standing in for it with a fresh gale at E. S. E. and E. by S. till nine o'clock, when being within about three or four miles of it, and in three fathoms water, we brought to. The pinnace being hoisted out, I set off from the ship with the boat's crew, accompanied by Mr. Banks, who also took his servants, and Dr. Solander, being in all twelve persons well armed. We rowed directly towards the shore, but the water was so shallow that we could not reach it by about two hundred yards; we waded, however, the rest of the way, having left two of the seamen to take care of the boat. Hitherto we had seen no signs of inhabitants at this place; but as soon as we got a-shore we discovered the prints of human feet, which could not long have been impressed upon the sand, as they were below high-water mark; we therefore concluded that the people were at no great distance, and, as a thick wood came down within a hundred yards of the water, we thought it necessary to proceed with caution, lest we should fall into an ambuscade, and our retreat to the boat be cut off. We walked along the skirts of the wood, and at the distance of about two hundred yards from the place where we landed, we came to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, which stood upon the banks of a little brook of brackish water. The trees were of a small growth, but well hung with fruit, and near them

was

September.
Monday 3.

1770.
September.

was a shed or hut, which had been covered with their leaves, though most of them were now fallen off; about the hut lay a great number of the shells of the fruit, some of which appeared to be just fresh from the tree. We looked at the fruit very wishfully, but not thinking it safe to climb, we were obliged to leave it without tasting a single nut. At a little distance from this place we found plantains, and a bread-fruit-tree, but it had nothing upon it; and having now advanced about a quarter of a mile from the boat, three Indians rushed out of the wood, with a hideous shout, at about the distance of an hundred yards; and, as they ran towards us, the foremost threw something out of his hand, which flew on one side of him, and burned exactly like gunpowder, but made no report; the other two instantly threw their lances at us; and, as no time was now to be lost, we discharged our pieces, which were loaded with small-shot. It is probable that they did not feel the shot, for though they halted a moment they did not retreat, and a third dart was thrown at us. As we thought their farther approach might be prevented with less risk of life, than it would cost to defend ourselves against their attack if they should come nearer, we loaded our pieces with ball, and fired a second time: by this discharge it is probable that some of them were wounded, yet we had the satisfaction to see that they all ran away with great agility. As I was not disposed forcibly to invade this country, either to gratify our appetites or our curiosity, and perceived that nothing was to be done upon friendly terms, we improved this interval, in which the destruction of the natives was no longer necessary to our own defence, and with all expedition returned towards our boat. As we were advancing along the shore, we perceived that the two men on board made signals that more Indians were coming down; and before we got into the water we saw several of them coming round a point, at the distance of about five hundred yards: it is probable that they had met with the three who first attacked us; for as soon as they saw us they halted, and seemed to wait till their main body should come up. We entered the water, and waded towards the boat. and they remained at their station without giving us any molestation. As soon as we were a-board we rowed
a-breast

1770.
September.

a-breast of them, and their number then appeared to be between sixty and a hundred. We now took a view of them at our leisure; they made much the same appearance of the New Hollanders, being nearly of the same stature, and having their hair short cropped; like them also they were all stark naked, but we thought the colour of their skin was not quite so dark; this, however, might perhaps be merely the effect of their not being quite so dirty. All this while they were shouting defiance, and letting off their fires by four or five at a time. What these fires were, or for what purpose intended, we could not imagine; those who discharged them had in their hands a short piece of stick, possibly a hollow cane, which they swung sideways from them, and we immediately saw fire and smoke, exactly resembling those of a musket, and of no longer duration. This wonderful phenomenon was observed from the ship, and the deception was so great that the people on board thought they had fire-arms; and in the boat, if we had not been so near as that we must have heard the report, we should have thought they had been firing volleys. After we had looked at them attentively some time, without taking any notice of their flashing and vociferation, we fired some musquets over their heads; upon hearing the balls rattle among the trees they walked leisurely away, and we returned to the ship. Upon examining the weapons they had thrown at us, we found them to be light darts about four feet long, very ill made, of a reed or bamboo cane, and pointed with hard wood, in which there were many barbs. They were discharged with great force; for though we were at sixty yards distance, they went beyond us, but in what manner we could not exactly see; possibly they might be shot with a bow, but we saw no bows among them when we surveyed them from the boat; and we were in general of opinion that they were thrown with a stick, in the manner practised by the New Hollanders.

This place lies in the latitude of $6^{\circ} 15'$ S. and about sixty-five leagues to the N. E. of Port St. Augustine, or Walche Caep, and is near what is called in the charts C. de la Colta de St. Bonaventura. The land here, like that in every other part of the coast, is very low,

1770.
September.

low, but covered with a luxuriance of wood and herbage, that can scarcely be conceived. We saw the cocoa-nut, the bread-fruit, and the plantain tree, all flourishing in a state of the highest perfection, though the cocoa-nuts were green, and the bread-fruit not in season, besides most of the trees, shrubs, and plants that are common to the South Sea islands, New Zealand, and New Holland.

Soon after our return to the ship we hoisted in the boat, and made sail to the westward, being resolved to spend no more time upon this coast, to the great satisfaction of a very considerable majority of the ship's company. But I am sorry to say, that I was strongly urged by some of the officers to send a party of men ashore, and cut down the cocoa-nut trees, for the sake of the fruit; this I peremptorily refused, as equally unjust and cruel. The natives had attacked us merely for landing upon their coast, when we attempted to take nothing away; and it was therefore morally certain that they would have made a vigorous effort to defend their property, if it had been invaded, in which case many of them must have fallen a sacrifice to our attempt, and perhaps also some of our own people. I should have regretted the necessity of such a measure, if I had been in want of the necessaries of life; and certainly it would have been highly criminal, when nothing was to be obtained but two or three hundred of green cocoa-nuts, which would at most have procured us a mere transient gratification. I might indeed have proceeded farther along the coast, to the northward and westward, in search of a place where the ship might have lain so near the shore as to cover the people with her guns when they landed; but this would have obviated only part of the mischief; and though it might have secured us, it would probably, in the very act, have been fatal to the natives. Besides, we had reason to think that before such a place would have been found, we should have been carried so far to the westward as to have been obliged to go to Batavia, on the north side of Java; which I did not think so safe a passage as to the south of Java, through the Streights of Sunda; the ship also was so leaky, that I doubted whether it would not be necessary to heave her down at Batavia, which

1770.
September.

which was another reason for making the best of our way to that place; especially as no discovery could be expected in seas which had already been navigated, and where every coast had been laid down by the Dutch geographers. The Spaniards indeed, as well as the Dutch, seem to have circumnavigated all the islands in New Guinea, as almost every place that is distinguished in the chart has a name in both languages. The charts with which I compared such parts of this coasts as I visited, are bound up with a French work, intitled, “*Histoire des Navigations aux Terres Australes*,” which was published in 1756, and I found them tolerably exact; yet I know not by whom, nor when they were taken: and though New Holland and New Guinea are in them represented as two distinct countries, the very history in which they are bound up, leaves it in doubt. I pretend, however, to no more merit in this part of the voyage, than to have established the fact beyond all controversy.

As the two countries lie very near each other, and the intermediate space is full of islands, it is reasonable to suppose that they were both peopled from one common stock: yet no intercourse appears to have been kept up between them; for if there had, the coconuts, bread-fruits, plantains, and other fruits of New Guinea, which are equally necessary for the support of life, would certainly have been transplanted to New Holland, where no traces of them are to be found. The author of the “*Histoire des Navigations aux Terres Australes*,” in his account of La Maire’s voyage, has given a vocabulary of the language that is spoken in an island near New Britain, and we find, by comparing that vocabulary with the words which we learned in New Holland, that the languages are not the same. If therefore it should appear, that the languages of New Britain and New Guinea are the same, there will be reason to suppose that New Britain and New Guinea were peopled from a common stock: But that the inhabitants of New Holland had a different origin, notwithstanding the proximity of the countries,

C H A P. X.

*The Passage from New Guinea to the Island of Savu,
and the Transactions there.*

WE made sail, from noon on Monday the 3d to Monday 3.
noon on Tuesday the 4th, standing to the
westward, and all the time kept in soundings, having
from fourteen to thirty fathoms; not regular, but
sometimes more, sometimes less. At noon on the Tuesday 4.
4th, we were in fourteen fathoms, and latitude $6^{\circ} 44'$
S. longitude $223^{\circ} 51'$ W. our course and distance since
the 3d at noon, were S. 76 W. one hundred and twenty
miles to the westward. At noon, on the 5th of Sep- Wednesday 5.
tember, we were in latitude $7^{\circ} 25'$ S. longitude 225°
 $41'$ W. having been in soundings the whole time from
ten to twenty fathoms.

At half an hour after one in the morning of the next
day, we passed a small island which bore from us N.
N. W. distant between three and four miles; and at Thursday 6.
day-light we discovered another low island, extending
from N. N. W. to N. N. E. distant about two or three
leagues. Upon this island, which did not appear to
be very small, I believe I should have landed to exa-
mine its produce, if the wind had not blown too fresh
to admit of it. When we passed this island we had
only ten fathoms water, with a rocky bottom; and
therefore I was afraid of running down the leeward,
lest I should meet with shoal water and foul ground.
These islands have no place in charts except they
are the Arrou islands; and if these, they are laid
down much too far from New Guinea. I found the
south part of them to lie in latitude $7^{\circ} 6'$ S. longitude
 225° W.

We continued to steer W. S. W. at the rate of four
miles and an half an hour, till ten o'clock at night,
when we had forty-two fathoms, at eleven we had
thirty-seven, at twelve forty-five, at one in the morn- Friday 7.
ing forty-nine, and at three 120, after which we had
no ground. At day-light we made all the sail we
could, and at ten o'clock saw land, extending from N.
N. W.

1776.
September.

N. W. to W, by N. distant between five and six leagues : at noon it bore from N. to W. and at about the same distance : it appeared to be level, and of a moderate height : by our distance from New Guinea, it ought to have been part of the Arrou Islands, but it lies a degree farther to the south than any of these islands are laid down in the charts ; and by the latitude should be Timor Laoer : we sounded, but had no ground with fifty fathoms.

As I was not able to satisfy myself from any chart, what land it was that I saw to leeward, and fearing that it might trend away more southerly, the weather also being so hazy that we could not see far, I steered S. W. and by four had lost sight of the island. I was now sure that no part of it lay to the southward of $8^{\circ} 15'$ S. and continued standing to the S. W. with an easy sail, and a fresh breeze at S. E. by E. with E. S. E. we sounded every hour, but had no bottom with 120 fathoms.

At day-break in the morning we steered to W. S. W. and afterwards W. by S. which by noon brought us into the latitude of $9^{\circ} 30'$ S. longitude $229^{\circ} 34'$ W. and, by our run from New Guinea, we ought to have been within sight of Weasel Isles, which in the charts are laid down at the distance of twenty or twenty-five leagues from the coast of New Holland ; we however saw nothing, and therefore they must have been placed erroneously ; nor can this be thought strange, when it is considered that not only these islands, but the coast which bounds this sea, have been discovered and explored by different people, and at different times, and the charts upon which they are delineated, put together by others, perhaps at the distance of more than a century after the discoveries had been made ; not to mention that the discoverers themselves had not all the requisites for keeping an accurate journal, of which those of the present age are possessed.

Saturday 8. We continued our course, steering W. till the evening of the 8th, when the variation of the compass, by several azimuths, was $12'$ W. and by the amplitude 5 W. At noon on the 9th, our latitude, by observation, was $9^{\circ} 46'$ S. longitude $232^{\circ} 7'$ W. For the last two days we had steered due W. yet, by observation,

Sunday 9.

tion, we made sixteen miles southing, six miles from noon on the 6th to noon on the 7th, and ten miles from noon on the 7th to noon on the 8th, by which it appeared that there was a current setting to the southward. At sunset we found the variation to be 2 W. and, at the same time, saw an appearance of very high land bearing N. W. 1770.
September.

In the morning of the 10th we saw clearly that what Monday 10. had appeared to be land the night before was Timor. At noon our latitude, by observation, was $10^{\circ} 1' S.$ which was fifteen miles to the southward of that given by the log; our longitude, by observation, was $233^{\circ} 27' W.$ We steered N. W. in order to obtain a more distinct view of the land in sight, till four o'clock in the morning of the 11th, when the wind came to the N. W. and W. with which we stood to the southward till nine, when we tacked and stood N. W. having the wind now at W. S. W. At sun-rise, the land had appeared to extend from W. N. W. to N. E. and at noon, we could see it extend to the westward as far as W. by S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. but no farther to the eastward than N. by E. We were now well assured, that as the first land we had seen was Timor, the last island we had passed was Timor Laoet, or Laut. Laoet, is a word in the language of Malacca signifying Sea, and this island was named by the inhabitants of that country. The south part of it lies in latitude $8^{\circ} 15' S.$ longitude $228^{\circ} 10' W.$ but in the charts the south point is laid down in various latitudes, from $8^{\circ} 30'$ to $9^{\circ} 30'$; it is indeed possible that the land we saw might be some other island, but the presumption to the contrary is very strong; for if Timor Laut had lain where it is placed in the charts, we must have seen it there. We were now in latitude $9^{\circ} 27' S.$ longitude, by an observation of the sun and moon, $233^{\circ} 54' W.$ we were the day before in $233^{\circ} 27'$; the difference is $27'$, exactly the same that was given by the log: this, however, is a degree of accuracy in observation that is seldom to be expected. In the afternoon, we stood in shore till eight in the evening, when we tacked and stood off, being at a distance of about three leagues from the land, which at sun-set extended from S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. to N. E. at this time we sounded, and had no ground with 140 fathoms.

1770.
September.
Wednes. 12.

fathoms. At midnight, having but little wind, we tacked, and stood in, and at noon the next day our latitude by observation, was $9^{\circ} 36'$ S. This day, we saw smoke on shore in several places, and had seen many fires during the night. The land appeared to be very high, rising in gradual slopes one above another: the hills were in general covered with thick woods, but among them we could distinguish naked spots of a considerable extent, which had the appearance of having been cleared by art. At five o'clock in the afternoon we were within a mile and a half of the shore, in sixteen fathoms water, and a-breast of a small inlet into the low land, which lies in latitude $9^{\circ} 34'$ S. and probably is the same that Dampier entered with his boat, for it did not seem to have sufficient depth of water for a ship. The land here answered well to the description that he has given of it: close to the beach it was covered with high spiry trees, which he mentions as having the appearance of pines; behind these there seemed to be salt water creeks, and many mangroves, interspersed however with cocoa-nut trees: the flat land at the beach appeared in some places to extend inward two or three miles before the rise of the first hill; in this part, however, we saw no appearance of plantations or houses, but great fertility, and from the number of fires, we judged that the place must be well peopled.

Thursd. 13.

When we had approached within a mile and an half of the shore, we tacked and stood off, and the extremes of the coast then extended from N. E. by E. to W. by S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. The south westerly extremity was a low point, distant from us about three leagues. While we were standing in for the shore, we sounded several times, but had no ground till we came within two miles and a half, and then we had five and twenty fathoms, with a soft bottom. After we had tacked, we stood off till midnight, with the wind at S. we then tacked and stood two hours to the westward, when the wind veered to S. W. and W. S. W. and we then stood to the southward again. In the morning we found the variation to be $1^{\circ} 10'$ W. by the amplitude, and by the azimuth $10^{\circ} 27'$. At noon our latitude was by observation, $9^{\circ} 45'$ S. our longitude $234^{\circ} 12'$ W. we were then about
seven

seven leagues distant from the land, which extended from N. 31 E. to W. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W.

1770.
September.

With light land breezes from W. by N. for a few hours in a morning, and sea breezes from S. S. W. and S. we advanced to the westward but slowly. At noon, Friday 14. on the 14th, we were between six and seven leagues from the land, which extended from N. by E. to S. 78 W. we still saw smoke in many places by day, and fire by night, both upon the low land and the mountains beyond it. We continued steering along the shore, till the morning of the 15th, the land still appearing hilly, but not so high as it had been: the hills in general came quite down to the sea, and where they did not, we saw, instead of flats and mangrove land, immense groves of cocoa-nut trees, reaching about a mile up from the beach: there the plantations and houses commenced, and appeared to be innumerable. The houses were shaded by groves of the fan-palm, or *borassus*, and the plantations, which were inclosed by a fence, reached almost to the tops of the highest hills. We saw however neither people nor cattle, though our glasses were continually employed, at which we were not a little surprised.

Saturday 15.

We continued our course with little variation, till Sunday 16. nine o'clock in the morning of the 16th, when we saw the small island called ROTTE; and at noon, the island SEMAU, lying off the south end of Timor, bore N. W.

Dampier, who has given a large description of the island of Timor, says, that it is seventy leagues long, and sixteen broad, and that it lies nearly N. E. and S. W. I found the east side of it to lie nearest N. E. by E. and S. W. by W. and the south end to lie in latitude $10^{\circ} 23'$ S. longitude $236^{\circ} 5'$ W. We ran about forty-five leagues along the east side, and found the navigation altogether free from danger. The land, which is bounded by the sea, except near the south end, is low for two or three miles within the beach, and in general intersected by salt creeks: behind the low land are mountains, which rise one above another to a considerable height. We steered W. N. W. till two in the afternoon, when, being within a small distance of the north end of Rotte, we hauled up N. N. W.

1770.
September.

in order to go between it and Semau : after steering three leagues upon this course, we edged away N. W. and W. and by six, we were clear of all the islands. At this time the south part of Semau, which lies in latitude $10^{\circ} 15'$ S. bore N. E. distant four leagues, and the island of Rotte extended as far to the southward as S. 36° W. The north end of this island, and the south end of Timor, lie N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and are about three or four leagues distant from each other. At the west end of the passage between Rotte and Semau, are two small islands, one of which lies near the Rotte shore, and the other off the south-west point of Semau : there is a good channel between them, about six miles broad, through which we passed. The isle of Rotte has not so lofty and mountainous an appearance as Timor, though it is agreeably diversified by hill and valley : on the north side there are many sandy beaches, near which grew some trees of the fan palm, but the far greater part was covered with a kind of brushy wood, that was without leaves. The appearance of Semau was nearly the same with that of Timor, but not quite so high. About ten o'clock at night, we observed a phænomenon in the heavens, which in many particulars resembled the aurora borealis, and in others was very different : it consisted of a dull reddish light, and reached about twenty degrees above the horizon : its extent was very different at different times, but it was never less than eight or ten points of the compass : through, and out of this, passed rays of light of a brighter colour, which vanished, and were renewed nearly in the same time as those of the aurora borealis, but had no degree of the tremulous or vibratory motion which is observed in that phænomenon : the body of it bore S. S. E. from the ship, and it continued, without any diminution of its brightness, till twelve o'clock, when we retired to sleep, but how long afterwards, I cannot tell.

Monday 17. Being clear of all the islands, which are laid down in the maps we had on board, between Timor and Java, we steered a west course till six o'clock the next morning, when we unexpectedly saw an island bearing W. S. W. and at first I thought we had made a new discovery. We steered directly for it, and by ten o'clock

o'clock were close in with the north side of it, where we saw houses, cocoa-nut trees, and, to our very agreeable surprise, numerous flocks of sheep. This was a temptation not to be resisted by people in our situation, especially as many of us were in a bad state of health, and many still repining at my not having touched at Timor : it was therefore soon determined to attempt a commerce with people who appeared to be so well able to supply our many necessities, and remove at once the sickness and discontent that had got footing among us. The pinnacle was hoisted out, and Mr. Gore, the Second Lieutenant, sent to see if there was any convenient place to land, taking with him some trifles, as presents to the natives if any of them should appear. While he was gone, we saw from the ship two men on horseback, who seemed to be riding upon the hills for their amusement, and often stopped to look at the ship. By this we knew that the place had been settled by Europeans, and hoped that the many disagreeable circumstances which always attend the first establishment of commerce with savages, would be avoided. In the mean time, Mr. Gore landed in a small sandy cove near some houses, and was met by eight or ten of the natives, who, as well in their dress as their persons very much resembled the Malays : they were without arms, except the knives which it is their custom to wear in their girdles, and one of them had a jack-ass with him : they courteously invited him ashore, and conversed with him by signs, but very little of the meaning of either party could be understood by the other. In a short time he returned with this report, and, to our great mortification, added, that there was no anchorage for the ship. I sent him however a second time, with both money and goods, that he might, if possible, purchase some refreshments, at least for the sick ; and Dr. Solander went in the boat with him. In the mean time I kept standing on and off with the ship, which at this time was within about a mile of the shore. Before the boat could land, we saw two other horsemen, one of whom was in a compleat European dress, consisting of a blue coat, a white waistcoat, and a laced hat : these people when the boat came to the shore, took little notice of her, but sauntered

1770.

September.

tered about, and seemed to look with great curiosity at the ship. We saw, however, other horsemen, and a great number of persons on foot, gather round our people, and, to our great satisfaction, perceived several cocoa-nuts carried into the boat, from which we concluded that peace and commerce were established between us.

After the boat had been ashore about an hour and a half, she made the signal for having intelligence that there was a bay to the leeward where we might anchor: we stood away directly for it, and the boat following, soon came on board. The Lieutenant told us, that he had seen some of the principal people, who were dressed in fine linen, and had chains of gold round their necks; he said that he had not been able to trade, because the owner of the cocoa-nuts was absent, but that about two dozen had been sent to the boat as a present, and that some linen had been accepted in return. The people, to give him the information that he wanted, drew a map upon the sand, in which they made a rude representation of a harbour to leeward, and a town near it: they also gave him to understand, that sheep, hogs, fowls, and fruit might there be procured in great plenty. Some of them frequently pronounced the word Portuguese, and said something of Larn-tuca, upon the island of Ende: from this circumstance, we conjectured that there were Portuguese somewhere upon the island; and a Portuguese, who was in our boat, attempted to converse with the Indians in that language, but soon found that they knew only a word or two of it by rote: one of them, however, when they were giving our people to understand that there was a town near the harbour to which they had directed us, intimated, that as a token of going right, we should see somewhat, which he expressed by crossing his fingers, and the Portuguese instantly conceived that he meant to express a cross. Just as our people were putting off, the horseman in the European dress came up; but the officer not having his commission about him, thought it best to decline a conference.

At seven o'clock in the evening, we came to an anchor in the bay to which we had been directed, at
about

about the distance of a mile from the shore, in thirty-eight fathoms water, with a clear sandy bottom. The north point of the bay bore N. 30 E. distant two miles and an half, and the south point, or west end of the island, bore S. 63 W. Just as we got round the north point, and entered the bay, we discovered a large Indian town, or village, upon which we stood on, hoisting a jack on the fore-top-mast head: soon after, to our great surprise, Dutch colours were hoisted in the town, and three guns fired; we stood on, however, till we had soundings, and then anchored.

As soon as it was light in the morning we saw the same colours hoisted upon the beach, a-breast of the ship; supposing therefore that the Dutch had a settlement here, I sent Lieutenant Gore a-shore, to wait upon the Governor, or the chief person residing upon the spot, acquainting him who we were, and for what purpose we had touched upon the coast. As soon as he came a-shore, he was received by a guard of between twenty and thirty Indians, armed with muskets, who conducted him to the town where the colours had been hoisted the night before, carrying with them those that had been hoisted upon the beach, and marching without any military regularity. As soon as he arrived, he was introduced to the Raja, or King of the island, and by a Portuguese interpreter told him, that the ship was a man of war belonging to the king of Great Britain, and that she had many sick on board, for whom he wanted to purchase such refreshments as the island afforded. His Majesty replied, that he was willing to supply us with whatever we wanted, but that, being in alliance with the Dutch East India Company, he was not at liberty to trade with any other people, without having first procured their consent, for which, however, he said he would immediately apply to a Dutchman who belonged to the company, and who was the only white man upon the island. To this man, who resided at some distance, a letter was immediately dispatched, acquainting him with our arrival and request; in the mean time, Mr. Gore dispatched a messenger to me, with an account of the situation, and the state of the treaty. In about three hours the Dutch resident answered the letter that had

1770.
September.

been sent him in person : he proved to be a native of Saxony, and his name is Johan Christopher Lange, and the same person whom we had seen on horseback in an European dress : he behaved with great civility to Mr. Gore, and assured him that we were at liberty to purchase of the natives whatever we pleased. After a short time, he expressed a desire of coming on board, so did the King also, and several of his attendants. Mr. Gore intimated that he was ready to attend them, but they desired that two of our people might be left on shore as hostages ; and in this also they were indulged.

About two o'clock they all came a-board the ship, and our dinner being ready, they accepted our invitation to partake of it. I expected them immediately to sit down ; but the King seemed to hesitate, and at last, with some confusion, said, he did not imagine that we, who were white men, would suffer him, who was of a different colour, to sit down in our company ; a compliment soon removed his scruples, and we all sat down together with great cheerfulness and cordiality. Happily we were at no loss for interpreters, both Dr. Solander and Mr. Sporing understanding Dutch enough to keep up a conversation with Mr. Lange ; and several of the seamen were able to converse with such of the natives as spoke Portuguese. Our dinner happened to be mutton, and the King expressed a desire of having an English sheep : we had but one left, however, that was presented to him. The facility with which this was procured encouraged him to ask for an English dog, and Mr. Banks politely gave up his greyhound. Mr. Lange then intimated, that a spying-glass would be acceptable, and one was immediately put into his hand. Our guests then told us, that the island abounded with buffaloes, sheep, hogs, and fowls, plenty of which should be driven down to the beach the next day, that we might purchase as many of them as we should think fit : this put us all into high spirits, and the liquor circulated rather faster than either the Indians or the Saxon could bear. They intimated their desire to go away, however, before they were quite drunk : they were received upon deck, as they had been when they came a-board, by the marines.

rines under arms. The King expressed a curiosity to see them exercise, in which he was gratified, and they fired three rounds. He looked at them with great attention, and was much surprised at their regularity and expedition, especially in cocking their pieces: the first time they did it, he struck the side of the ship with a stick that he had in his hand, and cried out with great vehemence, that all the locks made but one click. They were dismissed with many presents, and when they went away saluted with nine guns: Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went a-shore with them, and as soon as they put off gave us three cheers.

1770.
September.

Our gentlemen, when they came a-shore, walked up with them to the town, which consists of many houses, and some of them were large; they are, however, nothing more than a thatched roof, supported over a boarded floor, by pillars about four feet high. They produced some of their palm-wine, which was the fresh unfermented juice of the tree; it had a sweet but not a disagreeable taste, and hopes were conceived that it might contribute to recover our sick from the scurvy. Soon after it was dark Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander returned on board.

In the morning of the 19th I went a-shore with Mr. Banks, and several of the officers and gentlemen, to return the King's visit; but my chief business was to procure some buffaloes, sheep, and fowls, which we had been told should be driven down to the beach. We were greatly mortified to find that no steps had been taken to fulfil this promise; however, we proceeded to the house of assembly, which, with two or three more, had been erected by the Dutch East India Company, and are distinguished from the rest by two pieces of wood resembling a pair of cow's horns, one of which is set up at each end of the ridge that terminates the roof; and these were certainly what the Indian intended to represent by crossing his fingers; though our Portuguese, who was a good Catholic, construed the sign into a cross, which had persuaded us that the settlement belonged to his countrymen. In this place we met Mr. Lange and the King, whose name was A Madocho Lomi Djara, attended by many of the principal people. We told them, that we had

Wednes. 19.

1770.
September.

in the boat goods of various kinds, which we proposed to barter for such refreshments as they would give us in exchange, and desired leave to bring them on shore; which being granted, they were brought a-shore accordingly. We then attempted to settle the price of the buffaloes, sheep, hogs, and other commodities which we proposed to purchase, and for which we were to pay in money; but as soon as this was mentioned Mr. Lange left us, telling us, that these preliminaries must be settled with the natives; he said, however, that he had received a letter from the Governor of Concordia, in Timor, the purport of which he would communicate to us when he returned.

As the morning was now far advanced, and we were very unwilling to return on board and eat salt provisions, when so many delicacies surrounded us a-shore, we petitioned his Majesty for liberty to purchase a small hog and some rice, and to employ his subjects to dress them for us. He answered very graciously, that if we could eat viſtuals dressed by his subjects, which he could scarcely suppose, he would do himself the honour of entertaining us. We expressed our gratitude, and immediately sent on board for liquors.

About five o'clock dinner was ready; it was served in six-and-thirty dishes, or rather baskets, containing alternately rice and pork, and three bowls of earthen ware, filled with the liquor in which the pork had been boiled; these were ranged upon the floor, and mats laid round them for us to sit upon. We were then conducted by turns to a hole in the floor, near which stood a man with water in a vessel, made of the leaves of the fan-palm, who assisted us in washing our hands. When this was done, we placed ourselves round the viſtuals, and waited for the King. As he did not come, we inquired for him, and were told, that the custom of the country did not permit the person who gave the entertainment to sit down with his guests; but that, if we suspected the viſtuals to be poisoned, he would come and taste them. We immediately declared that we had no such suspicion, and desired that none of the rituals of hospitality might be violated on our account. The Prime Minister and
Mr.

1770.
September.

Mr. Lange were of our party, and we made a most luxurious meal; we thought the pork and rice excellent, and the broth not to be despised, but the spoons, which were made of leaves, were so small that few of us had patience to use them. After dinner our wine passed briskly about, and we again enquired for our royal host, thinking that though the custom of his country would not allow him to eat with us, he might at least share in the jolity of our bottle; but he again excused himself, saying, that the master of a feast should never be drunk, which there was no certain way to avoid but by not tasting the liquor. We did not however drink our wine where we had eaten our victuals, but as soon as we had dined made room for the seamen and servants, who immediately took our places: they could not dispatch all that we had left, but the women who came to clear away the bowls and baskets, obliged them to carry away with them what they had not eaten. As wine generally warms and opens the heart, we took an opportunity, when we thought its influence began to be felt, to revive the subject of the buffaloes and sheep, of which we had not in all this time heard a syllable, though they were to have been brought down early in the morning. But our Saxon Dutchman, with great phlegm, began to communicate to us the contents of the letter which he pretended to have received from the Governor of Concordia. He said, that after acquainting him that a vessel had steered from thence towards the island where we were now a-shore, it required him, if such ship should apply for provisions, in distress, to relieve her, but not to suffer her to stay longer than was absolutely necessary, nor to make any large presents to the inferior people, or to leave any with those of superior rank, to be afterwards distributed among them; but he was graciously pleased to add, that we were at liberty to give beads and other trifles in exchange for petty civilities and palm-wine.

It was the general opinion that this letter was a fiction; that the prohibitory orders were feigned, with a view to get money from us for breaking them; and that, by precluding our liberality to the natives, this man

1770.
September.

man hoped more easily to turn it into another channel.

In the evening we received intelligence from our trading place, that no buffaloes or hogs had been brought down, and only a few sheep, which had been taken away before our people, who had sent for money, could procure it. Some fowls, however, had been bought, and a large quantity of a kind of syrup, made of the juice of the palm-tree, which, though infinitely superior to molasses or treacle, sold at a very low price. We complained of our disappointment to Mr. Lange, who had now another subterfuge; he said, that if we had gone down to the beach ourselves, we might have purchased what we pleased; but that the natives were afraid to take money of our people, lest it should be counterfeit. We could not but feel some indignation against a man who had concealed this, being true, or alledged it, being false. I started up, however, and went immediately to the beach, but no cattle or sheep were to be seen, nor were any at hand to be produced. While I was gone, Lange, who knew well enough that I should succeed no better than my people, told Mr. Banks that the natives were displeased at our not having offered them gold for their stock, and that if gold was not offered, nothing would be bought. Mr. Banks did not think it worth his while to reply, but soon after rose up, and we all returned on board, very much dissatisfied with the issue of our negotiations. During the course of the day the King had promised that some cattle and sheep should be brought down in the morning, and had given a reason for our disappointment something more plausible; he said, that the buffaloes were far up the country, and that there had not been time to bring them down to the beach.

Thurs. 20.

The next morning we went a-shore again. Dr. Sotlander went up to the town to speak to Lange, and I remained upon the beach, to see what could be done in the purchase of provisions. I found here an old Indian, who, as he appeared to have some authority, we had among ourselves called the Prime Minister. To engage this man in our interest, I presented him with a spying-

1770.
September.

a spying-glass, but I saw nothing at market except one small buffalo. I inquired the price of it, and was told five guineas: this was twice as much as it was worth; however, I offered three, which I could perceive the man who treated with me thought a good price; but he said that he must acquaint the King with what I had offered before he could take it. A messenger was immediately dispatched to his Majesty, who soon returned, and said, that the buffalo would not be sold for any thing less than five guineas. This price I absolutely refused to give; and another messenger was sent away with an account of my refusal. This messenger was longer absent than the other, and while I was waiting for his return I saw, to my great astonishment, Dr. Solander coming from the town, followed by above a hundred men, some armed with musquets and some with lances. When I inquired the meaning of this hostile appearance, the Doctor told me, that Mr. Lange had interpreted to him a message from the King, purporting, that the people would not trade with us, because we had refused to give them more than half the value of what they had to sell, and that we should not be permitted to trade upon any terms longer than this day. Besides the officers who commanded the party, there came with it a man who was born at Timor, of Portuguese parents, and who, as we afterwards discovered, was a kind of colleague to the Dutch factor. By this man, what they pretended to be the King's order, was delivered to me, of the same purport of that which Dr. Solander had received from Mr. Lange. We were all clearly of opinion, that this was a mere artifice of the factor's to extort money from us, for which we had been prepared by the account of a letter from Concordia. And while we were hesitating what step to take, the Portuguese, that he might the sooner accomplish his purpose, began to drive away the people who had brought down poultry and syrup, and others that were now coming down with buffaloes and sheep. At this time I glanced my eye upon the old man whom I had complimented in the morning with the spying-glass, and I thought, by his looks, that he did not heartily approve of what

was

LIEÛT. COOK'S VOYAGE

was doing; I therefore took him by the hand, and presented him with an old broad sword. This instantly turned the scale in our favour; he received the sword with a transport of joy, and flourishing it over the busy Portuguese, who crouched like a fox to a lion, he made him, and the officer who commanded the party, sit down upon the ground behind him. The people who, whatever were the crafty pretences of these iniquitous factors for a Dutch company, were eager to supply us with whatever we wanted, and seemed also to be more desirous of goods than money, instantly improved the advantage that had been procured them, and the market was stocked almost in an instant. To establish a trade for buffaloes, however, which I most wanted, I found it necessary to give ten guineas for two, one of which weighed no more than an hundred and sixty pounds; but I bought seven more much cheaper, and might afterwards have purchased as many as I pleased almost upon my own terms, for they were now driven down to the water-side in herds. In the first two that I had bought so dear, Lange had certainly a share; and it was in hopes to obtain part of the price of others, that he had pretended we must pay for them in gold. The natives, however, sold what they afterwards brought down much to their satisfaction, without paying part of the price to him, as a reward for exacting money from us. Most of the buffaloes that we bought, after our friend the Prime Minister, had procured us a fair market, were sold for a musquet a-piece, and at this price we might have bought as many as would have freighted our ship.

The refreshments which we procured here consisted of nine buffaloes, six sheep, three hogs, thirty dozen of fowls, a few limes, and some cocoa-nuts, many dozens of eggs, half of which, however, proved to be rotten, a little garlic, and several hundred gallons of palm-syrup.

1770.
September.

between the trees is covered with verdure, by maize, and millet and indigo, can scarce be conceived but by a powerful imagination, not unacquainted with the stateliness and beauty of trees that adorn this part of the earth. The dry season commences in March, or April, and ends in October or November.

The principal trees of this island are the fan-palm, the cocoa-nut, tamarind, limes, oranges, and mangoes; the other vegetable productions are maize, Guinea corn, rice, millet, callevances, and water melons. We saw also one sugar-cane, and a few kinds of European garden-stuff; particularly cellery, marjoram, fennel, and garlic. For the supply of luxury, it has betel, areca, tobacco, cotton, indigo, and a small quantity of cinnamon, which seems to be planted here only for curiosity; and indeed we doubted whether it was the genuine plant, knowing that the Dutch are very careful not to trust the species out of their proper islands. There are however several kinds of fruit, besides those which have been already mentioned; particularly the sweet sop, which is well known to the West Indians, and a small oval fruit, called the *Blimbi*, both of which grow upon trees. The blimbi is about three or four inches long, and in the middle about as thick as a man's finger, tapering towards each end: it is covered with a very thick skin of a light green colour, and in the inside are a few seeds disposed in the form of a star: its flavour is a light, clean, pleasant acid, but it cannot be eaten raw; it is said to be excellent as a pickle; and stewed, it made a most agreeable sauce to our boiled dishes.

The tame animals are buffaloes, sheep, goats, hogs, fowls, pigeons, horses, asses, dogs and cats; and of all these there is great plenty. The buffaloes differ very considerably from the horned cattle of Europe in several particulars; their ears are much larger, their skins are almost without hair, their horns are curved towards each other, but together bend directly backwards, and they have no dewlaps. We saw several that were as big as a well grown European ox, and there must be some much larger; for Mr. Banks saw a pair of horns which measured from tip to tip three feet nine inches and an half, across their widest diameter four feet one inch and an half, and in the whole sweep

sweep of their semicircle in front seven feet six inches and an half. It must however be observed, that a buffalo here of any size, does not weigh above half as much as an ox of the same size in England: those that we guessed to weigh four hundred weight did not weigh more than two hundred and fifty; the reason is, that so late in the dry season the bones are very thinly covered with flesh: there is not an ounce of fat in a whole carcase, and the flanks are literally nothing but skin and bone: the flesh however is well tasted and juicy, and I suppose better than the flesh of an English ox would be if he was to starve in this sun-burnt country.

1770.
September.

The horses are from eleven to twelve hands high; but though they are small, they are spirited and nimble, especially in pacing, which is their common step: the inhabitants generally ride them without a saddle, and with no better bridle than a halter. The sheep are of the kind which in England are called Bengal sheep, and differ from ours in many particulars. They are covered with hair, instead of wool, their ears are very large, and hang down under their horns, and their noses are arched; they are thought to have a general resemblance to a goat, and for that reason are frequently called *cabritos*: their flesh we thought the worst mutton we had ever eaten, being as lean as that of the buffaloes, and without flavour. The hogs, however, were some of the fattest we had ever seen, though, as we were told, their principal food is the outside husks of rice, and the palm syrup dissolved in water. The fowls are chiefly of the game breed, and large, but the eggs are remarkably small.

Of the fish which the sea produces here, we know but little: turtles are sometimes found upon the coast, and are by these people, as well as all others, considered as a dainty.

The people are rather under than over the middle size; the women especially are remarkably short and squat built: their complexion is a dark brown, and their hair universally black and lank. We saw no difference in the colour of rich and poor, though in the South Sea islands those that were exposed to the weather were almost as brown as the New Hollanders, and the better sort nearly as fair as the natives of Europe. The men are in general well made, vigorous and active,

1770.
September.

tive, and have a greater variety in the make and disposition of their features than usual; the countenances of the women, on the contrary, are all alike.

The men fasten their hair up to the top of their heads with a comb, the women tie it behind in a club, which is very far from becoming. Both sexes eradicate the hair from under the arm, and the men do the same by their beards: for which purpose, the better sort always carry a pair of silver pincers hanging by a string round their necks; some however suffer a very little hair to remain upon their upper lips, but this is always kept short.

The dress of both sexes consists of cotton cloth, which being dyed blue in the yarn, and not uniformly of the same shade, is in clouds or waves of that colour, and even in our eye had not an inelegant appearance. This cloth they manufacture themselves, and two pieces, each about two yards long, and a yard and a half wide, make a dress: one of them is worn round the middle, and the other covers the upper part of the body; the lower edge of the piece that goes round the middle the men draw pretty tight just below the fork, the upper edge of it is left loose, so as to form a kind of hollow belt, which serves them as a pocket to carry their knives, and other little implements which it is convenient to have about them. The other piece of cloth is passed through this girdle behind, and one end of it being brought over the left shoulder, and the other over the right, they fall down over the breast, and are tucked into the girdle before; so that by opening or closing the plaits, they can cover more or less of their bodies as they please; the arms, legs, and feet are always naked. The difference between the dress of the two sexes consists principally in the manner of wearing the waist-piece, for the women, instead of drawing the lower edge tight, and leaving the upper edge loose for a pocket, draw the upper edge tight, and let the lower edge fall as low as the knees, so as to form a petticoat; the body-piece, instead of being passed thro' the girdle, is fastened under the arms and across the breast, with the utmost decency. I have already observed that the men fasten the hair upon the top of the head, and the women tie it in a club behind, but there is another difference in the head dress, by which the sexes are

are distinguished : the women wear nothing as a succedaneum for a cap, but the men constantly wrap something round their heads in the manner of a fillet ; it is small, but generally of the finest materials that can be procured ; we saw some who applied silk handkerchiefs to this purpose, and others that wore fine cotton, or muslin, in the manner of a small turban.

These people bore their testimony that the love of finery is an universal passion, for their ornaments were very numerous. Some of the better sort wore chains of gold round their necks, but they were made of plaited wire, and consequently were light and of little value ; others had rings, which were so much worn that they seemed to have descended through many generations ; and one person had a silver-headed cane, marked with a kind of a cypher, consisting of the Roman letters V, O, C, and therefore probably a present from the Dutch East India Company, whose mark it is : they have also ornaments made of beads, which some wear round their necks as a solitaire, and others, as bracelets, upon their wrists : these are common to both sexes, but the women have, besides, strings or girdles of beads, which they wear round their waists, and which serve to keep up their petticoat. Both sexes had their ears bored, nor was there a single exception that fell under our notice, yet we never saw an ornament in any of them ; we never indeed saw either man or woman in any thing but what appeared to be their ordinary dress, except the King and his Minister, who in general wore a kind of a nightgown of coarse chintz, and one of whom once received us in a black robe, which appeared to be made of what is called prince's stuff. We saw some boys, about twelve or fourteen years old, who had spiral circles of thick brass wire passed three or four times round their arms, above the elbow, and some men wore rings of ivory, two inches in breadth, and above an inch in thickness, upon the same part of the arm ; these, we are told, were the sons of the Rajas, or Chiefs, who wore these cumbrous ornaments as badges of their high birth.

Almost all the men had their names traced upon their arms, in indelible characters of a black colour, and the women had a square ornament of flourished lines, im-

1770.
September.

pressed in the same manner, just under the bent of the elbow. We were struck with the similitude between these marks, and those made by tattowing in the South Sea islands; and upon enquiring into its origin, we learned, that it had been practised by the natives long before any Europeans came among them; and that in the neighbouring islands the inhabitants were marked with circles upon their necks and breasts. The universality of this practice, which prevails among savages in all parts of the world, from the remotest limits of North America, to the islands in the South Seas, and which probably differs but little from the method of staining the body, that was in use among the ancient inhabitants of Britain, is a curious subject of speculation*.

The houses of Savu are all built upon the same plan, and differ only in size, being large in proportion to the rank and riches of the proprietor. Some are four hundred feet long, and some are not more than twenty; they are all raised upon posts, or piles, about four feet high, one end of which is driven into the ground, and upon the other end is laid a substantial floor of wood, so that there is a vacant space of four feet between the floor of the house and the ground. Upon this floor are placed other posts or pillars, that support a roof of sloping sides, which meet in a ridge at the top, like those of our barns: the eaves of this roof, which is thatched with palm leaves, reach within two feet of the floor, and over-hang it as much: the space within is generally divided lengthwise into three equal parts; the middle part, or centre, is enclosed by a partition of four sides, reaching about six feet above the floor, and one or two small rooms are also sometimes taken off from the sides, the rest of the space under the roof is open, so as freely to admit the air and the light: the particu-

* In the account which Mr. Bossu has given of some Indians who inhabit the banks of the Akanza, a river of North America, which rises in New Mexico, and falls into the Mississippi, he relates the following incident: "The Akanzas, says he, have adopted me, and as a mark of my privilege, have imprinted the figure of a roe-buck upon my thigh, which was done in this manner: an Indian having burned some straw, diluted the ashes with water, and with this mixture, drew the figure upon my skin; he then retraced it by pricking the lines with needles, so as at every puncture just to draw the blood, and the blood mixing with the ashes of the straw, forms a figure which can never be effaced." See Travels through Louisiana, vol. i. p. 107.

lar uses of these different apartments, our short stay would not permit us to learn, except that the close room in the centre was appropriated to the women. 1770. September.

The food of these people consists of every tame animal in the country, of which the hog holds the first place in their estimation, and the horse the second; next to the horse is the buffalo, next to the buffalo their poultry, and they prefer dogs and cats to sheep and goats. They are not fond of fish, and, I believe, it is never eaten but by the poor people, nor by them, except when their duty or business requires them to be upon the beach, and then every man is furnished with a light casting net, which is girt round him, and makes part of his dress, and with this he takes any small fish which happen to come in his way.

The aesculent vegetables and fruits have been mentioned already, but the fan-palm requires more particular notice, for at certain times it is a succedaneum for all other food both to man and beast. A kind of wine, called toddy, is procured from the tree, by cutting the buds which are to produce flowers, soon after their appearance, and tying under them small baskets, made of the leaves, which are so close as to hold liquids without leaking. The juice, which trickles into these vessels, is collected by persons who climb the trees for that purpose, morning and evening, and it is the common drink of every individual upon the island; yet a much greater quantity is drawn off than is consumed in this use, and of the surplus they make both a syrup and coarse sugar. The liquor is called *dua* or *duac*, and both the syrup and the sugar *gula*. The syrup is prepared by boiling the liquor down in pots of earthen ware, till it is sufficiently inspissated; it is not unlike treacle in appearance, but it is somewhat thicker, and has a much more agreeable taste: the sugar is of a reddish brown, perhaps the same with the Jugata sugar upon the continent of India, and it was more agreeable to our palates than any cane sugar, unrefined, that we had ever tasted. We were at first afraid that the syrup, of which some of our people eat very great quantities, would have brought on fluxes, but its aperient quality was so very slight, that what effect it produced was rather salutary than hurtful. I have already observed, that it is given with the husks of rice to the hogs, and that they grow

1770.
September.

enormously fat without taking any other food: we were told also, that this syrup is used to fatten their dogs and their fowls, and that the inhabitants themselves have subsisted upon this alone for several months, when other crops have failed, and animal food has been scarce. The leaves of this tree are also put to various uses, they thatch houses, and make baskets, cups, umbrellas, and tobacco-pipes. The fruit is least esteemed, and as the blossoms are wounded for the tuac, or toddy, there is not much of it: it is about as big as a large turnip, and covered, like the cocoa-nut, with a fibrous coat, under which are three kernels, that must be eaten before they are ripe, for afterwards they become so hard that they cannot be chewed; in their eatable state they taste not unlike a green cocoa-nut, and, like them, probably they yield a nutriment that is watry and unsubstantial.

The common method of dressing food here is by boiling, and as fire-wood is very scarce, and the inhabitants have no other fuel, they make use of a contrivance to save it, that is not wholly unknown in Europe, but it is seldom practised except in camps. They dig a hollow under ground, in a horizontal direction, like a rabbit-burrow, about two yards long, and opening into a hole at each end, one of which is large and the other small: by the large hole the fire is put in, and the small one serves for a draught. The earth over this burrow is perforated by circular holes, which communicate with the cavity below; and in these holes are set earthen pots, generally about three to each fire, which are large in the middle, and taper towards the bottom, so that the fire acts upon a large part of their surface. Each of these pots generally contains about eight or ten gallons, and it is surprising to see with how small a quantity of fire they may be kept boiling; a palm leaf, or a dry stalk, thrust in now and then, is sufficient: in this manner they boil all their victuals, and make all their syrup and sugar. It appears, by Frezier's account of his voyage to the South Sea, that the Peruvian Indians have a contrivance of the same kind, and perhaps it might be adopted with advantage by the poor people even of this country, where fuel is very dear.

Both sexes are enslaved by the hateful and pernicious habit of chewing beetle and areca, which they contract
even

1770.
September.

even while they are children, and practise incessantly from morning till night. With these they always mix a kind of white lime, made of coral stone and shells, and frequently a small quantity of tobacco; so that their mouths are disgusting in the highest degree both to the smell and the sight: the tobacco taints their breath, and the beetle and lime make the teeth not only as black as charcoal, but as rotten too. I have seen men between twenty and thirty, whose fore-teeth have been consumed almost down to the gums, though no two of them were exactly of the same length or thickness, but irregularly corroded like iron by rust. This loss of teeth is, I think, by all who have written upon the subject, imputed to the tough and stringy coat of the areca nut; but I impute it wholly to the lime: they are not loosened, or broken, or forced out, as might be expected if they were injured by the continual chewing of hard and rough substances, but they are gradually wasted like metals that are exposed to the action of powerful acids; the stumps always adhering firmly to the socket in the jaw; when there is no part of the tooth above the gums: and possibly those who suppose that sugar has a bad effect upon the teeth of Europeans, may not be mistaken; for it is well known, that refined loaf sugar contains a considerable quantity of lime; and he that doubts whether lime will destroy bone of any kind, may easily ascertain the fact by experiment.

If the people here are at any time without this odious mouthful, they are smoking. This operation they perform by rolling up a small quantity of tobacco, and putting it into one end of a tube about six inches long, and as thick as a goose quill, which they make of a palm leaf. As the quantity of tobacco in these pipes is very small, the effect of it is increased, especially among the women, by swallowing the smoke.

When the natives of this island were first formed into a civil society, is not certainly known, but at present it is divided into five principalities or nigrées: LAAL, SEBA; REGREUA, TIMO, and MASSARA, each of which is governed by its respective Raja, or King. The Raja of Seba, the principality in which we were ashore, seemed to have great authority, without much external

1770.
September.

external parade, or show, or much appearance of personal respect. He was about five and thirty years of age, and the fattest man we saw upon the whole island: he appeared to be of a dull phlegmatic disposition, and to be directed almost implicitly by the old man, who, upon my presenting him with a sword, had procured us a fair market, in spite of the craft and avarice of the Dutch factors. The name of this person was MANNU DJARME, and it may reasonably be supposed that he was a man of uncommon integrity and abilities, as, notwithstanding his possession of power in the character of a favourite, he was beloved by the whole principality. If any difference arises among the people, it is settled by the Raja and his counsellors, without delay or appeal, and, as we were told, with the most solemn deliberation and impartial justice.

We were informed by Mr. Lange, that the Chiefs who had successively presided over the five principalities of this island, had lived for time immemorial in the strictest alliance and most cordial friendship with each other; yet, he said, the people were of a warlike disposition, and had always courageously defended themselves against foreign invaders. We were told also, that the island was able to raise, upon very short notice, 7300 fighting men, armed with muskets, spears, lances, and targets. Of this force, Laai was said to furnish 2600, Sebo 2000, Regeewa 1500, Timo 800, and Massara 400. Besides the arms that have been already mentioned, each man is furnished with a large pole-axe, resembling a wood-bill, except that it has a straight edge, and is much heavier: this in the hands of people who have courage to come to close quarters with an enemy, must be a dreadful weapon; and we are told that they were so dexterous with their lances, that at the distance of sixty feet they would throw them with such exactness as to pierce a man's heart, and such force as to go quite through his body.

How far this account of the martial prowess of the inhabitants of Savu may be true, we cannot take upon us to determine, but, during our stay, we saw no appearance of it. We saw indeed in the town-house, or house of assembly, about one hundred spears and targets, which served to arm the people who were sent down to intimidate

intimidate us at the trading-place ; but they seemed to be the refuse of old armouries, no two being of the same make or length, for some were six and some sixteen feet long. We saw no lance among them, and as to the muskets, though they were clean on the outside, they were eaten into holes by the rust within, and the people themselves appeared to be so little acquainted with military discipline, that they marched like a disorderly rabble, every one having, instead of his target, a cock, some tobacco, or other merchandise of the like kind, which he took that opportunity to bring down to sell, and few or none of their cartridge-boxes were furnished with either powder or ball, though a piece of paper was thrust into the hole to save appearances. We saw a few swivel guns and pateraroes at the town-house, and a great gun before it ; but the swivels and pateraroes lay out of their carriages, and the great gun lay upon a heap of stones, almost consumed with rust, with the touch-hole downwards, possibly to conceal its size, which might perhaps be little less than that of the bore.

We could not discover that, among these people, there was any rank of distinction between the Raja and the land-owners ; the land-owners were respectable in proportion to their possessions. The inferior ranks consist of manufacturers, labouring poor, and slaves. The slaves, like the peasants in some parts of Europe, are connected with the estate, and both descend together ; but though the land-owner can sell his slave, he has no other power over his person, not even to correct him, without the privity and approbation of the Raja. Some have five hundred of these slaves, and some not half a dozen ; the common price of them is a fat hog. When a great man goes out, he is constantly attended by two or more of them ; one of them carries a sword or hanger, the hilt of which is commonly of silver, and adorned with large tassels of horse-hair, and another carries a bag which contains beetle, areca, lime, and tobacco. In these attendants consist all their magnificence, for the Raja himself has no other mark of distinction.

The chief object of pride among these people, like that of a Welchman, is a long pedigree of respectable
ancestors,

1770.
September.

ancestors, and indeed a veneration for antiquity seems to be carried farther here than in any other country ; even a house that has been well inhabited for many generations, becomes almost sacred, and few articles either of use or luxury bear so high a price as stones, which having been long sat upon are become even and smooth : those who can purchase such stones, or are possessed of them by inheritance, place them round their houses, where they serve as seats for their dependants.

Every Raja sets up, in the principal town of his province, or nigree, a large stone, which serves as a memorial of his reign. In the principal town of Seba, where we lay, there are thirteen such stones, besides many fragments of others, which had been set up in earlier times, and are now mouldering away : these monuments seem to prove that some kind of civil establishment here is of considerable antiquity. The last thirteen reigns in England make something more than 276 years.

Many of these stones are so large, that it is difficult to conceive by what means they were brought to their present station, especially as it is the summit of a hill ; but the world is full of memorials of human strength, in which the mechanical powers that have been since added, by mathematical science, seem to be surpassed ; and of such monuments there are not a few, among the remains of barbarous antiquity, in our own country, besides those upon Salisbury Plain.

These stones not only record the reigns of successive princes, but serve for a purpose much more extraordinary, and probably altogether peculiar to this country. When a Raja dies, a general feast is proclaimed throughout his dominions, and all his subjects assemble round these stones ; almost every living creature that can be caught is then killed, and the feast lasts for a less or greater number of weeks or months, as the kingdom happens to be more or less furnished with live stock at the time ; the stones serve for tables. When this madness is over, a fast must necessarily ensue, and the whole kingdom is obliged to subsist upon syrup and water, if it happens in the dry season, when no vegetables can be procured, till a new stock of animals can be raised from

from the few that have escaped by chance, or been preserved by policy from the general massacre, or can be procured from the neighbouring kingdoms. Such, however, is the account that we received from Mr. Lange.

1770.
September.

We had no opportunity to examine any of their manufactures, except that of their cloth, which they spin, weave, and dye; we did not indeed see them employed, but many of the instruments which they use fell in our way. We saw their machine for clearing cotton of its seeds, which is made upon the same principles as those in Europe, but is so small that it might be taken for a model or a toy; it consist of two cylinders, lie our round rulers, somewhat less than an inch in diameter, one of which, being turned round by a plain winch, turns the other by means of an endless worm, and the whole machine is not more than fourteen inches long, and seven high; that which we saw had been much used, and many pieces of cotton were hanging about it, so that there is no reason to doubt its being a fair specimen of the rest. We also once saw their apparatus for spinning; it consisted of a bobbin, on which was wound a small quantity of thread, and a kind of distaff filled with cotton; we conjecture therefore that they spin by hand, as the women of Europe did before the introduction of wheels; and, I am told, that they have not yet found their way into some parts of it. Their loom seemed to be, in one respect, preferable to ours, for the web was not stretched upon a frame, but extended by a piece of wood at each end, round one of which the cloth was rolled, and round the other the threads; the web was about half a yard broad, and the length of the shuttle was equal to the breadth of the web, so that, probably, their work goes on but slowly. That they dyed this cloth we first guessed from its colour, and from the indigo which we saw in their plantations; and our conjecture was afterwards confirmed by Mr. Lange's account. I have already observed, that it is dyed in the yarn, and we once saw them dying what was said to be girdles for the women, of a dirty red, but with what drug we did not think it worth while to inquire.

The

1770.
September.

ancestors, and indeed a veneration for antiquity seems to be carried farther here than in any other country ; even a house that has been well inhabited for many generations, becomes almost sacred, and few articles either of use or luxury bear so high a price as stones, which having been long sat upon are become even and smooth : those who can purchase such stones, or are possessed of them by inheritance, place them round their houses, where they serve as seats for their dependants.

Every Raja sets up, in the principal town of his province, or nigree, a large stone, which serves as a memorial of his reign. In the principal town of Seba, where we lay, there are thirteen such stones, besides many fragments of others, which had been set up in earlier times, and are now mouldering away : these monuments seem to prove that some kind of civil establishment here is of considerable antiquity. The last thirteen reigns in England make something more than 276 years.

Many of these stones are so large, that it is difficult to conceive by what means they were brought to their present station, especially as it is the summit of a hill ; but the world is full of memorials of human strength, in which the mechanical powers that have been since added, by mathematical science, seem to be surpassed ; and of such monuments there are not a few, among the remains of barbarous antiquity, in our own country, besides those upon Salisbury Plain.

These stones not only record the reigns of successive princes, but serve for a purpose much more extraordinary, and probably altogether peculiar to this country. When a Raja dies, a general feast is proclaimed throughout his dominions, and all his subjects assemble round these stones ; almost every living creature that can be caught is then killed, and the feast lasts for a less or greater number of weeks or months, as the kingdom happens to be more or less furnished with live stock at the time ; the stones serve for tables. When this madness is over, a fast must necessarily ensue, and the whole kingdom is obliged to subsist upon syrup and water, if it happens in the dry season, when no vegetables can be procured, till a new stock of animals can be raised from

from the few that have escaped by chance, or been preserved by policy from the general massacre, or can be procured from the neighbouring kingdoms. Such, however, is the account that we received from Mr. Lange.

1770.
September.

We had no opportunity to examine any of their manufactures, except that of their cloth, which they spin, weave, and dye; we did not indeed see them employed, but many of the instruments which they use fell in our way. We saw their machine for clearing cotton of its seeds, which is made upon the same principles as those in Europe, but is so small that it might be taken for a model or a toy; it consist of two cylinders, lie our round rulers, somewhat less than an inch in diameter, one of which, being turned round by a plain winch, turns the other by means of an endless worm, and the whole machine is not more than fourteen inches long, and seven high; that which we saw had been much used, and many pieces of cotton were hanging about it, so that there is no reason to doubt its being a fair specimen of the rest. We also once saw their apparatus for spinning; it consisted of a hobbin, on which was wound a small quantity of thread, and a kind of distaff filled with cotton; we conjecture therefore that they spin by hand, as the women of Europe did before the introduction of wheels; and, I am told, that they have not yet found their way into some parts of it. Their loom seemed to be, in one respect, preferable to ours, for the web was not stretched upon a frame, but extended by a piece of wood at each end, round one of which the cloth was rolled, and round the other the threads; the web was about half a yard broad, and the length of the shuttle was equal to the breadth of the web, so that, probably, their work goes on but slowly. That they dyed this cloth we first guessed from its colour, and from the indigo which we saw in their plantations; and our conjecture was afterwards confirmed by Mr. Lange's account. I have already observed, that it is dyed in the yarn, and we saw them dying what was said to be girdles for the use of a dirty red, but with what drug we were not worth while to inquire.

1770.
September.

The religion of these people, according to Mr. Lange's information, is an absurd kind of paganism, every man chusing his own god, and determining for himself how he should be worshipped; so that there are almost as many gods and modes of worship as people. In their morals, however, they are said to be irreproachable, even upon the principles of Christianity: no man is allowed more than one wife, yet an illicit commerce between the sexes is in a manner unknown among them: instances of theft are very rare; and they are so far from revenging a supposed injury by murder, that if any difference arises between them, they will not so much as make it the subject of debate, lest they should be provoked to resentment and ill-will, but immediately and implicitly refer it to the determination of their King.

They appeared to be a healthy and long-lived people: yet some of them were marked with the small-pox, which Mr. Lange told us had several times made its appearance among them, and was treated with the same precautions as the plague. As soon as a person was seized with the distemper, he was removed to some solitary place, very remote from any habitation, where the disease was left to take its course, and the patient supplied with daily food by reaching it to him at the end of a long pole.

Of their domestic œconomy we could learn but little; in one instance, however, their delicacy and cleanliness are very remarkable. Many of us were ashore here three successive days, from a very early hour in the morning till it was dark; yet we never saw the least trace of an offering to Cloacina, nor could we so much as guess where they were made. In a country so populous this is very difficult to be accounted for, and perhaps there is no other country in the world where the secret is so effectually kept.

The boats in use here are a kind of proa.

This island was settled by the Portuguese, almost as soon as they first found their way into this part of the ocean, but they were in a short time supplanted by the Dutch. The Dutch, however, did not take possession of it, but only sent sloops to trade with the natives, probably for provisions to support the inhabitants of their spice islands, who applying themselves wholly to
the

1770.
September.

the cultivation of that important article of trade, and laying out all their ground in plantations, can breed few animals: possibly their supplies, by this occasional traffic, were precarious: possibly they were jealous of being supplanted in their turn; but, however that be, their East-India Company, about ten years ago, entered into a treaty with the Rajas, by which the Company stipulated to furnish each of them with a certain quantity of silk, fine linen, cutlery ware, arrack, and other articles every year; and the Rajas engaged, that neither they nor their subjects should trade with any person except the Company, without having first obtained their consent, and that they would admit a resident on behalf of the company, to reside upon the island, and see that their part of the treaty was fulfilled; they also engaged to supply annually a certain quantity of rice, maize, and calavances. The maize and calavances are sent to Timor in sloops, which are kept there for that purpose, each of which is navigated by ten Indians; and the rice is fetched away annually by a ship which brings the Company's returns, and anchors alternately in each of the three bays. These returns are delivered to the Rajas in the form of a present, and the cask of arrack they and their principal people never cease to drink, as long as a drop of it remains.

In consequence of this treaty, the Dutch placed three persons upon the island; Mr. Lange, his colleague, the native of Timor, the son of an Indian woman by a Portuguese, and one Frederick Craig, the son of an Indian woman by a Dutchman. Lange visits each of the Rajas once in two months, when he makes the tour of the island, attended by fifty slaves on horseback. He exhorts their Chiefs to plant, if it appears that they have been remiss, and observes where the crops are got in, that he may order sloops to fetch it; so that it passes immediately from the ground to the Dutch storehouses at Timor. In these excursions he always carries with him some bottles of arrack, which he finds of great use in opening the hearts of the Rajas with whom he is to deal.

During the ten years that he had resided upon this island he had never seen an European besides ourselves, except at the arrival of the Dutch ship, which had failed

1770.
September.

failed about two months before we arrived ; and he is now to be distinguished from the natives only by his colour and his dress, for he sits upon the ground, chews his beetle, and in every respect has adopted their characters and manners : he has married an Indian woman of the island of Timor, who keeps his house after the fashion of her country, and he gave that as a reason for not inviting us to visit him, saying, that he could entertain us in no other manner than the Indians had done, and he spoke no language readily but that of the country.

The office of Mr. Frederick Craig is to instruct the youth of the country in reading and writing, and the principles of the Christian religion ; the Dutch having printed versions of the New Testament, a catechism, and several other tracts, in the language of this and the neighbouring islands. Dr. Solander, who was at his house, saw the books, and the copy-books also of his scholars, many of whom wrote a very fair hand. He boasted that there were no less than six hundred Christians in the township of Seba ; but what the Dutch Christianity of these Indians may be, it is not perhaps very easy to guess ; for there is not a church, nor even a priest, in the whole island.

While we were at this place, we made several inquiries concerning the neighbouring islands, and the intelligence which we received is to the following effect :

A small island to the westward of Savu, the name of which we did not learn, produces nothing of any consequence but areca-nuts, of which the Dutch receive annually the freight of two sloops, in return for presents that they make to the islanders.

Timor is the chief, and the Dutch residents on the other islands go thither once a year to pass their accounts. The place is nearly in the same state as in Dampier's time, the Dutch having there a fort and store-houses ; and by Lange's account, we might there have been supplied with every necessary that we expected to procure at Batavia, salt provisions and arrack not excepted. But the Portuguese are still in possession of several towns on the north side of the island, particularly Laphao and Sefial.

About

About two years before our arrival, a French ship was wrecked upon the east coast of Timor; and after she had lain some days upon the shoal, a sudden gale broke her up at once, and drowned the captain, with the greatest part of the crew: those who got ashore, among whom was one of the lieutenants, made the best of their way to Concordia; they were four days upon the road, where they were obliged to leave part of their company through fatigue, and the rest, to the number of about eighty, arrived at the town. They were supplied with every necessary, and sent back to the wreck, with proper assistance, for recovering what could be fished up: they fortunately got up all their bullion, which was in chests, and several of their guns, which were very large. They then returned to the town, but their companions who had been left upon the road were missing, having, as it was supposed, been kept among the Indians, either by persuasion or force; for they are very desirous of having Europeans among them, to instruct them in the art of war. After a stay of more than two months at Concordia, their number was diminished nearly one half by sickness, in consequence of the fatigue and hardship which they had suffered by the shipwreck, and the survivors were sent in a small vessel to Europe.

Rotte is in much the same situation as Savu; a Dutch factor resides upon it to manage the natives, and look after its produce, which consists, among other articles, of sugar. Formerly it was made only by bruising the canes, and boiling the juice to a syrup, in the same manner as toddy; but great improvements have lately been made in preparing this valuable commodity. The three little islands called the Solars, are also under the influence of the Dutch settlement at Concordia: they are flat and low, but abound with provisions of every kind, and the middlemost is said to have a good harbour for shipping. Erde, another little island to the westward of the Solars, is still in the hands of the Portuguese, who have a good town and harbour on the north-east corner of it called Larntuca; they had formerly an harbour on the south side of it, but that, being much inferior to Larntuca, has for some time been altogether neglected.

The

1770.
September.

1770
September.

The inhabitants of each of these little islands speak a language peculiar to themselves, and it is an object of Dutch policy to prevent, as much as possible, their learning the language of each other. If they spoke a common language, they would learn, by a mutual intercourse with each other, to plant such things as would be of more value to themselves than their present produce, though of less advantage to the Dutch; but their languages being different, they can communicate no such knowledge to each other, and the Dutch secure themselves the benefit of supplying their several necessities upon their own terms, which, it is reasonable to suppose, are not very moderate. It is probably with a view to this advantage that the Dutch never teach their own language to the natives of these islands, and have been at the expence of translating the Testament and catechisms into the different languages of each; for in proportion as Dutch had become the language of their religion, it would have become the common language of them all.

To this account of Savu, I shall only add a small specimen of its language, by which it will appear to have some affinity with that of the South Sea islands, many of the words being exactly the same, and the numbers manifestly derived from the same source.

<i>A man,</i>	Momonne.	<i>The feet,</i>	Dunceala.
<i>A woman,</i>	Mobunnee.	<i>The toes</i>	Kissovei yilla.
<i>The head,</i>	Catoo.	<i>The arms,</i>	Camacoo.
<i>The hair,</i>	Row catoo.	<i>The hand,</i>	Wulaba.
<i>The eyes,</i>	Matta.	<i>A buffalo,</i>	Cabaou.
<i>The eye-lashes,</i>	Rowna matta.	<i>A horse,</i>	Djara.
<i>The nose,</i>	Swanga.	<i>A hog,</i>	Vavee.
<i>The cheeks,</i>	Cavaranga.	<i>A sheep,</i>	Doomba.
<i>The ears,</i>	Wodeeloo.	<i>A goat,</i>	Kesavoo.
<i>The tongue,</i>	Vaio.	<i>A dog,</i>	Guaca.
<i>The neck,</i>	Lacoco.	<i>A cat,</i>	Maio.
<i>The breasts,</i>	Soosoo.	<i>A fowl,</i>	Mannu.
<i>The nipples,</i>	Caboo soosoo.	<i>The tail,</i>	Carow.
<i>The belly,</i>	Duldoo.	<i>The beak,</i>	Pangoutoo.
<i>The navel,</i>	Afsoo.	<i>A fish,</i>	Ica.
<i>The thighs,</i>	Tooga,	<i>A turtle,</i>	Unjoo.
<i>The knees,</i>	Rootoo.	<i>A cocoa-nut,</i>	Nieu.

The

1770.
September.

<i>The legs,</i>	Baibo.	<i>Two,</i>	Lhua.
<i>Areca,</i>	Calella	<i>Three,</i>	Tullu.
<i>Beetle,</i>	Canana.	<i>Four,</i>	Uppah.
<i>Lime,</i>	Aou.	<i>Five,</i>	Lumme.
<i>A fish hook,</i>	Maanadoo.	<i>Six.</i>	Unna.
<i>Tattoo, the marks</i>	} Tata.	<i>Seven,</i>	Pedu,
<i>on the skin,</i>		<i>Eight,</i>	Arru.
<i>The sun,</i>	Lodo.	<i>Nine,</i>	Saou.
<i>The moon,</i>	Wurroo.	<i>Ten,</i>	Singooroo.
<i>The sea,</i>	Aidassee.	<i>Eleven,</i>	Singurungfleu.
<i>Water,</i>	Ailea.	<i>20,</i>	Lhuangooroo.
<i>Fire,</i>	Aee.	<i>100,</i>	Sing assu.
<i>Fan-palm,</i>	Boaceree.	<i>1000,</i>	Setuppah.
<i>To die,</i>	Maate.	<i>10,000,</i>	Selacussa.
<i>To sleep,</i>	Tabudge.	<i>100,000,</i>	Serata,
<i>To rise,</i>	Tateetoo.	<i>1,000,000</i>	Sereboo.
<i>One,</i>	Uffe.		

In this account of the island of Savu it must be remembered, that except the facts in which we were parties, and the account of the objects which we had an opportunity to examine, the whole is founded merely upon the report of Mr. Lange, upon whose authority alone therefore it must rest.

C H A P. XII.

The Run from the Island of Savu to Batavia, and an Account of the Transactions there while the Ship was refitting.

IN the morning of Friday the 21st of September, Frid. 24
1770, we got under sail, and stood away to the westward, along the north side of the island of Savu, and of the smaller that lies to the westward of it, which at noon bore from us S. S. E. distant two leagues. At four o'clock in the afternoon we discovered a small low island, bearing S. S. W. distant three leagues, which has no place in any chart now extant, at least in none that I have been able to procure: it lies in latitude 10° 47' S. longitude 238° 28' W.

At

1770.
 September.
 Saturd. 22.
 Sunday 23.

At noon on the 22d, we were in latitude $11^{\circ} 10' S.$ longitude $240^{\circ} 38' W.$ In the evening of the 23d, we found the variation of the needle to be $2^{\circ} 44' W.$ as soon as we got clear of the islands we had constantly a swell from the southward, which I imagined was not caused by a wind blowing from that quarter, but by the sea being so determined by the position of the coast of New Holland.

At noon on the 26th, being in latitude $10^{\circ} 47' S.$ longitude $249^{\circ} 42' W.$ we found the variation to be $3^{\circ} 10' W.$ and our situation to be twenty-five miles to the northward of the log; for which I know not how to account. At noon on the 27th our latitude, by observation, was $10^{\circ} 51' S.$ which was agreeable to the log; and our longitude was $252^{\circ} 11' W.$ We steered N. W. all day on the 28th, in order to make the land of Java; and at noon on the 29th, our latitude by observation was $9^{\circ} 31' S.$ longitude $254^{\circ} 10' W.$ and in the morning of the 30th, I took into my possession the log-book and journals, at least all I could find, of the officers, petty officers, and seamen, and enjoined them secrecy, with respect to where they had been.

At seven in the evening, being in the latitude of Java Head, and not seeing any land, I concluded that we were too far to westward; I therefore hauled up E. N. E. having before steered N. by E. In the night we had thunder and lightning: and about twelve o'clock, by the light of the flashes, we saw the land bearing east. I then tacked and stood to the S. W. till four o'clock in the morning of the 1st of October, and at six, Java Head, or the west end of Java, bore S. E. by E. distant five leagues: soon after we saw Prince's Island, bearing E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and at ten the Island of Cracatoa, bearing N. E. Cracatoa is a remarkably high-peaked island, and at noon it bore N. 40 E. distant seven leagues.

October.
 Mond. 1.

I must now observe, that, during our run from Savu, I allowed twenty minutes a-day for the westerly current, which I concluded must run strong at this time, especially off the coast of Java, and I found that this allowance was equivalent to the effect of the current upon the ship.

- At

At four o'clock in the morning of the 2d we fetched close in with the coast of Java, in fifteen fathoms; we then stood along the coast, and early in the forenoon, I sent the boat ashore to try if she could procure some fruit for Tupia, who was very ill, and some grass for the buffaloes that were still alive. In an hour or two she returned with four cocoa-nuts, and a small bunch of plantains, which had been purchased for a shilling, and some herbage for the cattle, which the Indians not only gave us, but assisted our people to cut. The country looked like one continued wood, and had a very pleasant appearance.

About eleven o'clock, we saw two Dutch ships lying off Anger point, and I sent Mr. Hicks on board of one of them to enquire news of our country, from which we had been absent so long. In the mean time it fell calm, and about noon I anchored in eighteen fathoms with a muddy bottom. When Mr. Hicks returned, he reported that the ships were Dutch East Indiamen from Batavia, one of which was bound to Ceylon, and the other to the coast of Malabar; and that there was also a flyboat or packet, which was said to be stationed here to carry letters from the Dutch ships that came hither to Batavia, but which I rather think was appointed to examine all ships that pass the streight: from these ships we heard, with great pleasure, that the Swallow had been at Batavia about two years before.

At 7 o'clock a breeze sprung up at S. S. W. with which having weighed, we stood to the N. E. between Thwart-the-way Island and the Cap, sounding from eighteen to twenty-eight fathoms: we had but little wind all night, and having a strong current against us, we got no further by eight in the morning than Bantam point. At this time the wind came to the N. E. and obliged us to anchor in two and twenty fathoms, at about the distance of two miles from the shore; the point bore N. E. by E. distant one league, and here we found a strong current setting to the N. W. In the morning we had seen the Dutch packet standing after us; but when the wind shifted to the N. E. she bore away.

At 6 o'clock in the evening, the wind having obliged us to continue at anchor, one of the country boats

1779.
October.

came along side of us, on board of which was the Master of the packet. He seemed to have two motives for his visit, one to take an account of the ship, and the other to sell us refreshments, for in the boat were turtle, fowls, ducks, parrots, paroquets, rice-birds, monkies, and other articles, which they held at a very high price, and brought to a bad market, for our Savu stock was not yet expended: however, I gave a Spanish dollar for a small turtle, which weighed about six and thirty pounds; I gave also a dollar for ten large fowls, and afterwards bought fifteen more for the same price; for a dollar we might also have bought two monkies, or a whole cage of rice-birds. The master of the sloop brought with him two books, in one of which he desired that any of our officers would write down the name of the ship and its commander, with that of the place from which she sailed, and of the port to which she was bound, with such other particulars relating to themselves, as they might think proper, for the information of any of our friends that should come after us: and in the other he entered the names of the ship and the commander himself, in order to transmit them to the Governor and Council of the Indies. We perceived that in the first book many ships, particularly Portuguese, had made entries of the same kind with that for which it was presented to us. Mr. Hicks, however, having written the name of the ship, only added "from Europe." He took notice of this, but said, he was satisfied with any thing we thought proper to write, it being intended merely for the information of those who should enquire after us from motives of friendship.

Friday 5.

Having made several attempts to sail with a wind that would not stem the current, and as often come to an anchor, a proa came along side of us in the morning of the 5th, in which was a Dutch officer, who sent me down a printed paper in English, duplicates of which he had in other languages, particularly in French and Dutch, all regularly signed, in the name of the Governor and Council of the Indies, by their secretary: it contained nine questions, very ill expressed, in the following terms:

" 1. To

- “ 1. To what nation the ship belongs, and its name ?
- “ 2. If it comes from Europe, or any other place ?
- “ 3. From what place it lastly departed from ?
- “ 4. Whereunto designed to go ?
- “ 5. What and how many ships of the Dutch Company by departure from the last shore there layed, and their names ?
- “ 6. If one or more of these ships in company with this, is departed from this, or any other place ?
- “ 7. If during the voyage any particularities is happened or seen ?
- “ 8. If not any ships in sea, or the Streights of Sunda, have seen or hailed in, and which ?
- “ 9. If any other news worth attention, at the place from whence the ship lastly departed, or during the voyage, is happened ?
- “ BATAVIA, in the Castle,
- “ By order of the Governor-General, and the Counsellors of India,

1770.
October.

“ J. BRANDER BUNGL, Sec.”

Of these questions I answered only the first and the fourth : which when the officer saw, he said answers to the rest were of no consequence : yet he immediately added, that he must send that very paper away to Batavia, and that it would be there the next day at noon. I have particularly related this incident, because I have been credibly informed that it is but of late years that the Dutch have taken upon them to examine ships that pass through this Streight.

At ten o'clock the same morning, we weighed, with a light breeze at S. W. but did little more than stem the current, and about two o'clock anchored again under Bantam Point, where we lay till nine ; a light breeze then springing up at S. E. we weighed and stood to the eastward till ten o'clock the next morning, when the current obliged us again to anchor in twenty-two fathoms, Pulababi bearing E. by S. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. distant between three and four miles. Having alternately weighed and anchored several times, till four in the afternoon of the 7th, we then stood to the eastward, with a very faint breeze at N. E. and passed Wapping Island, and the first island to the eastward of it ; when

Saturday 6.

Sunday 7.

1770.
October.

Monday 8.

the wind dying away, we were carried by the current between the first and second of the islands that lie to the eastward of Wapping Island, where we were obliged to anchor in thirty fathoms, being very near a ledge of rocks that run out from one of the islands. At two the next morning we weighed with the land wind at south, and stood out clear of the shoal; but before noon were obliged to come to again in twenty-eight fathoms, near a small island among those that are called the Thousand Islands, which we did not find laid down in any chart. Pulo Pare at this time bore E. N. E. distance between six and seven miles.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went a-shore upon the island, which they found not to be more than five hundred yards long, and one hundred broad: yet there was a house upon it, and a small plantation, where, among other things, was the *Palma Christi*, from which the castor oil is made in the West Indies: they made a small addition to their collection of plants, and shot a bat, whose wings, when extended, measured three feet from point to point: they shot also four plovers, which exactly resembled the golden plover of England. Soon after they returned, a small Indian boat came along-side with two Malays on board, who brought three turtles, some dried fish, and a few pumpkins: we bought the turtle, which altogether weighed a hundred and forty-six pounds, for a dollar, and considering that we had lately paid the Dutchman a dollar for one that weighed only six and thirty pounds, we thought we had a good bargain. The seller appeared equally satisfied, and we then treated with him for his pumpkins, for which he was very unwilling to take any money but a dollar; we said that a whole dollar was greatly too much; to which he readily assented, but desired that we would cut one and give him a part; at last, however, a fine shining Portuguese petacka tempted him, and for that he sold us his whole stock of pumpkins, being in number twenty-six. At parting he made signs that we should not tell at Batavia that any boat had been aboard us.

We were not able to weather Pulo Pare this day, but getting the land wind at south about ten o'clock at night, we weighed and stood to the E. S. E. all night. At

ten

ten in the morning we anchored again to wait for the sea breeze ; and at noon it sprung up at N. N. E. with which we stood in for Batavia road, where at four o'clock in the afternoon we came to an anchor.

1770.
October.
Tuesday 9.

We found here the Harcourt Indiaman from England, two English private traders of that country, thirteen sail of large Dutch ships, and a considerable number of small vessels. A boat came immediately on board, from a ship which had a broad pendant flying, and the officer who commanded having inquired who we were, and whence we came, immediately returned with such answers as we thought fit to give him : both he and his people were as pale as spectres, a sad presage of our sufferings in so unhealthy a country ; but our people, who, except Tupia, were all rosy and plump, seemed to think themselves so seasoned by various climates that nothing could hurt them. In the meantime, I sent a Lieutenant a-shore to acquaint the Governor of our arrival, and to make an excuse for our not saluting ; for as I could salute with only three guns, except the swivels, which I was of opinion would not be heard, I thought it was better to let it alone. As soon as the boat was dispatched the Carpenter delivered me an account of the defects of the ship, of which the following is a copy :

“ The defects of his Majesty’s bark Endeavour, Lieutenant James Cook, Commander.

“ The ship very leaky, as she makes from twelve to six inches water an hour, occasioned by her main keel being wounded in many places, and the scarfs of her stern being very open : the false keel gone beyond the midships from forward, and perhaps farther, as I had no opportunity of seeing for the water when hauled a-shore for repairing : wounded on the larboard side under the main channel, where I imagine the greatest leak is, but could not come at it for the water : one pump on the larboard side useless ; the others decayed within an inch and an half of the bore. Otherwise masts, yards, boats, and hull, in pretty good condition.”

As it was the universal opinion that the ship could not safely proceed to Europe without an examination of her bottom, I determined to apply for leave to heave

1770.
October,
Wednes. 10.

her down at this place ; and as I understood that it would be necessary to make this application in writing, I drew up a request, and the next morning, having got it translated into Dutch, we all went a-shore.

We repaired immediately to the house of Mr. Leith, the only Englishman of any credit who is resident at this place ; he received us with great politeness, and engaged us to dinner : to this gentleman we applied for instructions how to provide ourselves with lodgings and necessaries while we should stay a-shore, and he told us, that there was a hotel, or kind of inn, kept by the order of government, where all merchants and strangers were obliged to reside, paying half per cent. upon the value of their goods for warehouse room, which the master of the house was obliged to provide ; but that as we came in a King's ship, we should be at liberty to live where we pleased, upon asking the Governor's permission, which would be granted of course. He said, that it would be cheaper for us to take a house in the town, and bring our own servants a-shore, if we had any body upon whom we could depend to buy in our provisions ; but as this was not the case, having no person among us who could speak the Malay language, our gentlemen determined to go to the hotel. At the hotel, therefore, beds were immediately hired, and word was sent that we should sleep there at night.

At five o'clock in the afternoon, I was introduced to the Governor-General, who received me very courteously ; he told me, that I should have every thing I wanted, and that in the morning my request should be laid before the council, which I was desired to attend.

About nine o'clock, we had a dreadful storm of thunder, lightning, and rain, during which the main-mast of one of the Dutch East Indiamen was split, and carried away by the deck ; the main-top-mast and top-gallant-mast were shivered all to pieces ; she had an iron spindle at the main-top-gallant-mast-head, which probably directed the stroke. This ship lay not more than the distance of two cables length from ours, and in all probability we should have shared the same fate, but

1770.
October.

but for the electrical chain which we had but just got up, and which conducted the lightning over the side of the ship; but though we escaped the lightning, the explosion shook us like an earthquake, the chain at the same time appearing like a line of fire: a sentinel was in the action of charging his piece, and the shock forced the musket out of his hand, and broke the rammer rod. Upon this occasion, I cannot but earnestly recommend chains of the same kind to every ship, whatever be her destination, and I hope that the fate of the Dutchman will be a warning to all who shall read this narrative, against having an iron spindle at the mast-head.

The next morning I attended at the council-chamber, and was told that I should have every thing I wanted. In the mean time, the gentlemen a-shore agreed with the keeper of the hotel for their lodging and board, at the rate of two rix-dollars, or nine shillings sterling a day for each; and as there were five of them, and they would probably have many visitors from the ship, he agreed to keep them a separate table, upon condition that they should pay one rix-dollar for the dinner of every stranger, and another for his supper and bed, if he should sleep a-shore. Under this stipulation they were to be furnished with tea, coffee, punch, pipes and tobacco, for themselves and their friends, as much as they could consume; they were also to pay half a rupee, or one shilling and three pence a-day for each of their servants. Thurs. 11.

They soon learned that these rates were more than double the common charges of board and lodging in the town, and their table, though it had the appearance of magnificence, was wretchedly served. Their dinner consisted of one course of fifteen dishes, and their supper of one course of thirteen, but nine or ten of them consisted of bad poultry, variously dressed, and often served up the second, third, and even the fourth time: the same duck having appeared more than once roasted, found his way again to the table as a fricasee, and a fourth time in the form of forced meat. It was not long, however, before they learned that this treatment was only by way of essay, and that it was the invariable custom of the house, to supply all strangers, at their

1770.
October.

first coming, with such fare as could be procured for the least money, and consequently would produce the most gain: that if either through indolence or good-nature they were content, it was continued for the benefit of the host, but that if they complained, it was gradually amended till they were satisfied, which sometimes happened before they had the worth of their money. After this discovery, they remonstrated, and their fare became better; however, after a few days, Mr. Banks hired a little house, the next door on the left hand to the hotel, for himself and his party, for which he paid after the rate of ten rix-dollars, or two pounds five shillings sterling a month; but here they were very far from having either the convenience or the privacy which they expected; no person was permitted to sleep in this private house occasionally, as a guest to the person who hired it, under a penalty, but almost every Dutchman that went by ran in without any ceremony, to ask what they sold, there having been very seldom any private persons at Batavia who had not something to sell. Every body here hires a carriage, and Mr. Banks hired two. They are open chaises, made to hold two people, and driven by a man sitting on a coach-box; for each of these he paid two rix-dollars a day.

As soon as he was settled in his new habitation, he sent for Tupia, who till now had continued on board upon account of his illness, which was of the bilious kind, and for which he had obstinately refused to take any medicine. He soon came a-shore, with his boy Tayeto, and tho' while he was on board, and after he came into the boat, he was exceedingly listless and dejected, he no sooner entered the town, than he seemed to be animated with a new soul. The houses, carriages, streets, people, and a multiplicity of other objects, all new, which rushed upon him at once, produced an effect like the sudden and secret power that is imagined of fascination. Tayeto expressed his wonder and delight with still less restraint, and danced along the street in a kind of extacy, examining every object with a restless and eager curiosity, which was every moment excited and gratified. One of the first things that Tupia remarked, was the various dresses of the passing

1770.
October.

passing multitude, concerning which he made many inquiries ; and when he was told that in this place, where people of many different nations were assembled, every one wore the habit of his country, he desired that he might conform to the custom, and appear in that of Otaheite. South-Sea cloth was therefore sent for from the ship, and he equipped himself with great expedition and dexterity. The people who had seen Otourou, the Indian who had been brought hither by M. Bougainville, inquired whether Tupia was not the same person. From these enquiries, we learned who it was that we had supposed to be Spaniards, from the accounts that had been given of two ships by the Islanders.

In the mean time I procured an order to the Superintendent of the island of Ourust, where the ship was to be repaired, to receive her there ; and sent, by one of the ships that sailed for Holland, an account of our arrival here, to Mr. Stephens, the Secretary to the Admiralty.

The expences that would be incurred by repairing and refitting the ship, rendered it necessary for me to take up money in this place, which I imagined might be done without difficulty, but I found myself mistaken: for, after the most diligent enquiry, I could not find any private person that had ability and inclination to advance the sum that I wanted. In this difficulty I applied to the Governor himself, by a written request ; in consequence of which, the Shebander had orders to supply me with what money I should require, out of the Company's Treasury.

On the 18th, as soon as it was light, having by several accidents and mistakes suffered a delay of many days, I took up the anchor, and ran down to Ourust ; a few days afterwards we went along-side of the wharf, on Cooper's Island, which lies close to Ourust, in order to take out our stores.

Thursd. 18

By this time, having been here only nine days, we began to feel the fatal effects of the climate and situation. Tupia, after the flow of spirits which the novelties of the place produced upon his first landing, sunk on a sudden ; and grew every day worse and worse, Tayeto was seized with an inflammation upon his

1770.
October.

his lungs, Mr. Banks's two servants became very ill, and himself and Dr. Solander were attacked by fevers. In a few days almost every person, both on board and a-shore, was sick; affected, no doubt, by the low swampy situation of the place, and the numberless dirty canals which intersect the town in all directions.

Friday 26. On the 26th, I set up the tent for the reception of the ship's company, of whom there was but a small number able to do duty. Poor Tupia, of whose life we now began to despair, and who till this time had continued a-shore with Mr. Banks, desired to be removed to the ship, where, he said, he should breathe a freer air than among the numerous houses which obstructed it a-shore; on board the ship, however, he could not go, for she was unrigged, and preparing to be laid down at the careening place. But on the 28th Mr.

Sunday 28. Banks went with him to Cooper's Island, or, as it is called here, Kuypor, where she lay, and as he seemed pleased with the spot, a tent was there pitched for him. At this place both the sea breeze and the land breeze blew directly over him, and he expressed great satisfaction in his situation. Mr. Banks, whose humanity kept him two days with this poor Indian, return-

Tuesday 30. ed to the town on the 30th, and the fits of his intermittent, which was now become a regular tertian, were so violent as to deprive him of his senses while they lasted, and leave him so weak that he was scarce able to crawl down stairs: at this time Dr. Solander's disorder also increased, and Mr. Monkhouse, the Surgeon, was confined to his bed.

November.
Monday 5.

On the 5th of November, after many delays, in consequence of the Dutch ships coming along-side the wharfs to load pepper, the ship was laid down, and the same day Mr. Monkhouse, our Surgeon, a sensible skilful man, fell the first sacrifice to this fatal country, a loss which was greatly aggravated by our situation. Dr. Solander was just able to attend his funeral, but Mr. Banks was confined to his bed. Our distress was now very great, and the prospect before us discouraging in the highest degree: our danger was not such as we could surmount by any efforts of our own; courage, skill, and diligence were all equally ineffectual, and death was every day making advances upon us, where

we

1770.
November.

we could neither resist nor fly. Malay servants were hired to attend the sick, but they had so little sense, either of duty or humanity, that they could not be kept within call, and the patient was frequently obliged to get out of bed to seek them. On the 9th we lost our poor Indian boy Tayeto, and Tupia was so much affected, that it was doubted whether he would survive till the next day. Friday 9.

In the mean time, the bottom of the ship being examined, was found to be in a worse condition than we apprehended; the false keel was all gone to within twenty feet of the stern-post; the main keel was considerably injured in many places; a great quantity of the sheathing was torn off, and several planks were much damaged; two of them, and the half a third, under the main channel near the keel, were, for the length of six feet, so worn, that they were not above an eighth part of an inch thick, and here the worms had made their way quite into the timbers; yet in this condition she had sailed many hundred leagues, where navigation is as dangerous as in any part of the world. How much misery did we escape, by being ignorant that so considerable a part of the bottom of the vessel was thinner than the sole of a shoe, and that every life on board depended upon so slight and fragile a barrier between us and the unfathomable ocean! It seemed, however, that we had been preserved only to perish here. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were so bad, that the physician declared they had no chance for recovery but by removing into the country; a house was therefore hired for them, at the distance of about two miles from the town, which belonged to the master of the hotel, who engaged to furnish them with provisions, and the use of slaves. As they had already experienced their want of influence over slaves that had other masters, and the unfeeling inattention of these fellows to the sick, they bought each of them a Malay woman, which removed both the causes of their being so ill served; the women were their own property, and the tenderness of the sex, even here, made them good nurses. While these preparations were making, they received an account of the death of Tupia, who sunk at once after

1770.
November.
Wedn. 14.

after the loss of the boy, whom he loved with the tenderness of a parent.

By the 14th the bottom of the ship was thoroughly repaired, and very much to my satisfaction. It would indeed be injustice to the officers and workmen of this yard, not to declare, that, in my opinion, there is not a marine yard in the world where a ship can be laid down with more convenience, safety, and dispatch, nor repaired with more diligence and skill. At this place they heave down by two masts, a method which we do not now practise; it is, however, unquestionably more safe and expeditious to heave down with two masts than one, and he must have a good share of bigotry to old customs, and an equal want of common sense, who will not allow this, after seeing with what facility the Dutch heave down their largest ships at this place.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander recovered slowly at their country-house, which was not only open to the sea breeze, but situated upon a running stream, which greatly contributed to the circulation of the air; but I was now taken ill myself; Mr. Sporing, and a seaman who had attended Mr. Banks, were also seized with intermittents; and indeed there were not more than ten of the whole ships company that were able to do duty.

We proceeded, however, in rigging the ship, and getting water and stores a-board; the water we were obliged to procure from Batavia, at the rate of six shillings and eight pence a leager, or one hundred and fifty gallons.

Monday 26. About the 26th the westerly monsoon set in, which generally blows here in the night from the S. W. and in the day from the N. W. or N. For some nights before this we had very heavy rain, with much thunder; and in the night, between the 25th and 26th, such rain as we had seldom seen, for near four hours without intermission. Mr. Banks's house admitted the water in every part like a sieve, and it ran through the lower rooms in a stream that would have turned a mill. He was by this time sufficiently recovered to go out, and upon his entering Batavia the next morning, he

was

was much surprised to see the bedding every where hung out to dry.

1770.
November.

The wet season was now set in, though we had some intervals of fair weather. The frogs in the ditches, which croak ten times louder than any frogs in Europe, gave notice of rain by an incessant noise, that was almost intolerable ; and the gnats and musquitos, which had been very troublesome even during the dry weather, were now become innumerable, swarming from every plash of water like bees from a hive ; they did not, however, much incommode us in the day, and the stings, however troublesome at first, never continued to itch above half an hour ; so that none of us felt in the day the effects of the wounds they had received in the night.

On the 8th of December, the ship being perfectly refitted, and having taken in most of her water and stores, and received her sick on board, we ran up to Batavia Road, and anchored in four fathoms and an half water. December. Saturd. 8.

From this time to the 24th we were employed in getting on board the remainder of our water and provisions, with some new pumps, and in several other operations that were necessary to fit the ship for the sea, all which would have been effected much sooner, if sickness and death had not disabled or carried off a great number of our men. Monday 24

While we lay here the Earl of Elgin, Captain Cook, a ship belonging to the English East India Company, came to an anchor in the Road. She was bound from Madras to China, but having lost her passage, put in here to wait for the next season.

The Phoenix, Captain Black, an English country ship, from Bencoolen, also came to an anchor at this place.

In the afternoon of Christmas eve, the 24th, I took leave of the Governor, and several of the principal gentlemen of the place, with whom I had formed connections, and from whom I received every possible civility and assistance ; but, in the mean time, an accident happened which might have produced disagreeable consequences : A seaman had run away from one of the Dutch ships in the Road, and entered on board
of

1770.
December.

Tuesd. 25.

of mine : the Captain had applied to the Governor, to reclaim him as a subject of Holland, and an order for that purpose was procured : this order was brought to me soon after I returned from my last visit, and I said, that if the man appeared to be a Dutchman, he should certainly be delivered up. Mr. Hicks commanded on board, and I gave the Dutch officer an order to him, to deliver the man up under that condition. I slept myself this night on shore, and in the morning, the Captain of the Dutch Commodore came and told me that he had carried my order on board, but that the officer had refused to deliver up the man, alledging, not only that he was not a Dutchman, but that he was a subject of Great Britain, born in Ireland. I replied, that the officer had perfectly executed my orders, and that if the man was an English subject, it could not be expected that I should deliver him up. The Captain then said, that he was just come from the Governor, to demand the man of me in his name, as a subject of Denmark, alledging, that he stood in the ship's books as born at Elfsineur. The claim of this man as a subject of Holland, being now given up, I observed to the captain, that there appeared to be some mistake in the Governor's message, for that he would certainly never demand a Danish seaman from me, who had committed no other crime than preferring the service of the English to that of the Dutch. I added, however, to convince him of my sincere desire to avoid disputes, that if the man was a Dane he should be delivered up as a courtesy, though he could not be demanded as a right ; but that if I found he was an English subject, I would keep him at all events. Upon these terms we parted ; and soon after I received a letter from Mr. Hicks, containing indubitable proof that the seaman in question was a subject of his Britannic Majesty. This letter I immediately carried to the Shebandar, with a request that it might be shewn to the Governor, and that his excellency might at the same time be told, I would not upon any terms part with the man. This had the desired effect, and I heard no more of the affair.

In the evening, I went on board, accompanied by Mr. Banks, and the rest of the gentlemen, who had constantly

constantly resided on shore, and who, though better, were not yet perfectly recovered.

1770.
December.

Wednes. 27.

At six in the morning, of the 26th, we weighed and set sail, with a light breeze at S. W. The Elgin Indian saluted us with three cheers and thirteen guns, and the garrison with fourteen, both which, with the help of our swivels, we returned, and soon after the sea breeze set in at N. by W. which obliged us to anchor just without the ships in the Road.

At this time, the number of sick on board amounted to forty, and the rest of the ship's company were in a very feeble condition. Every individual had been sick except the sail-maker, an old man between seventy and eighty years of age, and it is very remarkable that this old man, during our stay at this place, was constantly drunk every day : we had buried seven, the Surgeon, three seamen, Mr. Green's servant, Tupia, and Tayeto his boy. All but Tupia fell a sacrifice to the unwholesome, stagnant, putrid air of the country, and he who from his birth had been used to subsist chiefly upon vegetable food, particularly ripe fruit, soon contracted all the disorders that are incident to a sea life, and would probably have sunk under them before we could have compleated our voyage, if we had not been obliged to go to Batavia to refit.

C H A P. XIII.

Some Account of Batavia, and the adjacent Country, with their Fruits, Flowers, and other Productions.

BATAVIA, the capital of the Dutch dominions in India, and generally supposed to have no equal among all the possessions of the Europeans in Asia, is situated on the North side of the island of Java, in a low fenny plain, where several small rivers, which take their rise in the mountains called Blaeuwen Berg, about forty miles up the country, empty themselves into the sea, and where the coast forms a large bay, called the Bay of Batavia, at the distance of about eight leagues from the streight of Sunda. It lies in latitude $6^{\circ} 10'$ S. and longitude $106^{\circ} 50'$ E. from the meridian of Greenwich, as appears from astronomical observations made

1770.
December.

made upon the spot, by the Reverend Mr. Mohr, who has built an elegant observatory, which is as well furnished with instruments as most in Europe.

The Dutch seem to have pitched upon this spot for the convenience of water-carriage, and in that it is indeed a second Holland, and superior to every other place in the world. There are very few streets that have not a canal of considerable breadth running thro' them, or rather stagnating in them, and continued for several miles in almost every direction beyond the town, which is also intersected by five or six rivers, some of which are navigable thirty or forty miles up the country. As the houses are large, and the streets wide, it takes up a much greater extent, in proportion to the number of houses it contains, than any city in Europe. Valentyn, who wrote an account of it about the year 1726, says, that in his time there were, within the walls, 1242 Dutch houses, and 1200 Chinese; and without the walls 1066 Dutch, and 1240 Chinese, besides 12 arrack houses, making in all 4760: but this account appeared to us to be greatly exaggerated, especially with respect to the number of houses within the walls.

The streets are spacious and handsome, and the banks of the canals are planted with rows of trees, that make a very pleasing appearance; but the trees concur with the canals to make the situation unwholesome. The stagnant canals in the dry season exhale an intolerable stench, and the trees impede the course of the air, by which in some degree the putrid effluvia would be dissipated. In the wet season the inconvenience is equal, for then these reservoirs of corrupted water overflow their banks in the lower part of the town, especially in the neighbourhood of the hotel, and fill the lower stories of the houses, where they leave behind them an inconceivable quantity of slime and filth: yet these canals are sometimes cleaned; but the cleaning of them is so managed as to become as great a nuisance as the foulness of the water; for the black mud that is taken from the bottom is suffered to lie upon the banks, that is, in the middle of the street, till it has acquired a sufficient degree of hardness to be made the lading of a boat, and carried away. As the mud consists

1770.
December.

consists chiefly of human ordure, which is regularly thrown into the canals every morning; there not being a necessary house in the whole town, it poisons the air, while it is drying, to a considerable extent. Even the running streams become nuisances in their turn, by the nastiness or negligence of the people; for every now and then a dead hog, or a dead horse, is stranded upon the shallow parts, and it being the business of no particular person to remove the nuisance, it is negligently left to time and accident. While we were here, a dead buffalo lay upon the shoal of a river that ran through one of the principal streets above a week, and at last was carried away by a flood.

The houses are in general well adapted to the climate; they consist of one very large room or hall on the ground floor, with a door at each end, both which generally stand open: at one end a room is taken off by a partition, where the master of the house transacts his business; and in the middle, between each end, there is a court, which gives light to the hall, and at the same time increases the draught of air. From one corner of the hall the stairs go up to the floor above, where also the rooms are spacious and airy. In the alcove, which is formed by the court, the family dine; and at other times it is occupied by the female slaves, who are not allowed to sit down any where else.

The public buildings are most of them old, heavy, and ungraceful; but the new church is not inelegant; it is built with a dome, that is seen from a great distance at sea, and though the outside has rather a heavy appearance, the inside forms a very fine room: it is furnished with an organ of a proper size, being very large, and is most magnificently illuminated by chandeliers.

The town is inclosed by a stone wall, of a moderate height; but the whole of it is old, and many parts are much out of repair. This wall itself is surrounded by a river, which in some places is fifty, and in some a hundred yards wide: the stream is rapid, but the water is shallow. The wall is also lined within by a canal, which in different parts is of different breadths; so that in passing either out or in through the gates, it is necessary to cross two draw-
Vol. II. I i bridges;

1770.
December.

bridges; and there is no access for idle people or strangers to walk upon the ramparts, which seem to be but ill provided with guns.

In the north-east corner of the town stands the castle or citadel, the walls of which are both higher and thicker than those of the town, especially near the landing-place, where there is depth of water only for boats, which it completely commands, with several large guns, that make a very good appearance.

Within this castle are apartments for the Governor General, and all the Council of India, to which they are enjoined to repair in case of a siege. Here are also large store-houses, where great quantities of the Company's goods are kept, especially those that are brought from Europe, and where almost all their writers transact their business. In this place also are laid up a great number of cannon, whether to mount upon the walls or furnish shipping, we could not learn; and the Company is said to be well supplied with powder, which is dispersed in various magazines, that if some should be destroyed by lightning, which in this place is very frequent, the rest may escape.

Besides the fortifications of the town, numerous forts are dispersed about the country to the distance of twenty or thirty miles; these seem to have been intended merely to keep the natives in awe, and indeed they are fit for nothing else. For the same purpose a kind of houses, each of which mounts about eight guns, are placed in such situations as command the navigation of three or four canals, and consequently the roads upon their banks: some of these are in the town itself, and it was from one of these that all the best houses belonging to the Chinese were levelled with the ground in the Chinese rebellion of 1740. These defences are scattered over all parts of Java, and the other islands of which the Dutch have got possession in these seas. Of one of these singular forts, or fortified houses, we should have procured a drawing, if our gentlemen had not been confined by sickness almost all the time they were upon the island.

If the Dutch fortifications here are not formidable in themselves, they become so by their situation; for they are among morasses where the roads, which are
nothing

'1770.
December.

nothing more than a bank thrown up between a canal and a ditch, may easily be destroyed, and consequently the approach of heavy artillery either totally prevented or greatly retarded: for it would be exceedingly difficult, if not impossible, to transport them in boats, as they all muster every night under the guns of the castle, a situation from which it would be impossible for an enemy to take them. Besides, in this country, delay is death; so that whatever retards an enemy, will destroy him. In less than a week we were sensible of the unhealthiness of the climate; and in less than a month half the ship's company was unable to do their duty. We were told, that of an hundred soldiers who arrive here from Europe, it was a rare thing for fifty to survive the first year; that of those fifty, half would then be in the hospital, and not ten of the rest in perfect health: possibly this account may be exaggerated; but the pale and feeble wretches whom we saw crawling about with a musket, which they were scarcely able to carry, inclined us to believe that it was true. Every white inhabitant of the town indeed is a soldier; the younger are constantly mustered, and those who have served five years are liable to be called out when their assistance is thought to be necessary; but as neither of them are ever exercised, nor do any kind of duty, much cannot be expected from them. The Portuguese, indeed, are in general good marksmen, because they employ themselves much in shooting wild hogs and deer: neither the Mardykars nor the Chinese know the use of fire arms; but as they are said to be brave, they might do much execution with their own weapons, swords, lances, and daggers. The Mardykars are Indians of all nations who are descended from free ancestors, or have themselves been made free.

But if it is difficult to attack Batavia by land, it is utterly impossible to attack it by sea: for the water is so shallow, that it will scarcely admit a long-boat to come within cannon shot of the walls, except in a narrow channel, called the river, that is walled on both sides by strong piers, and runs about half a mile into the harbour. At the other end it terminates under the fire of the strongest part of the castle; and here its

1770.
December.

communication with the canals that intersect the town is cut off by a large wooden boom, which is shut every night at six o'clock, and upon no pretence opened till the next morning. The harbour of Batavia is accounted the finest in India, and to all appearance with good reason; it is large enough to contain any number of ships, and the ground is so good that one anchor will hold till the cable decays: it never admits any sea that is troublesome, and its only inconvenience is the shoal water between the road and the river. When the sea breeze blows fresh, it makes a cockling sea that is dangerous to boats: our long-boat once struck two or three times as she was attempting to come out, and regained the river's mouth with some difficulty. A Dutch boat, laden with sails and rigging for one of the Indiamen, was entirely lost.

Round the harbour, on the outside, lie many islands, which the Dutch have taken possession of, and apply to different uses. To one of them, called Edam, they transport all Europeans who have been guilty of crimes that are not worthy of death: some are sentenced to remain there ninety-nine years, some forty, some twenty, some less, down to five, in proportion to their offence: and during their banishment, they are employed as slaves in making ropes, and other drudgery. In another island called Pulmerent, they have an hospital, where people are said to recover much faster than at Batavia. In a third called Kuyper, they have ware-houses belonging to the Company, chiefly for rice and other merchandize of small value; and here the foreign ships that are to be laid down at Ourust, another of these islands, which with Kuyper has been mentioned before, discharge their cargoes at wharfs, which are very convenient for the purpose. Here the guns, sails, and other stores of the Falmouth, a man of war, which was condemned at this place when she was returning from Manilla, were deposited, and the ship herself remained in the harbour with only the warrant officers on board for many years. Remittances were regularly made them from home: but no notice was ever taken of the many memorials they sent, desiring to be recalled. Happily for them, the Dutch thought fit, about six months before our arrival, to sell

1770.
December.

sell the vessel and all her stores, by public auction, and send the officers home in their own ships. At Ourust, they repair all their own shipping, and keep a large quantity of naval stores.

The country round Batavia is for some miles a continued range of country houses and gardens. Many of the gardens are very large, and, by some strange fatality, all are planted with trees almost as thick as they can stand; so that the country derives no advantage from its being cleared of the wood that originally covered it, except the fruit of that which has been planted in its room. These impenetrable forests stand in a dead flat, which extends some miles beyond them, and is intersected in many directions by rivers, and more still by canals, which are navigable for small vessels. Nor is this the worst, for the fence of every field and garden is a ditch; and interspersed among the cultivated ground there are many filthy fens, bogs, and morasses, as well fresh as salt.

It is not strange that the inhabitants of such a country should be familiar with disease and death: preventive medicines are taken almost as regularly as food; and every body expects the returns of sickness, as we do the seasons of the year. We did not see a single face in Batavia that indicated perfect health, for there is not the least tint of colour in the cheeks either of man or woman: the women indeed are most delicately fair; but with the appearance of disease there never can be perfect beauty. People talk of death with as much indifference as they do in a camp; and when an acquaintance is said to be dead, the common reply is, "Well, he owed me nothing;" or, "I must get my money of his executors."

To this description of the environs of Batavia there are but two exceptions. The Governor's country-house is situated upon a rising ground; but its ascent is so inconsiderable, that it is known to be above the common level only by the canals being left behind, and the appearance of a few bad hedges: his Excellency, however, who is a native of this place, has, with some trouble and expence, contrived to inclose his own garden with a ditch; such is the influence of habit both upon the taste and the understanding. A famous market also, called Passar Tanabank, is held upon an eminence that

1770.
December.

rises perpendicularly about thirty feet above the plain, and except these situations, the ground for an extent of between thirty and forty miles round Batavia, is exactly parallel to the horizon. At the distance of about forty miles inland there are hills of a considerable height, where, as we are informed, the air is healthy, and comparatively cool. Here the vegetables of Europe flourish in great perfection, particularly strawberries, which can but ill bear heat; and the inhabitants are vigorous and ruddy. Upon these hills some of the principal people have country houses, which they visit once a-year; and one was begun for the Governor, upon the plan of Blenheim, the famous seat of the Duke of Marlborough in Oxfordshire, but it has never been finished. To these hills also people are sent by the physicians, for the recovery of their health, and the effects of the air are said to be almost miraculous; the patient grows well in a short time, but constantly relapses soon after his return to Batavia.

But the same situation and circumstances which render Batavia and the country round it unwholesome, render it the best gardener's ground in the world. The soil is fruitful beyond imagination, and the conveniences and luxuries of life that it produces are almost without number.

Rice, which is well known to be the corn of these countries, and to serve the inhabitants instead of bread, grows in great plenty: and I must here observe, that in the hilly parts of Java, and in many of the eastern islands, a species of this grain is planted, which in the western parts of India is intirely unknown. It is called by the natives *Paddy Gumung*, or Mountain rice; this, contrary to the other sort, which must be under water three parts in four of the time of its growth, is planted upon the sides of hills where no water but rain can come: it is however planted at the beginning of the rainy season, and reaped in the beginning of the dry. How far this kind of rice might be useful in our West-Indian islands, where no bread-corn is grown, it may perhaps be worth while to inquire.

Indian corn, or maize, is also produced here; which the inhabitants gather when young, and roast in the ear. Here is also a great variety of kidney-beans
and

and lentiles, which they call *Cadjang*, and which make a considerable part of the food of the common people; besides millet, yams both wet and dry, sweet potatoes, and European potatoes, which are very good, but not cultivated in great plenty. In the gardens there are cabbages, lettuces, cucumbers, radishes, the white radishes of China, which boil almost as well as a turnep; carrots, parsley, celery, pigeon peas, the egg-plant, which broiled, and eaten with pepper and salt, is very delicious; a kind of greens resembling spinach; onions, very small, but excellent; and asparagus: besides some European plants of a strong smell, particularly sage, hyssop, and rue. Sugar is also produced here in immense quantities: very great crops of the finest and largest canes that can be imagined are produced with very little care, and yield a much larger proportion of sugar than the canes of the West Indies. White sugar is sold here at two pence halfpenny a pound; and the molasses make the arrack of which, as of rum, it is the chief ingredient; a small quantity of rice, and some cocoa-nut wine, being added, chiefly, I suppose, to give it flavour. A small quantity of indigo is also produced here, not as an article of trade, but merely for home consumption.

But the most abundant article of vegetable luxury here, is the fruit; of which there are no less than six and thirty different kinds, and I shall give a very brief account of each.

1. The pine apple; *Bromelia Ananas*. This fruit, which is here called *Nanas*, grows very large, and in such plenty that they may sometimes be bought at the first hand for a farthing a piece; and at the common fruit shops we got three of them for two-pence halfpenny. They are very juicy and well flavoured; but we all agreed that we had eaten as good from a hot-house in England: they are however so luxuriant in their growth, that most of them have two or three crowns, and a great number of suckers from the bottom of the fruit; of these Mr. Banks once counted nine; and they are so forward, that very often while they still adhered to the parent plant they shot out their fruit, which by the time the large one became ripe, were of no inconsiderable size. We several times saw

1770.
December.

three upon one apple ; and were told that a plant once produced a clustre of nine, besides the principal : this indeed was considered as so great a curiosity, that it was preserved in sugar, and sent to the prince of Orange.

2. Sweet oranges. These are very good, but while we were here, sold for six-pence a piece.

3. Pumplemoeses, which in the West Indies are called Shaddocks. These were well flavoured, but not juicy ; their want of juice, however, was an accidental effect of the season.

4. Lemons. These were very scarce ; but the want of them was amply compensated by the plenty of limes.

5. Limes. These were excellent, and to be bought at about twelve pence a hundred. We saw only two or three Seville oranges, which were almost all rhind ; and there are many sorts, both of oranges and lemons, which I shall not particularly mention, because they are neither esteemed by Europeans nor the natives themselves.

6. Mangos. This fruit, during our stay, was so infested with maggots, which bred in the inside of them, that scarcely one in three was eatable ; and the best of them were much inferior to those of Brazil : they are generally compared by Europeans to a melting peach, which, indeed, they resemble in softness and sweetness, but certainly fall much short in flavour. The climate here, we were told, is too hot and damp for them ; but there are as many sorts of them as there are of apples in England, and some are much superior to others. One sort, which is called *Mangha Cowani*, has so strong a smell, that a European can scarcely bear one in the room ; these, however, the natives are fond of. The three sorts which are generally preferred, are the *Mangha Doodool*, the *Mangha Santock*, and the *Mangha Gure*.

7. Bananes. Of these also there are innumerable sorts, but three only are good ; the *Pissang Mas*, the *Pissang Radja*, and the *Pissang Ambou* : all these have a pleasant vinous taste, and the rest are useful in different ways ; some are fried in batter, and others are boiled and eaten as bread. There is one which deserves the particular

1770.
December.

particular notice of the botanist, because contrary to the nature of its tribe ; it is full of seeds, and is therefore called *Pissang Batu*, or *Pissang Bidjie* ; it has however no excellence to recommend it to the taste, but the Malays use it as a remedy for the flux.

8. Grapes. These are not in great perfection, but they are very dear ; for we could not buy a moderate bunch for less than a shilling or eighteen-pence.

9. Tamarinds. These are in great plenty, and very cheap : the people however do not put them up in the manner practised by the West Indians, but cure them with salt, by which means they become a black mass, so disagreeable to the sight and taste, that few Europeans choose to meddle with them.

10. Water melons. These are in great plenty, and very good.

11. Pumpkins. These are beyond comparison the most useful fruit that can be carried to sea ; for they will keep without any care several months, and with sugar and lemon-juice, make a pye that can scarcely be distinguished from one made of the best apples ; and, with pepper and salt, they are a substitute for turneps, not to be despised.

12. Papaws. This fruit, when it is ripe, is full of seeds, and almost without flavour ; but if when it is green it is pared, and the core taken out, it is better than the best turnep.

13. Guava. This fruit is much commended by the inhabitants of our islands in the West Indies, who probably have a better sort than we met with here, where the smell of them was so disagreeably strong, that it made some of us sick ; those who tasted them, said, that the flavour was equally rank.

14. Sweet sop. The *Annona squamosa* of Linnæus. This is also a West Indian fruit : it consists only of a mass of large kernels, from which a small proportion of pulp may be sucked, which is very sweet, but has little flavour.

15. Custard Apple. The *Annona reticulata* of Linnæus. The quality of this fruit is well expressed by its English name, which it acquired in the West Indies ; for it is as like a custard, and a good one too, as can be imagined.

16. The

1770.
December.

16. The cashew apple. This is seldom eaten on account of its astringency. The nut that grows upon the top of it is well known in Europe.

17. The cocoa-nut. This is also well known in Europe: there are several sorts, but the best of those we found here is called *Calappi Edjou*, and is easily known by the redness of the flesh between the skin and the shell.

18. Mangostan. The *Garcinia Mangostan* of Linnæus. This fruit, which is peculiar to the East Indies, is about the size of a crab apple, and of a deep red-wine colour: on the top of it is the figure of five or six small triangles joined in a circle, and at the bottom several hollow green leaves, which are remains of the blossom. When they are to be eaten, the skin, or rather flesh, must be taken off, under which are found six or seven white kernels, placed in a circular order, and the pulp, with which these are enveloped, is the fruit, than which nothing can be more delicious: it is a happy mixture of the tart and the sweet, which is no less wholesome than pleasant; and with the sweet orange, this fruit is allowed, in any quantity, to those who are afflicted with fevers, either of the putrid or inflammatory kind.

19. The jamboo. The *Eugenia Mallaccensis* of Linnæus. This fruit is of a deep red colour, and an oval shape; the largest, which are always the best, are not bigger than a small apple; they are pleasant and cooling, though they have not much flavour.

20. The jambu-eyer. A species of the *Eugenia* of Linnæus. Of this fruit there are two sorts of a similar shape, resembling a bell, but differing in colour; one being red, the other white. They somewhat exceed a large cherry in size, and in taste have neither flavour nor even sweetness, containing nothing but a watry juice, slightly acidulated; yet their coolness recommends them in this hot country.

21. Jambu-eyer mauwar. The *Eugenia jambas* of Linnæus. This is more grateful to the smell than the taste; in taste it resembles the conserve of roses, and in smell the fresh scent of those flowers.

22. The pomegranate. This is the same fruit that is known by the same name all over Europe.

23. Durion.

1770.
December.

23. Durion. A fruit that in shape resembles a small melon, but the skin is covered with sharp conical spines, whence its name; for *dure*, in the Malay language, signifies prickly. When it is ripe, it divides longitudinally into seven or eight compartments, each of which contains six or seven nuts, not quite so large as chestnuts, which are covered with a substance that in colour and consistence very much resembles thick cream: this is the part that is eaten, and the natives are fond of it to excess. To Europeans it is generally disagreeable at first; for in taste it somewhat resembles a mixture of cream, sugar, and onions; and in the smell, the onions predominate.

24. Nanca. This fruit, which in some parts of India is called Jack, has, like the Durion, a smell very disagreeable to strangers, and somewhat resembling that of mellow apples mixed with garlic: the flavour is not more adapted to the general taste. In some countries that are favourable to it, it is said to grow to an immense size. Rumphius relates, that it is sometimes so large, that a man cannot easily lift it; and we were told by a Malay, that at Madura it is sometimes so large as not to be carried but by the united efforts of two men. At Batavia, however, they never exceed the size of a large melon, which in shape they very much resemble: they are covered with angular prickles, like the shootings of some crystals, which, however, are not hard enough to wound those who handle them.

25. Champada. This differs from the Nanca in little, except size, it being not so big.

26. Rambutan. This is a fruit little known to Europeans; in appearance it very much resembles a chestnut with the husk on, and, like that, is covered with small points, which are soft, and of a deep red colour: under this skin is the fruit, and within the fruit a stone; the eatable part, therefore, is small in quantity, but its acid is perhaps more agreeable than any other in the whole vegetable kingdom.

27. Jamholan. This in size and appearance is not unlike a damascene; but in taste is still more astringent, and therefore less agreeable.

28. The

LIEUT. COOK'S VOYAGE

770

ember.

28. The Boa Bidarra ; or *Rhamnus Fijuba* of Linnæus. This is a round yellow fruit, about the size of a gooseberry ; its flavour is like that of an apple, but it has the astringency of a crab.

29. Nam-nam. The *Cynometra Cauliflora* of Linnæus. This fruit in shape somewhat resembles a kidney ; it is about three inches long, and the outside is very rough : it is seldom eaten raw, but fried with batter it makes a good fritter.

30, 31. The Catappa, or *Terminalia Catappa* ; and the Canare, the *Canarium commune* of Linnæus ; are both nuts, with kernels somewhat resembling an almond ; but the difficulty of breaking the shell is so great, that they are no where publicly sold. Those which we tasted were gathered for curiosity by Mr. Banks from the tree upon which they grew.

32. The Madja, or *Limonia* of Linnæus, contains, under a hard brittle shell, a lightly acid pulp, which cannot be eaten without sugar ; and with it is not generally thought pleasant.

33. Suntul. The *Trichilia* of Linnæus. This is the worst of all the fruits that I shall particularly mention : in size and shape it resembles the Madja ; and within a thick skin contains kernels like those of the Mangostan, the taste of which is both acid and astringent, and so disagreeable that we were surprised to see it exposed upon the fruit-stalls.

34, 35, 36. The Blimbing, or *Averrhoa Belimbi* ; the Blimbing Bessé, or *Averrhoa Carambola* ; and the Cherrema, or *Averrhoa Acida* of Linnæus, are three species of one genus ; and though they differ in shape, are nearly of the same taste. The Blimbing Bessé is the sweetest : the other two are so austerely acid, that they cannot be used without dressing ; they make however excellent pickles and sour sauce.

37. The Salack ; or *Calamus Rotang Zalacca* of Linnæus. This is the fruit of a prickly bush ; it is about as big as a walnut, and covered with scales, like those of a lizard : below the scales are two or three yellow kernels, in flavour somewhat resembling a strawberry.

Besides these, the island of Java, and particularly the country round Batavia, produces many kinds of fruit which were not in season during our stay ; we were

were also told, that apples, strawberries, and many other fruits from Europe, had been planted up in the mountains, and flourished there in great luxuriance. We saw several fruits preserved in sugar, that we did not see recent from the tree, one of which is called *Kemkit*, and another *Boa Atap*: and here are several others which are eaten only by the natives, particularly the *Kellor*, the *Guilindina*, the *Moringa*, and the *Socum*. The *Socum* is of the same kind with the bread-fruit in the South-Sea islands, but so much inferior, that if it had not been for the similitude in the outward appearance, both of the fruit and the tree, we should not have referred it to that class. These, and some others, do not merit to be particularly mentioned.

1772.
December.

The quantity of fruit that is consumed at Batavia is incredible; but that which is publicly exposed to sale is generally over-ripe. A stranger, however, may get good fruit in a street called *Passar Pissang*, which lies north from the great church, and very near it. This street is inhabited by none but Chinese fruit-sellers, who are supplied from the gardens of gentlemen in the neighbourhood of the town, with such as is fresh, and excellent in its kind, for which, however, they must be paid more than four times the market price.

The town in general is supplied from a considerable distance, where great quantities of land are cultivated merely for the production of fruit. The country people, to whom these lands belong, meet the people of the town at two great markets, one on Monday, called *Passar Sineen*, and the other on Saturday, called *Passar Tanabank*. These fairs are held at places considerably distant from each other, for the convenience of different districts; neither of them, however, are more than five miles distant from Batavia. At these fairs the best fruit may be bought at the cheapest rate; and the sight of them to an European is very entertaining. The quantity of fruit is astonishing; forty or fifty cart-loads of the finest pine-apples, packed as carelessly as turneps in England, are common, and other fruit in the same profusion. The days, however, on which these markets are held are ill contrived; the time between Saturday and Monday is too short, and that between

1770.
December.

between Monday and Saturday too long: great part of what is bought on Monday is always much the worse for keeping before a new stock can be bought, either by the retailer or consumer; so that for several days, in every week, there is no good fruit in the hands of any people but the Chinese in Passar Pissang.

The inhabitants of this part of India practise a luxury which seems to be but little attended to in other countries; they are continually burning aromatic woods and resins, and scatter odours round them in a profusion of flowers, possibly as an antidote to the noisome effluvia of their ditches and canals. Of sweet smelling flowers they have a great variety, altogether unknown in Europe, the chief of which I shall briefly describe.

1. The *Champacka*, or *Michelia Champacca*. This grows upon a tree as large as an apple tree, and consists of fifteen long narrow petals, which give it the appearance of being double, though in reality it is not so: its colour is yellow, and much deeper than that of a jonquil, to which it has some resemblance in smell.

2. The *Camanga*, or *Uvaria Camanga*, is a green flower, not at all resembling the blossom of any tree or plant in Europe; it has indeed more the appearance of a bunch of leaves than a flower; its scent is agreeable, but altogether peculiar to itself.

3. The *Mulatti*, or *Nyctanthes Sambac*. This is well known in English hot houses by the name of Arabian jessamine; it grows here in the greatest profusion, and its fragrance, like that of all other Indian flowers, though exquisitely pleasing, has not the over-powering strength which distinguishes some of the same sorts in Europe.

4, 5. The *Combang Caracnassi*, and *Combang Tonquin*, *Percularia Glabro*. These are small flowers of the dog's-bane kind, very much resembling each other in shape and smell, highly fragrant, but very different from every product of an English garden.

6. The *Bonga Tanjong*, or *Mimulops Elengi* of Linnaeus. This flower is shaped like a star of seven or eight rays, and is about half an inch in diameter; it is of a yellowish colour, and has an agreeable smell.

Besides these, there is the *Sundal Malam*, or *Polianthes Taberofa*. This flower, being the same with our own

1770.
December.

own tuberoses, can have no place among those that are unknown in Europe; but I mention it for its Malay name, which signifies "Intriguer of the Night," and is not inelegantly conceived. The heat of this climate is so great, that few flowers exhale their sweets in the day; and this, in particular, from its total want of scent at that time, and the modesty of its colour, which is white, seems negligent of attracting admirers; but as soon as night comes on it diffuses its fragrance, and at once compels the attention, and excites the complacency of all who approach it.

These are all sold about the streets every evening at sun-set, either strung upon a thread in wreaths of about two feet long, or made up into nosegays of different forms, either of which may be purchased for about a halfpenny. Besides these, there are in private gardens many other sweet flowers, which are not produced in a sufficient quantity to be brought to market. With a mixture of these flowers, and the leaves of a plant called *pandang*, cut into small pieces, persons of both sexes fill their hair and their clothes, and with the same mixture indulge a much higher luxury, by strewing it on their beds; so that the chamber in which they sleep breathes the richest and purest of all odours, unallayed by the fumes, which cannot but arise where the sleeper lies under two or three blankets and a quilt; for the bed covering here is nothing more than a single piece of fine chintz.

Before I close my account of the vegetable productions of this part of India, I must take some notice of the spices. Java originally produced none but pepper. This is now sent from hence into Europe to a great value, but the quantity consumed here is very small: the inhabitants use *Capficum*, or, as it is called in Europe, Cayan pepper, almost universally in its stead. Cloves and nutmegs, having been monopolized by the Dutch, are become too dear to be plentifully used by the other inhabitants of this country, who are very fond of them. Cloves, although they are said originally to have been the produce of Machian, or Bachian, a small island far to the eastward, and only fifteen miles to the northward of the line, and to have been from thence disseminated by the Dutch, at their first coming into these

1770.
December.

these parts, over all the eastern islands, are now confined to Amboina, and the small isles that lie in its neighbourhood; the Dutch having, by different treaties of peace between them and the conquered kings of all the other islands, stipulated that they should have only a certain number of trees in their dominions, and in future quarrels, as a punishment for disobedience and rebellion, lessened the quantity, till at last they left them no claim to any. Nutmegs have in a manner been extirpated in all the islands except their native soil, Banda, which easily supplies every nation upon earth, and would as easily supply every nation in another globe of the same dimensions, if there was any such to which the industrious Hollander could transport the commodity; it is, however, certain, that there are a few trees of this spice upon the coast of New Guinea. There may perhaps be both cloves and nutmegs upon other islands to the eastward; for those neither the Dutch nor any other European seem to think it worth while to examine.

The principal tame quadrupeds of this country are horses, cattle, buffaloes, sheep, goats, and hogs. The horses are small, never exceeding in size what we call a stout galloway, but they are nimble and spirited, and are reported to have been found here when the Europeans first came round the Cape of Good Hope. The horned cattle are said to be the same species as those of Europe; but they differ so much in appearance, that we are inclined to doubt it. They have, indeed, the *palearia* or *dewlap*, which naturalists make the distinguishing characteristic of the European species, but they certainly are found wild, not only in Java but several of the eastern islands. The flesh of those that we eat at Batavia had a finer grain than European beef, but it was less juicy, and miserably lean. Buffaloes are plenty, but the Dutch never eat them, nor will they drink their milk, being prepossessed with a notion that both are unwholesome, and tend to produce fevers; though the natives and Chinese eat both, without any injury to their health. The sheep are of the kind which have long ears that hang down, and hair instead of wool: the flesh of these is hard and tough, and in every respect the worst mutton we ever saw. We found
here,

1770.
December.

here, however, a few Cape sheep, which are excellent, but so dear that we gave five-and-forty shillings a-piece for four of them, the heaviest of which weighed only five-and-forty pounds. The goats are not better than the sheep; but the hogs, especially the Chinese breed, are incomparable, and so fat, that the purchaser agrees for the lean separately. The butcher, who is always a Chinese, without the least scruple cuts off as much of the fat as he is desired, and afterwards sells it to his countrymen, who melt it down, and eat it instead of butter with their rice. But notwithstanding the excellence of this pork, the Dutch are so strongly prejudiced in favour of every thing that comes from their native country, that they eat only of the Dutch breed, which are here sold as much dearer than the Chinese, as the Chinese are sold dearer than the Dutch in Europe.

Besides these animals, which are tame, they have dogs and cats, and there are among the distant mountains some wild horses and cattle: buffaloes are not found wild in any part of Java, though they abound in Macassar, and several other eastern islands. The neighbourhood of Batavia, however, is plentifully supplied with two kinds of deer and wild hogs, which are sold at a reasonable price by the Portuguese, who shoot them, and are very good food.

Among the mountains, and in the desert parts of the island, there are tygers, it is said, in great abundance, and some rhinoceroses; in these parts also there are monkeys, and there are a few of them even in the neighbourhood of Batavia.

Of fish, here is an amazing plenty; many sorts are excellent, and all are very cheap, except the few that are scarce. It happens here, as in other places, that vanity gets the better even of appetite: the cheap fish, most of which is of the best kind, is the food only for slaves; and that which is dear, only because it is scarce, and very much inferior in every respect, is placed upon the tables of the rich. A sensible housekeeper once spoke to us freely upon the subject: I know, said he, as well as you, that I could purchase a better dish of fish for a shilling, than what now costs me ten; but if I should make so good a use of my money, I should

1770,
December.

here be as much despised as you would be in Europe, if you were to cover your table with offals, fit only for beggars or dogs.

Turtle is also found here, but it is neither so sweet nor so fat as the West Indian turtle, even in London; such as it is, however, we should consider it as a dainty; but the Dutch, among other singularities, do not eat it. We saw some lizards, or iguanas, here of a very large size; we were told that some were as thick as a man's thigh; and Mr. Banks shot one that was five feet long; the flesh of this animal proved to be very good food.

Poultry is very good here, and in great plenty: fowls of a very large size, ducks, and geese are very cheap; pigeons are dear, and the price of turkies extravagant. We sometimes found the flesh of these animals lean and dry, but this was merely the effect of their being ill fed; for those that we fed ourselves were as good as any of the same kind that we had tasted in Europe, and we sometimes thought them even better.

Wild fowl in general is scarce. We once saw a wild duck in the fields, but never any that were to be sold. We frequently saw snipes of two kinds, one of them exactly the same as that in Europe; and a kind of thrush was always to be had in great plenty of the Portuguese, who, for I know not what reason, seem to have monopolized the wild fowl and game. Of snipes, it is remarkable that they are found in more parts of the world than any other bird, being common almost all over Europe, Asia, Africa, and America.

With respect to drink, Nature has not been quite so liberal to the inhabitants of Java, as to some whom she has placed in the less fruitful regions of the north. The native Javanese, and most of the other Indians who inhabit this island, are indeed Mahometans, and therefore have no reason to regret the want of wine; but, as if the prohibition of their law respected only the manner of becoming drunk, and not drunkenness itself, they chew opium, to the total subversion not only of their understanding, but their health.

The arrack that is made here is too well known to need a description; besides which, the palm yields a wine of the same kind with that which has already been

1770.
December.

been described in the account of the island of Savu ; it is procured from the same tree, in the same manner, and is sold in three states. The first, in which it is called *Tuac manise*, differs little from that in which it comes from the tree ; yet even this has received some preparation altogether unknown to us, in consequence of which it will keep eight-and-forty hours, though otherwise it would spoil in twelve ; in this state it has an agreeable sweetness, and will not intoxicate : in the other two states it has undergone a fermentation, and received an infusion of certain herbs and roots, by which it loses its sweetness, and acquires a taste very austere and disagreeable. In one of these states it is called *Tuac cras*, and in the other *Tuac cuning*, but the specific difference I do not know ; in both, however, it intoxicates very powerfully. A liquor called *Tuac* is also made from the cocoa-nut tree ; but this is used chiefly to put into the arrack, for in that which is good it is an essential ingredient.

C H A P. XIV.

Some Account of the Inhabitants of Batavia, and the adjacent Country, their Manners, Customs, and Manner of Life.

THE town of Batavia, although, as I have already observed, it is the capital of the Dutch dominions in India, is so far from being peopled with Dutchmen, that not one fifth part, even of the European inhabitants of the town, and its environs, are natives of Holland, or of Dutch extraction, the greater part are Portuguese : and, besides Europeans, there are Indians of various nations, and Chinese, besides a great number of negro slaves. In the troops there are natives of almost every country in Europe, but the Germans are more than all the rest put together : there are some English and French, but the Dutch, though other Europeans are permitted to get money here, keep all the power in their own hands, and consequently possess all public employments. No man, of whatever nation, can come hither to settle in any other character than that of a soldier in the company's service, in

1770.

December.

which, before they are accepted, they must covenant to remain five years. As soon, however, as this form has been complied with, they are allowed, upon application to the council, to absent themselves from their corps, and enter immediately into any branch of trade, which their money or credit will enable them to carry on; and by this means it is that all the white inhabitants of the place are soldiers.

Women, however, of all nations, are permitted to settle here, without coming under any restrictions; yet we were told that there were not, when we were at Batavia, twenty women in the place that were born in Europe, but that the white women, who were by no means scarce, were descendants from European parents, of the third or fourth generation, the gleanings of many families who had successively come hither, and in the male line become extinct; for it is certain that, whatever be the cause, this climate is not so fatal to the ladies as to the other sex.

These women imitate the Indians:—very particular; their dress is made of the same material, their hair is worn in the same manner, and they are usually enslaved by the habit of chewing betel.

The men carry on their trade more than in any other place; every one is manageable, and they sell the produce of their labour. They are permitted to go on a ship commander's vessel, or as passengers of another, or as the merchant's crew, but to go to his Chinese house, or on board his Chinese ship, is the command of the governor. He gives the Chinese the goods that they want, and how much they pay for them, and lay out the money. The Portuguese count

Europeans; yet they are included in the general appellation of *Caper*, or *Cafir*, an opprobrious term, applied by Mahometans to all who do not profess their faith. These people, however, are Portuguese only in name; they have renounced the religion of Rome, and become Lutherans; neither have they the least communication with the country of their forefathers, or even knowledge of it: they speak, indeed, a corrupt dialect of the Portuguese language, but much more frequently use the Malay. They are never suffered to employ themselves in any but mean occupations; many of them live by hunting, many by washing linen, and some are handicraftsmen and artificers. They have adopted all the customs of the Indians, from whom they are distinguished chiefly by their features and complexion, their skin being considerably darker, and their noses more sharp; their dress is exactly the same, except in the manner of wearing their hair.

The Indians, who are mixed with the Dutch and Portuguese in the town of Batavia, and the country adjacent, are not, as might be supposed, Javanese, the original natives of the island, but natives of the various islands from which the Dutch import slaves, and are either such as have themselves been manumized, or the descendants of those who formerly received manumission; and they are all comprehended under the general name of *Oranslam*, or *Isalem*, signifying, Believers of the true Faith. The natives of every country, however, in other respects keep themselves distinct from the rest, and are not less strongly marked than the slaves, by the vices or virtues of their respective nations. Many of these employ themselves in the cultivation of gardens, and in selling fruit and flowers. The betel and areca, which are here called *Siri* and *ag*, and chewed by both sexes and every rank in great quantities, are all grown by these Indians: The areca also mixed with these roots here as it is in Savu, is less pernicious to the teeth, because it is first, and, besides the lime, a substance called *gambir*, is brought from the continent of India; the betel of women also add cardamum, and many other aromatics, to give the breath an agreeable smell. Some Indians, however, are employed in fishing, and

1770.
December.

which, before they are accepted, they must covenant to remain five years. As soon, however, as this form has been complied with, they are allowed, upon application to the council, to absent themselves from their corps, and enter immediately into any branch of trade, which their money or credit will enable them to carry on ; and by this means it is that all the white inhabitants of the place are soldiers.

Women, however, of all nations, are permitted to settle here, without coming under any restrictions ; yet we were told that there were not, when we were at Batavia, twenty women in the place that were born in Europe, but that the white women, who were by no means scarce, were descendants from European parents, of the third or fourth generation, the gleanings of many families who had successively come hither, and in the male line become extinct ; for it is certain that, whatever be the cause, this climate is not so fatal to the ladies as to the other sex.

These women imitate the Indians in every particular ; their dress is made of the same materials, their hair is worn in the same manner, and they are equally enslaved by the habit of chewing beetle.

The merchants carry on their business here with less trouble, perhaps, than in any other part of the world : every manufacture is managed by the Chinese, who sell the produce of their labour to the merchants resident here, for they are permitted to sell it to no one else ; so that when a ship comes in, and bespeaks perhaps an hundred leaguers of arrack, or any quantity of other commodities, the merchant has nothing to do but to send orders to his Chinese to see them delivered on board ; he obeys the command, brings a receipt signed by the master of the ship for the goods to his employer, who receives the money, and, having deducted his profit, pays the Chinese his demand. With goods that are imported, however, the merchant has a little more trouble ; for these he must examine, receive, and lay up in his warehouse, according to the practice of other countries.

The Portuguese are called by the natives *Oranferane*, or Nazareen men, (Oran being Man in the language of the country) to distinguish them from other Europeans ;

1770.
December.

Europeans; yet they are included in the general appellation of *Caper*, or *Cafir*, an opprobrious term, applied by Mahometans to all who do not profess their faith. These people, however, are Portuguese only in name; they have renounced the religion of Rome, and become Lutherans; neither have they the least communication with the country of their forefathers, or even knowledge of it: they speak, indeed, a corrupt dialect of the Portuguese language, but much more frequently use the Malay. They are never suffered to employ themselves in any but mean occupations; many of them live by hunting, many by washing linen, and some are handicraftsmen and artificers. They have adopted all the customs of the Indians, from whom they are distinguished chiefly by their features and complexion, their skin being considerably darker, and their noses more sharp; their dress is exactly the same, except in the manner of wearing their hair.

The Indians, who are mixed with the Dutch and Portuguese in the town of Batavia, and the country adjacent, are not, as might be supposed, Javanese, the original natives of the island, but natives of the various islands from which the Dutch import slaves, and are either such as have themselves been manumized, or the descendants of those who formerly received manumission; and they are all comprehended under the general name of *Oranslam*, or *Isalem*, signifying, Believers of the true Faith. The natives of every country, however, in other respects keep themselves distinct from the rest, and are not less strongly marked than the slaves, by the vices or virtues of their respective nations. Many of these employ themselves in the cultivation of gardens, and in selling fruit and flowers. The beetle and areca, which are here called *Siri* and *Pinang*, and chewed by both sexes and every rank in amazing quantities, are all grown by these Indians: lime is also mixed with these roots here as it is in Savu, but it is less pernicious to the teeth, because it is first flaked, and, besides the lime, a substance called *gambir*, which is brought from the continent of India; the better sort of women also add cardamum, and many other aromatics, to give the breath an agreeable smell. Some of the Indians, however, are employed in fishing, and

1770.
December.

as lightermen, to carry goods from place to place by water; and some are rich, and live with much of the splendor of their country, which chiefly consists in the number of their slaves.

In the article of food these Isalems are remarkably temperate; it consists chiefly of boiled rice, with a small proportion of buffalo, fish, or fowl, and sometimes of dried fish, and dried shrimps, which are brought here from China; every dish, however, is highly seasoned with Cayan pepper, and they have many kinds of pastry made of rice flour, and other things to which I am a stranger; they eat also a great deal of fruit, particularly plantains.

But, notwithstanding their general temperance, their feasts are plentiful, and, according to their manner, magnificent. As they are Mahometans, wine and strong liquors professedly make no part of their entertainment; neither do they often indulge with them privately, contenting themselves with their beetle and opium.

The principal solemnity among them is a wedding, upon which occasion both the families borrow as many ornaments of gold and silver as they can, to adorn the bride and bridegroom, so that their dresses are very shewy and magnificent. The feasts that are given upon these occasions among the rich last sometimes a fortnight, and sometimes longer; and during this time the man, although married on the first day, is by the women kept from his wife.

The language that is spoken among all these people, from what place soever they originally came, is the Malay, at least it is a language so called, and probably it is a very corrupt dialect of that spoken at Malacca. Every little island, indeed, has a language of its own, and Java has two or three; but this *Lingua Franca* is the only language that is now spoken here, and, as I am told, it prevails over a great part of the East Indies. A dictionary of Malay and English was published in London by Thomas Bowrey, in the year 1701.

Their women wear as much hair as can grow upon the head, and to increase the quantity they use oils, and other preparations of various kinds. Of this ornament

nament Nature has been very liberal ; it is universally black, and is formed into a kind of circular wreath upon the top of the head, where it is fastened with a bodkin, in a taste which we thought inexpressibly elegant : the wreath of hair is surrounded by another of flowers, in which the Arabian jessamine is beautifully intermixed with the golden stars of *Bonger Tanjong*.

Both sexes constantly bathe themselves in the river, at least once a day ; a practice which, in this hot country, is equally necessary both to personal delicacy and health. The teeth of these people also, whatever they may suffer in their colour by chewing beetle, are an object of great attention ; the ends of them, both in the upper and under jaw, are rubbed with a kind of whet-stone, by a very troublesome and painful operation, till they are perfectly even and flat, so that they cannot lose less than half a line in their length. A deep groove is then made cross the teeth of the upper jaw, parallel with the gums, and in the middle between them and the extremity of the teeth ; the depth of this groove is at least equal to one-fourth of the thickness of the teeth, so that it penetrates far beyond what is called the enamel, the least injury to which, according to the dentists of Europe, is fatal ; yet among these people, where the practice of thus wounding the enamel is universal, we never saw a rotten tooth ; nor is the blackness a stain, but a covering, which may be washed off at pleasure, and the teeth then appear as white as ivory, which, however, is not an excellence in the estimation of the belles and beaux of these nations.

These are the people among whom the practice that is called a *mock*, or running a muck, has prevailed for time immemorial. It is well known that to run a muck, in the original sense of the word, is to get intoxicated with opium, and then rush into the street with a drawn weapon, and kill whoever comes in the way, till the party is himself either killed or taken prisoner. Of this several instances happened while we were at Batavia ; and one of the officers, whose business it is, among other things, to apprehend such people, told us, that there was scarcely a week in which he, or some of his brethren, were not called

1770.
December.

upon to take one of them in custody. In one of the instances that came to our knowledge, the party had been severely injured by the perfidy of women, and was mad with jealousy before he made himself drunk with opium; and we are told, that the Indian who runs a muck is always first driven to desperation by some outrage, and always first revenges himself upon those who have done him wrong. We were also told, that though these unhappy wretches afterwards run into the street with a weapon in their hand, frantic and foaming at the mouth, yet they never kill any but those who attempt to apprehend them, or those whom they suspect of such an intention, and that whoever gives them way is safe. They are generally slaves, who indeed are more subject to insults, and least able to obtain legal redress. Freemen, however, are sometimes provoked into this extravagance, and one of the persons who run a muck, while we were at Batavia, was free and in easy circumstances. He was jealous of his own brother, whom he first killed, and afterwards two others, who attempted to oppose him; he did not, however, come out of his house, but endeavoured to defend himself in it, though the opium had so far deprived him of his senses, that of three muskets, which he attempted to use against the officers of justice, not one was either loaded or primed. If the officer takes one of these amocks, or mohawks, as they have been called by an easy corruption, alive, his reward is very considerable; but if he kills them, nothing is added to his usual pay; yet such is the fury of their desperation, that three out of four are of necessity destroyed in the attempt to secure them, though the officers are provided with instruments, like large tongs or pincers, to lay hold of them, without coming within the reach of their weapon. Those who happen to be taken alive are generally wounded, but they are always broken alive upon the wheel; and if the physician who is appointed to examine their wounds, think them likely to be mortal, the punishment is inflicted immediately, and the place of execution is generally the spot where the first murder was committed.

Among

Among these people there are many absurd practices and opinions which they derive from their Pagan ancestors : they believe that the devil, whom they call Satan, is the cause of all sickness and adversity ; and for this reason, when they are sick, or in distress, they consecrate meat, money, and other things to him as a propitiation. If any one among them is restless, and dreams for two or three nights successively, he concludes that Satan has taken that method of laying his commands upon him, which, if he neglects to fulfil, he will certainly suffer sickness or death, though they are not revealed with sufficient perspicuity to ascertain their meaning : to interpret his dream, therefore, he taxes his wits to the uttermost, and if, by taking it literally or figuratively, directly or by contraries, he can put no explication upon it that perfectly satisfies him, he has recourse to the cawin or priest, who assists him with a comment and illustrations, and perfectly reveals the mysterious suggestions of the night. It generally appears that the devil wants victuals or money, which are always allotted him, and being placed on a little plate of cocoa-nut leaves, are hung upon the branch of a tree near the river ; so that it seems not to be the opinion of these people, that in prowling the earth the devil “ walketh through dry places.” Mr. Banks once asked, whether they thought Satan spent the money, or eat the victuals ? He was answered, that as to the money, it was considered rather as a mulct upon an offender, than a gift to him who had enjoined it ; and that therefore, if it was devoted by the dreamer, it mattered not into whose hands it came, and they supposed that it was generally the prize of some stranger who wandered that way ; but as to the meat, they were clearly of opinion that, although the devil did not eat the gross parts, yet, by bringing his mouth near it, he sucked out all its flavour without changing its position, so that afterwards it was as tasteless as water.

But they have another superstitious opinion, that is still more unaccountable. They believe that women, when they are delivered of children, are frequently at the same time delivered of a young crocodile, as a twin to the infant : they believe that these creatures are received

1770.
December.

ceived most carefully by the midwife, and immediately carried down to the river, and put into the water. The family in which such a birth is supposed to have happened, constantly put victuals into the river for their amphibious relation, and especially the twin, who, as long as he lives, goes down to the river at stated seasons, to fulfil this fraternal duty, for the neglect of which, it is the universal opinion, that he will be visited with sickness or death. What could at first produce a notion so extravagant and absurd, it is not easy to guess; especially as it seems to be totally unconnected with any religious mystery; and how a fact which never happened, should be pretended to happen every day, by those who cannot be deceived into a belief of it by appearances, nor have any apparent interest in the fraud, is a problem still more difficult to solve. Nothing, however, can be more certain, than the firm belief of this strange absurdity among them; for we had the concurrent testimony of every Indian who was questioned about it, in its favour. It seems to have taken its rise in the islands of Celebes and Bouton, where many of the inhabitants keep crocodiles in their families; but however that be, the opinion has spread over all the eastern islands, even to Timor and Ceram, and westward as far as Java and Sumatra, where, however, young crocodiles are, I believe, never kept.

These crocodile twins are called *Sudaras*; and I shall relate one of the innumerable stories that were told us, in proof of their existence, from ocular demonstration.

A young female slave, who was born and bred up among the English at Bencoolen, and had learned a little of the language, told Mr. Banks that her father, when he was dying, acquainted her that he had a crocodile for his *Sudara*, and solemnly charged her to give him meat when he should be dead; telling her in what part of the river he was to be found, and by what name he was to be called up. That in pursuance of her father's instructions and command, she went to the river, and standing upon the bank, called out *Radja Pouti*, white king; upon which a crocodile came to her out of the water, and eat from her hand the provisions that she had brought him. When she was desired to describe this paternal uncle, who in so strange a shape had

1770.
Decembe

had taken up his dwelling in the water, she said that he was not like other crocodiles, but much handsomer; that his body was spotted and his nose red; that he had bracelets of gold upon his feet, and ear-rings of the same metal in his ears. Mr. Banks heard this tale of ridiculous falsehood patiently to the end; and then dismissed the girl, without reminding her, that a crocodile with ears was as strange a monster as a dog with a cloven foot. Some time after this, a servant whom Mr. Banks had hired at Batavia, and who was the son of a Dutchman by a Javanese woman, thought fit to acquaint his master that he had seen a crocodile of the same kind, which had also been seen by many others, both Dutchmen and Malays: and being very young, it was but two feet long, and had bracelets of gold upon its feet. There is no giving credit to these stories, said Mr. Banks, for I was told the other day that a crocodile had ear-rings; and you know that could not be true, because crocodiles have no ears. Ah! Sir, said the man, these Sudara Oran are not like other crocodiles; they have five toes upon each foot, a large tongue that fills their mouth, and ears also, although they are indeed very small.

How much of what these people related they believed, cannot be known; for there are no bounds to the credulity of ignorance and folly. In the girl's relation, however, there are some things in which she could not be deceived; and therefore must have been guilty of wilful falsehood. Her father might perhaps give her a charge to feed a crocodile, in consequence of his believing that it was his Sudara; but its coming to her out of the river, when she called it by the name of White King, and taking the food she had brought it, must have been a fable of her own invention; for this being false, it was impossible that she should believe it to be true. The girl's story, however, as well as that of the man, is a strong proof that they both firmly believed the existence of crocodiles that are Sudaras to men; and the girl's fiction will be easily accounted for if we recollect, that the earnest desire which every one feels to make others believe what he believes himself, is a strong temptation to support it by unjustifiable evidence. And the averring what is known to be false, in

1770.
December.

in order to produce in others the belief of what is thought to be true, must, upon the most charitable principles, be imputed to many, otherwise venerable characters, through whose hands the doctrines of Christianity passed for many ages in their way to us, as the source of all the silly fables related of the Romish saints, many of them not less extravagant and absurd than this story of the White King, and all of them the invention of the first relater.

The Bougis, Macassars, and Boetons, are so firmly persuaded that they have relations of the crocodile species in the rivers of their own country, that they perform a periodical ceremony in remembrance of them. Large parties of them go out in a boat, furnished with great plenty of provisions, and all kinds of music, and row backwards and forwards in places where crocodiles and alligators are most common, singing and weeping by turns, each invoking his kindred, till a crocodile appears; when the music instantly stops, and provisions, beetle and tobacco, are thrown into the water. By this civility to the species, they hope to recommend themselves to their relations at home; and that it will be accepted instead of offerings immediately to themselves, which it is not in their power to pay.

In the next rank to the Indians stand the Chinese, who in this place are numerous, but possess very little property; many of them live within the walls, and keep shops. The fruit-sellers of Passar Pissang have been mentioned already; but others have a rich show of European and Chinese goods: the far greater part, however, live in a quarter by themselves, without the walls, called Campang China. Many of them are carpenters, joiners, smiths, taylor, slip-makers, dyers of cotton, and embroiderers; maintaining the character of industry that is universally given of them: and some are scattered about the country, where they cultivate gardens, sow rice and sugar, or keep cattle and buffaloes, whose milk they daily bring to town.

There is nothing clean or dirty, honest or dishonest, provided there is not too much danger of a halter, that the Chinese will not readily do for money. But though they work with great diligence, and patiently undergo any degree of labour, yet no sooner have they laid
down

1770.
December.

down their tools than they begin to game, either at cards or dice, or some other play among the multitude that they have invented, which are altogether unknown in Europe : to this they apply with such eagerness, as scarcely to allow time for the necessary refreshments of food and sleep ; so that it is as rare to see a Chinese idle, as it is to see a Dutchman or an Indian employed.

In manners they are always civil, or rather obsequious ; and in dress they are remarkably neat and clean, to whatever rank of life they belong. I shall not attempt a description either of their persons or habits ; for the better kind of China paper, which is now common in England, exhibits a perfect representation of both, though perhaps with some slight exaggerations approaching towards the caricatura.

In eating they are easily satisfied, though the few that are rich have many savory dishes. Rice, with a small proportion of flesh or fish, is the food of the poor ; and they have greatly the advantage of the Mahometan Indians, whose religion forbids them to eat of many things which they could most easily procure. The Chinese, on the contrary, being under no restraint, eat, besides pork, dogs, cats, frogs, lizards, serpents of many kinds, and a great variety of sea animals, which the other inhabitants of this country do not consider as food : they eat also many vegetables, which an European, except he was perishing with hunger, would never touch.

The Chinese have a singular superstition with regard to the burial of their dead ; for they will, upon no occasion, open the ground a second time, where a body has been interred. Their burying grounds, therefore, in the neighbourhood of Batavia, cover many hundred acres ; and the Dutch, grudging the waste of so much land, will not sell any for this purpose but at the most exorbitant price. The Chinese, however, contrive to raise the purchase money, and afford another instance of the folly and weakness of human nature, in transferring a regard for the living to the dead, and making that the object of solicitude and expence, which cannot receive the least benefit from either. Under the influence of this universal prejudice, they take an uncommon

1770.
December.

common method to preserve the body intire, and prevent the remains of it from being mixed with the earth that surrounds it. They inclose it in a large thick coffin of wood, not made of planks joined together, but hollowed out of the solid timber like a canoe; this being covered, and let down into the grave, is surrounded with a coat of their mortar, called Chinam, about eight or ten inches thick, which in a short time becomes as hard as a stone. The relations of the deceased attend the funeral ceremony, with a considerable number of women that are hired to weep: it might reasonably be supposed that the hired appearance of sorrow could no more flatter the living than benefit the dead; yet the appearance of sorrow is known to be hired among people much more reflective and enlightened than the Chinese. In Batavia the law requires that every man should be buried according to his rank, which is in no case dispensed with; so that if the deceased has not left sufficient to pay his debts, an officer takes an inventory of what he has in his possession when he died, and out of the produce buries him in the manner prescribed, leaving only the overplus to his creditors. Thus in many instances are the living sacrificed to the dead; and money that should discharge a debt, or feed an orphan, lavished in idle processions, or materials that are deposited in the earth to rot.

Another numerous class among the inhabitants of this country is the slaves; for by slaves the Dutch, Portuguese, and Indians, however different in their rank or situation, are constantly attended: they are purchased from Sumatra, Malacca, and almost all the eastern islands. The natives of Java, very few of whom, as I have before observed, live in the neighbourhood of Batavia, have an exemption from slavery under the sanction of very severe penal laws, which I believe are seldom violated. The price of these slaves is from ten to twenty pounds sterling; but girls, if they have beauty, sometimes fetch a hundred. They are a very lazy set of people; but as they will do but little work, they are content with a little victuals, subsisting altogether upon boiled rice, and a small quantity of the cheapest fish. As they are natives of different countries, they differ from

1770.
December.

from each other extremely, both in person and disposition. The African negroes, called here *Papua*, are the worst, and consequently may be purchased for the least money: they are all thieves, and all incorrigible. Next to these are the Bougis and Macassars, both from the island of Celebes; these are lazy in the highest degree, and though not so much addicted to theft as the negroes, have a cruel and vindictive spirit, which renders them extremely dangerous; especially as, to gratify their resentment, they will make no scruple of sacrificing life. The best slaves, and consequently the dearest, are procured from the island of Bali: the most beautiful women from Nias, a small island on the coast of Sumatra; but they are of a tender and delicate constitution, and soon fall a sacrifice to the unwholesome air of Batavia. Besides these, there are Malays, and slaves of several other denominations, whose particular characteristics I do not remember.

These slaves are wholly in the power of their masters with respect to any punishment that does not take away life; but if a slave dies in consequence of punishment, though his death should not appear to have been intended, the master is called to a severe account, and he is generally condemned to suffer capitally. For this reason the master seldom inflicts punishment upon the slave himself, but applies to an officer called a *Marineu*, one of whom is stationed in every district. The duty of the *Marineu* is to quell riots, and take offenders into custody; but more particularly to apprehend runaway slaves, and punish them for such crimes as the master, supported by proper evidence, lays to their charge: the punishment however is not inflicted by the *Marineu* in person, but by slaves who are bred up to the business. Men are punished publicly, before the door of their master's house; but women within it. The punishment is by stripes, the number being proportioned to the offence; and they are given with rods made of rattans; which are split into slender twigs for the purpose, and fetch blood at every stroke. A common punishment costs the master a rix-dollar, and a severe one a ducatoon, about six shillings and eight pence. The master is also obliged to allow the slave three dubbelcheys, equal to about seven pence half-penny a week,

1770.
December.

as an encouragement, and to prevent his being under temptations to steal too strong to be resisted.

Concerning the government of this place I can say but little. We observed however a remarkable subordination among the people. Every man who is able to keep house, has a certain specific rank, acquired by the length of his services to the company; the different ranks which are thus acquired are distinguished by the ornaments of the coaches and the dresses of coachmen: some are obliged to ride in plain coaches, some are allowed to paint them in different manners and degrees, and some to gild them. The coachman also appears in clothes that are quite plain, or more or less adorned with lace.

The officer who presides here has the title of Governor General of the Indies; and the Dutch Governors of all the other settlements are subordinate to him, and obliged to repair to Batavia that he may pass their accounts. If they appear to have been criminal, or even negligent, he punishes them by delay, and detains them during pleasure, sometimes one year, sometimes two years, and sometimes three; for they cannot quit the place till he gives them a dismissal. Next to the Governor are the members of the council, called here *Edele Heeren*, and by the corruption of the English, *Idoleers*. These Idoleers take upon them so much state, that whoever meets them in a carriage, is expected to rise up and bow, then to drive on one side of the road, and there stop till they are past; the same homage is required also to their wives, and even to their children; and it is commonly paid them by the inhabitants. But some of our captains have thought so slavish a mark of respect beneath the dignity which they derived from the service of his Britannic Majesty, and have refused to pay it; yet, if they were in a hired carriage, nothing could deter the coachman from honouring the Dutch Grandee at their expence, but the most peremptory menace of immediate death.

Justice is administered here by a body of lawyers, who have ranks of distinction among themselves. Concerning their proceedings in questions of property, I know nothing; but their decisions in criminal cases seem to be severe with respect to the natives, and lenient

1776.
December.

tent with respect to their own people, in a criminal degree. A Christian always is indulged with an opportunity of escaping before he is brought to a trial, whatever may have been his offence; and if he is brought to a trial and convicted, he is seldom punished with death: while the poor Indians, on the contrary, are hanged, and broken upon the wheel, and even impaled alive without mercy.

The Malays and Chinese have judicial officers of their own, under the denominations of Captains and Lieutenants, who determine in civil cases, subject to an appeal to the Dutch court.

The taxes paid by these people to the Company are very considerable; and that which is exacted of them for liberty to wear their hair, is by no means the least. They are paid monthly; and to save the trouble and charge of collecting them, a flag is hoisted upon the top of a house in the middle of the town when a payment is due; and the Chinese have experienced that it is their interest to repair thither with their money without delay.

The money current here consists of ducats, worth a hundred and thirty two stivers; ducatoons, eighty stivers; imperial rix-dollars, sixty; rupees of Batavia, thirty; schellings, six; double cheys, two stivers and a half; and doits, one fourth of a stiver. Spanish dollars, when we were here, were at five shillings and five pence; and we were told, that they were never lower than five shillings and four pence, even at the Company's warehouse. For English guineas we could never get more than nineteen shillings upon an average; for though the Chinese would give twenty shillings for some of the brightest, they would give no more than seventeen shillings for those that were much worn.

It may perhaps be of some advantage to strangers to be told that there are two kinds of coin here, of the same denomination, milled and unmilled, and that the milled is of most value. A milled ducatoon is worth eighty stivers; but an unmilled ducatoon is worth no more than seventy-two. All accounts are kept in rix-dollars and stivers, which, here at least, are mere nominal coins, like our pound sterling. The rix-dollar is equal to forty-eight stivers, about four shillings and six pence English currency.

1770.
December.

C H A P. XV.

*The Passage from Batavia to the Cape of Good Hope :
Some Account of Prince's Island, and its Inhabitants,
and a comparative View of their Language with the
Malay and Javanese.*

Thurs. 27.

ON Thursday the 27th of December, at six o'clock in the morning, we weighed again and stood out to sea. After much delay by contrary winds, we weathered Pulo Pare on the 29th, and stood in for the main; soon after we fetched a small island under the main, in the midway between Batavia and Bantam, called Man-eater's Island. The next day we weathered first Wapping Island, and the Pulo Babi. On the 31st, we stood over to the Sumatra shore; and on the morning of New Year's day, 1771, we stood over for the Java shore.

Satur. 29.

Sunday 30.

Mond. 31.

1771.
January.

Tuesday 1.

Saturday 5.

We continued our course, as the wind permitted us, till three o'clock in the afternoon of the 5th, when we anchored under the south-east side of Prince's Island in eighteen fathoms, in order to recruit our wood and water, and procure refreshments for the sick, many of whom were now become much worse than they were when we left Batavia. As soon as the ship was secured, I went ashore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and we were met upon the beach by some Indians, who carried us immediately to a man, who, they said, was their King. After we had exchanged a few compliments with his Majesty, we proceeded to business; but in settling the price of turtle we could not agree; this however did not discourage us, as we made no doubt but that we should buy them at our own price in the morning. As soon as we parted, the Indians dispersed, and we proceeded along the shore in search of a watering-place. In this we were more successful; we found water very conveniently situated, and, if a little care was taken in filling it, we had reason to believe that it would prove good. Just as we were going off, some Indians, who remained with a canoe upon the beach, sold us three turtle; but exacted a promise of us that we should not tell the King.

The

The next morning, while a party was employed in filling water, we renewed our traffic for turtle: at first, the Indians dropped their demands slowly; but about noon they agreed to take the price that we offered; so that before night we had turtle in plenty: the three that we had purchased the evening before, were in the mean time served to the ship's company, who, till the day before, had not once been served with salt provisions; from the time of our arrival at Savu, which was now near four months. In the evening, Mr. Banks went to pay his respects to the King, at his palace, in the middle of a rice field, and though his Majesty was busily employed in dressing his own supper, he received the stranger very graciously.

1771.
January.
Sunday 6.

The next day the natives came down to the trading-place, with fowls, fish, monkeys, small deer, and some vegetables, but no turtle; for they said, that we had bought them all the day before. The next day, however, more turtle appeared at market, and some were brought down every day afterwards, during our stay, though the whole together was not equal to the quantity that we bought the day after our arrival.

On the 11th, Mr. Banks having learned from the servant whom he had hired at Batavia, that the Indians of this island had a town upon the shore, at some distance to the westward, he determined to see it. With this view he set out in the morning, accompanied by the Second Lieutenant, and as he had some reason to think that his visit would not be agreeable to the inhabitants, he told the people whom he met, as he was advancing along the shore, that he was in search of plants, which indeed was also true. In about two hours they arrived at a place where there were four or five houses, and meeting with an old man, they ventured to make some inquiries concerning the town. He said, that it was far distant; but they were not to be discouraged in their enterprize; and he, seeing them proceed in their journey, joined company and went on with them. He attempted several times to lead them out of the way, but without success; and at length they came within sight of the houses. The old man then entered cordially into their party, and conducted them into the town. The name of it is Samadang;

Friday 11.

1771.
January.

it consists of about four hundred houses, and is divided by a river of brackish water into two parts, one of which is called the old town, and the other the new. As soon as they entered the old town, they met several Indians whom they had seen at the trading place, and one of them undertook to carry them over to the new town, at the rate of two pence a head. When the bargain was made, two very small canoes were produced, in which they embarked; the canoes being placed along side of each other, and held together, a precaution which was absolutely necessary to prevent their oversetting, the navigation was at length safely performed, though not without some difficulty; and when they landed in the new town, the people received them with great friendship, and shewed them the houses of their kings and principal people, which are in this district; few of them, however, were open; for at this time the people had taken up their residence in the rice grounds, to defend the crop against the birds and monkeys, by which it would otherwise have been destroyed. When their curiosity was satisfied, they hired a large sailing boat for two rupees (four shillings) which brought them back to the ship time enough to dine upon one of the small deer, weighing only forty pounds, which had been bought the day before, and proved to be very good and savory meat.

Saturd. 12.

We went on shore in the evening, to see how the people who were employed in wooding and watering went on, and were informed that an axe had been stolen. As the passing over this fault might encourage the commission of others of the same kind, application was immediately made to the King, who after some altercation, promised that the axe should be restored in the morning; and kept his word; for it was brought to us by a man who pretended that the thief, being afraid of a discovery, had privately brought it and left it at his house in the night.

Sunday 13.

We continued to purchase between two and three hundred weight of turtle in a day, besides fowls and other necessaries; and in the evening of the 13th, having nearly compleated our wood and water, Mr. Banks went ashore to take leave of his Majesty, to whom he had

had made several trifling presents, and at parting gave him two quires of paper, which he graciously received. They had much conversation; in the course of which his Majesty, inquired, Why the English did not touch there, as they had been used to do? Mr. Banks replied, that he supposed it was because they found a deficiency of turtle; of which there not being enough to supply one ship, many could not be expected. To supply this defect, he advised his Majesty to breed cattle, buffaloes, and sheep; a measure which he did not seem much inclined to adopt.

1771.
January.

On the 14th we made ready to sail, having on board Monday 14 a good stock of refreshments, which we purchased of the natives, consisting of turtle, fowl, fish, two species of deer, one as big as a sheep, the other not larger than a rabbit: with cocoa-nuts, plantains, limes, and other vegetables. The deer however served only for present use, for we could seldom keep one of them alive more than four-and-twenty hours after it was on board. On our part, the trade was carried on chiefly with Spanish dollars, the natives seeming to set little value upon any thing else; so that our people, who had a general permission to trade, parted with old shirts and other articles, which they were obliged to substitute for money to great disadvantage. In the morning of the 15th, we weighed, with a light breeze at N. E. Tuesday 15 and stood out to sea. Java Head, from which I took my departure, lies in latitude $6^{\circ} 49' S.$ longitude $253^{\circ} 12' W.$

Prince's Island, where we lay about ten days, is; in the Malay language, called, *Pulo Selan*; and, in the language of the inhabitants, *Pulo Pancitan*. It is a small island, situated in the western mouth of the Streight of Sunda. It is woody, and a very small part of it only has been cleared: there is no remarkable hill upon it, yet the English call the small eminence which is just over the landing-place the Pike. It was formerly much frequented by the Indian ships of many nations, but especially those of England, which of late have forsaken it, as it is said, because the water is bad; and touch either at North Island, a small island that lies on the coast of Sumatra, without the east entrance of the Streight, or at New Bay, which lies only a few leagues

1771.
January.

from Prince's Island, at neither of which places any considerable quantity of other refreshments can be procured. Prince's Island is, upon the whole, certainly more eligible than either of them; and though the water is brackish, if it is filled at the lower part of the brook, yet higher up it will be found excellent.

The first and second, and perhaps the third ship that comes in the season, may be tolerably supplied with turtle; but those that come afterwards must be content with small ones: those that we bought were of the green kind, and at an average cost us about an half-penny or three farthings a pound. We were much disappointed to find them neither fat nor well flavoured, and we imputed it to their having been long kept in crawls, or pens, of brackish water, without food. The fowls are large, and we bought a dozen of them for a Spanish dollar, which is about five pence a-piece; the small deer cost us two pence a-piece, and the larger, of which two only were brought down, a rupee. Many kinds of fish are to be had here, which the natives sell by-hand, and we found them tolerably cheap. Coconuts we bought at the rate of an hundred for a dollar, if they were picked, and if they were taken promiscuously, one hundred and thirty. Plantains we found in great plenty; we procured also some pine apples, water melons, jaccas, and pumpkins, besides rice, the greater part of which was of the mountain kind, that grows in dry land; yams, and several other vegetables, at a very reasonable rate.

The inhabitants are Javanese, whose Raja is subject to the Sultan of Bantam. Their customs are very similar to those of the Indians about Batavia; but they seem to be more jealous of their women; for we never saw any of them during all the time that we were there, except one by chance in the woods, as she was running away to hide herself. They profess the Mahometan religion; but I believe there is not a mosque in the whole island. We were among them during the fast, which the Turks call *Ramadan*, which they seemed to keep with great rigour, for not one of them would touch a morsel of victuals, or even chew their beetle, till sun-set.

Their

1771.
January.

Their food is nearly the same as that of the Batavian Indians, except the addition of the nuts of the palm, called *Cycas circinalis*, with which, upon the coast of New Holland, some of our people were made sick, and some of our hogs poisoned.

Upon observing these nuts to be part of their food, we enquired by what means they deprived them of their deleterious quality; and they told us, that they first cut them into thin slices, and dried them in the sun, then steeped them in fresh water for three months, and afterwards pressing out the water, dried them in the sun a second time; but we learned, that after all they are only eaten in times of scarcity, when they mix them with their rice, to make them go farther.

The houses of their town are built upon piles, or pillars, four or five feet above the ground; upon these is laid a floor of bamboo canes, which are placed at some distance from each other, so as to leave a free passage for the air from below; the walls also are of bamboo, which are interwoven hurdlewise, with small sticks, that are fastened perpendicularly to the beams which form the frame of the building; it has a sloping roof, which is so well thatched with palm leaves, that neither the sun nor the rain can find entrance. The ground over which this building is erected is an oblong square, in the middle of one side is the door, and in the middle, between that and the end of the house, towards the left hand, is a window; a partition runs out from each end towards the middle, which, if continued, would divide the whole floor into two equal parts, longitudinally, but they do not meet in the middle, so that an opening is left over-against the door; each end of the house, therefore, to the right and left of the door, is divided into two rooms, like stalls in a stable, all open towards the passage from the door to the wall on the opposite side: in that next the door, to the left hand, the children sleep; that opposite to it, on the right hand, is allotted to strangers; the master and his wife sleep in the inner-room on the left hand, and that opposite to it is the kitchen. There is no difference between the houses of the poor and the rich, but in the size; except that the royal palace, and the house of a man whose name is *Gundang*, the next in

1771.
January. riches and influence to the king, is walled with boards, instead of being wattled with sticks and bamboo.

As the people are obliged to abandon the town, and live in the rice-fields at certain seasons, to secure their crops from the birds and monkeys, they have occasional houses there for their accommodation; they are exactly the same as the houses in the town, except that they are smaller, and are elevated eight or ten feet above the ground, instead of four.

The disposition of the people, as far as we could discover it, is good. They dealt with us very honestly, except, like all other Indians, and the itinerant retailers of fish in London, they asked sometimes twice, and sometimes thrice as much for their commodities as they would take. As what they brought to market belonged, in different proportions, to a considerable number of the natives, and it would have been difficult to purchase it in separate lots, they found out a very easy expedient, with which every one was satisfied: they put all that was bought of one kind, as plantains or coconuts, together, and when we had agreed for the heap, they divided the money that was paid for it among those of whose separate property it consisted, in a proportion corresponding with their contributions. Sometimes, indeed, they changed our money, giving us 240 doits, amounting to five shillings, for a Spanish dollar, and ninety six, amounting to two shillings, for a Bengal rupee.

They all speak the Malay language, though they have a language of their own, different both from the Malay and the Javanese. Their own language they called *Catta Gunung*, the Language of the Mountains; and they say that it is spoken upon the mountains of Java, whence their tribe originally migrated, first to New Bay, and then to their present station, being driven from their first settlement by tigers, which they found too numerous to subdue. I have already observed, that several languages are spoken by the native Javanese, in different parts of their island; but when I say that the language of these people is different from the Javanese, I mean that it is different from the language which is spoken at Samarang, a place that is distant only one day's journey from the residence of the emperor

emperor of Java. The following is a list of corresponding words in the languages of Prince's Island, Java, and Malacca. 1771.
January.

English.	Prince's Island.	Javanese.	Malay.
<i>A man,</i>	Jalma,	Oong Langan,	OranLackiLacki.
<i>A woman,</i>	Becang,	Oong Wadong,	Parampuan.
<i>A child,</i>	Oroculatacke,	Lari,	Anack.
<i>The head,</i>	Holo,	Undafs,	Capalla.
<i>The nose,</i>	Erung,	Erung,	Edung.
<i>The eyes,</i>	Mata,	Moto,	Mata.
<i>The ears,</i>	Chole,	Cuping,	Cuping.
<i>The teeth,</i>	Cutock,	Untu,	Ghigi.
<i>The belly,</i>	Beatung,	Wuttong,	Prot.
<i>The backside,</i>	Serit,	Celit,	Pantat.
<i>The thigh,</i>	Pimping,	Poopoo,	Paha.
<i>The knee,</i>	Huqotoor,	Ducul,	Lontour.
<i>The leg,</i>	Metis,	Sickil,	Kauki.
<i>A nail,</i>	Cucu,	Cucu,	Cucu.
<i>A hand,</i>	Langan,	Tangan,	Tangan.
<i>A finger,</i>	Ranio Langan,	Jari,	Jaring.

In this specimen of the languages of places so near to each other, the names of different parts of the body are chosen, because they are easily obtained from people whose language is utterly unknown, and because they are more likely to be part of the original stems of the language, than any other, as types of the first objects to which they would give names. It is very remarkable that the Malay, the Javanese, and the Prince's Island language, have words which, if not exactly similar to the corresponding words in the language of the islands in the South Seas, are manifestly derived from the same source, as will appear from the following table :

English.	South Sea.	Malay.	Javanese.	Pr. Island.
<i>An eye,</i>	Matta,	Mata,	Moto,	Mata.
<i>To eat,</i>	Maa	Macan,	Mangan,	
<i>To drink,</i>	Eina,	Menuin,	Grumbe,	
<i>To kill,</i>	Matte,	Matte,	Matte,	
<i>A louse,</i>	Outou,	Coutou,		
<i>Rain,</i>	Euwa,	Udian,	Udan,	
<i>Bamboo cane,</i>	Owhe,			Awe,
<i>A breast,</i>	Eu,	Soufou,	Soufou,	
<i>A bird,</i>	Mannu,		Manu,	Mannuck.
				<i>A fish,</i>

LIEUT. COOK'S VOYAGE

1771. January.	English.	South Sea.	Malay.	Javanese.
	<i>A fish,</i>	Eyca,	Ican,	Iwa.
	<i>The foot,</i>	Tapao,		Tapaan.
	<i>A lobster,</i>	Tooura,	Udang,	Urang.
	<i>Yams,</i>	Eufwe,	Ubi,	Urve.
	<i>To bury,</i>	Etannou,	Tannam	Tandour.
	<i>A moschito,</i>	Enammou,	Gnamuck,	
	<i>To scratch,</i>	Hearu,	Garru,	Garu.
	<i>Cocos roots,</i>	Taro,	Tallas,	Talas.
	<i>In-land,</i>	Uta,	Utan,	

This similitude is particularly remarkable in the words expressing number, which at first sight seems to be no inconsiderable proof, that the science at least of these different people has a common root. But the names of numbers in the island of Madagascar are, in some instances, similar to all these, which is a problem still more difficult to solve. That the names of numbers, in particular, are in a manner common to all these countries, will appear from the following comparative table, which Mr. Banks drew up, with the assistance of a negroe slave, born at Madagascar, who was on board an English ship at Batavia, and sent to him to gratify his curiosity on this subject.

Engl.	S. Sea Islands.	Malay.	Javanese.	Pr. Island.	Madagascar.
<i>One,</i>	Tahie,	Satou,	Sigi,	Hegie,	Iffe.
<i>Two,</i>	Rua,	Dua,	Lorou,	Dua,	Rua.
<i>Three,</i>	Torou,	Tiga,	Tullu,	Tollu,	Teliou,
<i>Four,</i>	Haa,	Ampat,	Pappat,	Opat,	Effats,
<i>Five,</i>	Reina,	Lima,	Limo,	Limah,	Limi,
<i>Six,</i>	Whenev,	Annam,	Nunnam,	Gunnap,	Ene,
<i>Seven,</i>	Hetu,	Tudju,	Petu,	Tudju,	Titou,
<i>Eight,</i>	Waru,	Delapau,	Wolo,	Delapan,	Walou,
<i>Nine,</i>	Iva,	Sembilan,	Songo,	Salapan,	Sivi,
<i>Ten,</i>	Ahouroa,	Sapoulou,	Sapoulou,	Sapoulou,	Touren.

In the language of Madagascar there are other words similar to words of the same import in the Malay. The nose in Malay is called *Erung*, at Madagascar, *Ourou*; *Lida*, the tongue, is *Lala*; *Tangan*, the hand, is *Tang*; and *Tanna*, the ground, is *Taan*.

From the similitude between the language of the Eastern Indies and the islands of the South-Sea, conjectures may be formed with respect to the peopling those countries, which cannot easily be referred to Madagascar. The inhabitants of Java and Madagascar appear to

1771.
January.

to be a different race ; the Javanese is of an olive complexion, and has long hair ; the native of Madagascar is black, and his head is not covered with hair, but wool ; and yet, perhaps, this will not conclude against their having common ancestors so strongly as at first appears. It does not seem less difficult to account for the personal difference between a native of England and France, as an effect of mere local situation, than for the difference between the natives of Java and Madagascar ; yet it has never been supposed that England and France were not peopled from common ancestors. If two natives of England marry in their own country, and afterwards remove to our settlements in the West Indies, the children that are conceived and born there will have the complexion and cast of countenance that distinguish the Creole ; if they return, the children conceived and born afterwards will have no such characteristics. If it be said, that the mother's mind, being impressed with different external objects, impresses corresponding features and complexion upon the child during her pregnancy, it will be as difficult to refer the effect into this cause, upon mere physical principles, as in to the other ; for it can no more be shewn how a mere idea, conceived in the mother's imagination, can change the corporeal form of her infant, than how its form can be changed by mere local situation. We know that people within the small circle of Great Britain and Ireland, who are born at the distance of two or three hundred miles from each other, will be distinguished by the Scots face, the Welsh face, and the Irish face ; may we not then reasonably suppose, that there are in nature qualities which act powerfully as efficient causes, and yet are not cognizable by any of the five modes of perception which we call senses ? A deaf man, who sees the string of an harpsichord vibrate, when a corresponding tone is produced by blowing into a flute at a distance, will see an effect, of which he can no more conceive the cause to exist in the blowing air into the flute, than we can conceive the cause of the personal difference of the various inhabitants of the globe to exist in mere local situation ; nor can he any more form an idea of the cause itself, in one case, than we can in the other : what happens to him then, in consequence

1771.

January.

sequence of having but four senses instead of five, may, with respect to many phænomena of nature, happen to us, in consequence of having but five senses instead of six, or any greater number.

Possibly, however, the learning of ancient Ægypt might run in two courses, one through Africa and the other through Asia, disseminating the same words in each, especially terms of number, which might thus become part of the language of people who never had any communication with each other.

We now made the best of our way for the Cape of Good Hope ; but the seeds of disease, which we had received at Batavia, began to appear with the most threatening symptoms in dysenteries and slow fevers. Lest the water which we had taken in at Prince's Island should have had any share in our sickness, we purified it with lime, and we washed all parts of the ship between decks with vinegar, as a remedy against infection. Mr. Banks was among the sick, and for some time there was no hope of his life. We were very soon in a most deplorable situation ; the ship was nothing better than an hospital, in which those that were able to go about, were too few to attend the sick, who were confined to their hammocks, and we had almost every night a dead body to commit to the sea. In the course of about six weeks we buried Mr. Sporing, a gentleman who was in Mr. Banks's retinue, Mr. Parkinson, his natural history painter, Mr. Green, the astronomer, the boatswain, the carpenter and his mate, Mr. Monkhouse the midshipman, who had fothered the ship after she had been stranded on the coast of New Holland, our old jolly sail-maker and his assistant, the ship's cook, the corporal of the marines, two of the carpenter's crew, a midshipman, and nine seamen ; in all three-and-twenty persons, besides the seven that we buried at Batavia.

C H A P. XVI.

Our Arrival at the Cape of Good Hope ; some Remarks on the Run from Java Head to that Place ; a Description of the Cape, and of Saint Helena ; with some Account of the Hottentots, and the Return of the Ship to England.

ON Friday the 15th of March, about ten o'clock Friday 15.
in the morning, we anchored off the Cape of Good Hope, in seven fathoms, with an oozy bottom. The west point of the bay, called the Lion's Tail, bore W. N. W. and the castle S. W. distant about a mile and a half. I immediately waited upon the Governor, who told me, that I should have every thing the country afforded. My first care was to provide a proper place a-shore for the sick, which were not a few ; and a house was soon found, where it was agreed they should be lodged and boarded at the rate of two shillings a head per day.

Our run, from Java Head to this place, afforded very few subjects of remark that can be of use to future navigators : such as occurred, however, I shall set down. We had left Java Head eleven days before we got the general south-east trade-wind, during which time we did not advance above 5° to the southward, and 3° to the west, having variable light airs, interrupted by calms, with sultry weather and an unwholesome air, occasioned probably by the load of vapours which the eastern trade-wind and westerly monsoons bring into these latitudes, both which blow in these seas at the time of year when we happened to be there. The easterly wind prevails as far as 10 or 12° S. and the westerly as far as 6 or 8° ; in the intermediate space the winds are variable, and the air, I believe, always unwholesome : it certainly aggravated the diseases which we brought with us from Batavia, and particularly the flux, which was not in the least degree checked by any medicine, so that whoever was seized with it considered himself as a dead man ; but we had no sooner got into the trade-wind, than we began to feel its salutary effects : we buried, indeed, several of our people afterwards,

1771.
March.

wards, but they were such as had been taken on board in a state so low and feeble, that there was scarcely a possibility of their recovery. At first we suspected that this dreadful disorder might have been brought upon us by the water that we took on board at Prince's Island, or even by the turtle that we bought there; but there is not the least reason to believe that this suspicion was well grounded; for all the ships that came from Batavia, at the same season, suffered in the same degree, and some of them even more severely, though none of them touched at Prince's Island in their way.

A few days after we left Java, we saw boobies about the ship for several nights successively; and as these birds are known to roost every night on shore, we thought them an indication that some island was not far distant; perhaps it might be the island of Selam, which in different charts, is very differently laid down both in name and situation.

The variation of the compass off the west coast of Java is about 3° W. and so it continued, without any sensible variation, in the common track of ships, to the longitude of 288° W. latitude 22° S. after which it increased apace, so that in longitude 295° , latitude 23° , the variation was $10^{\circ} 20'$ W. In seven degrees more of longitude, and one of latitude, it increased two degrees. In the same space, farther to the west, it increased five degrees; in latitude 28° , longitude 314° , it was $24^{\circ} 20'$; in latitude 29° , longitude 317° , it was $26^{\circ} 10'$, and was then stationary for the space of about ten degrees farther to the west; but in latitude 34° , longitude 333° , we observed it twice to be $28^{\circ} \frac{1}{4}$ W. and this was its greatest variation; for in latitude $35^{\circ} \frac{1}{2}$, longitude 337° , it was 24° , and continued gradually to decrease; so that off Cape Anguillas it was $22^{\circ} 30'$ and in Table Bay $20^{\circ} 30'$ W.

As to currents, it did not appear that they were at all considerable, till we came within a little distance of the meridian of Madagascar; for after we had made 52° of longitude from Java Head, we found, by observation, that our error in longitude was only two degrees, and it was the same when we had made only nineteen. This error might be owing partly to a current setting to the westward, partly to our not making proper

1771.
March.

proper allowances for the setting of the sea before which we run, and perhaps to an error in the assumed longitude of Java Head. If that longitude is erroneous, the error must be imputed to the imperfection of the charts of which I made use in reducing the longitude from Batavia to that place; for there can be no doubt but that the longitude of Batavia is well determined. After we had passed the longitude of 307° , the effects of the westerly currents began to be considerable; for in three days our error in longitude was $10\ 5'$. The velocity of the current kept increasing, as we proceeded to the westward, insomuch that for five days successively, after we made the land, we were driven to the S. W. or S. W. by W. not less than twenty leagues a day; and this continued till we were within sixty or seventy leagues of the Cape, where the current set sometimes one way, and sometimes the other, though inclining rather to the westward.

After the boobies had left us, we saw no more birds till we got nearly a-breast of Madagascar, where, in latitude $27^{\circ}\ \frac{1}{2}$ S. we saw an albatross, and after that time we saw them every day in great numbers, with birds of several sorts, particularly one about as big as a duck, of a very dark brown colour, with a yellowish bill. These birds became more numerous as we approached the shore, and as soon as we got into soundings we saw gannets, which we continued to see as long as we were upon the bank which stretches off Anguillas to the distance of forty leagues, and extends along the shore to the eastward, from Cape False, according to some charts, one hundred and sixty leagues. The real extent of this bank is not exactly known; it is, however, useful as a direction to shipping when to haul in, in order to make the land.

While we lay here the Houghton Indiaman sailed for England, who, during her stay in India, lost by sickness between thirty and forty men, and when she left the Cape had many in a helpless condition with the scurvy. Other ships suffered in the same proportion, who had been little more than twelve months absent from England: our sufferings, therefore, were comparatively light, considering that we had been absent near three times as long.

Having

1771.
April.

Saturday 13.

Sunday 14.

Having lain here to recover the sick, procure stores, and perform several necessary operations upon the ship and rigging, till the 13th of April, I then got all the sick on board, several of whom were still in a dangerous state, and, having taken leave of the Governor, I unmoored the next morning, and got ready to sail.

The Cape of Good Hope has been so often described, and is so well known in Europe, that I shall mention only a few particulars, which in other relations are omitted or misrepresented.

Notwithstanding all that has been said to the contrary, no country that we saw during the voyage makes a more forlorn appearance, or is in reality a more sterile desert. The land over the Cape, which constitutes the peninsula formed by Table Bay on the north, and False Bay on the south, consists of high mountains, altogether naked and desolate: the land behind these to the east, which may be considered as the isthmus, is a plain of vast extent, consisting almost wholly of a light kind of sea-sand, which produces nothing but heath and is utterly incapable of cultivation. All the spots that will admit of improvement, which together bear about the same proportion to the whole as one to one thousand, are laid out in vineyards, orchards, and kitchen grounds; and most of these little spots lie at a considerable distance from each other. There is also the greatest reason to believe, that in the interior parts of this country, that which is capable of cultivation does not bear a greater proportion to that which is incorrigibly barren; for the Dutch told us, that they had settlements eight-and-twenty days journey up the country, a distance equal to at least nine hundred miles, from which they bring provisions to the Cape by land; so that it seems reasonable to conclude, that provisions are not to be had within a less compass. While we were at the Cape, a farmer came thither from the country, at the distance of fifteen days journey, and brought his young children with him. We were surprised at this, and asked him, if it would not have been better to have left them with his next neighbour? Neighbour! said the man, I have no neighbour within less than five days journey of me. Surely the country must be deplorably barren, in which those who settle

1771.
April.

settle only to raise provisions for a market, are dispersed at such distances from each other. That the country is every where destitute of wood appears to demonstration; for timber and planks are imported from Batavia, and fuel is almost as dear as food. We saw no tree, except in plantations near the town, that was six feet high; and the stems, that were not thicker than a man's thumb, had roots as thick as an arm or a leg; such is the influence of the winds here to the disadvantage of vegetation, setting the sterility of the soil out of the question.

The only town which the Dutch have built here is, from its situation, called Cape Town, and consists of about a thousand houses, neatly built of brick, and in general whited on the outside; they are, however, covered only with thatch, for the violence of the south-east winds would render any other roof inconvenient and dangerous. The streets are broad and commodious, all crossing each other at right angles. In the principal street there is a canal, on each side of which is planted a row of oaks, that have flourished tolerably well, and yield an agreeable shade; there is a canal also in one other part of the town, but the slope of the ground in the course of both is so great, that they are furnished with flood-gates, or locks, at intervals of little more than fifty yards.

A much greater proportion of the inhabitants are Dutch in this place than in Batavia; and as the town is supported principally by entertaining strangers, and supplying them with necessaries, every man, to a certain degree, imitates the manners and customs of the nation with which he is chiefly concerned. The ladies, however, are so faithful to the mode of their country, that not one of them will stir without a chaudpied, or chauffet, which is carried by a servant, that it may be ready to place under her feet whenever she shall sit down. This practice is the more remarkable, as very few of these chauffets have fire in them, which indeed the climate renders unnecessary.

The women in general are very handsome; they have fine clear skins, and a bloom of colour that indicates a purity of constitution, and high health. They make the best wives in the world, both as mistresses of a

1771.
April.

family and mothers ; and there is scarcely a house that does not swarm with children.

The air is salutary in a high degree, so that those who bring diseases hither from Europe, generally recover perfect health in a short time ; but the diseases that are brought from India are not so certainly cured.

Notwithstanding the natural sterility of the climate, industry has supplied this place with all the necessities, and even the luxuries of life, in the greatest profusion. The beef and mutton are excellent, though the cattle and sheep are natives of the country ; the cattle are lighter than ours, more neatly made, and have horns that spread to a much wider extent. The sheep are cloathed with a substance between wool and hair, and have tails of an enormous size ; we saw some that weighed twelve pounds, and were told that there were many much larger. Good butter is made of the milk of the cows, but the cheese is very much inferior to our own. Here are goats, but they are never eaten ; hogs, and a variety of poultry ; hares are also found there, exactly like those of Europe ; antelopes of many kinds, quails of two sorts, and bustards, which are well flavoured, but not juicy. The fields produce European wheat and barley, and the gardens European vegetable, and fruit of all kinds, besides plantains, guavas, jambu, and some other Indian fruits, but these are not in perfection ; the plantains in particular are very bad, and the guavas no larger than gooseberries. The vineyards also produce wine of various sorts, but not equal to those of Europe, except the Constantia, which is made genuine only at one vineyard, about ten miles distant from the town. There is another vineyard near it, where wine is made that is called by the same name, but it is greatly inferior.

The common method in which strangers live here, is to lodge and board with some of the inhabitants, many of whose houses are always open for their reception : the rates are from five shillings to two shillings a day, for which all necessities are found. Coaches may be hired at four-and-twenty shillings a day, and horses at six shillings ; but the country affords very little temptation to use them. There are no public entertainments : and those that are private, to which
strangers

strangers of the rank of Gentlemen are always admitted, were suspended while we were there by the breaking out of the measles.

1771.
April.

At the farther end of the High-street the company have a garden, which is about two thirds of an English mile long ; the whole is divided by walks, that intersect each other at right angles, and are planted with oaks that are clipped into wall hedges, except in the centre walk, where they are suffered to grow to their full size, and afford an agreeable shade, which is the more welcome, as, except the plantations by the sides of the two canals, there is not a single tree that would serve even for a shepherd's bush, within many miles of the town. The greater part of this garden is kitchen ground ; but two small squares are allotted to botanical plants, which did not appear to be so numerous by one half as they were when Odenland wrote his catalogue. At the farther end of the garden is a menagerie, in which there are many birds and beasts that are never seen in Europe, particularly a beast called by the Hottentots Coe Doe, which is as large as a horse, and has the fine spiral horns which are sometimes seen in private and public collections of curiosities.

Of the natives of this country we could learn but little, except from report ; for there were none of their habitations, where alone they retain their original customs, within less than four days journey from the town ; those that we saw at the Cape were all servants to Dutch farmers, whose cattle they take care of, and are employed in other drudgery of the meanest kind. These are in general of a slim make, and rather lean than plump, but remarkably strong, nimble, and active. Their size is nearly the same with that of Europeans, and we saw some that were six feet high ; their eyes are dull, and without expression ; their skins are of the colour of soot, but that is in a great measure caused by the dirt, which is so wrought into the grain that it cannot be distinguished from the complexion ; for I believe they never wash any part of their bodies. Their hair curls strongly, not like a negroe's but falls in ringlets about seven or eight inches long. Their cloathing consists of a skin, generally that of a sheep, thrown over their shoulders ; besides which the men wear

1771.
April.

a small pouch in the middle of the waist, and the women, a broad leather flap, both which hang from a girdle or belt that is adorned with beads and small pieces of copper. Both men and women wear necklaces, and sometimes bracelets, of beads; and the women wear rings of hard leather round their ancles, to defend them from the thorns, with which their country every where abounds: some of them have a sandal, made of wood or bark; but the greater part of them are unshod.

To a European, their language appears to be scarcely articulate; besides which it is distinguished by a very remarkable singularity. At very frequent intervals, while they are speaking, they cluck with the tongue against the roof of the mouth: these clucks do not appear to have any meaning, but rather to divide what they say into sentences. Most of these Hottentots speak Dutch, without any peculiarity of pronunciation.

They are all modest, even to sheepishness; for it was not without the greatest difficulty that we could persuade any of them to dance, or even to speak in their own language to each other, in our presence. We did however both see them dance, and hear them sing; their dances are by turns active and sluggish to excess; sometimes consisting of quick and violent motions, with strange distortions of the body, and unnatural leaps backwards, and forwards, with the legs crossing each other; and being sometimes so spiritless that the dancer only strikes the ground first with one foot, and then with the other, neither changing place nor moving any other part of his body: the songs also are alternately to quick and slow movement, in the same extremes as the dance.

We made many inquiries concerning these people of the Dutch, and the following particulars are related upon the credit of their report:

Within the boundaries of the Dutch settlements there are several nations of these people, who very much differ from each other in their customs and manner of life: all however are friendly and peaceable, except one clan that is settled to the eastward, which the Dutch call Bosch men, and these live entirely by plunder, or rather

rather by theft ; for they never attack their neighbours openly, but steal the cattle privately in the night. They are armed however to defend themselves, if they happen to be detected, with lances or assagays, and arrows, which they know how to poison by various ways; some with the juice of herbs, and some with the venom of the serpent called Cobra di Capelo. In the hands of these people a stone is also a very formidable weapon ; for they can throw it with such force and exactness as repeatedly to hit a dollar at the distance of an hundred paces. As a defence against these freebooters, the other Indians train up bulls, which they place round their towns in the night, and which, upon the approach of either man or beast, will assemble and oppose them, till they hear the voice of their masters encouraging them to fight, or calling them off, which they obey with the same docility as a dog.

Some nations have the art of melting and preparing copper, which is found among them, probably native, and of this they make broad plates, which they wear as ornaments upon their foreheads: Some of them also know how to harden bits of iron, which they procure from the Dutch, and form into knives, so as to give them a temper superior to that of any they can buy.

The Chiefs, many of whom are possessors of very numerous herds of cattle, are generally clad in the skins of lions, tygers, or zebras, to which they add fringes, and other ornaments, in a very good taste. Both sexes frequently anoint the body with grease, but never use any that is rancid or foetid, if fresh can be had. Mutton suet and butter are generally used for this purpose; butter is preferred, which they make by shaking the milk in a bag made of the skin of some beast.

We were told that the priest certainly gives the nuptial benediction by sprinkling the bride and bridegroom with his urine. But the Dutch universally declared, that the women never wrapped the entrails of sheep round their legs, as they have been said to do, and afterwards make them part of their food. Semicastration was also absolutely denied to be general; but it was acknowledged that some among the particular nation which knew how to melt copper had suffered that operation,

1771.
April.

ration, who were said to be the best warriors, and particularly to excel in the art of throwing stones.

We were very desirous to determine the great question among natural historians, whether the women of this country have or have not that fleshy flap or apron which has been called the Sinus pudoris, and what we learned I shall relate. Many of the Dutch and Malays, who said they had received favours from Hottentot women, positively denied its existence; but a physician of the place declared that he had cured many hundreds of venereal complaints, and never saw one without two fleshy, or rather skinny appendages, proceeding from the upper part of the Labia, in appearance somewhat resembling the teats of a cow, but flat; they hung down, he said, before the Pupendum, and were in different subjects of different lengths, in some not more than half an inch, in others three or four inches: these he imagined to be what some writers have exaggerated into a flap, or apron, hanging down from the bottom of the abdomen, of sufficient extent to render an artificial covering of the neighbouring parts unnecessary.

Thus much for the country, its productions, and inhabitants. The bay is large, safe, and commodious; it lies open indeed to the north-west winds, but they seldom blow hard; yet as they sometimes send in a great sea, the ships moor N. E. and S. W. so as to have an open hawser with north-west winds; the south-east winds blow frequently with great violence; but as this direction is right out of the bay, they are not dangerous. Near the town a wharf of wood is run out to a proper distance for the convenience of landing and shipping goods. To this wharf water is conveyed in pipes, from which several boats may fill water at the same time; and several large boats or hoys are kept by the Company to carry stores and provisions to and from the shipping in the harbour. The bay is defended by a square fort, situated close to the beach on the east side of the town, and by several outworks and batteries extending along the shore, as well on this side of the town as the other; but they are so situated as to be cannonaded by shipping, and are in a manner defenceless against an enemy of any force by land. The garrison
consists

consists of eight hundred regular troops, besides militia of the country, in which is comprehended every man able to bear arms. They have contrivances to alarm the whole country by signals in a very short time, and the militia is then to repair immediately to the town.

1771.
April.

The French at Mauritius are supplied from this place with salted beef, biscuit, flour, and wine: the provisions for which the French contracted this year were 500,000lb. weight of salt beef, 400,000lb. of flour, 400,000lb. of biscuit, and 1,200 leaguers of wine.

In the morning of the 14th we weighed and stood out of the bay; and at five in the evening anchored under Penquin, or Robin Island: we lay here all night, and as I could not sail in the morning for want of wind, I sent a boat to the island for a few trifling articles which we had forgot to take in at the Cape. But as soon as the boat came near the shore, the Dutch hailed her, and warned the people not to land at their peril, bringing down at the same time six men armed with muskets, who paraded upon the beach. The officer who commanded the boat not thinking it worth while to risk the lives of the people on board for the sake of a few cabbages, which were all we wanted, returned to the ship. At first we were at a loss to account for our repulse, but we afterwards recollected, that to this island the Dutch at the Cape banish such criminals as are not thought worthy of death, for a certain number of years, proportioned to the offence; and employ them as slaves in digging limestone; which though scarce upon the continent is plenty here: and that a Danish ship which by sickness had lost great part of her crew, and had been refused assistance at the Cape, came down to this island, and sending her boat a-shore, secured the guard, and took on board as many of the criminals as she thought proper to navigate her home: we conclude therefore that the Dutch, to prevent the rescue of their criminals in time to come, had given orders to their people here to suffer no boat of any foreign nation to come a-shore.

On the 25th, at three o'clock in the afternoon, we weighed, with a light breeze at S. E. and put to sea.

Thursd. 25.

About

1771.

April.

About an hour afterwards we lost our Master, Mr. Robert Mollineux, a young man of good parts, but unhappily given up to intemperance, which brought on disorders that put an end to his life.

Monday 29.

We proceeded in our voyage homeward without any remarkable incident; and in the morning of the 29th we crossed our first meridian, having circumnavigated the globe in the direction from east to west, and consequently lost a day, for which we made an allowance at Batavia.

May.
Wednes. 1.

At day-break, on the 1st of May, we saw the island of St. Helena; and at noon we anchored in the road before James's fort.

We stayed here till the 4th, to refresh, and Mr. Banks improved the time in making the complete circuit of the island, and visiting the most remarkable places upon it.

It is situated, as it were, in the middle of the vast Atlantic ocean, being four hundred leagues distant from the coast of Africa, and six hundred from that of America. It is the summit of an immense mountain rising out of the sea, which, at a little distance all round it, is of an unfathomable depth, and is no more than twelve leagues long and six broad.

The seat of volcanoes has, without exception, been found to be the highest part of the countries in which they are found. *Ætna* and *Vesuvius* have no land higher than themselves in their neighbourhood; *Hecla* is the highest hill in Iceland; volcanoes are frequent in the highest part of the *Andes*, in South America; and the *Pike of Teneriffe* is known to be the covering of subterraneous fire; these are still burning, but there are innumerable other mountains which bear evident marks of fire that is now extinct, and has been so from the time of our earliest traditions: among these is Saint Helena, where the inequalities of the ground, in its external surface, are manifestly the effect of the sinking of the earth; for the opposite ridges, though separated always by deep, and sometimes by broad vallies, are exactly similar both in appearance and direction; and that the sinking of the earth in these parts was caused by subterraneous fire, is equally manifest from the stones; for some of them, especially

1771.
May.

cially those in the bottom of the vallies, are burnt almost to a cinder : in some there are small bubbles, like those that are seen in glass which has been urged almost to fusion, and some, though at first sight they do not appear to have been exposed to the action of great heat, will be found, upon a closer inspection, to contain small pieces of extraneous bodies, particularly mundick, which have yielded to the power of fire, tho' it was not sufficient to alter the appearance of the stone which contained them.

It appeared, as we approached it on the windward side, like a rude heap of rocks, bounded by a precipice of amazing height, and consisting of a kind of half friable stone, which shews not the least sign of vegetation, nor is it more promising upon a nearer view : in sailing along the shore, we came so near the huge cliffs, that they seemed to over-hang the ship, and the tremendous effect of their giving way made us almost fear the event : at length we opened a valley, called Chapel Valley, which resembles a large trench ; and in this valley we discovered the town. The bottom of it is slightly covered with herbage, but the sides are as naked as the cliffs that are next the sea. Such is the first appearance of the island in its present cultivated state, and the first hills must be passed before the vallies look green, or the country displays any other marks of fertility.

The town stands just by the sea side, and the far greater part of the houses are ill built ; the church, which originally was a mean structure, is in ruins, and the market-house is nearly in the same condition.

The white inhabitants are all English, who, as they are not permitted by the East India Company, to whom the island belongs, to carry on any trade or commerce on their own account, subsist wholly by supplying such ships as touch at the place with refreshments, which, however, they do not provide in proportion to the fertility of the soil, and the temperament of the climate, which would enable them by cultivation to produce all the fruits and vegetables both of Europe and India. This island indeed, small as it is, enjoys the different advantages of different climates ; for the cabbage-trees, which grow upon the highest ridges, can by no art be cultivat-

1771.

May.

ed upon the ridges next below, where the red-wood and gurn-wood both flourish, which will not grow upon the ridges above, and neither of the three are to be found in the vallies, which in general are covered with European plants, and the more common ones of India.

Here are a few horses, but they are kept only for the saddle, so that all labour is performed by slaves; nor are they furnished with any of the various machines which art has invented to facilitate their task. The ground is not every where too steep for a cart, and where it is, the wheel-barrow might be used with great advantage, yet there is no wheel-barrow in the whole island; every thing is conveyed from place to place by the slaves, and they are not furnished even with the simple convenience of a porter's knot, but carry their burthen upon their heads. They are indeed very numerous, and are brought from almost every part of the world; but they appeared to be a miserable race, worn out partly by excessive labour, and partly by ill-usage, of which they frequently complained; and I am sorry to say, that instances of wanton cruelty are much more frequent among my countrymen here, than among the Dutch, who are, and perhaps not without reason, generally reproached with want of humanity at Batavia and the Cape.

Among the native products of this island, which are not numerous, must be reckoned ebony, tho' the trees are now nearly extinct, and are not remembered to have been plenty: pieces of wood are frequently found in the vallies, of a fine black colour, and a hardness almost equal to iron; these pieces, however, are always so short and crooked, that no use can be made of them. Whether the tree is the same with that which produces ebony upon the Isle of Bourbon or the islands adjacent, is not known, as the French have not yet published any account of it.

There are but few insects in this place; but there is a species of snail found upon the tops of the highest ridges, which probably has been there since the original creation of their kind at the beginning of the world. It is indeed very difficult to conceive how any thing which was not deposited here at its creation, or brought hither by the diligence of man, could find its way to a place so severed from the rest of the world, by seas of immense extent,

extent, except the hypothesis that has been mentioned on another occasion be adopted, and this rock be supposed to have been left behind, when a large tract of country, of which it was part, subsided by some convulsion of nature, and was swallowed up in the ocean.

1771.
May.

At one o'clock in the afternoon of the 4th of May, we weighed and stood out of the road, in company with the Portland man-of-war and twelve sail of Indiamen.

We continued to sail in company with the fleet, till the 10th in the morning, when, perceiving that we sailed much heavier than any other ship, and thinking it for that reason probable that the Portland would get home before us, I made the signal to speak with her; upon which Captain Elliot himself came on board, and I delivered to him a letter from the Admiralty, with a box, containing the common log-books of the ship, and the journals of some of the officers. We continued in company, however, till the 23d in the morning, and then there was not one of the ships in sight. About one o'clock in the afternoon, died our First Lieutenant, Mr. Hicks, and in the evening we committed his body to the sea, with the usual ceremonies. The disease of which he died was a consumption; and as he was not free from it when he sailed from England, it may be truly said that he was dying during the whole voyage, tho' his decline was very gradual till we came to Batavia: the next day, I gave Mr. Charles Clerk an order to act as lieutenant in his room, a young man who was extremely well qualified for that station.

Friday 10.

Thursd. 23.

Friday 24.

Our rigging and sails were now become so bad, that something was giving way every day. We continued our course, however, in safety till the 10th of June, when land, which proved to be the Lizard, was discovered by Nicholas Young, the same boy that first saw New Zealand; on the 11th we run up the channel, at six in the morning of the 12th we passed Beachy Head, at noon we were a-breast of Dover, and about three came to an anchor in the Downs, and went a-shore at Deal.

June.
Monday 10.

Tuesday 11.

Wednesd. 12.

V O Y A G E

T O W A R D S

THE NORTH POLE:

U N D E R T A K E N

By His MAJESTY'S COMMAND,

1773.

By CONSTANTINE JOHN PHIPPS.

D Ü B L I N :

Printed for **JAMES**

No. 21, Skinner-Row.

T O

THE KING.

S I R E,

AS a Sea Officer addressing Your MAJESTY on a professional Subject, I might justly be accused of singular Ingratitude, did I not avail myself of this Opportunity of reminding the World, that the Voyage to explore how far Navigation was practicable towards the North Pole was undertaken at a Period peculiarly distinguished by Your MAJESTY's gracious Attention to Your Navy.

In a Time of profound Peace Your MAJESTY, by a liberal Addition to the Half Pay of the Captains, relieved the Necessities of many, and gratified the Ambition of all, at once demonstrating Your MAJESTY's Regard to their Welfare, and the Remembrance of their Services.

The Armament, which followed in a few Months, and Your MAJESTY'S Review of that Armament, which, by the Dispatch of its Equipment, had prevented a War, afforded to Your Navy the most flattering and distinguished Mark of Royal Favour, and to Your MAJESTY an additional Proof of that Alacrity for Your Service, which had so recently received both its Reward and Encouragement from Your MAJESTY'S Protection.

Permit me, SIRE, to add, that Your MAJESTY'S gracious Approbation of my Endeavours, and the Permission I have been honoured with, of inscribing the following Account of them to Your MAJESTY, are strong Proofs of that Indulgence with which Your MAJESTY receives every Attempt to promote Your Service. — An Indulgence, which, at the same Time that it cannot fail of animating the Zeal of others more worthy of Your MAJESTY'S Notice, has added to the most devoted Attachment, the warmest Gratitude of,

SIRE,

Your MAJESTY'S most dutiful

Subject and Servant,

CONSTANTINE JOHN PHIPPS.

INTRODUCTION.

THE Idea of a passage to the East Indies by the North Pole was suggested as early as the year 1527, by Robert Thorne, merchant, of Bristol, as appears from two papers preserved by Hacklitt; the one addressed to king Henry VIII. the other to Dr. Ley, the king's ambassador to Charles V. In that addressed to the king he says, "I know it to be my bounden duty to manifest this secret to your Grace, which hitherto, I suppose, has been hid." This secret appears to be the honour and advantage which would be derived from the discovery of a passage by the North Pole. He represents in the strongest terms the glory which the kings of Spain and Portugal had obtained by their discoveries East and West, and exhorts the king to emulate their fame by undertaking discoveries towards the North. He states in a very masterly style the reputation that must attend the attempt, and the great benefits, should it be crowned with success, likely to accrue to the subjects of this country, from their advantageous situation; which, he observes, seems to make the exploring this, the only hitherto undiscovered part, the king's peculiar duty.

To remove any objection to the undertaking which might be drawn from the supposed danger, he insists upon "the great advantages of constant day-light in seas, that, men say, without great danger, difficulty, and peril, yea, rather, it is impossible to pass; for they being past this little way which

6 INTRODUCTION.

“ they named so dangerous (which may be two or
 “ three leagues before they come to the Pole, and as
 “ much more after they pass the Pole) it is clear
 “ from thenceforth the seas and lands are as tempe-
 “ rate as in these parts.”

In the paper addressed to Dr. Ley he enters more minutely into the advantages and practicability of the undertaking. Amongst many other arguments to prove the value of the discovery, he urges, that by sailing northward and passing the Pole, the navigation from England to the Spice Islands would be shorter, by more than two thousand leagues, than either from Spain by the Straits of Magellan, or Portugal by the Cape of Good Hope; and to shew the likelihood of success in the enterprise he says, it is as probable that the cosmographers should be mistaken in the opinion they entertained of the polar regions being impassable from extreme cold, as, it has been found, they were, in supposing the countries under the Line to be uninhabitable from excessive heat. With all the spirit of a man convinced of the glory to be gained, and the probability of success in the undertaking, he adds,—
 “ God knoweth, that though by it I should have no
 “ great interest, yet I have had, and still have, no
 “ little mind of this business: so that if I had faculty
 “ to my will, it should be the first thing that I would
 “ understand, even to attempt, *If our seas North-*
 “ *ward be navigable to the Pole or no.*” Notwith-
 standing the many good arguments, with which he supported his proposition, and the offer of his own services, it does not appear that he prevailed so far as to procure an attempt to be made.

Borne, in his *Regiment of the Sea*, written about the year 1577, mentions this as one of the five ways to Cathay, and dwells chiefly on the mildness of climate which he imagines must be found near the Pole, from the constant presence of the sun during the summer. These arguments, however, were soon after controverted by Blundeville, in his *Treatise on Universal Maps*.

In 1578, George Best, a gentleman who had been with Sir Martin Frobisher in all his voyages for the discovery of the North West passage, wrote a very ingenious

ingenious discourse, to prove all parts of the world habitable.

No voyage, however, appears to have been undertaken to explore the circumpolar seas, till the year 1607, when “ Henry Hudson was set forth, at the
“ charge of certain worshipful merchants of Lon-
“ don, to discover a passage by the North Pole to
“ Japan and China.” He sailed from Gravesend on the first of May, in a ship called the Hopewell, having with him ten men and a boy. I have taken great pains to find his original journal, as well as those of some others of the adventurers who followed him; but without success: the only account I have seen is an imperfect abridgment in Purchas, by which it is not possible to lay down his track; from which, however, I have drawn the following particulars:—He fell in with the land to the Westward in latitude 73° , on the twenty-first of June, which he named Hold-with-Hope. The twenty-seventh, he fell in with Spitsbergen, and met with much ice; he got to eighty degrees twenty-three minutes, which was the Northernmost latitude he observed in. Giving an account of the conclusion of his discoveries, he says, “ On
“ the sixteenth of August I saw land, by reason of
“ the clearness of the weather, *stretching far into*
“ *eighty-two degrees*, and, by the bowing and shewing of the sky, much farther; which, when I first
“ saw, I hoped to have had a free sea between the
“ land and the ice, and meant to have compassed this
“ land by the North; but now finding it was impossible, by means of the abundance of ice compassing us about by the North, and joining to the land;
“ and seeing God did bless us with a wind, we returned, bearing up the helm.” He afterwards adds: “ And this I can assure at this present, that
“ between seventy-eight degrees and an half, and
“ eighty-two degrees, by this way there is no passage.”—In consequence of this opinion, he was the next year employed on the North East discovery.

In March 1609, old style, “ A voyage was set
“ forth by the right worshipful Sir Thomas Smith,
“ and the rest of the Muscovy Company, to Cherry
“ Island, and for a further discovery to be made to-

“wards the North Pole, for the likelihood of a trade
 “or a passage that way, in the ship called the Amity,
 “of burthen seventy tons, in which Jonas Poole was
 “master, having fourteen men and one boy.”—He
 weighed from Blackwall, March the first, old style;
 and after great severity of weather, and much difficulty
 from the ice, he made the South part of Spitzbergen
 on the 16th of May. He sailed along and sounded the
 coast, giving names to several places, and making many
 very accurate observations. On the 26th, being near Fair
 Foreland, he sent his mate on shore;—and, speaking of
 the account he gave at his return, says, “Moreover, I was
 certified that all the ponds and lakes were unfrozen,
 they being fresh water; which putteth me in hope of a
 mild summer here, after so sharp a beginning as I have
 had; and my opinion is such, and I assure myself it is
 so, that a passage may be as soon attained this way
 by the Pole, as any unknown way whatsoever, by reason
 the sun doth give a great heat in this climate, and the ice
 (I mean that freezeth here) is nothing so huge as I have
 seen in seventy-three degrees.”

These hopes, however, he was soon obliged to relinquish
 for that year, having twice attempted in vain to get beyond
 79° 50'. On the 21st of June, he stood to the Southward,
 to get a loading of fish, and arrived in London the last of
 August. He was employed the following year (1611) in a
 small bark called the Elizabeth, of 50 tons. The instructions
 for this voyage, which may be found at full length in Purchas,
 are excellently drawn up: They direct him, after having
 attended the fishery for some time, to attempt discoveries
 to the North Pole as long as the season will permit; with
 a discretionary clause, to act in unforeseen cases as shall
 appear to him most for the advancement of the discovery,
 and interest of his employers. This however proved an
 unfortunate voyage: for having staid in Cross Road till
 the 16th of June, on account of the bad weather, and great
 quantity of ice, he sailed from thence on that day, and
 steered W b N fourteen leagues, where he found a bank
 of ice; he returned to Cross Road; from whence,

whence, when he sailed, he found the ice to lie close to the land, about the latitude of 80° , and that it was impossible to pass that way; and the strong tides making it dangerous to deal with the ice, he determined to stand along it to the Southward, to try if he could find the sea more open that way, and so get to the Westward, and proceed on his voyage. He found the ice to lie nearest S W and S W b S and ran along it about an hundred and twenty leagues. He had no ground near the ice at 160, 180, or 200 fathoms: perceiving the ice still to trend to the Southward, he determined to return to Spitsbergen for the fishery, where he lost his ship.

In the year 1614, another voyage was undertaken, in which Baffin and Fotherby were employed. With much difficulty, and after repeated attempts in vain with the ship, they got with their boats to the firm ice, which joined to Red-Beach; they walked over the ice to that place, in hopes of finding whale-fins, &c. in which they were disappointed. Fotherby adds, in his account, “ Thus, as we could not find what
“ we desired to see, so did we behold that which we
“ wished had not been there to be seen; which was
“ great abundance of ice, that lay close to the shore,
“ and also off at sea as far as we could discern.” On the eleventh of August, they sailed from Fair-Haven, to try if the ice would let them pass to the Northward, or Northeastward; they steered from Cape Barren, or Vogel Sang, N E b E eight leagues, where they met with the ice, which lay E b S and W b N. The fifteenth of August they saw ice frozen in the sea of above the thickness of an half-crown.

Fotherby was again fitted out the next year in a pinnace of twenty tons, called the Richard, with ten men. In this voyage he was prevented by the ice from getting farther than in his last. He refers to a chart, in which he had traced the ship's course on every traverse, to shew how far the state of that sea was discovered between eighty and seventy-one degrees of latitude, and for twenty-six degrees of longitude from Hackluit's headland. He concludes the account of his voyage in the following manner:

“ Now,

“ Now, if any demand my opinion concerning
 “ hope of a passage to be found in those seas, I an-
 “ swer ; that it is true, that I both hoped and much
 “ desired to have passed further than I did, but was
 “ hindered with ice ; wherein although I have not at-
 “ tained my desire, yet forasmuch as it appears not
 “ yet to the contrary, but that there is a spacious sea
 “ betwixt Groinland and king James his new land,
 “ [Spitsbergen] although much pestered with ice ;
 “ I will not seem to dissuade this worshipful company
 “ from the yearly adventuring of 150 or 200 pounds
 “ at the most, till some further discovery be made of
 “ the said seas and lands adjacent.” It appears that
 the Russia company, either satisfied with his endea-
 vours and despairing of further success, or tired of
 the expence of the undertaking, never employed any
 more ships on this discovery.

All these voyages having been fitted out by private
 adventurers, for the double purpose of discovery and
 present advantage ; it was natural to suppose, that the
 attention of the navigators had been diverted from
 pursuing the more remote and less profitable object of
 the two, with all the attention that could have been
 wished. I am happy, however, in an opportunity of
 doing justice to the memory of these men ; which,
 without having traced their steps, and experienced
 their difficulties, it would have been impossible to
 have done. They appear to have encountered dan-
 gers, which at that period must have been particu-
 larly alarming from their novelty, with the greatest
 fortitude and perseverance ; as well as to have shewn
 a degree of diligence and skill, not only in the ordi-
 nary and practical, but more scientific parts of their
 profession, which might have done honour to modern
 seamen, with all their advantages of later improve-
 ments. This, when compared with the accounts given
 of the state of navigation, even within these forty
 years, by the most eminent foreign authors, affords
 the most flattering and satisfactory proof of the very
 early existence of that decided superiority in naval af-
 fairs which has carried the power of this country to
 the height it has now attained.

This

This great point of geography, perhaps the most important in its consequences to a commercial nation and maritime power, but the only one which had never yet been the object of royal attention, was suffered to remain without further investigation, from the year 1615 till 1773, when the Earl of Sandwich, in consequence of an application which had been made to him by the Royal Society, laid before his Majesty, about the beginning of February, a proposal for an expedition to try how far navigation was practicable towards the North Pole; which his Majesty was pleased to direct should be immediately undertaken, with every encouragement that could countenance such an enterprize, and every assistance that could contribute to its success.

As soon as I heard of the design, I offered myself, and had the honour of being entrusted with the conduct of this undertaking. The nature of the voyage requiring particular care in the choice and equipment of the ships, the *Racehorse* and *Carcass* bombs were fixed upon as the strongest, and therefore properest for the purpose. The probability that such an expedition could not be carried on without meeting with much ice, made some additional strengthening necessary: they were therefore immediately taken into dock, and fitted in the most compleat manner for the service. The complement for the *Racehorse* was fixed at ninety men, and the ordinary establishment departed from, by appointing an additional number of officers, and entering effective men instead of the usual number of boys.

I was allowed to recommend the officers; and was very happy to find, during the course of the voyage, by the great assistance I received on many occasions from their abilities and experience, that I had not been mistaken in the characters of those upon whom so much depended in the performance of this service. Two masters of Greenlandmen were employed as pilots for each ship. The *Racehorse* was also furnished with the new chain-pumps made by Mr. Cole, according to Captain Bentinck's improvements, which were found to answer perfectly well. We also made use of Dr. Irving's apparatus for distilling fresh water from

from the sea, with the greatest success. Some small but useful alterations were made in the species of provisions usually supplied in the navy; an additional quantity of spirits was allowed for each ship, to be issued at the discretion of the commanders, when extraordinary fatigue or severity of weather might make it expedient. A quantity of wine was also allotted for the use of the sick. Additional cloathing, adapted to the rigor of that climate, which from the relations of former navigators we were taught to expect, was ordered to be put on board, to be given to the seamen when we arrived in the high latitudes. It was foreseen that one or both of the ships might be sacrificed in the prosecution of this undertaking; the boats for each ship were therefore calculated, in number and size, to be fit, on any emergency, to transport the whole crew. In short, every thing which could tend to promote the success of the undertaking, or contribute to the security, health, and convenience of the ships' companies, was granted.

As a voyage of this kind would probably afford many opportunities of making experiments and observations in matters relative to navigation, I took care to provide myself with all the best instruments hitherto in use, as well as others which had been imperfectly, or never, tried.

In the Journal which follows, I mean to confine myself to the occurrences of the voyage as they succeeded in order of Time; which, for the convenience of the generality of readers, I have reduced from the nautical to the civil computation.

A voyage of a few months to an uninhabited extremity of the world, the great object of which was to ascertain a very interesting point in geography, cannot be supposed to afford much matter for the gratification of mere curiosity.

JOURNAL.

APRIL 19th, 1773, I received my commission for the Racehorse, with an order to get her fitted with the greatest dispatch, for a voyage of discovery towards the North Pole, and to proceed to the Nore for further orders.

23d. The ship was hauled out of dock.

May 21st. The ship being manned and rigged, and having got in all the provisions and stores, except the Gunner's, we fell down to Galleons.

22d. We received on board the powder, with eight six-pounders, and all the gunner's stores. Lord Sandwich gave us the last mark of the obliging attention he had shewn during the whole progress of the equipment, by coming on board to satisfy himself, before our departure, that the whole had been compleated to the wish of those who were embarked in the expedition. The Easterly winds prevented our going down the river till the 26th, when I received my instructions for the voyage, dated the 25th; directing me to fall down to the Nore in the Racehorse, and there taking under my command the Carcass, to make the best of my way to the Northward, and proceed up to the North Pole, or as far towards it as possible, and as nearly upon a meridian as the ice or other obstructions might admit; and, during the course of the voyage, to make such observations of every kind as might be useful to navigation, or tend to the promotion of natural knowledge: in case of arriving at the Pole, and even finding free navigation

vigation on the opposite meridian, not to proceed any farther ; and at all events to secure my return to the Nore before the winter should set in. There was also a clause authorizing me to proceed in unforeseen cases, according to my own discretion ; and another clause directing me to prosecute the voyage on board the Carcass, in case the Racehorse should be lost or disabled.

27th. I anchored at the Nore, and was joined by Captain Lutwidge, in the Carcass, on the 30th : her equipment was to have been in all respects the same as that of the Racehorse, but when fitted, Captain Lutwidge finding her too deep in the water to proceed to sea with safety, obtained leave of the Admiralty to put six more guns on shore, to reduce the complement to eighty men, and return a quantity of provisions proportionable to that reduction. The officers were recommended by Captain Lutwidge, and did justice to his penetration by their conduct in the course of the voyage. During our stay here, Mr. Lyons landed with the astronomical quadrant at Sheerness fort, and found the latitude to be $51^{\circ} 31' 30''$, longitude $0^{\circ} 30'$ East. The easterly winds prevented our moving this day and the following.

June 2d. Having the wind to the Westward of North, at five in the morning I made the signal to weigh ; but in less than half an hour, the wind shifting to the Eastward and blowing fresh, I furled the topsails. The wind came in the afternoon to N b E ; we weighed, but did not get far, the tide of flood making against us.

3d. The wind blowing fresh all day Easterly, we did not move.

4th. The wind coming round to the Westward at six in the morning, I weighed immediately, and sent the boat for Captain Lutwidge, to deliver him his orders. At 10 A. M. longitude by the watch $56'$ E. At noon the latitude observed was $51^{\circ} 37' 36''$ N. At eight in the evening we had got as far as Balsey Cliff, between Orford and Harwich. Little wind at night.

5th. Anchored in Hoscley Bay at half past seven in the evening, in five and an half fathom water. Orford Castle N E b N.

Angle

Angle between Aldborough Church and Or-	}	7°	38'
ford Light House,			
Light House and Orford Church,	-	18	16
Orford Church and Castle,	-	2	20
Castle and Hoseley Church,	-	100	59
Hoseley and Balsey Church,	-	35	27

6th. At five in the morning, the wind at S S W, weighed, and stood out to sea, finding I might lose two tides by going through Yarmouth Roads. Examined the log line, which was marked forty-nine feet; the glass was found, by comparing it with the time-keeper, to run thirty seconds: at noon latitude observed $52^{\circ} 16' 54''$, longitude by the watch $1^{\circ} 30' 15''$ E.

Angle between Southwold and Walderswick $10^{\circ} 39'$
 Walderswick and Dunwich, - - - - 20 21
 Dunwich and Aldborough, - - - - 46 53
 Southwold N W $\frac{1}{4}$ N, supposed distance three leagues. We concluded the latitude of Southwold to be $52^{\circ} 22'$, and longitude $1^{\circ} 18' 15''$ E. The dip was $73^{\circ} 22'$.

7th. The wind was Northerly all day, and blew fresh in the morning. We had stood far out in the night and the day before, to clear the Lemon and Ower.

8th. Little wind most part of the day, with a very heavy swell. Stood in for the land. At half past ten longitude by the watch $0^{\circ} 41' 15''$ E. At noon the latitude was $53^{\circ} 38' 37''$. We saw the high land near the Spurn, in the evening.

9th. About noon Flamborough Head bore N W b N distant about six miles: we were by observation in latitude $54^{\circ} 4' 54''$, longitude $0^{\circ} 27' 15''$ E; which makes Flamborough Head, in latitude $54^{\circ} 9'$, longitude $0^{\circ} 19' 15''$ E. In the afternoon we were off Scarborough. Almost calm in the evening.

10th. Anchored in the morning for the tide in Robin Hood's Bay, with little wind at N W: worked up to Whitby Road next tide, and anchored there at four in the afternoon, in fifteen fathom, with very little wind.

11th. Calm in the morning; compleated our water, live stock and vegetables. At nine in the morning longitude observed by the watch $1^{\circ} 55' 30''$ W; Whitbey

Whitbey Abbey bore S $\frac{1}{2}$ W. Weighed with the wind at S E, and steered N E b N to get so far into the mid-channel as to make the wind fair Easterly or Westerly, without being too near either shore, before we were clear of Shetland and the coast of Norway.

12th. The wind at S E, and the ship well advanced, I ordered the allowance of liquor to be altered, serving the ship's company one-fourth of their allowance in beer, and the other three-fourths in brandy; by which means the beer was made to last the whole voyage, and the water considerably saved. One half of this allowance was served immediately after dinner, and the other half in the evening. It was now light enough all night to read upon deck.

13th. The weather still fine, but considerably less wind than the day before, and in the afternoon more Northerly. The longitude at ten in the morning was found by my watch $0^{\circ} 6' W$. We took three observations of the moon and sun for the longitude; the extremes differed from one another near two degrees: the mean of the three gave the longitude $1^{\circ} 37' E$. At noon the latitude observed was $59^{\circ} 32' 31''$. We found a difference of $36'$ between the latitude by dead reckoning and observation, the ship being so much more Northerly than the reckoning. The distance of this log was too short by forty-three miles. A log marked forty-five feet, according to the old method, would have agreed with the observation within two miles in the two days' run. The circumstance of steering upon a meridian, which afforded me such frequent opportunities of detecting the errors of the log, induced me to observe with care the comparative accuracy of the different methods of dividing the line, recommended by mathematicians, or practised by seamen. In the afternoon I went on board the Carcass to compare the time-keepers by my watch. At six in the evening the longitude by my watch $0^{\circ} 4' E$. This evening the sun set at twenty-four minutes past nine, and bore about N N W by the compass. The clouds made a beautiful appearance long after to the Northward, from the reflection of the sun below the horizon. It was quite light all night; the Carcass made the signal for seeing the land in the evening.

14th. Little wind, or calm, all day; but very clear and fine weather. Made several different observations for the longitude by the sun and moon, and by my watch. The longitude of the ship was found by my watch, at ten in the morning, to be $1^{\circ} 11' 45''$ W. The longitude by the lunar observations differed near two degrees from one another. By the mean of them the ship was in longitude $2^{\circ} 57' 45''$ W. Some Shetland boats came on board with fish. At noon the latitude by observation was $60^{\circ} 16' 45''$. At one in the afternoon the dip was observed to be $73^{\circ} 30'$; and at eight $75^{\circ} 18'$: the evening calm, and very fine; the appearance of the sky to the Northward very beautiful. Variation, by the mean of several observations, $22^{\circ} 25'$ W.

15th. By an observation at eight in the morning, the longitude of the dip was by the watch $0^{\circ} 39'$ W: dip $74^{\circ} 52'$. At half past ten in the morning, the longitude, from several observations of the sun and moon, was $0^{\circ} 17'$ W; at noon being in latitude $60^{\circ} 19' 8''$, by observation, I took the distance between the two ships by the Megameter; and from that base determined the position of Flangcliff, which had never before been ascertained, though it is a very remarkable point, and frequently made by ships. According to these observations it is in latitude $60^{\circ} 9'$, and longitude $0^{\circ} 56' 30''$ W. At one, observed the dip to be 75° . A thick fog came on in the afternoon, with a flat calm; we could not see the Carcass, but heard her answer the signals for keeping company. Variation, from the mean of several observations, $25^{\circ} 1'$ W.

16th. A very thick fog in the morning; latitude observed at noon $60^{\circ} 29' 17''$: the dip was observed at nine in the evening to be $76^{\circ} 45'$. In the afternoon, the weather clear, and the wind fair, steered N N E: sent Captain Lutwidge his further orders and places of rendezvous.

17th. Wind fair, and blowing fresh at S S W, continued the course N N E: ordered the people a part of the additional cloathing: saw an English sloop, but had no opportunity of sending letters on board, the sea running high. At ten in the morning, longitude by the watch $0^{\circ} 19' 45''$ W: at noon, the latitude observed

was $62^{\circ} 59' 27''$. The ship had out-run the reckoning eleven miles. I tried Bouguer's log twice this day, and found it give more than the common log. Variation $19^{\circ} 22' W$.

18th. Little wind all day, but fair, from S S W to S E : still steering N N E : latitude observed at noon $65^{\circ} 18' 17''$. At three in the afternoon, sounded with 300 fathom of line, but got no ground. Longitude by the watch $1^{\circ} 0' 30'' W$.

19th. Wind to the N W. Took the meridian observation at midnight for the first time : the sun's lower limb $0^{\circ} 37' 30''$ above the horizon ; from which the latitude was found $66^{\circ} 54' 39'' N$: at four in the afternoon, longitude by the watch $0^{\circ} 58' 45'' W$: at six the variation $19^{\circ} 11' W$.

20th. Almost calm all day. The water being perfectly smooth, I took this opportunity of trying to get soundings at much greater depths than I believe had ever been attempted before. I sounded with a very heavy lead the depth of 780 fathom, without getting ground ; and by a thermometer invented by Lord Charles Cavendish for this purpose, found the temperature of the water at that depth to be 26° of Fahrenheit's thermometer ; the temperature of the air being $48^{\circ} \frac{1}{2}$.

We began this day to make use of Doctor Irving's apparatus for distilling fresh water from the sea : repeated trials gave us the most satisfactory proof of its utility : the water produced from it was perfectly free from salt, and wholesome, being used for boiling the ship's provisions ; which convenience would alone be a desirable object in all voyages, independent of the benefit of so useful a resource in case of distress for water. The quantity produced every day varied from accidental circumstances, but was generally from thirty-four to forty Gallons, without any great addition of fuel. Twice indeed the quantity produced was only twenty-three gallons on each distillation ; this amounts to more than a quart for each man, which, though not a plentiful allowance, is much more than what is necessary for subsistence. In cases of real necessity I have no reason to doubt that a much greater quantity

June.]

JOURNAL.

19

quantity might be produced without an inconvenient expence of fuel.

21st. A fresh gale at S E all day ; steered N N E. At four in the morning we spoke with a snow from the seal fishery, bound to Hamburgh, by which we sent some letters. At six in the morning the variation, by the mean of several observations, was $23^{\circ} 18' W.$ longitude by the watch at nine was $0^{\circ} 34' 30'' W.$ Latitude observed at noon $68^{\circ} 5'.$

22d. Calm most part of the day ; rainy and rather cold in the evening. At noon observed the dip to be $77^{\circ} 52'.$

23d. Very foggy all day ; the wind fair ; altered the course and steered N E and E N E, to get more into the mid channel, and to avoid falling in with the Western ice, which, from the increasing coldness of the weather, we concluded to be near. At seven o'clock in the morning, being by our reckoning to the Northward of 72° , we saw a piece of drift wood, and a small bird called a Redpoll. Dip observed at nine in the evening to be $81^{\circ} 30'.$

24th. Very foggy all the morning ; the wind came round to the Northward. The dip observed at noon was $80^{\circ} 35'.$ In the afternoon, the air much colder than we had hitherto felt it ; the thermometer at $34^{\circ}.$ A fire made in the cabin for the first time, in latitude $73^{\circ} 40'.$

25th. Wind Northerly, with a great swell ; some snow, but in general clear. At eight in the morning, the longitude observed by the watch was $7^{\circ} 15' E.$ Made several observations on the variation, which we found, by those taken at seven in the morning, to be $17^{\circ} 9' W.$; by others at three in the afternoon, only $7^{\circ} 47' W.$ I could not account for this very sudden and extraordinary decrease, as there were several different observations taken both in the morning and evening, which agreed perfectly well with each other, without any apparent cause which could produce an error affecting all the observations of either set. At eight in the evening the longitude by the moon was $12^{\circ} 57' 30'' E,$ which differed $2^{\circ} 35'$ from that by the watch. Little wind at night.

26th. Little wind all day ; the weather very fine and moderate. The latitude observed at noon was

74° 25'. The thermometer exposed to the sun, which shone very bright, rose from 41° to 61° in twenty minutes. By each of two lunar observations which I took with a sextant of four inches radius, at half past one, the longitude was 9° 57' 30" E; which agreed within thirty-seven minutes with an observation made by the watch at half an hour after three, when the longitude was 8° 52' 30" E. Dip 79° 22'.

27th. At midnight the latitude observed was 74° 26". The wind came to the S W, and continued so all day, with a little rain and snow. The cold did not increase. We steered N b E. At seven in the morning the variation, by a mean of several observations, was found to be 20° 38' W. We were in the evening, by all our reckonings, in the latitude of the South part of Spitsbergen, without any appearance of ice or sight of land, and with a fair wind.

28th. Less wind in the morning than the day before, with rain and sleet: continued steering to the Northward. At five in the afternoon picked up a piece of drift wood, which was fir, and not worm-eaten: sounded in 290 fathom; no ground. At six the longitude by the watch was 7° 50' E: between ten and eleven at night, saw the land to the Eastward at ten or twelve leagues distance. At midnight, dip 81° 7'.

29th. The wind Northerly; stood close in with the land. The coast appeared to be neither habitable nor accessible; it was formed by high, barren, black rocks, without the least marks of vegetation; in many places bare and pointed, in other parts covered with snow, appearing even above the clouds: the vallies between the high cliffs were filled with snow or ice. This prospect would have suggested the idea of perpetual winter, had not the mildness of the weather, the smooth water, bright sunshine, and constant day-light, given a cheerfulness and novelty to the whole of this striking and romantick scence.

I had an opportunity of making many observations near the Black Point. Latitude observed at noon 77° 59' 11". The difference of latitude, from the last observation on the 27th at midnight to this day at noon, would according to the old method of marking the log have been two hundred and thirteen miles; which agrees

agrees exactly with the observation. At three in the afternoon, brought to and sounded 110 fathoms; soft muddy ground: hoisted out the boat and tried the stream; found it, both by the common and Bouguer's log (which agreed exactly) to run half a knot North; Black Point bearing E N E. At four the longitude by the watch was $9^{\circ} 31' E$: at eight the variation, by the mean of nineteen observations, $11^{\circ} 53' W$. I could not account from any apparent cause for this great change in the variation: the weather was fine, the water smooth, and every precaution we could think of used to make the observations accurate. The dip was $80^{\circ} 26'$. Plying to the Northward.

30th. At midnight the latitude by observation was $78^{\circ} 0' 50''$. At four in the morning, by Lord Charles Cavendish's thermometer the temperature of the water at the depth of 118 fathoms was 31° of Fahrenheit's; that of the air was at the same time $40^{\circ} \frac{1}{2}$. At nine in the morning we saw a ship in the N W., standing in for the land. Having little wind this morning, and that Northerly, I stood in for the land, with an intention to have watered the ship, and got out immediately, but was prevented by the calm which followed. At noon the latitude observed was $78^{\circ} 8'$; the dip $79^{\circ} 30'$. At two in the afternoon we sounded in 115 fathoms; muddy bottom: at the same time we sent down Lord Charles Cavendish's thermometer, by which we found the temperature of the water at that depth to be 33° ; that of the water at the surface was at the same time 40° , and in the air $44^{\circ} \frac{1}{2}$. Fahrenheit's thermometer plunged in water brought up from the same depth, stood at $38^{\circ} \frac{1}{2}$. This evening the master of a Greenland ship came on board, who told me, that he was just come out of the ice which lay to the Westward about sixteen leagues off, and that three ships had been lost this year, two English, and one Dutch. The weather fine, and rather warm. At six in the evening the longitude by my watch was $9^{\circ} 28' 45'' E$.

July 1st. Little wind Northerly, or calm, all day: the weather very fine, and so warm that we sat without a fire, and with one of the ports open in the cabin. At noon the latitude observed was $78^{\circ} 13' 36''$; Black Point bearing S $78^{\circ} E$; which makes the latitude of

that point nearly the same as that of the ship, and agrees very well with the chart of this coast in Purchas.

2d. Little wind, and calms, all day; the weather very fine. At six in the morning five sail of Greenlandmen in sight. At noon the latitude observed was $78^{\circ} 22' 41''$. I took a survey of the coast, as far as we could see: I took also with the megameter the altitudes of several of the mountains: but as there is nothing particularly interesting to navigators in this part of the coast, I shall only mention the height of one mountain, which was fifteen hundred and three yards. This may serve to give some idea of the appearance and scale of the coast. At half past six the longitude by the watch was $9^{\circ} 8' 30''$ E: Variation $14^{\circ} 55''$ W.

3d. Latitude at midnight $78^{\circ} 23' 46'$: Dip $80^{\circ} 45'$. The weather fine, and the wind fair all day. Running along by the coast of Spitzbergen all day: several Greenlandmen in sight. Between nine and ten in the evening we were abreast of the North Foreland, bearing E b S $\frac{1}{2}$ S, distance $1 \frac{1}{2}$ mile. Sounded in twenty fathom: rocky ground.

4th. Very little wind in the morning. At noon the latitude by observation was $79^{\circ} 31'$. Magdalena Hook bore N 39° E distant about four miles; which gives the latitude of that place $79^{\circ} 34'$; the same as Fotherby observed it to be in 1614. Stood in to a small bay to the Southward of Magdalena and Hamburger's Bay: anchored with the stream anchor, and sent the boat for water. About three in the afternoon, when the boat was sent on shore, it appeared to be high water, and ebbd about three feet. This makes high water full and change at half an hour past one, or with a S S W moon; which agrees exactly with Baffin's observation in 1613. The flood comes from the Southward. Went ashore with the astronomer, and instruments, to observe the variation. A thick fog came on before we had completed the observations. The ship driving, I weighed and stood out to sea under an easy sail, firing guns frequently to shew the Carcass where we were; and in less than two hours joined her. Soon after (about four in the morning of the 5th) the Rockingham Greenland ship ran under our stern, and the master told me he had just spoke with some ships from which

which he learned, that the ice was within ten leagues of Hacluyt's Head Land, to the North West. In consequence of this intelligence, I gave orders for steering in towards the Head Land; and if it should clear up, to steer directly for it; intending to go North from thence, till some circumstance should oblige me to alter my course.

5th. At five the officer informed me, that we were very near some islands off Dane's Gat, and that the pilot wished to stand farther out; I ordered the ship to be kept N b W, and hauled farther in, when clear of the islands. At noon I steered North, seeing nothing of the land; soon after I was told that they saw the ice: I went upon deck, and perceived something white upon the bow, and heard a noise like the surf upon the shore; I hauled down the studding sails, and hailed the Carcass to let them know that I should stand for it to make what it was, having all hands upon deck ready to haul up at a moment's warning: I desired that they would keep close to us, the fog being so thick, and have every body up ready to follow our motions instantaneously, determining to stand on under such sail as should enable us to keep the ships under command, and not risk parting company. Soon after two small pieces of ice not above three feet square passed us, which we supposed to have floated from the shore. It was not long before we saw something on the bow, part black and part covered with snow, which from the appearance we took to be islands, and thought that we had not stood far enough out; I hauled up immediately to the NNW and was soon undeceived, finding it to be ice which we could not clear upon that tack; we tacked immediately, but the wind and sea both setting directly upon it, we neared it very fast, and were within little more than a cable's length of the ice, whilst in stays. The wind blowing fresh, the ships would have been in danger on the lee ice, had not the officers and men been very alert in working the ship. The ice, as far as we could then see, lay nearly E b N and W b S. At half past seven in the evening, the ship running entirely to the Southward, and the weather clearing a little, I tacked, and stood for the ice. When I saw it, I bore down to make it plain; at ten
the

the ice lay from N W to East, and no opening. Very foggy, and little wind, all day; but not cold. At eleven came on a thick fog. At half past midnight, heard the surge of the ice, and hauled the wind to the Eastward.

6th. Clear weather all day, and the wind Easterly off the ice. In the morning I stood in to make the Head plain. At six was within four miles of the ice, which bore from E N E to W N W: at ten near Vogel Sang; at noon, latitude observed $79^{\circ} 56' 39''$; wind Easterly. Continued plying to windward between the land and the ice: was within a quarter of a mile of the ice, which lay from E N E to N N W, when I tacked at two in the afternoon; and within half a cable's length at midnight; the Carcass was a great way astern and to leeward all day. Being so near the last rendezvous, I did not chuse to bring to for her, but was very anxious to avail myself of this favourable opportunity, having the wind off the ice and clear weather, to see whether there was any opening to the N E of the Head Land. By all the accounts from the Greenlanders this year, and particularly the last account from the Rockingham, as well as from what we had seen ourselves, the ice appeared to be quite close to the N W. We had seen it from E S E to W N W. It was probable that the sea, if open any where, would be so to the Eastward, where the Greenlanders do not often venture, for fear of being prevented from returning by the ice joining to Spitsbergen. I determined therefore, should the wind continue in the same quarter next day, to find whether the ice joined to the land, or was so detached as to afford me an opportunity of passing to the Eastward. In case of the ice being fast I could, with the wind Easterly, range close along the edge of it to the Westward. The weather exceedingly fine. At six in the afternoon, the longitude by the watch was $9^{\circ} 43' 30''$ E.

7th. At five in the morning the wind was Northerly, and the weather remarkably clear. Being near the ice I ranged along it. It appeared to be close all round; but I was in hopes that some opening might be found to get through to a clear sea to the Northward. I ran in amongst the small ice, and kept as close

July.]

J O U R N A L.

23

close as possible to the main body, not to miss any opening. At noon, Cloven Cliff W $\frac{1}{2}$ S seven leagues. At one in the afternoon, being still amongst the loose ice, I sent the boat to one of the large pieces to fill water. At four we shoaled the water very suddenly to fourteen fathom: the outer part of Cloven Cliff bore W $\frac{1}{2}$ N: Redcliff, S $\frac{1}{2}$ E. The loose ice being open to the E N E, we hauled up, and immediately deepened our water to twenty-eight fathom; muddy ground, with shells. At half past four, the ice setting very close, we ran between two pieces, and having little wind were stopped. The Carcass being very near, and not answering her helm well, was almost on board of us. After getting clear of her, we ran to the Eastward. Finding the pieces increase in number and size, and having got to a part less crowded with the drift ice, I brought to, at six in the evening, to see whether we could discover the least appearance of an opening: but it being my own opinion, as well as that of the pilots and officers, that we could go no farther, nor even remain there without danger of being beset, I sent the boat on board the Carcass for her pilots, to hear their opinion; they both declared that it appeared to them impracticable to proceed that way, and that it was probable we should soon be beset where we were, and detained there. The ice set so fast down, that before they got on board the Carcass we were fast. Captain Lutwidge hoisted our boat up, to prevent her being stove. We were obliged to heave the ship through for two hours, with ice anchors from each quarter; nor were we quite out of the ice till midnight. This is about the place where most of the old discoverers were stopped. The people in both ships being much fatigued, and the Carcass not able to keep up with us, without carrying studding-sails, I shortened sail as soon as we were quite out, and left orders to stand to the Northward under an easy sail; I intended, having failed in this attempt, to range along the ice to the N W, in hopes of an opening that way, the wind being fair, and the weather clear; resolving, if I found it all solid, to return to the Eastward, where probably it might by
that

that time be broken up, which the very mild weather encouraged me to expect.

8th. Little wind in the morning, and a swell setting on the ice, we were obliged to get the boats a-head, to tow the ship clear; which they effected with difficulty. A breeze springing up when we were within two cables lengths of the main body of the ice, stood in for the land, and attacked at two, to stand to the N W for the ice; but the weather coming thick between five and six, I stood in again for the land. It clearing up soon after, I bore away again N W for the ice. At ten, spoke with a Greenland ship which had just left the ice all close to the N N W. Between eleven and twelve the wind came to the S W, with an heavy swell and thick weather. Double-reefed the topsails, and tacked at twelve, to stand in for Hacluyt's Head Land, not thinking it proper to run in with the fast ice to leeward in thick weather, without even the probability of an opening; and proposing if that weather continued, to compleat the ship's water, and be ready with the first wind, off or along the ice, to look out for an opening, and run in. To avoid any inconvenience which from the experience of the preceding day I perceived might happen, from too many running to one place on any sudden order, I divided the people into gangs under the midshipmen, and stationed them to the ice hooks, poles, crabs, and to go over upon the ice when wanted.

9th. Having a fair opportunity, and S W wind, stood to the Westward; intending, when the weather was clear, to make the ice to the Northward, and run along it. About twelve, clearer; saw the fast ice to the Northward, and the appearance of loose ice to the N W: stood directly for it, and got amongst it between two and three; steering as much to the Northward as the situation of the ice would permit. At six observed the dip $81^{\circ}.52'$. At half past seven, found the ice quite fast to the West, being in longitude $2^{\circ} 2'$ E, by our reckoning, which was the farthest to the Westward of Spitsbergen that we got this voyage. At eight the fog was so very thick, that we could neither see which way to push for an opening, nor where the Carcass was, though very near us. That we might
not

not risk parting company with her, I was obliged to ply to windward under the topsails, tacking every quarter of an hour to keep in the opening in which we were, and clear of the ice which surrounded us. At four in the afternoon we were in $80^{\circ} 36'$.

10th. We lost the Carcass twice in the night, from the very thick fog, and were working all night amongst the ice, making very short tacks; the opening being small, and the floating ice very thick about the ship. The situation of the people from the very fatiguing work and wet weather, made the most minute precautions necessary for the preservation of their health: we now found the advantage of the spirits which had been allowed for extraordinary occasions; as well as the additional cloathing furnished by the Admiralty. Notwithstanding every attention, several of the men were confined with colds, which affected them with pains in their bones; but, from the careful attendance given them, few continued in the sick list above two days at a time. At nine in the morning, when it cleared a little, we saw the Carcass much to the Southward of us. I took the opportunity of the clear weather to run to the Westward, and found the ice quite solid there; I then stood through every opening to the Northward, but there also soon got to the edge of the solid ice. I was forced to haul up to weather a point which ran out from it. After I had weathered that, the ice closing fast upon me, obliged me to set the foresail, which with the fresh wind and smooth water, gave the ship such way as to force through it with a violent stroke. At one in the afternoon, immediately on getting out into the open sea, we found a heavy swell setting to the Northward; though amongst the ice, the minute before, the water had been as smooth as a mill pond. The wind blew strong at S S W. The ice, as far as we could see from the mast head, lay E N E: we steered that course close to it, to look for an opening to the Northward. I now began to conceive that the ice was one compact impenetrable body, having run along it from East to West above ten degrees. I purposed, however, to stand over to the Eastward, in order to ascertain whether the body of ice joined to Spitsbergen. This the quantity of loose ice had before rendered

dered impracticable: but thinking the Westerly winds might probably by this time have packed it all that way, I flattered myself with the hopes of meeting with no obstruction till I should come to where it joined the land; and in case of an opening, however small, I was determined at all events to push through it. The weather clearer, and the land in sight.

11th. At half past four in the morning the longitude by the lunar observation was $9^{\circ} 42'$ E. And at the same time by my watch $9^{\circ} 2'$ E. Cloven Cliff S S E, distant eight miles. This would make the longitude of Cloven Cliff $9^{\circ} 38'$ E; which is within twenty minutes of what it was determined by the observations and survey taken in Fair Haven. At noon the latitude observed was $80^{\circ} 4'$; Vogel Sang W S W. Little wind and a great swell in the morning. Calm most part of the day.

12th. Calm all day, with a great swell from the S W, and the weather remarkably mild. At eight in the evening longitude by the watch $10^{\circ} 54' 30''$ E: Cloven Cliff S W b S, The Carcass drove with the current so near the main body of the ice, as to be obliged to anchor; she came to in twenty-six fathom water.

13th. Calm till noon, the ship driving to the Westward with the current, which we observed to be very irregular, the Carcass being driven at the same time to the Eastward. Near the main body of the ice, the detached pieces probably affect the currents, and occasion the great irregularity which we remarked. We had found an heavy swell from the S W these two days. At two in the afternoon it came on very suddenly to blow fresh from that quarter, with foggy weather: we worked into Vogel Sang, and anchored with the best bower in eleven fathom, soft clay.

The place where we anchored is a good roadstead, open from the N E to the N W. The Northeasternmost point is the Cloven Cliff, a bare rock so called from the top of it resembling a cloven hoof, which appearance it has always worn, having been named by some of the first Dutch navigators who frequented these seas. This rock being entirely detached from the other mountains, and joined to the rest of the island

island by a low narrow isthmus, preserves in all situations the same form; and being nearly perpendicular, it is never disguised by snow. These circumstances render it one of the most remarkable points on the coast. The Northwesternmost land is an high bluff point, called by the Dutch, Vogel Sang. This sound, though open to the Northward, is not liable to any inconvenience from that circumstance, the main body of the ice lying so near as to prevent any great sea; nor are ships in any danger from the loose ice setting in, as this road communicates with several others formed by different islands, between all which there are safe passages. To all the sounds and harbours formed by this knot of Islands, the old English navigators had given the general name of Fair Haven; of which Fotherby took a in *plat* 1614: that in which the Racehorse and Carcass lay at this time they called the North Harbour; the harbour of Smesrenberg, distant about eleven miles, (in which we anchored in August) they named the South Harbour. Besides these, there are several others; particularly two, called, Cook's Hole, and the Norways, in both which several Dutch ships were lying at this time. Here the shore being steep-to, we completed our water with great ease, from the streams which fall in many places down the sides of the rocks, and are produced by the melting of the snow. I fixed upon a small flat island, or rock, about three miles from the ship, and almost in the center of those islands which form the many good roads here, as the properest place for erecting a tent, and making observations. The foggy weather on the 14th prevented us from using the instruments that day. I regretted this circumstance much, fearing it would deprive me of the only probable opportunity of making observations on shore in those high latitudes, as our water was nearly recruited: however, having little wind with the weather very fair from the 15th to the 18th in the morning, I made the best use of that time. Even in the clearest weather here, the sky was never free from clouds, which prevented our seeing the moon during the whole of our stay, or even being sure of our solar observations, Mr. Lyons never having been able to get

get equal altitudes for settling the rates of going of the time-keepers. Once indeed we were fortunate enough to observe a revolution of the sun, of which I availed myself to determine the going of the pendulum adjusted to vibrate seconds at London. During the course of this experiment, a particular and constant attention was paid to the state of the thermometer, which I was surprised to find differ so little about noon and midnight; its greatest height was $58^{\circ}\frac{1}{2}$, at eleven in the forenoon; at midnight it was 51° .

On the 16th, at noon, the weather was remarkably fine and clear. The thermometer in the shade being at 49° , when exposed to the sun rose in a few minutes to $89^{\circ}\frac{1}{2}$ and remained so for some time, till a small breeze springing up, made it fall 10° almost instantly. The weather at this time was rather hot; so that I imagine, if a thermometer was to be graduated according to the feelings of people in these latitudes, the point of temperature would be about the 44th degree of Fahrenheit's scale. From this island I took a survey, to ascertain the situation of all the points and openings, and the height of the most remarkable mountains: the longest base the island would afford was only 618 feet, which I determined by a cross base, as well as actual measurement, and found the results not to differ above three feet. To try how far the accuracy of this survey might be depended upon, I took in a boat, with a small Hadley's sextant, the angles between seven objects, which intersected exactly when laid down upon the plan. I had a farther proof of its accuracy some days after, by taking the bearings of Vogel Sang and Hacluyt's Head Land in one, which corresponded exactly with their position on my chart.

On the 17th, the weather being very clear, I went up one of the hills, from which I could see several leagues to the NE: the ice appeared uniform and compact, as far as my view extended. During our stay here, we found the latitude of the island on which the observations were made, to be $79^{\circ} 50'$; longitude $10^{\circ} 2' 30''$ E; variation $20^{\circ} 38'$ W; dip $82^{\circ} 7'$; latitude of Cloven Cliff $79^{\circ} 53'$; longitude $9^{\circ} 52' 30''$ E: Hacluyt's Head Land $79^{\circ} 47'$; longitude

tude $9^{\circ} 11' 30''$ E. The tide rose about four feet, and flowed at half an hour after one, full and change. The tide set irregularly, from the number of islands between which it passed; but the flood appeared to come from the Southward.

18th. The calm weather since the 14th had given us full time to finish the observations, and complete our water: a breeze springing up in the morning, I went ashore to get the instruments on board. Between one and two we weighed, with the wind Westerly, and stood to the Northward. Between eleven and twelve at night, having run about eight leagues, we were prevented by the ice from getting farther. We stood along the edge of it to the Southward. At two in the morning, being embayed by the ice, I tacked, and left orders to stand to the Eastward along the edge of the ice, as soon as we could weather the point; hoping, if there should be no opening, between the land and the ice, that I should at least be able to ascertain where they joined, and perhaps to discover from the land, whether there was any prospect of a passage that way: At that time the ice was all solid as far as we could see, without the least appearance of water to the Northward.

19th. At six in the morning we had got to the Eastward among the loose ice which lay very thick in shore, the main body to the Northward and Eastward: the land near Deer Field not four miles off, and the water shoaled to twenty fathoms. Here we found ourselves nearly in the same place where we had twice been stopped, the ice situated as before, locked with the land without any passage either to the Eastward or Northward: I therefore stood back to the Westward. At noon the Northernmost part of Vogel Sang bore S W b S, distant about seven leagues. The weather being very fine, and the wind to the Eastward, we were enabled to coast along the ice to the Westward, hauling into all the bays, going round every point of ice in search of an opening, and standing close along by the main body all day, generally within a ship's length.

20th. At half after three in the morning the land was out of sight, and we imagined ourselves in rather more than eighty degrees and an half; some of the

the openings being near two leagues deep, had flattered us with hopes of getting to the Northward; but these openings proved to be no more than bays in the main body of the ice. About one in the afternoon, we were by our reckoning in about $80^{\circ} 34'$, nearly in the same place where we had been on the 9th. About three we bore away for what appeared like an opening to the S W; we found the ice run far to the Southward.

21st. We still continued to run along the edge of the ice, which trended to the Southward. At noon we were in the latitude of $79^{\circ} 26'$, by observation, which was twenty-five miles to the Southward of our reckoning. Finding that the direction of the ice led us to the Southward, and that the current set the same way, I stood to the Northward and Westward close along the ice, to try whether the sea was opened to the Northward by the wind from that quarter. At nine in the evening we had no ground with 200 fathom of line. At ten we got into a stream of loose ice. The weather fine, but cool all day, and sometimes foggy.

22d. At two in the morning we bore away to the N E, for the main body of the ice; the weather became foggy soon afterwards. At six we saw the ice; and the weather being still foggy, we hauled up to the S S E, to avoid being embayed in it. The air very cold.

23d. At midnight, tacked for the body of the ice. Latitude observed $80^{\circ} 13' 38''$. Rainy in the morning; fair in the afternoon; still working up to the Northward and Eastward, with the wind Easterly. At six in the evening, the Cloven Cliff bearing South about six leagues, sounded in 200 fathom, muddy ground; the lead appeared to have sunk one third of its length in the mud. At two in the morning, with little wind, and a swell from the South West, I stood to the Northward amongst the loose ice: at half past two the main body of the ice a cable's length off, and the loose ice so close that we wore ship, not having room or way enough to tack; struck very hard against the ice in getting the ship round, and got upon one piece, which lifted her in the water for near a minute, before her weight broke it. The ships had been so well strengthened,

strengthened, that they received no damage from these strokes; and I could with the more confidence push through the loose ice, to try for openings. Hacluyt's Head Land bore S 50° W distant about seven leagues.

24th. By this situation of the ice we were disappointed of getting directly to the Northward, without any prospect after so many fruitless attempts of being able to succeed to the Westward; nor indeed, could I with an Easterly wind and heavy swell attempt it, as the wind from that quarter would not only pack the loose ice close to the Westward, but by setting the sea on it, make it as improper to be approached as a rocky lee shore. To the Eastward on the contrary it would make smooth water, and detach all the loose ice from the edges; perhaps break a stream open, and give us a fair trial to the Northward; at all events, with an Easterly wind we could run out again, if we did not find it practicable to proceed. Finding the ice so fast to the Northward and Westward, it became a desirable object to ascertain how far it was possible to get to the Eastward, and by that means pursue the voyage to the Northward. These considerations determined me to ply to the Eastward, and make another push to get through where I had been three times repulsed. In working to the Eastward, we kept as near the body of the ice as possible. At noon the Cloven Cliff bore S W b S about seven leagues. At six we were working to the NE, and at nine we steered to the SE, the ice appearing more open that way: we had fresh gales and cloudy weather. The ship struck very hard in endeavouring to force through the loose ice. At midnight the wind freshened, and we double reefed the topsails. It was probably owing to the fresh gales this day, as well as to the summer being more advanced, that we were enabled to get farther than in any of our former attempts this way. We continued coasting the ice, and at two in the morning the North part of Vogel Sang and Hacluyt's Head Land in one bore S 65° W; Cloven Cliff S 52° W; the nearest part of the shore about three leagues off. When I left the deck, at four in the morning, we were very near the spot where the ships had been fast in the ice on the 7th in the evening, but rather farther to the Eastward;

we had passed over the same shoal water we had met with that day, and were now in twenty-fathom, rocky ground ; still amongst loose ice, but not so close as we had hitherto found it.

25th. At seven in the morning we had deepened our water to fifty-five fathom, and were still amongst the loose ice. At noon we had deepened our water to seventy fathom, with muddy bottom, at the distance of about three miles from the nearest land. By two in the afternoon we had passed Deer Field, which we had so often before attempted without success; and finding the sea open to the N E, had the most flattering prospect of getting to the Northward. From this part, all the way to the Eastward, the coast wears a different face ; the mountains, though high, are neither so steep or sharp pointed, nor of so black a colour as to the Westward. It was probably owing to this remarkable difference in the appearance of the shore, that the old navigators gave to places hereabouts the names of *Red Beach*, *Red Hill*, and *Red Cliff*. One of them, speaking of this part, has described the whole country in a few words : “ Here (says he) I saw a more
“ natural earth and clay than any that I have seen in
“ all the country, but nothing growing thereupon more
“ than in other places.” At two in the afternoon we had little wind, and were in sight of Moffen Island, which is very low and flat.

The Carcass being becalmed very near the island in the evening, Captain Lutwidge took that opportunity of obtaining the following exact account of its extent, which he communicated to me.

“ At 10 P M, the body of Moffen Island bearing
“ E b S distant two miles ; sounded thirteen fathoms ;
“ rocky ground, with light brown mud, and broken
“ shells. Sent the master on shore, who found the
“ island to be nearly of a round form, about two miles
“ in diameter, with a lake or large pond of water in
“ the middle, all frozen over, except thirty or forty
“ yards round the edge of it, which was water, with
“ loose pieces of broken ice, and so shallow they
“ walked through it, and went over upon the firm
“ solid ice. The ground between the sea and the
“ pond is from half a cable’s length to a quarter of a
“ mile

“ mile broad, and the whole island covered with gra-
 “ vel and small stones, without the least verdure or
 “ vegetation of any kind. They saw only one piece
 “ of drift wood (about three fathoms long, with a root
 “ on it, and as thick as the Carcass’s mizen mast)
 “ which had been thrown up over the high part of the
 “ land, and lay upon the declivity towards the pond.
 “ They saw three bears, and a number of wild ducks,
 “ geese, and other sea fowls, with birds nests all over
 “ the island. There was an inscription over the grave
 “ of a Dutchman, who was buried there in July 1771.
 “ It was low water at eleven o’clock when the boat
 “ landed, and the tide appeared to flow eight or nine
 “ feet ; at that time we found a current carrying the
 “ ship to the N W from the island, which before car-
 “ ried us to the S E (at the rate of a mile an hour) to-
 “ wards it. On the West side is a fine white sandy
 “ bottom, from two fathoms, at a ship’s length from
 “ the beach, to five fathoms, at half a mile’s distance
 “ off.”

The soundings all about this island, and to the East-
 ward, seem to partake of the nature of the coast.
 To the Westward the rocks were high, and the shores
 bold and steep too ; here the land shelved more, and
 the soundings were shoal, from thirteen to ten fathom.
 It appears extraordinary that none of the old naviga-
 tors, who are so accurate and minute in their descrip-
 tions of the coast, have taken any notice of this island,
 so remarkable and different from every thing they had
 seen on the Western coast ; unless we should suppose
 that it did not then exist, and that the streams from
 the great ocean up the West side of Spitsbergen, and
 through the Waygat’s Straits, meeting here, have rais-
 ed this bank, and occasioned the quantity of ice that
 generally blocks up the coast hereabouts.—At four in
 the afternoon, hoisted out the boat, and tried the cur-
 rent, which set N E b E, at the rate of three quar-
 ters of a mile an hour. At midnight, Mofsen Island
 bore from S E b S to S b W, distant about five miles.

26th. About two in the morning, we had little
 wind, with fog ; made the signals to the Carcass, for
 keeping company. At half an hour after three in the
 afternoon, we were in longitude 12° 20' 45" E ; va-

riation, by the mean of five azimuths, $12^{\circ} 47'$ W. At nine we saw land to the Eastward; steering to the Northward with little wind, and no ice in sight, except what we had passed.

27th. Working still to the N E, we met with some loose ice; however from the openness of the sea hitherto, since we had passed Deer Field, I had great hopes of getting far to the Northward; but about noon, being in the latitude of eighty and forty-eight, by our reckoning, we were stopped by the main body of the ice, which we found lying in a line, nearly East and West, quite solid. Having tacked, I brought to, and founded close to the edge of the ice, in 79 fathom, muddy bottom.

The wind being still Easterly, I worked up close to the edge of the ice, coasting it all the way. At six in the evening we were in longitude $14^{\circ} 59' 30''$ E, by observation.

28th. At midnight the latitude observed was $80^{\circ} 37'$. The main body of the ice still lying in the same direction, we continued working to the Eastward, and found several openings to the Northward, of two or three miles deep; into every one of which we ran, forcing the ship, wherever we could, by a press of sail, amongst the loose ice, which we found here in much larger pieces than to the Westward. At six in the morning the variation, by the mean of six azimuths, was $11^{\circ} 56'$ W; the horizon remarkably clear. At noon, being close to the main body of the ice, the latitude by observation was $80^{\circ} 36'$: we founded in 101 fathom, muddy ground. In the afternoon the wind blew fresh at N E, with a thick fog; the ice hung much about the rigging. The loose ice being thick and close, we found ourselves so much engaged in it, as to be obliged to run back a considerable distance to the Westward and Southward, before we could extricate ourselves: we afterwards had both the sea and the weather clear, and worked up to the North Eastward. At half past five the longitude of the ship was $15^{\circ} 16' 45''$ E. At seven the Easternmost land bore $E \frac{1}{2} N$, distant about seven or eight leagues, appearing like deep bays and islands, probably those called in the Dutch charts the *Seven Islands*; they seemed to be surrounded

rounded with ice. I stood to the Southward, in hopes of getting to the Southeastward round the ice, and between it and the land, where the water appeared more open.

29th. At midnight the latitude by observation was $80^{\circ} 21'$. At four, tacked close to the ice, hauled up the foresail and backed the mizen top-sail, having too much way amongst the loose ice. At noon, latitude observed $80^{\circ} 24' 56''$. An opening, which we supposed to be the entrance of Waygat's Straits, bore South; the Northernmost land N E b E; the nearest shore distant about four miles. In the afternoon the officer from the deck came down to tell me, we were very near a small rock even with the water's edge; on going up, I saw it within little more than a ship's length on the lee bow, and put the helm down: before the ship got round, we were close to it, and perceived it to be a very small piece of ice, covered with gravel. In the evening, seeing the Northern part of the islands only over the ice, I was anxious to get round it, in hopes of finding an opening under the land. Being near a low flat island opposite the Waygat's Straits, not higher, but much larger than Moffen Island, we had an heavy swell from the Southward, with little wind, and from ten to twenty fathom: having got past this island, approaching to the high land to the Eastward, we deepened our water very suddenly to 117 fathom. Having little wind, and the weather very clear, two of the officers went with a boat in pursuit of some sea-horses, and afterwards to the low island. At midnight we found by observation the latitude $80^{\circ} 27' 3''$, and the dip $82^{\circ} 2' \frac{1}{4}$. At four in the morning I found, by Bouguer's log, that the current set two fathoms to the Eastward. At six in the morning the officers returned from the island; in their way back they had fired at, and wounded a sea-horse, which dived immediately, and brought up with it a number of others. They all joined in an attack upon the boat, wrested an oar from one of the men, and were with difficulty prevented from flaving or oversetting her; but a boat from the Carcass joining ours, they dispersed. One of that ship's boats had before been attacked in

in the same manner off Mofsen Island. From Dr. Irving, who went on this party, I had the following account of the low island.

“ We found several large fir trees lying on the shore, sixteen or eighteen feet above the level of the sea: some of these trees were seventy feet long, and had been torn up by the roots; others cut down by the axe, and notched for twelve feet lengths: this timber was no ways decayed, or the strokes of the hatchet in the least effaced. There were likewise some pipe-staves, and wood fashioned for use. The beach was formed of old timber, sand, and whale-bones.

“ The island is about seven miles long, flat, and formed chiefly of stones from eighteen to thirty inches over, many of them hexagons, and commonly placed for walking on: the middle of the island is covered with moss, scurvy grass, sorrel, and a few ranunculuses then in flower. Two reindeer were feeding on the moss; one we killed, and found it fat, and of high flavour. We saw a light grey-coloured fox; and a creature somewhat larger than a weasel, with short ears, long tail, and skin spotted white and black. The island abounds with small snipes, similar to the jack-snipe in England. The Ducks were now hatching their eggs, and many wild geese feeding by the water side.”

When I left the deck at six in the morning, the weather was remarkably clear, and quite calm. To the N E, amongst the islands, I saw much ice, but also much water between the pieces; which gave me hopes that when a breeze sprung up, I should be able to get to the Northward by that way.

30th. Little winds, and calm all day; we got something to the Northward and Eastward. At noon we were by observation in latitude $80^{\circ} 31'$. At three in afternoon we were in longitude $18^{\circ} 48' E$, being amongst the islands, and in the ice, with no appearance of an opening for the ship. Between eleven and twelve at night I sent the master, Mr. Crane, in the four-oared boat, amongst the ice, to try whether he could get the boat through, and find any opening for the ship which might give us a prospect of getting farther; with directions if he could reach the shore to go up one of the

the mountains, in order to discover the state of the ice to the Eastward and Northward. At five in the morning, the ice being all round us, we got out our ice-anchors, and moored along-side a field. The master returned between seven and eight, and with him Captain Lutwidge, who had joined him on shore. They had ascended an high mountain, from whence they commanded a prospect extending to the East and North East ten or twelve leagues, over one continued plain of smooth unbroken ice, bounded only by the horizon: they also saw land stretching to the S E, laid down in the Dutch charts as islands. The main body of ice, which we had traced from West to East, they now perceived to join to these islands, and from them to what is called the North East land. In returning, the ice having closed much since they went, they were frequently forced to haul the boat over it to other openings. The weather exceedingly fine and mild, and unusually clear. The scene was beautiful and picturesque; the two ships becalmed in a large bay, with three apparent openings between the islands which formed it, but every where surrounded with ice as far as we could see, with some streams of water; not a breath of air; the water perfectly smooth; the ice covered with snow, low, and even, except a few broken pieces near the edges: the pools of water in the middle of the pieces were frozen over with young ice.

31st. At nine in the morning, having a light breeze to the Eastward, we cast off, and endeavoured to force through the ice. At noon the ice was so close, that being unable to proceed, we moored again to a field. In the afternoon we filled our cask with fresh water from the ice, which we found very pure and soft. The Carcass moved, and made fast to the same field with us. The ice measured eight yards ten inches in thickness at one end, and seven yards eleven inches at the other. At four in the afternoon the variation was $12^{\circ} 24' W$: at the same time the longitude $19^{\circ} 0' 15'' E$; by which we found that we had hardly moved to the Eastward since the day before. Calm most part of the day; the weather very fine; the ice closed fast, and was all round the ships; no opening to be seen any where, except an hole of about a mile and a half, where
the

The ships lay fast to the ice with ice-anchors. We completed the water. The ship's company were playing on the ice all day. The pilots being much farther than they had ever been, and the season advancing, seemed alarmed at being beset.

August 1st. The ice pressed in fast; there was not now the smallest opening; the two ships were within less than two lengths of each other, separated by ice, and neither having room to turn. The ice, which had been all flat the day before, and almost level with the water's edge, was now in many places forced higher than the main yard, by the pieces squeezing together. Our latitude this day at noon, by the double altitude, was $80^{\circ} 37'$.

2d. Thick foggy wet weather, blowing fresh to the Westward; the ice immediately about the ships rather looser than the day before, but yet hourly setting in so fast upon us, that there seemed to be no probability of getting the ships out again, without a strong East, or North East wind. There was not the smallest appearance of open water, except a little towards the West point of the North East land. The seven islands and North East land, with the frozen sea, formed almost a basin, leaving but about four points opening for the ice to drift out, in case of a change of wind.

3d. The weather very fine, clear, and calm; we perceived that the ships had been driven far to the Eastward; the ice was much closer than before, and the passage by which we had come in from the Westward closed up, no open water being in sight, either in that or any other quarter. The pilots having expressed a wish to get if possible farther out, the ships companies were set to work at five in the morning, to cut a passage through the ice, and warp through the small openings to the Westward. We found the ice very deep, having sawed sometimes through pieces twelve feet thick. This labour was continued the whole day, but without any success; our utmost efforts not having moved the ships above three hundred yards to the Westward through the ice, at the same time that they had been driven (together with the ice itself, to which they were fast) far to the N E and Eastward by the current; which had also forced the loose ice from the
Westward

Westward, between the islands, where it became packed, and as firm as the main body. /

4th. Quite calm till evening, when we were flattered with a light air to the Eastward, which did not last long, and had no favourable effect. The wind was now at N W, with a very thick fog, the ship driving to the Eastward. The pilots seemed to apprehend that the ice extended very far to the Southward and Westward.

5th. The probability of getting the ships out appearing every hour less, and the season being already far advanced, some speedy resolution became necessary as to the steps to be taken for the preservation of the people. As the situation of the ships prevented us from seeing the state of the ice to the Westward, by which our future proceedings must in a great measure be determined, I sent Mr. Walden, one of the midshipmen, with two pilots, to an island about twelve miles off, which I have distinguished in the chart by the name of Walden's island, to see where the open water lay.

6th. Mr. Walden and the pilots, who were sent the day before to examine the state of the ice from the island, returned this morning with an account, that the ice, though close all about us, was open to the Westward, round the point by which we came in. They also told me, that when upon the island they had the wind very fresh to the Eastward, though where the ships lay it had been almost calm all day. This circumstance considerably lessened the hopes we had hitherto entertained of the immediate effect of an Easterly wind in clearing the bay. We had but one alternative; either patiently to wait the event of the weather upon the ships, in hopes of getting them out, or to betake ourselves to the boats. The ships had driven into shoal water, having but fourteen fathom. Should they, or the ice to which they were fast, take the ground, they must be inevitably lost, and probably overset. The hopes of getting the ships out was not hastily to be relinquished, nor obstinately adhered to, till all other means of retreat were cut off. Having no harbour to lodge them in, it would be impossible to winter them here, with any probability of their being again serviceable; our provisions would be very short for such an undertaking,

taking, were it otherwise feasible ; and supposing, what appeared impossible, that we could get to the nearest rocks, and make some conveniences for wintering, being now in an unfrequented part, where ships never even attempt to come, we should have the same difficulties to encounter the next year, without the same resources ; the remains of the ship's company, in all probability, not in health ; no provisions ; and the sea not so open, this year having certainly been uncommonly clear. Indeed it could not have been expected that more than a very small part should survive the hardships of such a winter with every advantage ; much less in our present situation. On the other hand, the undertaking to move so large a body for so considerable a distance by boats, was not without very serious difficulties. Should we remain much longer here, the bad weather must be expected to set in. The stay of the Dutchmen to the Northward is very doubtful : if the Northern harbours keep clear, they stay till the beginning of September ; but when the loose ice sets in, they quit them immediately. I thought it proper to send for the officers of both ships, and informed them of my intention of preparing the boats for going away. I immediately hoisted out the boats, and took every precaution in my power to make them secure and comfortable : the fitting would necessarily take up some days. The water shoaling, and the ships driving fast towards the rocks to the N E, I ordered canvass bread-bags to be made, in case it should be necessary very suddenly to betake ourselves to the boats : I also sent a man with a lead and line to the Northward, and another from the Carcass to the Eastward, to sound wherever they found cracks in the ice, that we might have notice before either of the ships, or the ice to which they were fast, took the ground ; as in that case, they must instantly have been crushed or over-set. The weather bad ; most part of the day foggy, and rather cold.

7th. In the morning I set out with a Launch over the ice ; she hauled much easier than I could have expected ; we got her about two miles. I then returned with the people for their dinner. Finding the ice rather more open near the ships, I was encouraged to attempt

attempt moving them. The wind being Easterly, though but little of it, we set the sails, and got the ships about a mile to the Westward. They moved indeed, but very slowly, and were not now by a great deal so far to the Westward as where they were beset. However, I kept all the sail upon them, to force through whenever the ice slackened the least. The people behaved very well in hauling the boat; they seemed reconciled to the idea of quitting the ships, and to have the fullest confidence in their officers. The boats could not with the greatest diligence be got to the water side before the fourteenth; if the situation of the ships did not alter by that time, I should not be justified in staying longer by them. In the mean time I resolved to carry on both attempts together, moving the boats constantly, but without omitting any opportunity of getting the ships through.

8th. At half past four, sent two pilots with three men to see the state of the ice to the Westward, that I might judge of the probability of getting the ships out. At nine they returned, and reported the ice to be very heavy and close, consisting chiefly of large fields. Between nine and ten this morning, I set out with the people, and got the Launch above three miles. The weather being foggy, and the people having worked hard, I thought it best to return on board between six and seven. The ships had in the mean time moved something through the ice, and the ice itself had drifted still more to the Westward. At night there was little wind, and a thick fog, so that I could not judge precisely of the advantage we had gained; but I still feared that, however flattering, it was not such as to justify my giving up the idea of moving the boats, the season advancing so fast, the preservation of the ships being so uncertain, and the situation of the people so critical.

9th. A thick fog in the morning: we moved the ship a little through some very small openings. In the afternoon, upon its clearing up, we were agreeably surprized to find the ships had driven much more than we could have expected to the Westward. We worked hard all day, and got them something more to the Westward through the ice; but nothing in comparison

comparison to what the ice itself had drifted. We got past the Launches; I sent a number of men for them, and got them on board. Between three and four in the morning the wind was Westerly, and it snowed fast. The people having been much fatigued, we were obliged to desist from working for a few hours. The progress which the ships had made through the ice was, however, a very favourable event: the drift of the ice was an advantage that might be as suddenly lost, as it had been unexpectedly gained, by a change in the current: we had experienced the inefficacy of an Easterly wind when far in the bay, and under the high land; but having now got through so much of the ice, we began again to conceive hopes that a brisk gale from that quarter would soon effectually clear us.

10th. The wind springing up to the N N E in the morning, we set all the sail we could upon the ship, and forced her through a great deal of very heavy ice: she struck often very hard, and with one stroke broke the shank of the best bower anchor. About noon we had got her through all the ice, and out to sea. I stood to the N W to make the ice, and found the main body just where we left it. At three in the morning, with a good breeze Easterly, we were standing to the Westward, between the land and the ice, both in sight; the weather hazy.

11th. Came to an anchor in the harbour of Smeerenberg, to refresh the people after their fatigues. We found here four of the Dutch ships, which we had left in the Norways when we sailed from Vogel Sang, and upon which I had depended for carrying the people home in case we had been obliged to quit the ships. In this Sound there is good anchorage in thirteen fathom, sandy bottom, not far from the shore: it is well sheltered from all winds. The island close to which we lay is called Amsterdam Island, the Westernmost point of which is Hacluyt's Head Land: here the Dutch used formerly to boil their whale-oil, and the remains of some conveniences erected by them for that purpose are still visible. Once they attempted to make an establishment, and left some people to winter here, who all perished. The Dutch ships still resort to this place for the latter season of the whale fishery.

12th.





The Racehorses

12th. Got the instruments on shore, and the tent pitched; but could not make any observations this day or the next, from the badness of the weather.

13th. Rain, and blowing hard: two of the Dutch ships sailed for Holland.

14th. The weather being fine and little wind, we began our observations.

18th. Completed the observations. Calm all day. During our stay, I again set up the pendulum, but was not so fortunate as before, never having been able to get an observation of a revolution of the sun, or even equal altitudes for the time. We had an opportunity of determining the refraction at midnight, which answered within a few seconds to the calculation in Dr. Bradley's table, allowing for the barometer and thermometer. Being within sight of Cloven Cliff, I took a survey of this part of Fair Haven, to connect it with the plan of the other part. Dr. Irving climbed up a mountain, to take its height with the barometer, which I determined at the same time geometrically with great care. By repeated observations here we found the latitude to be $79^{\circ} 44'$, which by the survey corresponded exactly with the latitude of Cloven Cliff, determined before; the longitude $9^{\circ} 50' 45''$ E; dip $82^{\circ} 8' \frac{3}{4}$; variation $18^{\circ} 57' W$; which agrees also with the observation made on shore in July. The tide flowed here half past one, the same as in Vogel Sang harbour.

Opposite to the place where the instruments stood, was one of the most remarkable Icebergs in this country. Icebergs are large bodies of ice filling the vallies between the high mountains; the face towards the sea is nearly perpendicular, and of a very lively light green colour. This was about three hundred feet high, with a cascade of water issuing out of it. The black mountains, white snow, and beautiful colour of the ice, make a very romantick and uncommon picture. Large pieces frequently break off from the Icebergs, and fall with great noise into the water: we observed one piece which had floated out into the bay, and grounded in twenty-four fathom; it was fifty feet high above the surface of the water, and of the same beautiful colour as the Iceberg.

I shall

I shall here mention such general observations as my short stay enabled me to make. The stone we found was chiefly a kind of marble, which dissolved easily in the marine acid. We perceived no marks of minerals of any kind, nor the least appearance of present, or remains of former Volcanoes. Neither did we meet with insects, or any species of reptiles; not even the common earthworm. We saw no springs or rivers, the water, which we found in great plenty, being all produced by the melting of the snow from the mountains. During the whole time we were in these latitudes, there was no thunder or lightning. I must also add, that I never found what is mentioned by Marten (who is generally accurate in his observations, and faithful in his accounts) of the sun at midnight resembling in appearance the moon; I saw no difference in clear weather between the sun at midnight and any other time, but what arose from a different degree of altitude; the brightness of the light appearing there, as well as elsewhere, to depend upon the obliquity of his rays. The sky was in general loaded with hard white clouds; so that I do not remember to have ever seen the sun and the horizon both free from them even in the clearest weather. We could always perceive when we were approaching the ice, long before we saw it, by a bright appearance near the horizon, which the pilots called the *blink of the ice*. Hudson remarked that the sea where he met with ice was blue; but the green sea was free from it. I was particularly attentive to observe this difference, but could never discern it.

The driftwood in these seas has given rise to various opinions and conjectures, both as to its nature and the place of its growth. All that which we saw (except the pipe-staves taken notice of by Doctor Irving on the Low Island) was fir, and not worm-eaten. The place of its growth I had no opportunity of ascertaining.

The nature of the ice was a principal object of attention in this climate. We found always a great swell near the edge of it; but whenever we got within the loose ice, the water was constantly smooth. The loose fields and flaws, as well as the interior part of the fixed ice, were flat, and low: with the wind blowing

Aug.]

J · O · U · R · N · A · L ·

47

blowing on the ice, the loose parts were always, to use the phrase of the Greenlandmen, *packed*; the ice at the edges appearing rough and piled up; this roughness and height I imagine to proceed from the smaller pieces being thrown up by the force of the sea on the solid part. During the time that we were fast amongst the Seven Islands, we had frequent opportunities of observing the irresistible force of the large bodies of floating ice. We have often seen a piece of several acres square lifted up between two much larger pieces, and as it were becoming one with them; and afterwards this piece so formed acting in the same manner upon a second and third; which would probably have continued to be the effect, till the whole bay had been so filled with ice that the different pieces could have had no motion, had not the stream taken an unexpected turn, and set the ice out of the bay.

19th. Weighed in the morning with the wind at N N E. Before we got out of the bay it felt calm. I observed for these three or four days, about eleven in the evening, an appearance of Dusk.

20th. At midnight, being exactly in the latitude of Cloven Cliff, Mr. Harvey took an observation for the refraction; which we found to agree with the tables. The wind Southerly all day, blowing fresh in the afternoon. About noon fell in with a stream of loose ice, and about four made the main ice near us. We stood to the W N W along it at night, and found it in the same situation as when we saw it before; the wind freshened and the weather grew thick, so that we lost sight of it, and could not venture to stand nearer, the wind being S S W.

21st. At two in the morning we were close in with the body of the West ice, and obliged to tack for it; blowing fresh, with a very heavy sea from the Southward. The wind abated in the afternoon, but the swell continued, with a thick fog.

22d. The wind sprung up Northerly, with a thick fog; about noon moderate and clearer; but coming on to blow fresh again in the evening, with a great sea, and thick fog, I was forced to haul more to the Eastward, lest we should be embayed, or run upon lee ice.

The season was so very far advanced, and fogs as well

well as gales of wind so much to be expected, that nothing more could now have been done, had any thing been left untried. The summer appears to have been uncommonly favourable for our purpose, and afforded us the fullest opportunity of ascertaining repeatedly the situation of that wall of ice, extending for more than twenty degrees between the latitudes of eighty and eighty-one, without the smallest appearance of any opening.

I should here conclude the account of the voyage, had not some observations and experiments occurred on the passage home.

In steering to the Southward we soon found the weather grow more mild, or rather to our feelings warm. August 24th, we saw Jupiter: the sight of a star was now become almost as extraordinary a phenomenon, as the sun at midnight when we first got within the arctic circle. The weather was very fine for some part of the voyage; on the 4th of September, the water being perfectly smooth with a dead calm, I repeated with success the attempt I had made to get soundings in the main ocean at great depths, and struck ground in six hundred and eighty-three fathoms; the bottom was a fine soft blue clay. From the 7th of September, when we were off Shetland, till the 24th, when we made Orfordness, we had very hard gales of wind with little intermission, which were constantly indicated several hours before they came on by the fall of the barometer, and rise of the manometer: this proved to me the utility of those instruments at sea. In one of these gales, the hardest, I think, I ever was in, and with the greatest sea, we lost three of our boats, and were obliged to heave two of our guns overboard, and bear away for some time, though near a lee shore, to clear the ship of water. I cannot omit this opportunity of repeating, that I had the greatest reason on this, as well as every other critical occasion, to be satisfied with the behaviour both of the officers and seamen. In one of these gales on the 12th of September, Dr. Irving tried the temperature of the sea in that state of agitation, and found it considerably warmer than that of the atmosphere. This observation is the more interesting, as it agrees with a passage in *Natural Questions*, not (I believe) before, or confirmed by experiment, in

“ that the sea becomes warmer by being agitated in
“ waves.”

The frequent and very heavy gales at the latter end of the year, confirmed me in the opinion, that the time of our sailing from England was the properest that could have been chosen. These gales are as common in the Spring as in the Autumn : there is every reason to suppose therefore, that at an early season we should have met with the same bad weather in going out as we did on our return. The unavoidable necessity of carrying a quantity of additional stores and provisions, rendered the ships so deep in the water, that in heavy gales the boats, with many of the stores, must probably have been thrown over board ; as we experienced on our way home, though the ships were then much lightened by the consumption of provisions, and expenditure of stores. Such accidents in the outset must have defeated the voyage. At the time we sailed, added to the fine weather, we had the further advantage of nearly reaching the latitude of eighty without seeing ice, which the Greenlandmen generally fall in with in the latitude of seventy-three or seventy-four. There was also most probability, if ever navigation should be practicable to the Pole, of finding the sea open to the Northward after the solstice ; the sun having then exerted the full influence of his rays, though there was enough of the summer still remaining for the purpose of exploring the seas to the Northward and Westward of Spitsbergen.

F I N I S.

